

BYZANTINE GREEK SERIES • VOLUME 14

THE ALEXIAD



ANNA KOMNENE

# ΑΛΕΞΙΑΣ

*The Alexiad*

*Part One: The Prologue and Books I–IV*

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation  
preserving the original word order

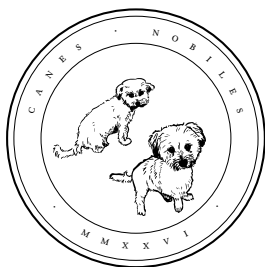


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench  
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is used under a Creative Commons  
Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License  
[creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)



Volume 14 of the Canes Nobiles Byzantine Greek interlinear texts

The Byzantine Greek text follows August Reifferscheid's Teubner edition,  
Annae Comnenae Porphyrogenitae Alexias, vol. I (Leipzig, 1884)

Set from the FirstKGreek digital corpus,  
corrected against page scans of the edition

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench  
Artwork by Esther Steves

## CONTENTS

---

### PROLOGUE

|                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|
| I · History against Time . . . . .              | 9  |
| II · Praise and Truth . . . . .                 | 11 |
| III · The Caesar's Unfinished History . . . . . | 13 |
| IV · Lament for the Caesar . . . . .            | 17 |

### BOOK I

|                                               |    |
|-----------------------------------------------|----|
| V · The Young Alexios and Ourselios . . . . . | 21 |
| VI · Tutach Is Bought . . . . .               | 26 |
| VII · The Feigned Blinding . . . . .          | 33 |
| VIII · Against Bryennios . . . . .            | 38 |
| IX · The Battle at Kalaure . . . . .          | 43 |
| X · Bryennios Captured . . . . .              | 52 |
| XI · Basilakios at the Bardarios . . . . .    | 61 |
| XII · The Night Attack . . . . .              | 67 |
| XIII · Basilakios Taken . . . . .             | 74 |
| XIV · Robert Guiscard . . . . .               | 79 |

# BOOK I

(continued)

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| XV · Robert and William Mascabeles . . . . .           | 83  |
| XVI · Duke of Lombardy and the False Michael . . . . . | 91  |
| XVII · Pope and King . . . . .                         | 101 |
| XVIII · Robert's Levy . . . . .                        | 110 |
| XIX · Raoul's Embassy . . . . .                        | 114 |
| XX · Monomachatos at Dyrrachion . . . . .              | 121 |

# BOOK II

|                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| XXI · The Brothers and the Slaves . . . . . | 131 |
| XXII · The Empress's Fear . . . . .         | 137 |
| XXIII · News from Kyzikos . . . . .         | 143 |
| XXIV · The Plot and the Flight . . . . .    | 147 |
| XXV · The Women in Sanctuary . . . . .      | 156 |
| XXVI · The Caesar Joins . . . . .           | 165 |
| XXVII · Alexios Proclaimed . . . . .        | 174 |
| XXVIII · Melissenos and Manganes . . . . .  | 181 |
| XXIX · The Gate of the Nemitzoi . . . . .   | 187 |
| XXX · The Entry into the City . . . . .     | 191 |
| XXXI · Palaiologos and the Fleet . . . . .  | 197 |
| XXXII · Botaneiates Abdicates . . . . .     | 203 |

# BOOK III

|                                                            |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| XXXIII · The Monk Botaneiates; Maria and Her Son . . . . . | 209 |
| XXXIV · Irene Crowned . . . . .                            | 215 |

### BOOK III

(continued)

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| XXXV · Portraits of Alexios, Irene, and Isaac . . . . . | 224 |
| XXXVI · New Titles . . . . .                            | 230 |
| XXXVII · Penance . . . . .                              | 236 |
| XXXVIII · The Chrysobull for His Mother . . . . .       | 242 |
| XXXIX · Anna Dalassene . . . . .                        | 249 |
| XL · Her Household and Saint Thekla . . . . .           | 254 |
| XLI · An Empire in Straits . . . . .                    | 264 |
| XLII · The Letter to Henry . . . . .                    | 269 |
| XLIII · Peace with the Turks . . . . .                  | 276 |
| XLIV · Shipwreck at Glossa . . . . .                    | 282 |

### BOOK IV

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| XLV · The Siege of Dyrrachion Begins . . . . . | 290 |
| XLVI · The Venetians . . . . .                 | 295 |
| XLVII · Famine and the Dammed River . . . . .  | 301 |
| XLVIII · Palaiologos Burns the Tower . . . . . | 305 |
| XLIX · Robert's Council . . . . .              | 313 |
| L · The Battle of Dyrrachion . . . . .         | 320 |
| LI · The Leap at Bad Side . . . . .            | 330 |
| LII · Anna Restrains Her Grief . . . . .       | 336 |





## PROLOGUE

### I • HISTORY AGAINST TIME

*Time sweeps all things into the deep of oblivion, worthy and unworthy alike; the account of history is a bulwark against its stream. Anna, daughter of the emperors Alexios and Irene, born in the purple, schooled in Greek, rhetoric, Aristotle, Plato, and the four sciences, sets out to narrate her father's deeds, those done after he took the scepters and those done before the diadem in the service of other emperors, so that they are not handed over to silence.*

ῥέων ὁ χρόνος ἀκάθεκτα καὶ αἰεί τι κινούμενος  
flowing the time irresistibly and always somewhat moving  
παρασύρει καὶ παραφέρει πάντα τὰ ἐν γενέσει καὶ  
sweeps-away and carries-off all the(-things) in becoming and  
ἐς βαθὺ ἀφανείας καταποντοῖ ὅπου μὲν οὐκ ἄξια †λιθίου  
into deep of-obscurity drowns where indeed not worthy (corrupt)  
πράγματα, ὅπου δὲ μεγάλα τε καὶ ἄξια μνήμης, καὶ τὰ  
things where and great both and worthy of-memory and the  
τε ἄδηλα φύων κατὰ τὴν τραγωδίαν καὶ τὰ  
both unseen(-things) bringing-forth according-to the tragedy and the(-things)  
φανέντα κρυπτόμενος. ἀλλ' ὃ γε λόγος τῆς ἱστορίας  
having-appeared hiding but the at-least account of-the history  
ἔρυμα καρτερώτατον γίνεται τῷ τοῦ χρόνου ρεύματι καὶ  
bulwark strongest becomes to-the of-the time stream and  
ἴσῃσι τρόπον τινὰ τὴν ἀκάθεκτον τούτου ῥοὴν καὶ τὰ  
stops in-a-way certain the irresistible of-it flow and the(-things)  
ἐν αὐτῷ γινόμενα πάντα, ὅποσα ὑπερέληφε, ξυνέχει  
in it having-happened all as-many-as it-has-taken-up holds-together  
καὶ περισφίγγει καὶ οὐκ ἔῃ διολισθαίνειν εἰς λήθης  
and binds-tight and not allows to-slip-away into of-oblivion  
βυθούς. ταῦτα δὲ διεγνωκυῖα ἐγὼ Ἄννα, θυγάτηρ μὲν  
depths these(-things) and having-recognized I Anna daughter indeed

τῶν βασιλέων Ἀλεξίου καὶ Εἰρήνης, πορφύρας τιθήνημά  
*of-the emperors of-Alexios and of-Irene of-(the)-purple nursing*  
 τε καὶ γέννημα, οὐ γραμμάτων οὐκ ἄμιρος, ἀλλὰ καὶ  
*both and offspring not of-letters not without-share but also*  
 τὸ Ἑλληνίζειν ἐς ἄκρον ἐσπουδακῦα καὶ ῥητορικῆς οὐκ  
*the to-speak-Greek to (the)-utmost having-studied and of-rhetoric not*  
 ἀμελετήτως ἔχουσα καὶ τὰς Ἀριστοτελικὰς τέχνας εὖ  
*unpracticedly being and the Aristotelian arts well*  
 ἀναλεξαμένη καὶ τοὺς Πλάτωνος διαλόγους καὶ τὸν νοῦν  
*having-read-through and the of-Plato dialogues and the mind*  
 ἀπὸ τῆς τετρακτύος τῶν μαθημάτων πυκάσασα (δεῖ  
*from the quadrivium of-the sciences having-fortified it-is-necessary*  
 γὰρ ἐξορχεῖσθαι ταῦτα, καὶ οὐ περιαντολογία τὸ πρᾶγμα,  
*for to-divulge these(-things) and not self-praise the thing*  
 ὅσα ἢ φύσις καὶ ἢ περὶ τὰς ἐπιστήμας σπουδῇ  
*as-much-as the nature and the about the sciences zeal*  
 δέδωκε καὶ ὁ θεὸς ἄνωθεν ἐπεβράβευσε καὶ ὁ καιρὸς  
*has-given and — God from-above has-awarded and the occasion*  
 συνεισήνεγκε) βούλομαι διὰ τῆσδέ μου τῆς γραφῆς τὰς  
*has-contributed I-wish through this my the writing the*  
 πράξεις ἀφηγήσασθαι τοῦμοῦ πατρὸς οὐκ ἀξίας σιγῇ  
*deeds to-narrate of-my father not worthy to-silence*  
 παραδοθῆναι οὐδὲ τῷ ρέματι τοῦ χρόνου παρασυρῆναι  
*to-be-banded-over nor to-the stream of-the time to-be-swept-away*  
 καθάπερ εἰς πέλαγος ἀμνημοσύνης, ὅσας τε τῶν  
*as into sea of-forgetfulness as-many-as both of-the*  
 σκίπτρων ἐπειλημμένος κατεπράξατο καὶ ὅσας πρὸ  
*scepters having-taken-hold he-accomplished and as-many-as before*  
 τοῦ διαδήματος ἔδρασεν ἑτέροις βασιλεῦσιν ὑπηρετούμενος.  
*the diadem he-did to-other emperors serving*

*She writes not to display her learning but so that such deeds are not left without witness. She fears that writing of her father she will seem to praise her own and that the history will be thought an encomium; and, if she must censure him, that mockers will cast Noah's Ham at her. History demands forgetting goodwill and hatred, praising enemies, and reproving kin when the deeds require it. Her witnesses are the events themselves and those who saw them, the fathers and grandfathers of some men now living.*

Ταύτας δὲ λέξουσα ἔρχομαι οὐχ ὡς ἐπιδείξιν τινα  
*these(-things) and about-to-tell I-come not as display some*  
 τῆς περὶ λόγους ποιουμένη ἀσκήσεως, ἀλλ' ὡς ἂν μὴ  
*of-the about letters making training but that — not*  
 πρᾶγμα τηλικούτο τοῖς ἔπειτα γενησομένοις καταλειφθείη  
*matter so-great to-those afterward about-to-be may-be-left*  
 ἀμάρτυρον· ἐπεὶ καὶ τὰ μέγιστα τῶν ἔργων, εἰ μὴ  
*unattested since even the greatest of-the deeds if not*  
 πως ἄρα διὰ τῶν λόγων φυλαχθείη καὶ τῇ μνήμῃ  
*somehow after-all through the words should-be-guarded and to-the memory*  
 παραδοθείη, τῷ τῆς σιωπῆς ἀποσβέννυνται σκότῳ. ἦν  
*should-be-banded-down in-the of-the silence is-extinguished darkness was*  
 γὰρ ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ, ὡς αὐτὰ τὰ πράγματα ἔδειξεν,  
*for the my father as themselves the events showed*  
 ἐπιστάμενος ἄρχειν καὶ ὑπέικειν, ἐς ὅσον χρή, τοῖς  
*knowing-how to-rule and to-yield to as-far-as it-is-needful to-the*  
 ἄρχουσιν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰς ἐκείνου πράξεις προελομένη  
*rulers but also the his deeds having-chosen*  
 συγγράφειν δέδοικα τὸ ὑφορμῶν τε καὶ ὑποτρέχον, μὴ ποτε  
*to-write I-fear the lurking both and creeping-in lest ever*  
 λογίσαιτό τις τὰ τοῦ ἐμοῦ πατρὸς συγγράφουσιν  
*may-reckon someone the(-things) of-the my father writing*

τὰ ἐαυτῆς ἐπαινεῖν καὶ ψεῦδος ἅπαν δόξῃ τὸ  
*the(-things) of-herself to-praise and falsehood all may-seem the*  
 τῆς ἱστορίας πρᾶγμα καὶ ἐγκώμιον ἄντικρυς, εἴ τι  
*of-the history matter and encomium outright if anything*  
 τῶν ἐκείνου θαυμάζοιμι· εἰ δέ που αὐτὸς ἐνέγκοι  
*of-the(-things) his I-should-admire if and anywhere he-himself should-bring(-it)*  
 καὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα βιάζοιτο, ὥστε καθάπτεσθαί τι καὶ  
*and the matter should-compel so-as to-censure something even*  
 τῶν ἐκείνου, οὐ δι' ἐκείνον, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὴν τῶν  
*of-the(-things) his not because-of him but because-of the of-the*  
 πραγμάτων φύσιν, δέδοικα πάλιν τοὺς φιλοσκώμμονας,  
*events nature I-fear again the mockers*  
 μή μοι τὸν τοῦ Νῶε Χὰμ ἐπενέγκοιεν ἐποφθαλμιῶντες  
*lest to-me the — of-Noah Ham they-may-cast-up eyeing-enviously*  
 ἅπαντες πρὸς ἅπαντα καὶ οὐ καθορῶντες τὸ καλῶς ἔχον  
*all at everything and not discerning the well being*  
 ὑπὸ βασκανίας καὶ φθόνου, καὶ τὸν ἀναίτιον καθ'  
*by malice and envy and the blameless according-to*  
 Ὅμηρον αἰτιῶνται. ὅταν γάρ τις τὸ τῆς ἱστορίας  
*Homer they-blame when for someone the of-the history*  
 ἦθος ἀναλαμβάνῃ, ἐπιλαθέσθαι χρή εὐνοίας καὶ  
*character takes-up to-forget it-is-needful goodwill and*  
 μίσους καὶ πολλάκις κοσμεῖν τοὺς ἐχθροὺς τοῖς μεγίστοις  
*hatred and often to-adorn the enemies with-the greatest*  
 ἐπαίνοις, ὅταν αἱ πράξεις ἀπαιτῶσι τοῦτο, πολλάκις δὲ  
*praises when the deeds demand this often and*  
 ἐλέγχειν τοὺς ἀναγκαιοτάτους, ὅταν αἱ τῶν ἐπιτηδευμάτων  
*to-reprove the closest-kin when the of-the pursuits*  
 ἁμαρτίαι τοῦθ' ὑποδεικνύωσι. διόπερ οὔτε τῶν φίλων  
*errors this indicate wherefore neither of-the friends*  
 καθάπτεσθαι οὔτε τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἐπαινεῖν ὀκνητέον. ἐγὼ  
*to-censure nor the enemies to-praise one-must-shrink I*

δὲ καὶ τούτους κακείνους, καὶ τοὺς πληττομένους ὑφ'  
*and both these and-those and the(-ones) being-struck by*  
 ἡμῶν καὶ τοὺς ἀποδεχομένους ἡμᾶς, παραμυθησαίμην  
*us and the(-ones) accepting us I-would-reassure*  
 ἂν ἀπὸ τῶν πραγμάτων αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν ἑωρακότων  
*— from the events themselves and the(-ones) having-seen*  
 τὰ πράγματα αὐτοῦς τε καὶ τὰ πράγματα μαρτυραμένη.  
*the events them both and the events having-called-to-witness*  
 ἐνίων γὰρ τῶν νῦν ὄντων ἀνθρώπων οἱ μὲν πατέρες,  
*of-some for of-the now being men some indeed fathers*  
 οἱ δὲ πάπποι ἐγένοντο οἱ τούτων συνίστορες.  
*others and grandfathers were the of-these fellow-witnesses*

### III · THE CAESAR'S UNFINISHED HISTORY

*Her husband, the Caesar Nikephoros Bryennios, who campaigned with her brother John, began at the empress's command a history of Alexios from the reign of Diogenes, but carried it only to Botaneiates; so she takes it up herself. He brought the half-finished work home with a mortal illness, born of campaigns, cares, and climates, handed on sick from Syria and Cilicia through Pamphylia, Lydia, and Bithynia to the queen of cities. He wished to tell his sufferings, but illness prevented him, and so did she, lest the telling reopen the wound.*

Μάλιστα δὲ εἰς τὴν ἱστορίαν ἐλήλυθα τῶν τοῦ πατρὸς  
*most and into the history I-have-come of-the of-the father*  
 πράξεων ἐκ τοιαύσδε αἰτίας. ἐμοὶ ἀνὴρ ἐγένετο κατὰ  
*deeds from such cause to-me husband there-was according-to*  
 νόμους συναφθεὶς ὁ Καῖσαρ Νικηφόρος, εἰς τὴν τῶν  
*laws joined the Caesar Nikephoros into the of-the*  
 Βρυεννίων σειρὰν ἀναγόμενος, ἀνὴρ καὶ κάλλους ὑπερβολῇ  
*Bryennioi line tracing-descent man both of-beauty by-excess*

καὶ συνέσεως ἀκρότητι καὶ λόγων ἀκριβείᾳ μακρῶ τοὺς  
*and of-intelligence by-height and of-speech by-precision by-far the(-men)*  
κατ' αὐτὸν ὑπερβάλλον. θαῦμα γὰρ ἦν ἄντικρυς καὶ  
*in his(-time) surpassing marvel for he-was outright both*  
ὁρώμενος καὶ ἀκροώμενος. καὶ ἵνα μὴ ὁ λόγος τῆς  
*being-seen and being-heard and that not the account from-the*  
λεωφόρου ἐκτρέποιτο, τὸ παρὸν τῶν ἐφεξῆς ἐχώμεθα.  
*highway may-turn-aside for-the present of-the following(-things) let-us-hold-to*  
ἦν μὲν οὖν ἐν πᾶσι ἐπιφανέστατος, συνεστράτευσε δ'  
*he-was indeed then in all most-illustrious he-campaigned-with and*  
Ἰωάννη τῷ αὐτοκράτορι ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ καὶ κατ' ἄλλων μὲν  
*John the autocrat my brother and against other indeed*  
βαρβάρων \*\*\* ἔχοντι τὴν Ἀντιόχου πόλιν. ἀλλ' ὃ γε  
*barbarians (lacuna) holding the of-Antiochus city but the at-least*  
Καῖσαρ οὐκ εἰδὼς ἀμελεῖν τοῦ λόγου καὶ ἐν κόποις καὶ  
*Caesar not knowing-how to-neglect the letters even in toils and*  
πόνοις συνέγραφε μὲν καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ συγγράμματα μνήμης  
*labors wrote indeed also other certain writings of-memory*  
καὶ λόγου ἄξια, προεῖλετο δὲ μάλιστα τὰ κατὰ  
*and of-account worthy chose and most the(-things) concerning*  
τὸν Ἀλέξιον τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Ῥωμαίων καὶ ἐμὸν πατέρα  
*— Alexios the autocrat of(-the)-Romans and my father*  
συγγράψαι ἐξ ἐπιταγῆς τῆς βασιλίδος καὶ ἐν βίβλοις  
*to-write from command of-the empress and in books*  
ἐκθεῖναι τὰς πράξεις τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ, ἐν ᾧπερ ὁ  
*to-set-out the deeds of-the reign his in which the*  
καιρὸς ἐδίδου τούτῳ τῶν ὅπλων καὶ τοῦ πολέμου βραχύ  
*occasion gave to-him from-the arms and the war briefly*  
τι ἀπαλλαγέντι ἐπιβλέψαι πρὸς συγγραφὰς καὶ λογικούς  
*somewhat having-been-released to-look to writings and literary*  
τινας πόνους. καὶ δὴ καὶ ἤρξατο τῆς συγγραφῆς εἰς τοὺς  
*certain labors and indeed also he-began the writing into the*

ἀνέκαθεν ἀνενέγκας χρόνους τὸν λόγον, τῷ τῆς δεσποίνης  
*from-of-old having-carried-back times the account to-the of-the mistress*  
 ἡμῶν καὶ τούτῳ ὑπείκων προστάγματι, ἀπὸ Διογένης  
*our and-in this yielding command from Diogenes*  
 τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Ῥωμαίων ἀρξάμενος καὶ καταβαίνων  
*the autocrat of-(the)-Romans having-begun and descending*  
 εἰς αὐτὸν ἐκείνῳ, περὶ οὗ τὴν πρόθεσιν ἐποιήσατο. τότε  
*to him that-one about whom the purpose he-made then*  
 γὰρ καὶ ἀνθούν εἶχεν ὁ χρόνος τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα μειράκιον  
*for also blooming had the time the my father a-youth*  
 παραγγείλанта. τὸ γὰρ πρὸ τοῦδε οὐδὲ μειράκιον ἦν  
*having-entered the(-time) for before this not-even a-youth he-was*  
 καὶ οὐδὲν ὅ τι καὶ ἄξιον συγγραφῆς αὐτῷ πέπρακτο, εἰ  
*and nothing what — even worthy of-writing by-him had-been-done if*  
 μή τις ἐγκωμίου λόγον καὶ τὰ παιδικὰ αὐτῷ θήσοιτο.  
*not someone of-encomium matter even the boyish(-deeds) his should-make*  
 ὁ μὲν οὖν σκοπὸς τῷ Καίσαρι τοιοῦτος, ὥς ἡ τούτου  
*the indeed then aim to-the Caesar such as the his*  
 συγγραφὴ βούλεται· οὐ μὴν τὰ τῆς ἐλπίδος ἐκβέβηκεν  
*writing intends not however the(-things) of-the hope has-turned-out*  
 οὐδὲ τὴν ἱστορίαν πᾶσαν ἐτελεώσατο, ἀλλὰ μέχρι τῶν  
*nor the history whole he-completed but up-to the*  
 χρόνων τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου τοῦ Βοτανειάτου  
*times of-the autocrat Nikephoros the Botaneiates*  
 τὸν λόγον ἐφελκυσάμενος ἐκείσε τοῦ συγγράφειν  
*the account having-drawn-on there from-the to-write*  
 ἐπαύσατο, περαιτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ μὴ διδόντος προκοῖσαι  
*he-ceased further the occasion not granting to-advance*  
 τὴν συγγραφὴν ζημίαν μὲν τοῖς ὑπὸ τὴν συγγραφὴν  
*the writing loss indeed to-the under the writing*  
 πράγμασι περιποιησαμένου, ἡδονὴν δὲ ἀποστερήσαντος  
*events having-caused pleasure and having-deprived*

τοῖς ἀναγινώσκουσι. διὰ τοῦτο αὐτή, ὅσα τῷ  
*from-the(-ones) reading because-of this myself as-much-as by-the*  
 ἐμῷ πατρὶ πέπρακτο, συγγράψασθαι προειλόμην, ἵνα μὴ  
*my father had-been-done to-write I-chose that not*  
 τοιαῦτα ἔργα τοὺς ἐς ὕστερον παραδράμῃ. οἶαν  
*such deeds the(-ones) in later(-time) may-escape what-kind-of*  
 μὲν γὰρ εἶχον τὴν ἀρμονίαν, ὁπόσῃν δὲ τὴν χάριν οἱ  
*indeed for had the harmony how-great and the grace the*  
 τοῦ Καίσαρος λόγοι, ἴσασιν ἅπαντες οἱ τοῖς ἐκείνου  
*of-the Caesar words know all the(-ones) the his*  
 ἐντετυχηκότες συγγράμμασιν. ἀλλὰ μέχρι τούτου ἐλθὼν,  
*having-come-upon writings but up-to this having-come*  
 καθάπερ εἶπον, καὶ τὸ σύγγραμμα σχεδιάσας καὶ ἡμιτελὲς  
*as I-said and the work having-sketched and half-finished*  
 ἐκ τῆς ὑπερορίας κομίσας ἡμῖν, συναπεκόμισεν, οἶμοι,  
*from the foreign-land having-brought to-us he-brought-back-with alas*  
 καὶ θανάσιμον νόσημα τάχα ἐκ τῆς ἀπείρου κακοπαθείας,  
*also deadly disease perhaps from the boundless hardship*  
 τάχα ἐκ τῶν συχνοτέρων στρατηγημάτων, τάχα ἐκ τῆς  
*perhaps from the too-frequent campaigns perhaps from the*  
 ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν ἀφάτου μερίμνης· μέριμνα γὰρ ἔμφυτος καὶ  
*for us unspeakable care care for inborn and*  
 πόνοι ἀνένδοτοι· πρὸς δὲ καὶ ἀέρων ἀνωμαλῖαι τε καὶ  
*labors unremitting besides and also of-climates irregularities both and*  
 κακότητες ποτήριον αὐτῷ θανάσιμον ἐκεράσαντο. ἔνθεν μὲν  
*badnesses cup for-him deadly mixed thence indeed*  
 γὰρ εἰς Σύρους καὶ Κίλικας δεινῶς νοσῶν ἐξεστράτευσεν·  
*for against Syrians and Cilicians terribly being-ill he-marched-out*  
 εἴτα ἀκεῖθεν Συρία τοῦτον μὲν ἀπέδωκεν ἀρρωστοῦντα  
*then and-from-there Syria him indeed banded-over sick*  
 Κίλιξι, Κίλικες δὲ Παμφυλίοις, Παμφύλιοι δὲ τοῖς Λυδοῖς  
*to-Cilicians Cilicians and to-Pamphylians Pamphylians and to-the Lydians*



## Ἀλεξιάς

καὶ ἡ Λυδία τῇ Βιθυνία καὶ ἡ Βιθυνία τῇ βασιλίδι τῶν  
*and — Lydia — to-Bithynia and — Bithynia to-the queen of-the*  
 πόλεων καὶ ἡμῖν ἐξωδηκότα ἤδη τὸ σπλάγχνον ἐκ τῆς  
*cities and to-us having-swollen already the bowels from the*  
 πολλῆς κακοπαθείας. καίπερ δὲ οὕτως ἔχων ἀσθενείας  
*great hardship although and thus being of-weakness*  
 καὶ θέλων τὰ συμπεσόντα οἱ ἐκτραγωδεῖν τὸ μὲν  
*and wishing the(-things) having-befallen to-him to-tell-as-tragedy partly indeed*  
 τι νοσῶν οὐκ ἠδύνατο, τὸ δέ τι καὶ παρ' ἡμῶν  
*somewhat being-ill not he-was-able partly and somewhat also by us*  
 ἐκωλύετο, ὥς μὴ τὸ τραῦμα ἀνοίξοι διηγούμενος.  
*he-was-prevented that not the wound he-might-open narrating*

### IV · LAMENT FOR THE CAESAR

*Reaching this point, she is overcome with dizziness and tears for the Caesar, whose experience, learning, and grace are lost to the Romans. Misfortune has dogged her since the purple; Orpheus moved stones and Timotheos moved Alexander to arms, but her story moves to tears. Earlier calamities were only a prelude to this one, a fire that burns without consuming. Wiping her tears, she turns to her father's history, though remembering him is itself a lament.*

Ἐγὼ δ' ἐνταῦθα γενομένη σκοτοδίνης ἐμπίπλαμαι τὴν  
*I and here having-come with-dizziness am-filled the*  
 ψυχὴν καὶ ρείθροις δακρύων περιτέγγω τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς.  
*soul and with-streams of-tears I-drench the eyes*  
 ὦ οἶον ἡ Ῥωμαίων ἀπόλωλε βούλευμα· ὦ πείρας  
*O what the(-state) of-(the)-Romans has-lost counsel O of-experience*  
 μὲν ἀκριβεστάτης περὶ τὰ πράγματα καὶ ὅσην ἐκείνος  
*indeed most-exact about the affairs and how-much he*  
 συνείλοχε· λόγων δὲ ἐπιστήμης, ποικίλης δὲ σοφίας, λέγω  
*had-gathered of-letters and of-knowledge varied and of-wisdom I-mean*

δὴ τῆς θυραίας καὶ τῆς ἡμετέρας αὐλῆς· ὦ καὶ χάριτος  
*indeed of-the outer and of-the our court O and of-grace*  
 ἐπιτρεχούσης τοῖς μέλεσι καὶ εἶδους οὐκ ἀξίου τυραννίδος,  
*running-over the limbs and of-form not worthy of-tyranny*  
 ὥς τινες λέγουσιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ θειοτέρου καὶ κρείττονος.  
*as some say but both more-divine and better*  
 ἔγωγ' οὖν πολλοῖς ἄλλοις προσωμλήκειν δεινοῖς ἐκ  
*I-for-my-part then many other had-met terrors from*  
 μέσων τῶν πορφυρόθεν σπαργάνων, ὡς οὕτως εἰπεῖν,  
*midst of-the from-the-purple swaddling-clothes as thus to-say*  
 καὶ τύχαις ἐχρησάμην οὐκ ἀγαθαῖς, εἰ μὴ τις θεῖτο  
*and fortunes I-met not good if not someone should-reckon*  
 τύχην ἀγαθὴν καὶ προσμειδιῶσάν μοι τὴν τε γειναμένην  
*fortune good and smiling-on me the both having-borne(-me)*  
 αὐτὴν καὶ τὸν τεκόντα τοὺς αὐτοκράτορας καὶ τὴν  
*herself and the having-begotten(-me) the autocrats and the*  
 πορφύραν ἀφ' ἧς ἐβλάστησα· τὰ γὰρ ἄλλα φεῦ τῶν  
*purple from which I-sprang the(-things) for other alas of-the*  
 κυμάτων, φεῦ τῶν ἐπαναστάσεων. Ὀρφεὺς μὲν οὖν ᾄδων  
*waves alas of-the uprisings Orpheus indeed then singing*  
 καὶ λίθους ἐκίνει καὶ ξύλα καὶ τὴν ἄψυχον ἀπλῶς φύσιν,  
*even stones moved and wood and the soulless simply nature*  
 Τιμόθεος δὲ ὁ αὐλητὴς τὸν ὄρθιον ποτε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ  
*Timotheos and the piper the orthian(-strain) once for-Alexander*  
 αὐλήσας εἰς τὰ ὅπλα παραχρῆμα καὶ τὸ ξίφος ἐκίνει τὸν  
*having-piped to the arms at-once and the sword moved the*  
 Μακεδόνα· τὰ δέ γε κατ' ἐμὲ διηγήματα οὐ τοπικὴν  
*Macedonian the and at-least concerning me narratives not local*  
 τινα κίνησιν οὐδὲ πρὸς ὅπλα καὶ μάχην, ἀλλ' ἐς δάκρυα  
*some motion nor to arms and battle but to tears*  
 τὸν ἀκροατὴν συγκινήσειε καὶ οὐκ αἰσθητικὴν μόνον, ἀλλὰ  
*the bearer would-move and not sentient only but*

καὶ αἵψυχον φύσιν εἰς πάθος καταναγκάσῃ. τὸ μέντοι  
 also soulless nature to suffering may-compel the however  
 πάθος τὸ περὶ τὸν Καίσαρα καὶ ὁ κατ' αὐτὸν  
 suffering the concerning the Caesar and the concerning him  
 ἀνέλπιστος θάνατος αὐτῆς μου καθίκετο τῆς ψυχῆς καὶ ἐς  
 unexpected death very my reached of-the soul and to  
 βάθος τὸ τραῦμα εἰργάσατο. καὶ ἡγοῦμαι τὰς προειληφυίας  
 depth the wound worked and I-consider the preceding  
 συμφορὰς πρὸς ταύτην τὴν ἀπληστον συμφορὰν ψεκάδα ὡς  
 misfortunes beside this the insatiable misfortune a-drop as  
 ὄντως πρὸς ὅλον Ἀτλαντικὸν πέλαγος ἢ τοῦ Ἀδριαντικοῦ  
 truly beside whole Atlantic sea or of-the Adriatic  
 πελάγους τὰ κύματα· μᾶλλον δέ, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἦσαν ἐκεῖναι  
 sea the waves rather and as it-seems were those  
 τούτων προοίμια καί με προκατελάμβανεν ὁ καπνὸς τοῦ  
 of-these preludes and me was-seizing-beforehand the smoke of-the  
 καμινιαίου τούτου πυρὸς καὶ ὁ καύσων ἐκείνος τῆς ἀρρήτου  
 furnace this fire and the heat that of-the unspeakable  
 ταύτης φλογώσεως καὶ τὰ καθ' ἡμέραν \*\*\* πυρὸς τῆς  
 this burning and the each day (lacuna) of-fire of-the  
 ἀφάτου πυρκαϊᾶς, ὦ πυρὸς ἄνευ ὕλης ἀποτεφροῦντος,  
 unspeakable conflagration O fire without fuel reducing-to-ash  
 πυρὸς ἐν ἀπορρήτοις δαδουχουμένου καὶ καίοντος μέν, μὴ  
 fire in secret(-places) being-kindled and burning indeed not  
 καταφλέγοντος δὲ καὶ τὴν καρδίαν μὲν περιφρύγοντος,  
 consuming and and the heart indeed scorching  
 δόξαν δὲ παρέχοντος, ὅτι οὐ συνεφρύγημεν, καίτοι μέχρι  
 appearance and giving that not we-were-burnt-up although as-far-as  
 ὀστέων καὶ μυελῶν καὶ μερισμοῦ ψυχῆς τὰς πυρακτώσεις  
 bones and marrow and dividing of-soul the burnings  
 δεξάμενοι. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἑμαυτῆς αἰσθάνομαι διὰ ταῦτα  
 having-received but for myself I-perceive because-of these(-things)

παρενηνεγμένης τοῦ προκειμένου, καὶ ὁ Καῖσάρ μοι  
*having-been-carried-aside from-the subject and the Caesar to-me*  
 ἐπιστὰς καὶ τὸ τοῦ Καίσαρος πένθος πένθος  
*having-come-upon(-me) and the of-the Caesar grief grief*  
 μοι ἐπέσταξε διωλύγιον. ἀποψήσασα οὖν τὸ δάκρυον  
*on-me dripped immense having-wiped-away then the tear*  
 τῶν ὀμμάτων καὶ ἑμαυτὴν ἀναλεξαμένη τοῦ πάθους  
*from-the eyes and myself having-collected from-the suffering*  
 τῶν ἐξῆς ἔξομαι διπλᾶ κατὰ τὴν τραγωδίαν  
*of-the following(-things) I-will-hold-to double according-to the tragedy*  
 κερδαίνουσα δάκρυα, οἷον ἐπὶ συμφορᾷ συμφορᾶς  
*gaining tears as-it-were upon misfortune misfortune*  
 μεμνημένη. τὸ γὰρ εἰς μέσον προθεῖναι τοιούτου βασιλέως  
*remembering the for into middle to-set-forth of-such emperor*  
 ὑπόθεσιν καὶ τοσούτου πρὸς ἀρετὴν ἀνάμνησίς ἐστι καὶ τῶν  
*subject and so-great in virtue a-reminder is also of-the*  
 κατ' ἐκεῖνον θαυμάτων, ἅπερ καὶ πρὸς δάκρυα θερμότερα  
*in him wonders which me-too to tears hottest*  
 καταφέρει μετὰ πάσης τῆς οἰκουμένης δακρύνουσιν. τὸ  
*bring-down with all the inhabited-world weeping the*  
 γὰρ ἐκεῖνου μεμνησθαι καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ βασιλείαν εἰς μέσον  
*for him to-remember and the his reign into middle*  
 ἄγειν ἐμοὶ μὲν θρήνων ὑπόθεσις, τοῖς ἄλλοις δὲ ζημίας  
*to-bring for-me indeed of-laments subject for-the others and of-loss*  
 ἀνάμνησις. ἀρκτέον τοίνυν ἐνθένδε τῆς ἱστορίας τοῦμοῦ  
*a-reminder one-must-begin therefore from-here the history of-my*  
 πατρός, ὅθεν καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἄμεινον· ἄμεινον δὲ ὅθεν  
*father whence also to-begin better better and whence*  
 σαφέστερός τε καὶ ἱστορικώτερος ὁ λόγος γενήσεται.  
*clearer both and more-historical the account will-become*

## BOOK I

### V • THE YOUNG ALEXIOS AND OURSELIOS

*At fourteen Alexios longed to campaign with Diogenes against the Persians, but the emperor sent him back to his mother, who was mourning her first-born Manuel. Under Michael Doukas he showed his courage against Ourselios, a Celt in Roman service who had turned tyrant and was plundering the east. Appointed general autocrat, still barely bearded, Alexios captured him and settled the east in a few days, as the Caesar's second book relates more fully.*

Ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος καὶ ἐμὸς πατὴρ καὶ πρὸ τοῦ τῶν  
the emperor Alexios and my father even before the of-the  
σκήπτρων ἐπειλήφθαι τῆς βασιλείας μέγα ὄφελος τῇ  
scepters to-have-taken-hold of-the empire great benefit to-the  
βασιλείᾳ Ῥωμαίων γεγένηται. ἤρξατο μὲν γὰρ στρατεύειν  
empire of-(the)-Romans has-been he-began indeed for to-campaign  
ἐπὶ Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ Διογένης. θαυμαστός τις γὰρ ἐφαίνετο  
under Romanos the Diogenes marvelous one for he-appeared  
ἐν τοῖς κατ' αὐτὸν καὶ φιλοκινδυνότατος. οὗτος  
among the(-men) in his(-time) and most-venturesome he  
γὰρ τεσσαρεσκαίδεκάτου ἔτους ὦν κατ' ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ  
for of-fourteenth year being at that of-time  
συνεκστρατεύειν ἠπείγετο τῷ βασιλεῖ Διογένηι κατὰ  
to-march-out-with was-eager with-the emperor Diogenes against  
Περσῶν βαρυτάτην ἄγοντι στρατιὰν καὶ ἀπὸ γε τοῦδε  
Persians heaviest leading army and from at-least this  
ὀρμήματος ἀπειλὴν κατὰ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐμφαίνων καὶ  
impulse threat against the barbarians displaying and  
ὥς, εἰ συμπλακίσεται τοῖς βαρβάροις, τὸ ξίφος αὐτοῦ  
that if he-will-engage with-the barbarians the sword his  
μεθύσει ἀφ' αἵματος· οὕτως ἦν φιλοπόλεμος ὁ  
he-will-make-drunk from blood so was war-loving the

νεανίσκος. ἀλλὰ τότε οὐκ ἐξεχώρησεν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ  
*young-man but then not allowed the autocrat*  
 Διογένης αὐτῷ ξυνέπεσθαι, ἅτε πάθους καταλαβόντος τὴν  
*Diogenes him to-follow-along since grief having-seized the*  
 μητέρα βαρυτάτου. ἐθρήνει γὰρ τὸ τηνικαῦτα  
*mother heaviest she-was-mourning for the(-time) then*  
 θάνατον τοῦ πρωτοτόκου υἱοῦ Μανουήλ, ἀνδρὸς μεγάλη  
*death of-the first-born son Manuel a-man great*  
 καὶ ἀξιάγαστα ἔργα ἐνδεδειγμένου τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων  
*and admirable deeds having-displayed to-the of-the Romans*  
 ἀρχῇ· καὶ ἵνα μὴ ἀπαραμύθητος εἴη ἐκείνη, τὸν μὲν  
*rule and that not unconsoled might-be she the(-one) indeed*  
 τῶν υἱέων μηκέτι γινώσκουσα οὐδ' κατορύξειε, τὸν  
*of-the sons no-longer knowing where she-should-bury the(-other)*  
 δὲ ἀποστέλλουσα ἐν πολέμοις καὶ δεδοικυῖα, μή τι  
*and sending into wars and fearing lest something*  
 ἀπαίσιον συναντήσοι τῷ νεανίσκῳ καὶ οὐδ' οἱ γῆς  
*ill-omened should-befall the young-man and not-even where of-earth*  
 πεσεῖται ἐπιγνώσεται, διὰ ταῦτα ὑποστρέψαι πρὸς  
*he-will-fall she-will-know because-of these(-things) to-return to*  
 τὴν μητέρα τὸ μειράκιον Ἀλέξιον κατηνάγκασε. καὶ  
*the mother the youth Alexios he-compelled and*  
 τότε μὲν ἀπελείφθη καὶ ἄκων τῶν συστρατευομένων,  
*then indeed he-was-left-behind even unwilling from-the fellow-campaigners*  
 ἀλλ' ὃ γε ἐφεξῆς καιρὸς πέλαγος ὑπανέωξεν αὐτῷ  
*but the at-least following time sea opened-up to-him*  
 ἀνδραγαθημάτων. ἐπὶ γάρ τοι τοῦ βασιλέως Μιχαὴλ  
*of-brave-deeds under for surely the emperor Michael*  
 τοῦ Δούκα μετὰ τὴν τοῦ Διογένης βασιλείως καθάρειν,  
*the Doukas after the — of-Diogenes emperor deposition*  
 ὅσος ἦν εἰς ἀνδρείαν, παρέδειξε τὰ κατὰ τὸν  
*how-great he-was in courage showed the(-things) concerning —*

Οὐρσέλιον πράγματα. ἦν μὲν γὰρ οὗτος Κελτὸς ἀνέκαθεν  
*Ourselios affairs was indeed for he Celt from-of-old*  
 τῇ στρατιᾷ Ῥωμαίων κατειλεγμένος, εἰς δὲ μέγα τύχης  
*in-the army of-(the)-Romans enrolled to and great of-fortune*  
 ἐξογκωθεὶς καὶ δύναμιν συναθροίσας ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καὶ  
*having-swelled and force having-gathered about him and*  
 στρατιὰν ἀξιόλογον τῶν μὲν ἐκείθεν ὄντων ὅθεν καὶ  
*army considerable some indeed from-there being whence also*  
 αὐτὸς ὥρμητο, τῶν δὲ καὶ ἐξ ἄλλου γένους παντοδαποῦ  
*he-himself had-come others and also from other race of-every-kind*  
 βαρὺς ἦν αὐτόθεν τύραννος· πολλὰς δὲ ταλαντεύσεις  
*grievous was straightway tyrant many and swayings*  
 λαβούσης τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἡγεμονίας καὶ τῶν Τούρκων  
*having-taken the of-the Romans dominion and the Turks*  
 καθυπερτερησάντων τῆς τύχης Ῥωμαίων, τῶν δὲ εἰς  
*having-prevailed-over the fortune of-(the)-Romans they and to*  
 τὸ κατόπιν ὑπαχθέντων ὥσπερ ψάμμου ὑπὸ ποδῶν  
*the rear having-been-driven as-if sand from-under feet*  
 ὑποσπασθείσης, τηνικαῦτα καὶ οὗτος τῇ βασιλείᾳ Ῥωμαίων  
*having-been-drawn-away then also he the empire of-(the)-Romans*  
 ἐπέθετο. καὶ ἄλλως μὲν ὢν τυραννικώτατος τὴν ψυχὴν,  
*attacked and otherwise indeed being most-tyrannical in-the soul*  
 τότε δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον ἐξαφθεὶς πρὸς καθαρὰν τυραννίδα  
*then and even more having-been-kindled to outright tyranny*  
 διὰ τὸ κατηφὲς τῶν τῆς βασιλείας πραγμάτων τὰ  
*because-of the dejection of-the of-the empire affairs the(-lands)*  
 τῆς ἐώας πάντα σχεδὸν ἐλήσατο. πολλῶν δὲ πιστευθέντων  
*of-the east all almost plundered many and having-been-entrusted*  
 τὸν μετ' αὐτοῦ πόλεμον ἐπ' ἀνδρείᾳ διαβεβοημένων καὶ  
*the with him war for courage renowned and*  
 πείραν εἰσενεγκαμένων πλείστην πολέμου καὶ μάχης, οὗτος  
*experience having-brought very-much of-war and of-battle he*

ὑπερπαίων ἐφαίνετο καὶ τὴν ἐκείνων πολυπειρίαν πῇ  
*surpassing appeared even the their great-experience at-one-time*  
 μὲν αὐτὸς προσβάλλων καὶ τρέπων καὶ καθάπερ πρηστήρ  
*indeed himself attacking and routing and like firestorm*  
 ἐμπίπτων τοῖς ἀντικαθισταμένοις αὐτῷ, πῇ δὲ καὶ  
*falling-upon those opposing him at-another and also*  
 συμμαχίαν λαμβάνων ἀπὸ τῶν Τούρκων ἀνυπόστατος  
*alliance taking from the Turks irresistible*  
 ἦν ταῖς ὁρμαῖς, ὥστε καὶ τῶν πάνυ μεγιστάνων τινὰς  
*he-was in-the onsets so-that even of-the very magnates some*  
 κατασχεῖν καὶ τὰς ἐκείνων κλονῆσαι φάλαγγας. τότε δὲ  
*to-capture and the their to-shake phalanxes then indeed*  
 καὶ ὑπὸ τὰδελφῷ ἐτάττετο ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ Ἀλέξιος καὶ  
*also under the-brother was-ranked the my father Alexios and*  
 ἄντικρυς ὑπεστρατήγει τούτῳ, τὰ στρατεύματα πάντα  
*outright served-as-lieutenant to-him the armies all*  
 ἐώας καὶ ἐσπερίου λήξεως ἐγκεχειρισμένῳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐν  
*of-east and of-western allotment having-been-entrusted-with since and in*  
 ἀμυχάνοις ἦν τὰ πράγματα τηνικαῦτα Ῥωμαίοις, τοῦ  
*desperate-(straits) were the affairs then for-(the)-Romans the*  
 βαρβάρου τούτου δίκην κεραυνοῦ τὰ πάντα ἐπερχομένου, εἰς  
*barbarian this like of-thunderbolt the all overrunning for*  
 ἀξιόμαχον ἀντικατάστασιν ἐπινοεῖται ὁ ἀξιόγαστος οὗτος  
*worthy-in-battle opposition is-thought-of the admirable this*  
 Ἀλέξιος στρατηγὸς αὐτοκράτωρ ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως Μιχαὴλ  
*Alexios general autocrat by the emperor Michael*  
 ἀναδεδειγμένος. ὃς δὲ καὶ πᾶσαν ἀνακινήσας φρόνησίν  
*having-been-appointed who indeed also all having-stirred-up wisdom*  
 τε καὶ πολυπειρίαν στρατηγικὴν τε καὶ στρατιωτικὴν καὶ  
*both and great-experience of-a-general both and of-a-soldier and*  
 ταῦτα οὐκ ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ ταύτην συλλεξάμενος (ἀλλὰ γὰρ  
*this not in much time it having-gathered but for*



διὰ τὸ πάνυ φιλόπονον τοῦ ἀνδρὸς καὶ τὸ πανταχόθεν  
*because-of the very industriousness of-the man and the on-every-side*  
 ἐγρηγορὸς εἰς ἄκρον ἐλγλυθέναι στρατηγικῆς ἐμπειρίας τοῖς  
*wakefulness to summit to-have-come of-generalship experience to-the*  
 τῶν Ῥωμαίων λογάσιν ἔδοξεν, οἷος Αἰμίλιος ἐκεῖνος ὁ  
*of-the Romans picked-men he-seemed such-as Aemilius that the*  
 Ῥωμαῖος, ὁποῖος ὁ Σκηπίων, οἷος Ἀννίβας ὁ Καρχηδόνιος·  
*Roman such-as — Scipio such-as Hannibal the Carthaginian*  
 νεώτατος γὰρ ἦν καὶ ἄρτι πρῶτως ὑπηνήτης, ὃ φασι  
*youngest for he-was and just first bearded which they-say*  
 τὸν τε Οὐρσέλιον ἐκείνον εἶλε τὸν πολὺν κατὰ τῶν  
*— both Ourselios that-one took the(-man) much against the*  
 Ῥωμαίων ρέοντα καὶ τὰ πράγματα τῆς ἑῶ κατέστησεν οὐ  
*Romans flowing and the affairs of-the east settled not*  
 πολλῶν δεηθεὶς ἡμερῶν. ἦν γὰρ καὶ ὀξὺς φωρᾶσαι τὸ  
*many having-needed days he-was for both quick to-detect the*  
 ξυμφέρον καὶ ὀξύτερος καταπράξασθαι· τίνα δὲ τὸν τρόπον  
*advantageous and quicker to-accomplish what and the way*  
 εἶλεν ἐκεῖνον, δηλοῖ μὲν καὶ ὁ Καῖσαρ ἐν τῇ δευτέρᾳ τῆς  
*he-took him shows indeed also the Caesar in the second of-the*  
 κατ' αὐτὸν ἱστορίας βίβλῳ πλατύτερον, δηλώσομεν δὲ καὶ  
*concerning him history book more-broadly we-will-show and also*  
 ἡμεῖς, ἐφ' ὅσον εἰς τὴν καθ' ἡμᾶς ἱστορίαν συνήνεγκεν.  
*we for as-much-as into the of us history it-contributed*

*With the barbarian Tutach invading, Ourselios turns to him for alliance, but Alexios wins Tutach over, sends him hostages and promises money, and Tutach's men seize Ourselios and hand him over. The money from the emperor does not come, and Tutach's men press for payment. At Amaseia Alexios asks the citizens to contribute the price; an uproar breaks out, some wanting to free Ourselios, until Alexios silences the crowd and warns them against the men who would buy their own safety with the people's blood.*

Ἄρτι γὰρ τοῦ βαρβάρου Τουτὰχ ἐκ τῶν βαθυτέρων  
just for the barbarian Tutach from the deeper  
τῆς ἀνατολῆς μερῶν κατεληλυθότος μετὰ βαρυτάτου  
of-the east parts having-come-down with heaviest  
στρατεύματος, ἐφ' ᾧ τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων λήξεσθαι,  
army for which the(-lands) of-the Romans to-plunder  
ὁ Οὐρσέλιος πολλάκις ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατοπεδάρχου  
— Ourselios often by the camp-commander  
στενοχωρούμενος καὶ ἄλλα ἐπ' ἄλλοις φρούρια ἀφαιρούμενος,  
being-hard-pressed and other upon others forts being-deprived-of  
καίτοι στρατιὰν πολλὴν ἐπαγόμενος καὶ πάντας λαμπρῶς  
although army large bringing and all splendidly  
καὶ γενναίως καθωπλισμένους, εὐμηχανία παρὰ πολὺ  
and nobly armed by-ingenuity by much  
ἡττᾶτο τοῦμοῦ πατρὸς Ἀλεξίου· τέως δ' οὖν ἐπ' ἐκείνους  
was-defeated by-my father Alexios meanwhile and then to that-one  
καταφυγεῖν ἔδοξε. τελευταῖον τοῖς πᾶσιν ἐξαπορούμενος  
to-take-refuge he-resolved finally in-the all being-at-a-loss  
ξυμμίγνυσι τῷ Τουτὰχ καὶ φίλον ποιεῖται καὶ εἰς  
joins — with-Tutach and friend makes(-him) and into  
συμμαχίαν αὐτὸν καταλιπαρεῖ. ἀλλ' ὁ στρατοπεδάρχης  
alliance him entreats but the camp-commander

Ἀλέξιος ἀντιστρατηγείται πρὸς ταῦτα καὶ ὀξύτερον  
*Alexios counter-plans against these(-things) and more-swiftly*  
οἰκειοῦται τὸν βάρβαρον καὶ ἐπισπᾶται πρὸς ἑαυτὸν καὶ  
*wins-over the barbarian and draws to himself both*  
λόγοις καὶ δώροις καὶ πᾶσι τρόποις καὶ μηχανήμασιν.  
*by-words and by-gifts and by-all means and devices*  
ἦν γὰρ εἴπερ τις ἄλλος ἐφευρετὴς καὶ πόρους ἐν τοῖς  
*he-was for if-ever any other inventive and ways in the*  
ἀπορωτάτοις ξυμμηχανώμενος. ὁ γοῦν δυνατώτατος  
*most-desperate(-straits) contriving the at-any-rate most-effective*  
αὐτῷ τῶν τρόπων τοιοῦτός τις ἦν, ὡς ἐν τύπῳ εἰπεῖν,  
*his of-the means such one was as in outline to-say*  
δεξιῶσασθαι τὸν Τουτάχ· καί φησι “φίλοι μὲν ἅμφω  
*to-greet — Tutach and he-says friends indeed both*  
ἀλλήλοις ὃ τε σὸς σουλτάνος καὶ ἐμὸς βασιλεύς. ὁ δὲ  
*to-each-other the both your sultan and my emperor the but*  
βάρβαρος οὗτος Οὐρσέλιος καὶ πρὸς ἅμφω ἀνταίρει τὰς  
*barbarian this Ourselios both against both raises the*  
χεῖρας καὶ ἐχθρὸς καὶ ἀμφοτέροις καθίσταται φοβερώτατος  
*hands and enemy also to-both is-set-up most-fearsome*  
ἐκείνου μὲν κατατρέχων καὶ αἰεὶ τι τῆς μερίδος  
*that-one indeed overrunning and always some of-the portion*  
Ῥωμαίων κατὰ μικρὸν ὑποσπώμενος, ἀποστερίσκων δὲ  
*of-(the)-Romans by little drawing-away depriving and*  
τῆς Περσίδος ἅπερ ἂν καὶ ἐξῆν καὶ ἐκείνη περιγενέσθαι.  
*— Persia of-what — even it-was-possible for-her-too to-gain*  
τέχνη δὲ τὸ ἅπαν μετέρχεται νῦν μὲν ἐμὲ παρασκιάζων  
*by-craft and the whole he-pursues now indeed me overshadowing*  
διὰ τῆς σῆς δυνάμεως, αὐθις δὲ τοῦ καιροῦ τούτῳ  
*through the your power again and the occasion with-him*  
συμπνεύσαντος ἀφέμενος ἐμοῦ ὡς ἤδη ἐν ἀκινδύνῳ  
*having-breathed-together having-let-go me as already in safety*

καθεστηκώς πάλιν ἐξ ὑποστροφῆς κατὰ σοῦ ἀρεῖται  
*having-come-to-stand again from turning-back against you will-raise*  
 τὰς χεῖρας. ἀλλ' εἴ τι ἐμοὶ πείθῃ, ἐπειδὰν καὶ αὖθις  
*the hands but if at-all me you-obey when also again*  
 ἐλεύσεται πρὸς ὑμᾶς, χρὴ μετὰ πολλῶν κρατῆσαι  
*be-will-come to you it-is-needful with many to-seize*  
 τὸν Οὐρσέλιον καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἐξαποστεῖλαι δεσμώτην.  
 — *Ourselios and to us to-send-off prisoner*  
 τρία γὰρ ἐντεῦθεν" φησι "κερδανεῖς, ἐν μὲν χρημάτων  
*three(-things) for from-this he-says you-will-gain one indeed of-money*  
 πλῆθος ὅσον καὶ οἶον οὐδεὶς πω πρότερον, ἕτερον  
*abundance how-much and such-as no-one yet before second*  
 δὲ τὴν εὐνοίαν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος συνεπισπάσῃ, ἀφ'  
*and the goodwill of-the autocrat you-will-draw-to-yourself from*  
 οὐπερ εἰς ἄκρον εὐδαιμονίας φθάσεις ἐληλυθώς, τρίτον  
*which to summit of-prosperity you-will-soon having-come third*  
 δὲ ὅτι καὶ ὁ σουλτάνος τὰ μεγάλα ἡσθήσεται ἐχθροῦ  
*and that also the sultan in-the great(-measure) will-be-pleased enemy*  
 τηλικούτου ἐκποδῶν γεγονότος καὶ τὰς χεῖρας ἀσκούντος  
*so-great out-of-the-way having-become and the hands exercising*  
 καθ' ἑκατέρων κατὰ τε Ῥωμαίων καὶ Τούρκων". ταῦτα  
*against each against both (the)-Romans and Turks these(-things)*  
 διαπρεσβευσάμενος πρὸς τὸν ἄνωθεν εἰρημένον Τουτᾶχ ὁ  
*having-sent-by-envoys to the above mentioned Tutach the*  
 ἐμὸς πατὴρ καὶ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς στρατιᾶς ἀρχηγὸς κατ'  
*my father and of-the Roman army leader at*  
 ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ καὶ ἅμα καὶ ὁμήρους πέμψας τῶν  
*that of-time and at-the-same-time also hostages having-sent of-the*  
 ἐνδοξοτάτων τινὰς ἐπὶ συγκεκλιμένῳ χρόνῳ καὶ χρημάτων  
*most-distinguished some for agreed time and of-money*  
 ποσότητι πείθει τοὺς ἀμφὶ τὸν Τουτᾶχ βαρβάρους  
*amount persuades the about — Tutach barbarians*

κατασχέιν τὸν Οὐρσέλιον. καὶ τούτου ταχὺ γεγονότος  
*to-seize — Ourselios and this quickly having-happened*  
ἀποστέλλεται εἰς Ἀμάσειαν τῷ στρατοπεδάρχῃ. ἀλλ’  
*he-is-sent to Amaseia to-the camp-commander but*  
ἐντεῦθεν ἐχρονотρίβει τὰ χρήματα· αὐτὸς μὲν γὰρ οὐκ  
*thereupon delayed the money he indeed for not*  
εἶχεν ὁπόθεν ἀποπληρώσειε, τὰ δ’ ἐκ βασιλέως  
*had whence he-might-pay the(-moneys) and from (the)-emperor*  
ἡμέλητο· καὶ οὐχ ὅτι βραδεὶ ποδὶ κατὰ τὴν τραγωδίαν  
*had-been-neglected and not that with-slow foot according-to the tragedy*  
ἔστιχεν, ἀλλ’ οὐδαμοῦ κατεφαίνετο. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἀμφὶ  
*it-came but nowhere it-appeared the(-men) indeed then about*  
τὸν Τουτὰχ ἐνέκειντο τὸν τῶν χρημάτων ἀπαιτοῦντες  
*— Tutach pressed the of-the money demanding*  
ὄγκον ἢ τὸν ἑωνημένον ἐξόπισθεν λαμβάνειν καὶ  
*bulk or the(-man) bought back to-take and*  
παλινδρομεῖν ἔαν τοῦτον ὅθεν κατείληπτο· ὁ δὲ οὐκ εἶχεν  
*to-run-back to-let him whence he-had-been-seized he but not had*  
ὅθεν ἀποδοῖν τὴν τοῦ ἑωνημένου τιμὴν, τοῖς ὅλοις οὖν  
*whence he-might-pay the of-the bought(-man) price in-the whole then*  
δι’ ὅλης νυκτὸς ἐξαπορούμενος ἐρανίσασθαι παρὰ τῶν  
*through whole night being-at-a-loss to-collect from the*  
οἰκητόρων Ἀμασειᾶς ἐλογίσατο τὴν τιμὴν. καὶ ἀνυγάζουσιν  
*inhabitants of-Amaseia he-reckoned the price and dawning*  
ἡμέρας, κὰν ἀργαλέον ἐδόκει, ἀλλ’ ὅμως συνεκαλεῖτο  
*day even-if troublesome it-seemed but nevertheless he-called-together*  
ἅπαντας καὶ μᾶλλον τοὺς τὰ πρῶτα φέροντας καὶ  
*all and rather the(-men) the first(-place) bearing and*  
χρημάτων εὐποροῦντας, πρὸς οὓς μᾶλλον θεασάμενος  
*in-money abounding to whom rather having-looked*  
ἔφη “ἵστε πάντες, ὅπως ὁ βάρβαρος οὗτοσὶ τὰς τοῦ  
*he-said know all how the barbarian this-here the of-the*

Ἀρμενιακοῦ διέθετο πόλεις ἀπάσας ὅσας τε κωμοπόλεις  
*Armeniakon treated cities all as-many and towns*  
 ἐπόρθησε καὶ ὁπόσους κακῶς διέθετο συμφοραῖς ἀφορήτοις  
*be-sacked and how-many ill be-treated to-misfortunes unbearable*  
 ὑποβαλὼν ὅποσα τε χρήματα ἀφ' ὑμῶν ἐκομίσατο. ἀλλὰ  
*having-subjected how-much and money from you be-carried-off but*  
 καιρὸς ἤδη πάρεστι τῶν ἐξ αὐτοῦ ὑμᾶς ἀπαλλάττειν  
*occasion now is-present from-the from him you to-free*  
 κακώσεων, εἰ βούλεσθε. δεῖ τοιγαροῦν μὴ προσέσθαι  
*afflictions if you-wish it-is-necessary accordingly not to-let-go*  
 τοῦτον. ὁρᾶτε γὰρ ὡς δεσμώτης ἡμῖν ὁ βάρβαρος  
*him you-see for how prisoner to-us the barbarian*  
 νεύσει πάντως θεοῦ καὶ ἡμετέρα σπουδῇ. ὁ δὲ τοῦτον  
*by-the-nod surely of-God and by-our zeal the but him*  
 ζωγρήσας Τουτὰχ ἐξ ἡμῶν αἰτεῖ τὴν τιμὴν. ἡμεῖς  
*having-taken-alive Tutach from us asks the price we*  
 δ' ἀποροῦμεν παντάπασιν ἐπ' ἀλλοδαπῆς τε ὄντες καὶ  
*but are-at-a-loss altogether on foreign(-soil) both being and*  
 συχνὸν ἤδη χρόνον μετὰ τῶν βαρβάρων μαχόμενοι  
*long already time with the barbarians fighting*  
 καὶ τὰ προσόντα δεδαπανηκότες. εἰ μὴ γοῦν  
*and the(-things) at-hand having-spent if not at-any-rate*  
 πόρρω ὁ βασιλεὺς ἦν καὶ καιρὸν ἀναμονῆς ἐδίδου ὁ  
*far the emperor was and time of-waiting gave the*  
 βάρβαρος, ἔσπευσα ἂν ἐκεῖθεν κομισθῆναι τὰ  
*barbarian I-would-have-bastened — from-there to-be-brought the(-sums)*  
 τῆς τιμῆς. ἐπεὶ δ', ὡς ἵστε καὶ αὐτοί, οὐδὲν τούτων  
*of-the price since but as you-know also yourselves nothing of-these*  
 ἔξεστι πράττειν, δέον ὑμᾶς συνεισενεγκεῖν τὴν τιμὴν,  
*it-is-possible to-do it-being-needful you to-contribute the price*  
 καὶ λήψεσθε πάντα δι' ἡμῶν ἐκ βασιλέως ὅποσα  
*and you-will-receive all through us from (the)-emperor as-much-as*

παράσχοιτε”. εἶπε ταῦτα καὶ ἐξεκρούσθη παραυτίκα  
*you-may-furnish he-said these(-things) and was-rebuffed immediately*  
 καὶ θόρυβον ἀνῆψε σφοδρότατον τῶν Ἀμασειανῶν εἰς  
*and uproar kindled most-violent the Amaseians to*  
 ἀποστασίαν κεκινημένων. ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ τούτους εἰς  
*revolt having-been-stirred there-were for (men)-who them to*  
 θόρυβον ἡρέθιζον ἄνδρες κακουργότατοί τινες καὶ ῥέκται  
*uproar provoked men most-villainous some and doers*  
 πραγμάτων εἰδότες ὁτρύνειν δῆμον εἰς παραχῇν. θόρυβος  
*of-deeds knowing-how to-rouse people to disorder uproar*  
 τοίνυν ἦρτο πολὺς τῶν μὲν βουλομένων σῶζεσθαι τὸν  
*therefore had-arisen great some indeed wishing to-be-saved —*  
 Οὐρσέλιον καὶ τὸ πλῆθος ἀντιλαβέσθαι τούτου ἐρεθιζόντων,  
*Ourselios and the crowd to-take-hold of-him provoking*  
 τῶν δὲ ἐκταραττομένων (τοιούτον γὰρ τὸ συρφετώδες  
*others and being-thrown-into-confusion such for the rabble-like*  
 πλῆθος) καὶ τὸν Οὐρσέλιον ἀρπάσαι θελόντων καὶ τῶν  
*crowd and — Ourselios to-snatch wishing and from-the*  
 δεσμῶν ἀπολύειν. δῆμον οὖν ὁ στρατοπεδάρχης τοσοῦτον  
*bonds to-release people then the camp-commander so-great*  
 ὁρῶν μαινόμενον ὡς ἐν στενῷ κομιδῇ τὰ κατ’ αὐτὸν  
*seeing raging as in strait altogether the(-things) concerning him*  
 ἐγνώκει, καταπεπτῶκει μὲν οὐδαμῶς, ἀλλ’ ἐπιρρώσας  
*he-had-recognized had-collapsed indeed in-no-way but having-strengthened*  
 ἑαυτὸν κατεσίγαξε τῇ χειρὶ τὸν θόρυβον. ὁψέ δὲ καὶ  
*himself silenced with-the hand the uproar late and and*  
 μόλις τούτους καταπαύσας καὶ πρὸς τὸ πλῆθος τὸν λόγον  
*scarcely them having-stopped and to the crowd the speech*  
 ἀνενεγκὼν ἔφη “θαυμάζειν ἔπεισί μοι, ἄνδρες Ἀμασειανοί,  
*having-turned he-said to-wonder comes-over me men Amaseians*  
 ὅπως τὴν συσκευὴν τουτωνὶ τῶν ἐξαπατώντων ὑμᾶς  
*how the plot of-these-here the(-men) deceiving you*

παντάπασι ἡγνοήσατε τὴν σφῶν αὐτῶν σωτηρίαν τῷ  
*altogether you-failed-to-see the their own safety with-the*  
 ὑμετέρῳ αἵματι ἐξωνουμένων καὶ μεγίστην ὑμῖν τὴν βλάβην  
*your blood buying and greatest for-you the harm*  
 προξενούντων αἰεί. ποία γὰρ ὑμῖν τῆς τοῦ Οὐρσελίου  
*procuring always what for to-you of-the — of-Ourselios*  
 τυραννίδος ἢ ὠφέλεια, εἰ μὴ σφαγαὶ καὶ πηρώσεις καὶ  
*tyranny the benefit if not slaughters and maimings and*  
 ἀκρωτηριασμοὶ μελῶν; οὗτοι δὲ οἱ τῶν τοιούτων ὑμῖν  
*mutilations of-limbs these and the of-the such(-things) for-you*  
 πρόξενοι ἔνθεν μὲν τὰ οἰκεῖα ἀσινῇ διετήρουν  
*procurers on-the-one-side indeed the own(-things) unharmed kept*  
 τὸν βάρβαρον θεραπεύοντες, ἐκεῖθεν δὲ αὖθις τῶν ἐκ  
*the barbarian courting on-the-other and again of-the from*  
 βασιλέως ἐνεφοροῦντο δωρημάτων χαριζόμενοι τούτῳ, ὅτι  
*(the)-emperor took-their-fill gifts gratifying him that*  
 μὴ ὑμῶν τε καὶ τῆς πόλεως Ἀμασείας παρεχώρησαν  
*not you both and the city Amaseia they-ceded*  
 τῷ βαρβάρῳ, καὶ ταῦτα μηδένα λόγον ὑμῶν ποιησάμενοι  
*to-the barbarian and this no account of-you having-made*  
 πώποτε. διὰ τοῦτο καὶ τὴν τυραννίδα συνίστασθαι  
*ever because-of this also the tyranny to-be-upheld*  
 βούλονται, ἵνα τῷ μὲν τυράννῳ χρηστὰς ὑποσαίνοντες  
*they-wish that to-the indeed tyrant good fawning*  
 ἐλπίδας ἀσινῇ τὰ οἰκεῖα διατηρῶσιν, ἐκ βασιλέως δὲ  
*hopes unharmed the own(-things) they-may-keep from (the)-emperor and*  
 αὖθις ἀπαιτῶσι τιμὰς τε καὶ δωρεάς· ἣν δέ τι καὶ  
*again they-may-demand honors both and gifts if and anything also*  
 νεωτερισθεῖν, αὐτοὶ μὲν πάλιν ἑαυτοὺς τοῦ δράματος  
*should-be-overtaken they-themselves indeed again themselves from-the drama*  
 ἐξάγωσι, τὸν δὲ βασιλέως θυμὸν καθ' ὑμῶν ἐξάψωσιν.  
*may-withdraw the and of(-the)-emperor anger against you may-kindle*



εἴ τι οὖν ἐμοὶ πείθεσθε, τούτους μὲν ὑμᾶς πρὸς θόρυβον  
 if at-all then me you-obey these indeed you to uproar  
 ἐρεθίζοντας τὸ παρὸν ἐρρῶσθαι ἐάσατε, ἕκαστος δὲ  
 provoking for-the present to-fare-well let each and  
 ὑμῶν οἴκαδε ἀπελθὼν τὰ λεχθέντα σκοπεῖτω, καὶ  
 of-you homeward having-gone the(-things) said let-bim-consider and  
 εἴσεσθε ὁποῖος ὑμῖν τὸ συμφέρον βουλευέται”.  
 you-will-know which-man for-you the advantageous counsels

VII · THE FEIGNED BLINDING

*Fearing the mob would free Ourselios at night, Alexios stages his blinding: the executioner brings the iron, Ourselios howls, and the people, believing it, contribute the price. Alexios keeps him with bandages on his eyes, takes further towns and forts, and returns to the capital. There Dokeianos, nephew of the former emperor Isaac Komnenos and Alexios' cousin, reproaches Alexios for blinding so brave a man, until Alexios shows him Ourselios' eyes still flashing; overjoyed, Dokeianos embraces him, and Michael and his court marvel as well.*

Τούτων ἀκούσαντες τῶν ῥημάτων ὥσπερ ὀστράκου  
 these having-heard the words as-if potsherd  
 μεταπεσόντος τὴν γνώμην μεταβαλόντες οἴκαδε ἀνεχώρουν.  
 having-turned-over the mind having-changed homeward withdrew  
 ὁ δὲ στρατοπεδάρχης γινώσκων τὸν ὄχλον ἐν ῥοπῇ  
 the but camp-commander knowing the mob in moment  
 τὰς γνώμας μεταβάλλειν εἰωθότα, καὶ μᾶλλον εἰ ὑπὸ  
 the minds to-change accustomed and more if by  
 χαιρεκάκων ὀτρύνοιτο, δείσας μὴ διὰ τῆς νυκτὸς  
 malicious(-men) it-should-be-roused having-feared lest through the night  
 κατ' αὐτοῦ μελετήσαντες ἐπέλθωσι καὶ τὸν Οὐρσέλιον  
 against him having-plotted they-should-come and — Ourselios

ἔξαγαγόντες μὲν τῆς φρουρᾶς, λύσαντες δὲ τῶν  
*having-led-out indeed from-the prison having-released and from-the*  
 δεσμῶν ἀφῶσιν, ἐπεὶ μὴ ἀποχρώσας εἶχε δυνάμεις  
*bonds they-should-let-go since not sufficient he-had forces*  
 πρὸς τοσούτους ἀντικαταστήναι, μηχανᾶται τὸ ἐντεῦθεν  
*against so-many to-stand-up-against he-contrives the thereupon*  
 Παλαμήδειόν τι μηχανήμα. ἐς μὲν τὸ φανερόν ἀποτυφλοῖ  
*Palamedean a device to indeed the open(-view) he-blinds*  
 τὸν Οὐρσέλιον· καὶ ἤπλωτο μὲν ἐν τῇ γῇ, ὃ  
*— Ourselios and he-had-been-stretched-out indeed on the ground the*  
 δὲ δήμιος ἐπήγε τὸν σίδηρον, ὃ δὲ ἐπωρύετό τε καὶ  
*and executioner brought the iron he and howled both and*  
 ἔστανε καθάπερ λέων βρυχώμενος· σχῆμα δὲ πάντα ἦσαν  
*groaned like lion roaring show and all were*  
 τῆς τῶν ὀμμάτων ἀποστερήσεως, παρήγγελτο δὲ καὶ  
*of-the of-the eyes deprivation it-had-been-ordered and also*  
 ὃ τῷ δόξαι τυφλούμενος βοᾶν τε καὶ κεκραγέσαι  
*the(-man) in-the to-seem being-blinded to-shout both and to-have-cried-out*  
 καὶ ὃ μέχρι τοῦ δοκεῖν τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς ἐξορύττων  
*and the(-man) as-far-as the to-seem the eyes gouging-out*  
 δριμύ τε ἐνορᾶν πρὸς τὸν ἐκκείμενον καὶ μανιώδη τὰ  
*fiercely both to-glare at the(-man) lying-exposed and madly the*  
 πάντα δρᾶν, μᾶλλον δὲ σχηματίζεσθαι τὴν ἀποτύφλωσιν.  
*all to-do rather and to-feign the blinding*  
 καὶ ὃ μὲν ἀπετυφλοῦτο μὴ ἀποτυφλούμενος, ὃ δὲ  
*and he indeed was-blinded not being-blinded the and*  
 δῆμος ἐκρότει καὶ πανταχόθι τὴν τοῦ Οὐρσελίου τύφλωσιν  
*people applauded and everywhere the — of-Ourselios blinding*  
 διεβόμβει. ταῦτα ὥσπερ ἐν σκηνῇ δραματουργηθέντα  
*noised-abroad these(-things) as-if on stage having-been-dramatized*  
 πέπεικε τὸν ὄχλον ὅλον, ὅσος ἐγχώριος καὶ ὅσος  
*persuaded the mob whole as-much-as local and as-much-as*

ἔξωθεν, εἰς ἔρανον κατὰ τὰς μελίσσας συλλέγεσθαι. τοῦτο  
*from-outside to contribution like the bees to-be-gathered this*  
 γὰρ ἅπαν τὸ σκέμμα τῆς Ἀλεξίου φρονήσεως, ἵνα οἱ  
*for all the design of-the of-Alexios prudence that those*  
 πρὸς τὸ δοῦναι χρήματα δυσχερῶς ἔχοντες καὶ ἀφελέσθαι  
*toward the to-give money reluctantly being and to-take-away*  
 τὸν Οὐρσέλιον ἐπιβουλεύοντες ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν Ἀλεξίου  
*— Ourselios plotting from the hands of-Alexios*  
 τοῦμοῦ πατρός ἀποκαρδοκήσωσί τε ὡς ἐντεῦθεν αὐτοῖς  
*my father might-give-up both as thenceforth for-them*  
 τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς ἀνωφελοῦς καθεστηκυίας καὶ ταχὺ πρὸς τὸ  
*the plot useless having-become and quickly to the*  
 βούλημα τοῦ στρατοπεδάρχου τράπωνται τῆς πρῶν  
*will of-the camp-commander might-turn from-the earlier*  
 ἀστοχοῦντες βουλῆς αὐτόν τε φίλον ποιούμενοι καὶ ὀργὴν  
*missing counsel him both friend making and anger*  
 βασιλέως ἐκκλίνοντες. τοῦτον τοῖνυν οὕτω κατασχὼν τὸν  
*of-(the)-emperor avoiding this therefore thus having-held —*  
 Οὐρσέλιον ὁ ἀξιάγαστος στρατηγὸς εἶχεν ὡς ἐν ζωγρίῳ  
*Ourselios the admirable general kept as in cage*  
 τὸν λέοντα ἔτι ἐπικαλύμματα τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς φέροντα τὰ  
*the lion still coverings on-the eyes wearing the*  
 σύμβολα τῆς δῆθεν ἀποτυφλώσεως. οὐ μὲν ἡρκεῖτο  
*tokens of-the supposed blinding not however he-was-content*  
 οἷς εἶργασται οὐδὲ ὡς κῦδος ἀράμενος πρὸς τὰλλα τῶν  
*with-what he-had-done nor as glory having-won to the-rest of-the*  
 πραγμάτων ἀναπεπτώκει, ἀλλὰ πόλεις τε ἄλλας πολλὰς  
*affairs had-fallen-back but cities both other many*  
 καὶ φρούρια κατεκτήσατο καὶ ὑπὸ τὴν τῆς βασιλείας  
*and forts he-acquired and under the of-the empire*  
 ἐξουσίαν πεποίηκεν, ὅσα ἐπὶ τῶν Οὐρσελίου καιρῶν  
*power made as-many-as in the of-Ourselios times*

πονηρῶς προπέπραχεν. ἐντεῦθεν οὖν τὰς ἡνίας στρέψας  
*wickedly he-had-done-before thence then the reins having-turned*  
 εὐθὺ τῆς βασιλίδος πόλεως ἤλαυνε. γενόμενος δὲ ἐν  
*straight for-the queen city he-drove having-come and into*  
 τῇ παππῳά πόλει καὶ μικρὸν ἀναπαύων τῶν πολλῶν  
*the ancestral city and a-little resting from-the many*  
 καμάτων ἑαυτὸν τε καὶ τὴν σύμπασαν στρατιὰν πράγμα  
*toils himself both and the whole army deed*  
 ἐντεῦθεν ὠπτο πεποιηκώς, ὅπερ Ἡρακλῆς ἐκείνος ἐπὶ τῇ  
*thereupon was-seen having-done which Herakles that-one at the*  
 τοῦ Ἀδμήτου Ἀλκήστιδι. ὡς γὰρ εἶδεν ὁ Δοκεϊανὸς ἐκείνος,  
*— of-Admetos Alkestis as for saw — Dokeianos that-one*  
 ὁ τοῦ προβεβασιλευκότος Ἰσαακίου Κομνηνοῦ ἀδελφιδοῦς  
*the of-the having-reigned-before Isaac Komnenos nephew*  
 καὶ τούτου ἐξάδελφος (ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος τῶν ἐπιδόξων  
*and of-this(-man) cousin man and this of-the illustrious*  
 γένει καὶ ἀξιώματι) τὸν Οὐρσέλιον τὰ τῆς τυφλώσεως  
*in-birth and in-rank — Ourselios the of-the blinding*  
 σύμβολα φέροντα καὶ ὑπὸ του χειραγωγούμενον, βύθιον  
*tokens wearing and by someone being-led-by-the-hand deep*  
 τι στενάξας καὶ ἐπιδακρύσας τῷ Οὐρσελίῳ ὠμότητα  
*something having-groaned and having-wept — over-Ourselios cruelty*  
 κατηγοροῖ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ καὶ μέμψιν αὐτῷ ἐπήγε  
*accused of-the general and blame on-him brought*  
 τούτου καταβώμενος ὡς τοιοῦτον ἄνδρα γεννάδαν τε καὶ  
*him crying-out-against as such man noble both and*  
 ἄντικρυς ἥρωα τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς ἀφελομένου, ὃν ἐχρῆν  
*outright hero of-the eyes having-deprived whom it-was-needful*  
 ἀτιμώρητον διασώσασθαι. ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνος τότε μὲν “τὰς  
*unpunished to-preserve but he then indeed the*  
 αἰτίας τῆς ἀποτυφλώσεως εἰσαυθις ἐπακούσειας” ἐπειπὼν  
*causes of-the blinding hereafter you-may-bear having-said*

“φίλτατέ μοι”, μετὰ βραχὺ δ’ εἰς οἰκίσκον ἀγαγὼν  
*dearest to-me after short(-while) and into small-room having-led*  
 αὐτόν τε καὶ τὸν Οὐρσέλιον ἀνακαλύπτει τὸ πρόσωπον  
*him both and — Ourselios uncovers the face*  
 καὶ δείκνυσιν Οὐρσελίου τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς πυρωπὸν  
*and shows of-Ourselios the eyes fiery*  
 ἀπαστράπτοντας. ἔξεπλάγη ταῦτα ὥς ἐθεάσατο καὶ  
*flashing was-astounded these(-things) when he-beheld and*  
 ἐθαύμασεν ὁ Δοκεϊανὸς καὶ οὐκ εἶχεν ὅ τι καὶ χρήσαιτο  
*marveled — Dokeianos and not had what — even he-might-do*  
 τῷ πλῆθει τοῦ θαύματος. καὶ θαμὰ μὲν ταῖς ὄψεσι τὰς  
*with-the abundance of-the marvel and often indeed to-the eyes the*  
 χεῖρας ἐπέβαλε, μή που καὶ ὄναρ ἐστὶ τὸ θεώμενον ἢ  
*hands he-put lest somehow also dream is the(-thing) seen or*  
 τις μαγικὴ τερατεία ἢ ἄλλο τι τοιοῦτον ἄρτι πρώτως  
*some magical trickery or other something such just first*  
 καινοτομούμενον· ὥς δὲ τὴν ἐπὶ τῷ ἀνδρὶ φιλανθρωπίαν  
*newly-devised when and the toward the man kindness*  
 τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου κατεμάνθανε καὶ μετὰ τῆς φιλανθρωπίας  
*of-the cousin he-learned and together-with the kindness*  
 τὴν τέχνην, περιχαρὴς γεγωνὼς ἐνηγκαλίζετό τε αὐτὸν  
*the art overjoyed having-become he-embraced both him*  
 καὶ κατεφίλει πολλάκις τὸ πρόσωπον εἰς ἡδονὴν τὸ θαῦμα  
*and kissed often the face into pleasure the marvel*  
 μεταβαλὼν. ταῦτ’ οὖν δὲ τούτῳ πεπόνθασι καὶ οἱ περὶ  
*having-changed the-same and with-this experienced also the(-men) around*  
 τὸν βασιλέα Μιχαὴλ καὶ βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς καὶ πάντες.  
*the emperor Michael and (the)-emperor himself and all*

*Michael Doukas is deposed and Botaneiates takes the throne and the empress Maria. Nikephoros Bryennios, duke of Dyrrachion, a man of beauty, eloquence, and strength whom the cities welcome, overruns the west and proclaims himself emperor. Alexios, newly domestic of the scholae, is sent against him with the few troops left to the empire: Immortals, men of the Choma, and Celts. Not waiting for the Turkish allies summoned, he camps without trench at the Halmyros and plans to steal the victory by stratagem.*

Ἐντεῦθεν πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἐσπέραν πέμπεται παρὰ  
 thereupon again to the west he-is-sent by  
 Νικηφόρου τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἤδη τὰ Ῥωμαίων σκῆπτρα  
 Nikephoros the autocrat already the of-(the)-Romans scepters  
 κατεσχηκότος κατὰ Νικηφόρου τοῦ Βρυεννίου τὴν δύσιν ὅλην  
 having-held against Nikephoros the Bryennios the west whole  
 κλονοῦντος καὶ τὸ διάδημα ἐαυτῷ περιθεμένου καὶ βασιλέα  
 shaking and the diadem on-himself having-put and emperor  
 Ῥωμαίων ἀνακηρύττοντος. ἄρτι γὰρ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος  
 of-(the)-Romans proclaiming(-himself) just for the autocrat  
 Μιχαὴλ τοῦ Δούκα τοῦ θρόνου καθαιρεθέντος καὶ ἀντὶ  
 Michael the Doukas from-the throne having-been-deposed and instead-of  
 ταινίας τε καὶ χλαμύδος τὸν ποδήρη καὶ τὴν ἐπωμίδα  
 fillet both and cloak the foot-length(-robe) and the shoulder-mantle  
 τὴν ἀρχιερατικὴν ἐνδεδυμένου ὁ Βοτανειάτης ἐπὶ τοῦ  
 the archiepiscopal having-put-on — Botaneiates on the  
 βασιλείου θρόνου καθίσας καὶ τὴν βασιλῖδα Μαρίαν, ὡς  
 imperial throne having-sat and the empress Maria as  
 προῶν ὁ λόγος σαφέστερον παραστήσειε, μνηστευσάμενος  
 proceeding the account more-clearly may-show having-wooed  
 τὰ τῆς βασιλείας διέθνε πράγματα. ἀλλ' ὁ Νικηφόρος  
 the(-things) of-the empire directed affairs but — Nikephoros

Βρυέννιος τὴν δουκικὴν περιεζωσμένος ἀρχὴν Δυρραχίου  
*Bryennios the ducal having-girded-on rule of-Dyrrachion*  
 ἐπὶ τοῦ βασιλέως Μιχαὴλ καὶ πρὸ τοῦ βασιλεῦσαι τὸν  
*under the emperor Michael and before the to-reign —*  
 Νικηφόρον βασιλειᾶν τε ἤρξατο καὶ ἀποστασίαν κατὰ τοῦ  
*Nikephoros to-aspire-to-rule both began and revolt against —*  
 Μιχαὴλ ἐμελέτησε. τὸ μὲν ὅθεν καὶ ὅπως, οὐκ ἀναγκαῖόν  
*Michael planned the indeed whence and how not necessary*  
 ἐστὶν ἡμῖν διηγέσθαι· φθάνει γὰρ ἡ τοῦ Καίσαρος  
*it-is for-us to-narrate has-anticipated for the of-the Caesar*  
 ξυγγραφὴ τὸ αἷτιον τῆς ἀποστασίας ἐξιστορήσαι· τὸ δ'  
*writing the cause of-the revolt to-relate the but*  
 ὅτι ἐκεῖθεν ὥσπερ ἐξ ὀρμητηρίου τινὸς τῆς πόλεως  
*that from-there as-if from base some of-the city*  
 Δυρραχίου πάντα τὰ τῆς ἐσπέρας κατέδραμε καὶ  
*Dyrrachion all the(-lands) of-the west he-overran and*  
 ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν ἐποίησατο καὶ ὅπως οὗτος ἐάλω, τοῦτο  
*under himself made and how he was-captured this*  
 τῶν ἀναγκαιοτάτων ἐστὶν ἐν βραχεὶ διηγῆσασθαι. τὸ γὰρ  
*of-the most-necessary(-things) is in brief to-narrate the for*  
 ἀκριβὲς τῆς ἱστορίας τὸν βουλόμενον μαθεῖν ἐς τὸν  
*exactness of-the history the(-one) wishing to-learn to the*  
 Καίσαρα παραπέμπομεν. κράτιστος γὰρ ὁ ἀνὴρ τὰ  
*Caesar we-send most-powerful for the man in-the*  
 πολέμια καὶ ἅμα καὶ γένους ὦν τῶν ἐπισημοτάτων  
*warlike(-things) and at-the-same-time also of-family being of-the most-distinguished*  
 καὶ ἀναδρομῇ σώματος καὶ κάλλει προσώπου κοσμούμενος  
*and by-tallness of-body and by-beauty of-face being-adorned*  
 καὶ ἐμβριθείᾳ φρονήματος καὶ βραχιόνων δυνάμει τῶν  
*and by-weight of-mind and of-arms by-strength the*  
 κατ' αὐτὸν διαφέρων ἀνδρῶν ἐπ' αὐτὸν ἦν βασιλείας τὸ  
*of his(-time) surpassing men worthy was of-empire the*

χρῆμα καὶ τοσοῦτος ἦν εἰς πειθῶ δυνατὸς καὶ πάντας  
*thing and so-great he-was in persuasion able and all*  
 ἐφέλκειν καὶ ἐκ πρώτης ὄψεως καὶ ὁμιλίας δυνάμενος,  
*to-draw both from first sight and converse being-able*  
 ὥστε πάντες πανδημεὶ καὶ στρατιῶται καὶ ἰδιῶται τῶν  
*so-that all in-a-body both soldiers and private(-men) the*  
 πρωτείων αὐτῷ ξυνεχώρουν καὶ βασιλεύειν ἡξίου  
*first-place to-him conceded and to-reign deemed(-him)-worthy*  
 ἀπάσης ἐώας καὶ ἐσπερίας λήξεως. καὶ γὰρ ἐπιόντα τοῦτον  
*of-all eastern and western allotment and for advancing him*  
 αἱ πόλεις ἅπασαι ὑπταίαις χερσὶν ὑπεδέχοντο καὶ ἄλλη  
*the cities all with-upturned hands received and one*  
 πρὸς ἄλλην μετὰ κρότου παρέπεμπε. ταῦτα ἐτάραττε  
*to another with applause passed(-him)-on these(-things) troubled*  
 μὲν τὸν Βοτανειάτην, ἐξεκύκα δὲ καὶ τὸ περὶ αὐτὸν  
*indeed — Botaneiates threw-into-confusion and also the around him*  
 στρατεύμα καὶ εἰς ἀμηχανίαν τὴν βασιλείαν ὅλην ἐνέβαλλε.  
*army and into helplessness the empire whole cast*  
 πέμπειν οὖν διεγνώκεισαν τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα τὸν Κομνηνὸν  
*to-send then they-had-resolved the my father — Komnenos*  
 Ἀλέξιον κατὰ τοῦ Βρυεννίου δομέστικον τῶν σχολῶν ἄρτι  
*Alexios against — Bryennios domestic of-the scholae just*  
 προχειρισθέντα μετὰ τῶν ἐνουσῶν δυνάμεων. εἰς γὰρ  
*appointed with the available forces to for*  
 τὸ μέρος τοῦτο ἡ βασιλεία Ῥωμαίων εἰς τοῦσχατον  
*the part this the empire of-(the)-Romans to the-utmost*  
 ἐληλύθει. τὰ τε γὰρ ἐῶα τῶν στρατευμάτων ἄλλο  
*had-come the both for eastern of-the armies one*  
 ἀλλαχοῦ διεσκέδαστο τῶν Τούρκων ὑφαπλωθέντων καὶ  
*elsewhere had-been-scattered the Turks having-spread-out and*  
 πάντα σχεδὸν περισχόντων, ὅσα Εὐξείνου πόντου ἐστὶ  
*all almost having-occupied as-much-as (the)-Euxine sea is*



μεταξύ καὶ Ἑλλησπόντου καὶ Αἰγαίου τε καὶ Συριακοῦ  
*between and (the)-Hellespont and (the)-Aegean both and Syrian*  
 πελάγους †Σύροις τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων καὶ μάλιστα ὅποσοι  
*sea Syrians both and of-the others and especially as-many-as*  
 Παμφυλίαν τε καὶ Κίλικας παραμείβοντες ἐς τὸ πέλαγος  
*Pamphylia both and Cilicians passing-by into the sea*  
 ἐκπίπτουσι τὸ Αἰγύπτιον. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἐῷα στρατεύματα  
*empty-out the Egyptian the indeed then eastern armies*  
 οὕτως ἔσχον· τὰ δὲ τῆς ἐσπέρας ἐς τὸν Βρυνέννιον  
*thus fared the and of-the west to — Bryennios*  
 συρρεῦσαντα εἰς στενὸν κομιδῇ καὶ ὀλίγον στράτευμα  
*having-flowed-together into narrow altogether and small army*  
 τὴν βασιλείαν ἀφῆκε Ῥωμαίων. ἀθάνατοί τε γάρ τινες  
*the empire left of-(the)-Romans Immortals both for some*  
 αὐτῇ κατελείφθησαν χθὲς καὶ πρώην ξίφους ἡμμένοι  
*to-it were-left yesterday and day-before sword having-touched*  
 καὶ δόρατος καὶ τινες ἐκ τοῦ Χώματος στρατιῶται ὀλίγοι  
*and spear and some from — Choma soldiers few*  
 καὶ Κελτική τις στρατιὰ εἰς ὀλίγους τινὰς περισταμένη.  
*and Celtic some army to few some reduced*  
 τούτους δὴ τῷ ἐμῷ πατρὶ Ἀλεξίῳ διδόασι καὶ ἅμα  
*these indeed to-the my father Alexios they-give and at-the-same-time*  
 συμμάχους ἀπὸ τῶν Τούρκων προσκαλεσάμενοι ἐξιέναι οἱ  
*allies from the Turks having-summoned to-go-out those*  
 περὶ τὸν βασιλέα προσέταττον καὶ ξυμμίξαι τῷ Βρυεννίῳ  
*around the emperor ordered and to-engage — with-Bryennios*  
 οὐ μᾶλλον εἰς τὴν ἐφεπομένην στρατιὰν θαρροῦντες ἢ  
*not more in the following army trusting than*  
 εἰς τὸ φρόνημα τοῦ ἀνδρὸς καὶ τὴν ἐν πολέμοις καὶ  
*in the spirit of-the man and the in wars and*  
 μάχαις δεινότητα. ὁ δὲ τὴν ξυμμαχίαν μὴ περιμείνας  
*battles skill he but the alliance not having-waited-for*

ὀξέως ἐπερχόμενον τὸν ἐχθρὸν ἀκούων κἀντεῦθεν καλῶς  
*swiftly advancing the enemy bearing and-thereupon well*  
 καὶ ἑαυτὸν καὶ τοὺς ξυνεπομένους φραζάμενος ἕξεισι  
*both himself and the(-men) following having-fortified goes-out*  
 τῆς βασιλίδος τῶν πόλεων καὶ κατὰ τὴν Θράκην  
*from-the queen of-the cities and in — Thrace*  
 γεγυνώς περὶ τὸν Ἄλμυρὸν ποταμὸν στρατοπεδεύει ἄνευ  
*having-come near the Halmyros river encamps without*  
 τάφρων καὶ χάρακος. μανθάνων γὰρ τὸν Βρυέννιον ἐν  
*trenches and palisade learning for — Bryennios in*  
 τοῖς Κηδόκτου πεδίοις αὐλιζόμενον ἐβούλετο ἑκάτερα  
*the of-Kedoktos plains bivouacking he-wished both*  
 τὰ στρατεύματα αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῶν ἐναντίων ἀξιόλογον  
*the armies his both and of-the opponents considerable*  
 ἀπέχειν διάστημα. οὐ γὰρ εἶχεν ἀντιμέτωπος ἐπιστῆναι  
*to-be-distant distance not for he-was-able face-to-face to-stand*  
 τῷ Βρυεννίῳ, ἵνα μὴ κατάφωρα γένοιτο τὰ τῆς  
*— to-Bryennios that not detected might-be the(-things) of-the*  
 δυνάμεως καὶ μὴ δοίη, ὅπόσος τίς ἐστι τὴν στρατιάν,  
*force and not he-might-give how-great — it-is the army*  
 αἰσθησιν τῷ ἐχθρῷ. μετ' ὀλίγων γὰρ πρὸς πολλοὺς  
*perception to-the enemy with few for against many*  
 καὶ μετ' ἀπειροπολέμων πρὸς ἐμπειροπολέμους ἔμελλε  
*and with inexperienced-in-war against experienced-in-war he-was-about*  
 ζυμβαλεῖν καὶ τοῦ θαρρεῖν ἀφόμενος καὶ ἀναφανδὸν  
*to-engage and the to-be-bold having-given-up and openly*  
 ἐμπίπτειν κλωπετεύειν τὴν νίκην ἐβούλετο.  
*to-fall-upon to-steal the victory he-wished*

*Bryennios puts his brother John on the right, Tarchaneiotes Katakalon on the left, himself in the center, and Scythians behind to attack the rear. Alexios hides part of his army in hollows. The ambush routs the enemy until John Bryennios rallies and drives back the Immortals. Theodotos dissuades Alexios from a six-man charge at Bryennios. The Scythians rout the Chomatenoi, then turn to plunder, throwing Bryennios' rear into confusion. Alexios seizes an imperial horse and swords, and a herald's cry that Bryennios has fallen rallies the scattered men.*

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄνδρας καὶ ἀμφοτέρους γενναίους εἰς πόλεμον  
 since and men and both noble into war  
 ὁ λόγος κατεστήσατο, τὸν τε Βρυέννιον καὶ τὸν ἐμὸν  
 the account has-set — both Bryennios and the my  
 πατέρα τὸν Κομνηνὸν Ἀλέξιον (οὐδὲν γὰρ ἕτερος τοῦ  
 father — Komnenos Alexios in-nothing for the-one than-the  
 ἑτέρου πρὸς ἀνδρείαν ἀπελιμπάνετο οὐδὲ τὰ τῆς  
 other in courage fell-short nor the(-things) of-the  
 ἐμπειρίας ἕτερος ἑτέρου παρ' ἔλαττον εἶχεν), ἀξίον ἐστὶ  
 experience the-one than-the-other in less had worthy it-is  
 καταστησάμενους τούτους εἰς φάλαγγας καὶ ἀντιπαρατάξεις  
 having-set them into phalanxes and opposing-lines  
 ἐκεῖθεν ἀποσκοπεῖν τοῦ πολέμου τὴν τύχην. τὼ μὲν  
 thence to-observe of-the war the fortune the-two indeed  
 γὰρ ἄνδρε τούτω καὶ ἄμφω ἦσθη καλῶ καὶ γενναίῳ  
 for men these-two also both were fine and noble  
 καὶ τὰ γε εἰς χεῖρας καὶ πείραν ἴσοι ὥσπερ ἐπὶ  
 and the(-things) at-least in hands and experience equal as-if on  
 τρυτάνης ἰστάμενοι· ὁρᾶν δὲ ἡμᾶς χρεών, ὅπου τὰ  
 balance standing to-see and us it-is-needful where the(-things)  
 τῆς τύχης ἐπέβρισεν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ Βρυέννιος μετὰ τοῦ  
 of-the fortune weighed-down — indeed for Bryennios with the

θαρρεῖν ταῖς δυνάμεσι καὶ τὴν πείραν προὔβαλλετο καὶ  
*to-be-confident in-the forces also the experience put-forward and*  
 τὴν εὐταξίαν τῆς παρατάξεως· ὁ δ' Ἀλέξιος ἐκ τοῦ  
*the good-order of-the battle-line — but Alexios on the*  
 ἐτέρου ὀλίγας μὲν ἐλπῖδας καὶ πάνυ ἀφελεῖς εἶχεν ὅσον  
*other(-side) few indeed hopes and very feeble had as-far-as*  
 ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἀντιπροὔβαλλετο δὲ τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς  
*on the army opposed and the from the*  
 τέχνης ἰσχὺν καὶ τὰς στρατηγικὰς μηχανάς. ἤδη γὰρ  
*art strength and the strategic devices already for*  
 ἀλλήλου αἰσθόμενοι καὶ ὅτι πολέμων ἤδη καιρὸς ὁ μὲν  
*each-other having-perceived and that of-battles already time — indeed*  
 Βρυνένιος, ἐπειδὴ τὰς ἐφόδους αὐτοῦ προὔποτμένεσθαι  
*Bryennios since the attacks his to-cut-off-beforehand*  
 τὸν Κομνηνὸν Ἀλέξιον μεμαθήκοι καὶ περὶ Καλαυρὴν  
*— Komnenos Alexios he-had-learned and near Kalaurē*  
 στρατοπεδεύειν, οὕτω ξυνταξάμενος ἀντεπήρχετο. εἰς τε  
*to-encamp thus having-drawn-up advanced-against into both*  
 γὰρ δεξιὸν κέρας καὶ εὐώνυμον τάξας τὸ στράτευμα  
*for right wing and left having-arranged the army*  
 τοῦ μὲν δεξιοῦ κατάρχειν τὸν αὐτάδελφον Ἰωάννην  
*of-the indeed right to-command the own-brother John*  
 ἐπέταττε· πεντακισχίλιοι δ' ἦσαν οἱ τοῦτο τὸ μέρος  
*be-ordered five-thousand and were those this the part*  
 συμπληροῦντες, Ἰταλοὶ τε καὶ τῆς τοῦ Μανιάκου ἐκείνου  
*filling Italians both and of-the — of-Maniakes that*  
 ἀποσπάδος καὶ μὴν καὶ ἐκ Θεσσαλίας ἄνδρες ἵππεῖς  
*detachment and indeed also from Thessaly men horsemen*  
 καὶ μοῖρά τις τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ἐταιρίας οὐκ ἀγεννής.  
*and part a-certain of-the from the companions not ignoble*  
 θάτερον δὲ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας ὁ Ταρχανειώτης εἶχε  
*the-other and the left wing — Tarchaneiotēs held*

Κατακαλὼν, Μακεδόνας τε καὶ Θρᾶκας ἐξωπλισμένους  
*Katakalon Macedonians both and Thracians armed*  
 εἰς τρισχιλίους τοὺς ξύμπαντας συναριθμουμένους. αὐτὸς  
*to three-thousand the all being-counted himself*  
 δ' ὁ Βρυέννιος τὸ μέσον κατείχε τῆς φάλαγγος ἔκ  
*and — Bryennios the middle held of-the phalanx from*  
 τε Μακεδόνων καὶ Θρακῶν συντεταγμένον καὶ τοῦ  
*both Macedonians and Thracians drawn-up and of-the*  
 ἀρχοντικοῦ σύμπαντος ὅσον ἐπίλεκτον. πάντες δὲ ἐφ'  
*officer(-class) whole as-much-as picked all and on*  
 ἵππου Θετταλῆς ἐποχούμενοι καὶ τοῖς σιδηροῖς θώραξι  
*horse Thessalian riding and with-the iron breastplates*  
 καὶ τοῖς περὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν κράνεσιν ἑξαστράπτοντες, τῶν  
*and the about the head helmets flashing the*  
 τε ἵππων διεγειρομένων ἐς ὀρθὸν οὖς καὶ τῶν ἀσπίδων  
*both horses rousing to upright ear and the shields*  
 πρὸς ἀλλήλας παταγουσῶν πολλή τις αὐγὴ αὐτῶν τε  
*against one-another clashing much a gleam of-them both*  
 καὶ τῶν κορυθῶν ἐκείθεν ἐξέπιπτε μετὰ δέϊματος. ὁ  
*and of-the helmets thence fell-out with dread he*  
 δὲ εἰς μέσους κυκλούμενος ὁ Βρυέννιος καθάπερ τις  
*and among the-middle wheeling — Bryennios like some*  
 Ἄρης ἢ Γίγας ὑπερωμίας εἰς πῆχυν ἓνα τῶν ἄλλων  
*Ares or Giant above-the-shoulders by cubit one than-the others*  
 πάντων ὑψούμενος καὶ αὐτόχρημα θάμβος ἦν καὶ φόβος  
*all rising and in-very-truth wonder was and fear*  
 τοῖς θεωμένοις. ἔξωθεν δὲ τοῦ τάγματος ὅλου ὥσανεἰ  
*to-those beholding outside and of-the division whole as-it-were*  
 δυεῖν σταδίῳ διάστημα Σκύθαι τινὲς ἦσαν σύμμαχοι  
*of-two stades distance Scythians some were allies*  
 βαρβαρικοῖς κεκοσμημένοι τοῖς ὅπλοις. παρήγγελτο δέ,  
*with-barbarian adorned the arms it-had-been-ordered and*

ἐπειδὰν οἱ πολέμοι προφανεῖν καὶ ἡ σάλπιγξ πολέμον  
*when the enemy should-appear and the trumpet warlike*  
 ἀλαλάζειεν, εὐθὺς κατὰ νώτων ἐμπίπτειν καὶ βάλλειν  
*should-sound at-once on rear to-fall-upon and to-shoot*  
 τοὺς Σκύθας τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ θλίβειν αὐτοὺς τοῖς  
*the Scythians on-the enemy and to-press them with-the*  
 πυκνοῖς καὶ συνεχέσι τοξεύμασι, τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς πυκνὰ  
*dense and continuous arrows the and rest close*  
 συνασπισμένους ἐμπίπτειν κατὰ τὸ καρτερώτατον. οὕτω  
*having-locked-shields to-fall-upon at the strongest(-point) thus*  
 μὲν οὗτος τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν διετάξατο· ὁ δέ γε  
*indeed he those about him drew-up the but at-least*  
 ἐμὸς πατήρ ὁ Κομνηνὸς Ἀλέξιος τοῦ τόπου τὴν θέσιν  
*my father — Komnenos Alexios of-the place the situation*  
 κατασκεψάμενος τὸ μὲν τοῦ στρατεύματος κατέστησεν  
*having-surveyed the(-part) indeed of-the army set*  
 ἔν τισι κοιλάσι, τὸ δ' ἀντιμέτωπον ἔστησε τῆς στρατιᾶς  
*in some hollows the and facing(-part) set of-the army*  
 Βρυεννίου. ἅμφω δὲ παραταξάμενος, τὸ ὑποκαθήμενον  
*of-Bryennios both and having-drawn-up the lying-in-wait*  
 καὶ τὸ προφανές, καὶ πτερώσας λόγοις ἄνδρα ἕκαστον  
*and the visible and having-winged with-words man each*  
 καὶ εἰς ἀνδρείαν ἐπάρας τῷ μὲν ἐπέσκηπτε τῷ  
*and to courage having-raised to-the(-one) indeed he-enjoined to-the*  
 προλοχίζοντι τάγματι, ἐπειδὰν κατὰ νώτου γένοιτο τῶν  
*ambushing division when on rear they-should-come of-the*  
 πολεμίων, ἐξ αἰφνιδίου προσπίπτειν καὶ μετὰ ρύμης ὅτι  
*enemy from sudden to-fall-on and with force as*  
 πολλῆς καὶ σφοδρᾶς ἐπαράττειν κατὰ τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρατος·  
*much and violent to-dash against the right wing*  
 τοὺς δ' ἀθανάτους λεγομένους καὶ τινὰς ἀπὸ τῶν Κελτῶν  
*the and Immortals so-called and some from the Celts*

ἐαυτῷ παρακατέσχε καὶ τούτων προὔτέτακτο· τῶν  
*with-himself be-kept and of-these be-had-been-placed-in-front of-the*  
 δὲ Χωματηνῶν καὶ Τούρκων ἑξαρχον τὸν Κατακαλὼν  
*and Chomatenoï and Turks leader — Katakalon*  
 κατέστησε καὶ πρὸς τὸ Σκυθικὸν ἅπαν ἔχει τὸν νοῦν  
*be-set and to the Scythian all to-hold the mind*  
 καὶ τὰς διεκδρομὰς αὐτῶν φυλάττειν παρεκελεύσατο.  
*and the sallies their to-watch be-ordered*  
 ταῦτα μὲν οὕτως εἶχε· καὶ ἐπεὶ κατὰ τοὺς κοιλῶδεις  
*these(-things) indeed thus stood and when in the hollow*  
 τόπους τὸ τοῦ Βρυεννίου γέγονε στράτευμα, εὐθὺς  
*places the — of-Bryennios came army at-once*  
 σύνθημα δεδωκότος τοῦμοῦ πατρὸς Ἀλεξίου μετὰ βοῆς καὶ  
*signal having-given my father Alexios with shout and*  
 ἀλαλαγμοῦ ἐμπηδήσαν τὸ περὶ τὴν ἐνέδραν στράτευμα  
*war-cry having-leapt-out the around the ambush army*  
 τῷ τε αἰφνιδίῳ κατέπληξαν τοὺς πολεμίους, ἕκαστος  
*with-the both suddenness struck the enemies each*  
 τὸν παρατυχόντα πλήττων τε καὶ φονεύων, καὶ εἰς  
*the(-man) chancing-upon striking both and slaying and into*  
 φυγὴν κατηνάγκασαν. ἀλλ' ὁ Βρυέννιος Ἰωάννης καὶ τοῦ  
*flight they-forced but — Bryennios John also of-the*  
 ἡγεμόνος αὐτάδελφος μνησθεὶς ἐνταῦθα θούριδος ἀλκῆς  
*leader own-brother having-remembered there of-impetuous valor*  
 καὶ θυμοῦ τῷ ψαλλίῳ στρέψας τὸν ἵππον καὶ τὸν  
*and of-spirit with-the curb having-turned the horse and the*  
 ἐπιόντα στρατιώτην ἀθάνατον πληγῇ μιᾷ καταβαλὼν  
*attacking soldier Immortal with-blow one having-struck-down*  
 ἔσθησέ τε κλονουμένην τὴν φάλαγγα καὶ οὕτω συντάξας  
*set both being-shaken the phalanx and thus having-drawn-up*  
 ἀπώσε τοὺς πολεμίους. οὕτως οἱ ἀθάνατοι προτροπᾷδην  
*thrust-back the enemies thus the Immortals headlong*

μετά τινος ἀκοσμίας ἔφευγον ὑπὸ τῶν κατόπιν ἀεὶ  
*with some disorder fled by the behind always*  
 στρατιωτῶν ἀποκτιννύμενοι. ὁ δέ γε ἐμὸς πατὴρ εἰς  
*soldiers being-killed the but at-least my father into*  
 μέσους ἐαυτὸν ἐμβαλὼν τῶν πολεμίων καὶ γενναίως  
*the-middle himself having-thrown of-the enemy and nobly*  
 ἀγωνιζόμενος ἐκλόνει μὲν καὶ οὗτος τὸ μέρος, ἐφ' ᾧ περ  
*fighting shook indeed also he the part on which-ever*  
 ἂν παραγίνοιτο, πλήττων ἕκαστον τὸν πρὸς αὐτὸν  
*— he-might-come striking each the(-man) toward him*  
 ἰόντα καὶ εὐθὺς καταβάλλων, ἐλπίζων δὲ ξυνέπεσθαι καί  
*coming and at-once striking-down hoping and to-follow and*  
 τινὰς ἀμύνειν αὐτῷ στρατιώτας ἀκατασχέτως εἶχετο τοῦ  
*some to-defend him soldiers irresistibly pressed-on of-the*  
 ἀγῶνος. αἰσθόμενος δὲ διαρραγείσαν τὴν ἑαυτοῦ φάλαγγα  
*contest having-perceived and broken-apart the his-own phalanx*  
 καὶ ἤδη πολλὰ τοῦ σκεδασθείσαν τοὺς εὐψυχότερους (ἕξ δὲ  
*and already in-many-places scattered the braver six and*  
 ἦσαν οἱ σύμπαντες) συλλεξάμενος ἐβουλεύσατο σπασαμένους  
*were the all having-gathered he-resolved having-drawn*  
 τὰ ξίφη, ἐπειδὰν ἐγγίσειεν τῷ Βρυεννίῳ, κατ' αὐτοῦ  
*the swords when they-should-approach — Bryennios against him*  
 χωρεῖν ἀναισχύντως, κὰν δέοι καὶ κείνους αὐτῷ  
*to-go shamelessly even-if it-should-be-needful them-too with-him*  
 συναποθανεῖν. ἀλλ' ἀπείρξε τοῦ τοιούτου βουλεύματος  
*to-die-together but held-back from-the such plan*  
 Θεόδοτος τις στρατιώτης, ἀνὴρ τῷ μὲν πατρὶ παιδόθεν  
*Theodotos a-certain soldier man to-my father from-boyhood*  
 ὑπηρετήσας, ὡς ἀντικρὺς παραβόλου τοῦ ἐγχειρήματος  
*having-served as outright reckless the undertaking*  
 ὄντος. τὴν ἐναντίαν οὖν τραπόμενος ὁ Ἀλέξιος ὀλίγον μὲν  
*being the opposite then having-turned — Alexios a-little indeed*



ὑπέξάγειν ἑαυτὸν τῆς τοῦ Βρυεννίου στρατιᾶς ἐβούλετο,  
*to-withdraw himself from-the — of-Bryennios army wished*  
 γνωρίμους δέ τινας τῶν διασκεδασθέντων ἐπισυλλέξας καὶ  
*known and some of-the scattered(-men) having-gathered and*  
 συστησάμενος αὐθις τῷ ἔργῳ ἐνέκειτο. μήπω δὲ τοῦμοῦ  
*having-formed again to-the work pressed not-yet and my*  
 πατρὸς ἐκέειθεν ἑαυτὸν ὑπέξαγαγόντος οἱ Σκύθαι τοὺς περὶ  
*father from-there himself having-withdrawn the Scythians the around*  
 τὸν Κατακαλὼν Χωματηνοὺς ἐκλόνουν βοῇ πολλῇ καὶ  
*— Katakalon Chomatenoi shook about much and*  
 ἀλαλαγμῷ χρώμενοι, καὶ ἐπειδὴ καὶ τούτους ἀπώσαντο  
*war-cry using and when also these they-thrust-back*  
 καὶ εἰς φυγὴν εὐκόλως ἐτρέψαντο, πρὸς λαφυραγωγίαν  
*and into flight easily turned to plundering*  
 ἀπέβλεψαν καὶ τὰς ἑαυτῶν ἀνεζήτουν διατριβάς. τοιοῦτον  
*looked and the own sought haunts such*  
 γὰρ τὸ ἔθνος τὸ Σκυθικόν· μήπω καθαρῶς τρεψάμενοι τὸν  
*for the nation the Scythian not-yet clearly having-routed the*  
 ἀντίπαλον καὶ τὸ κράτος ἀναδησάμενοι διαφθείρουσι τὴν  
*opponent and the victory having-crowned-themselves ruin the*  
 νίκην τῇ λαφυραγωγίᾳ. τὴν γὰρ οὐραγίαν τοῦ Βρυεννικοῦ  
*victory by-the plundering the for rear of-the Bryennian*  
 στρατεύματος καταλαβὼν ἅπαν τὸ θητικὸν ταῖς τάξεσιν  
*army having-overtaken all the menial(-crowd) with-the ranks*  
 αὐτῶν ξυνεμίγνυτο φόβῳ τῶν Σκυθῶν τοῦ μή τι παθεῖν  
*their mingled for-fear of-the Scythians of-the lest something to-suffer*  
 ἔνεκα παρὰ τούτων· αἰεὶ δέ τι συρρέον ἐπὶ τούτους,  
*for-the-sake from them always and something flowing-together to them*  
 ὅσον ἐξέφυγε τὰς χεῖρας τὰς Σκυθικάς, σύγχυσιν οὐ  
*as-much-as escaped the hands the Scythian confusion not*  
 μικρὰν ταῖς τάξεσιν ἐνεποίησε τῶν σημαιῶν ἀναμιχθεῖσιν  
*small in-the ranks caused the standards having-been-mixed*

ἀλλήλαις. ἐν τούτοις δὲ ἐναπειλημμένος ὢν οὐμὸς πατὴρ  
*with-one-another in these and caught being my father*  
 Ἀλέξιος, ὡς καὶ πρόσθεν ἐλέγομεν, περιχορεύων ἐντὸς τοῦ  
*Alexios as also before we-said circling within the*  
 στρατεύματος τοῦ Βρυεννικοῦ ὁρᾷ τῶν ἵπποκόμων ἕνα  
*army the Bryennian sees of-the grooms one*  
 τοῦ Βρυεννίου ἵππον τινὰ τῶν βασιλικῶν ἐπισυρόμενον,  
*— of-Bryennios horse one of-the imperial(-horses) leading*  
 τῇ τε ἀλουργῷ ἐφεςτρίδι κεκοσμημένον καὶ κατάχρυσα  
*with-the both purple cloth adorned and all-gold*  
 τὰ φάλαρα ἔχοντα καὶ δὴ καὶ τοὺς κατέχοντας τὰς  
*the trappings having and indeed also the(-men) holding the*  
 ἐξ ἔθους τοῖς βασιλεῦσι παρεπομένας ῥομφαίας ἐγγύθεν  
*from custom to-the emperors accompanying broadswords near*  
 αὐτῷ παραθέοντας. ταῦτ' οὖν θεασάμενος καλύπτει μὲν  
*him running-beside these(-things) then having-beheld he-covers indeed*  
 τὸ πρόσωπον τῷ θωρακιδίῳ, ὃ τῆς κόρυθος κύκλῳ  
*the face with-the visor which from-the helmet around*  
 ἐξήρτητο, σφοδρῶς δὲ κατ' αὐτῶν ἐξορμήσας σὺν τοῖς ἑξ  
*was-hung violently and against them having-charged with the six*  
 στρατιώταις, οὓς ἄνωθεν ὁ λόγος ἐδήλωσε, καταβάλλει  
*soldiers whom above the account showed he-strikes-down*  
 μὲν καὶ τὸν ἵπποκόμον, αἶρεί δὲ καὶ τὸν βασιλικὸν ἵππον,  
*indeed also the groom takes and also the imperial horse*  
 συναφαιρεῖται δὲ καὶ τὰς ῥομφαίας καὶ λάθρᾳ ὑπέξεισι  
*carries-off and also the broadswords and secretly slips-out-of*  
 τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἐν τῷ ἀκινδύνῳ δὲ καταστὰς τὸν  
*the army in the safety and having-taken-position the*  
 τε χρυσοφάλαρον ἐκείνον ἵππον ἐξέπεμψε καὶ τὰς παρ'  
*both gold-trapped that horse he-sent-out and the on*  
 ἑκάτερα τοῦ βασιλικοῦ σώματος στρεφομένας ῥομφαίας  
*either-side of-the imperial person turning broadswords*

καὶ κήρυκά τινα μεγαλοφωνότατον παρακελευσάμενος  
*and herald one most-loud-voiced having-ordered*  
 ἀπανταχοῦ τοῦ στρατεύματος διαθέοντα βοᾶν ὥς ὁ  
*everywhere of-the army running-through to-shout that —*  
 Βρυέννιος ἐπεπτώκει. τοῦτο γινόμενον πολλοὺς τῶν  
*Bryennios bad-fallen this having-happened many of-the*  
 σκεδασθέντων τοῦ στρατεύματος τοῦ μεγάλου δομεστίκου  
*scattered of-the army of-the grand domestic*  
 τῶν σχολῶν καὶ ἐμοῦ πατρὸς ἀπανταχόθεν ξυνέλεγε καὶ  
*of-the scholae and my father from-everywhere gathered and*  
 παλιμπορεύτους ἐποίει, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἔπειθεν ἐγκαρτερεῖν.  
*turned-back made others and also persuaded to-hold-out*  
 οἱ δὲ ἐστήκεσαν ἀτρεμοῦντες, ἵνα ἕκαστος ἔτυχε,  
*others and had-stood keeping-still where each happened(-to-be)*  
 καὶ εἰς τοὐπίσω τὰς ὄψεις στρέψαντες ἐξεπλήττοντο ἐφ'  
*and to the-rear the eyes having-turned were-astounded at*  
 οἷς παρ' ἐλπίδα ἐώρων. καὶ ἦν ἰδεῖν ἐπ' αὐτοῖς καινόν  
*what beyond hope they-saw and it-was to-see on them new*  
 τι γινόμενον, τῶν ἵππων ἐν οἷς ἐπωχοῦντο τὰς  
*something having-happened the horses on which they-rode the*  
 κεφαλὰς ἐπὶ τὸ πρόσω ὀρώσας, τὰ δ' αὐτῶν πρόσωπα εἰς  
*heads to the front looking the and their faces to*  
 τοὐπίσω ἐστραμμένα, καὶ μήτε ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω χωροῦντας  
*the-rear turned and neither to the front advancing*  
 μήτε εἰς τοὐπίσω στρέψαι τοὺς χαλινούς ἐθέλοντας, ἀλλ'  
*nor to the-rear to-turn the bridles willing but*  
 ἐκθάμβους ὄντας καὶ ἑξαπορουμένους οἶον ἐπὶ τοῖς  
*astounded being and at-a-loss as-it-were at the(-things)*  
 ξυμπεσοῦσιν. οἳ τε γὰρ Σκύθαι νόστου μνησάμενοι καὶ  
*having-befallen the both for Scythians of-homecoming having-remembered and*  
 οἵκαδε ἀπιόντες οὐκ ἔμελλον ἔτι ἐπιδιώκειν, ἀλλὰ πόρρω  
*homeward going-away not were-about still to-pursue but far*

τῶν στρατευμάτων ἀμφοῖν γεγονότες μετὰ τῆς λείας  
*from-the armies both having-become with the booty*  
 αὐτοῦ που περιπεπλάνητο. τό τε διακηρυκεύμενον, ὡς  
*there somewhere had-wandered-about the both being-proclaimed that*  
 ἄρα ὁ Βρυέννιος ἐάλω καὶ κατενήνεκτο, ἐθαρσποίει  
*after-all — Bryennios was-captured and had-been-brought-down emboldened*  
 τοὺς τέως δειλοὺς καὶ φυγάδας καὶ τὸ κηρυττόμενον  
*the(-men) hitherto cowardly and fugitives and the(-thing) proclaimed*  
 αὐτόθεν εἶχε τὸ πιθανὸν ἐνδεικνυμένου πανταχόθι μετὰ  
*straightway had the credibility being-displayed everywhere with*  
 τῶν βασιλικῶν παρασήμων τοῦ ἵππου καὶ τῶν ῥομφαίων  
*the imperial insignia of-the horse and of-the broadswords*  
 μονονουχὶ διαγγελουσῶν, ὡς ὁ φυλαττόμενος ταύταις  
*all-but announcing that the guarded by-these*  
 Βρυέννιος χειρὸς πολεμίας γέγονεν ἔργον.  
*Bryennios of-hand hostile has-become work*

## X • BRYENNIOS CAPTURED

*Turkish allies arrive and find Bryennios' army in disorder, some of Alexios' Franks having deserted. Alexios sets two of three divisions in ambush, and the Turks' feigned flight draws the enemy into them. Bryennios fights bravely, cuts off an Immortal's arm, and at last surrenders to two Turks. Alexios sends him unblinded to Botaneiates: resting under an oak while Alexios sleeps, Bryennios thinks of killing him, but a divine power restrains him. Any later harm to Bryennios came from the emperor's men, not her father.*

Εἶτα ἡ τύχη ξυνέβαλε καὶ τι τοιοῦτον. ἀπόμοιρά  
*then — fortune brought-about also something such detachment*  
 τις ἐκ τῆς συμμαχίας τῶν Τούρκων καταλαμβάνει  
*a-certain from the alliance of-the Turks reaches*

τὸν δομέστικον τῶν σχολῶν Ἀλέξιον καὶ ὡς καθειστήκει  
*the domestic of-the scholae Alexios and how stood*  
 τὰ τοῦ πολέμου, μαθόντες καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅπου  
*the(-things) of-the war having-learned and the enemies where*  
 καὶ εἶεν, ἐπιζητήσαντες ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς συνελλυθέντες  
*also they-might-be having-asked on hill a-certain having-met*  
 τῷ Κομνηνῷ Ἀλεξίῳ καὶ ἐμῷ πατρὶ ἐκείνου δεικνύντος  
*— with-Kommenos Alexios and my father he showing*  
 τῇ χειρὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ἐθεῶντο τούτους ὥσπερ ἀπὸ τινος  
*with-the hand the army beheld them as-if from some*  
 σκοπιᾶς. εἶχε δὲ ὧδε τὰ κατ' αὐτούς. συγκεχυμένοι  
*lookout stood and thus the(-things) concerning them confused*  
 τε γὰρ ἦσαν μὴπω συντάξαντες ἑαυτοὺς καὶ ὡς τὴν  
*both for they-were not-yet having-drawn-up themselves and as the*  
 νίκην ἤδη ἀράμενοι καταφρονητικῶς εἶχον καὶ ἔξω  
*victory already having-won contemptuously they-were and outside*  
 κινδύνων ἑαυτοὺς ὥντο· μάλιστα δὲ ἀναπεπτώκεισαν τῶν  
*dangers themselves thought most and they-had-grown-careless the*  
 τῷ ἐμῷ πατρὶ ξυνεπομένων Φράγγων προσεχωρηκότων  
*the my father following Franks having-gone-over*  
 τῷ Βρυεννίῳ διὰ τὴν προγεγενημένην τροπὴν. καὶ  
*— to-Bryennios because-of the earlier rout and*  
 γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἀποβεβηκότων τῶν Φράγγων καὶ  
*for from-the horses having-dismounted the Franks and*  
 δεξιὰς διδόντων αὐτῷ, καθάπερ δὴ πατριὸν ἔστι  
*right-hands giving him as indeed ancestral it-is*  
 διδόναι τὰς πίστεις, ἄλλος ἀλλαχόθεν πρὸς τούτους  
*to-give the pledges one from-elsewhere to them*  
 ξυνέρρεον θεασόμενοι τὸ γινόμενον. διεσάλπιξε γὰρ ἡ  
*flowed-together about-to-see the(-thing) happening trumpeted for the*  
 φήμη τὸ στράτευμα, ὡς ἄρα καὶ οἱ Φράγγοι τούτοις  
*rumor the army that after-all also the Franks to-them*

προσέθεντο τὸν ἀρχιστράτηγον καταλελοιπότες Ἀλέξιον.  
*had-attached-themselves the commander-in-chief having-abandoned Alexios*  
 οὕτω δῆτα συγκεχυμένως ἔχοντας τούτους οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν  
*thus indeed confusedly being them those about the*  
 ἐμὸν πατέρα καὶ τοὺς νεήλυδας Τούρκους θεασάμενοι  
*my father and the newly-arrived Turks having-beheld*  
 εἰς τρεῖς μοίρας ἑαυτοὺς διενείμαντο καὶ τὰς μὲν δύο  
*into three parts themselves divided and the indeed two*  
 ἐλλοχεῖν αὐτοῦ που διέταττον, τὴν δὲ τρίτην μερίδα  
*to-lie-in-ambush there somewhere they-arranged the and third portion*  
 χωρεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἐκέλευον. καὶ τὸ ξύμπαν τῆς  
*to-advance against the enemies they-ordered and the whole of-the*  
 τοιαύτης διαταγῆς ἐς τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα Ἀλέξιον ἀνεφέρετο.  
*such arrangement to the my father Alexios was-referred*  
 οἱ μέντοι Τούρκοι οὐ κατὰ φάλαγγα συντεταγμένως  
*the however Turks not in phalanx in-order*  
 ἐπῆσαν ἅμα πάντες, ἀλλὰ μεμερισμένως καὶ ἀπ'  
*advanced together all but divided and from*  
 ἀλλήλων κατὰ τινὰς ὀμίλους διεστηκότες ἐκασταχοῦ· εἴτα  
*each-other in some bands standing-apart everywhere then*  
 προσβάλλειν ἐκάστην ἵλιν τοὺς ἵππους ἐπὶ τούτους  
*to-attack each squadron the horses against them*  
 ἐλαύνοντας καὶ πυκνοῖς ἀποχρῆσθαι τοξεύμασι. συνέπιπτο  
*driving and dense to-use arrows followed*  
 δὲ τούτοις καὶ ὁ τὴν ὅλην στρατηγίαν ἀναδησάμενος  
*and them also the(-man) the whole command having-taken-on*  
 ἐμὸς πατήρ Ἀλέξιος συλλέξας ἀπὸ τῶν σκεδασθέντων  
*my father Alexios having-gathered from the scattered(-men)*  
 ὅσους ὁ καιρὸς ὑπηγόρευε στρατιώτας. ἐνταῦθ' αὖ τις τῶν  
*as-many the occasion dictated soldiers there one of-the*  
 ἀμφὶ τὸν Ἀλέξιον ἀθανάτων θρασύσπλαγχνός τις  
*about — Alexios Immortals bold-hearted a-certain(-one)*

ὦν καὶ τολμητίας προεξελάσας τὸν ἵππον καὶ τῶν  
*being and daring having-driven-forward the horse and the*  
 ἄλλων προεκδραμὼν ἄντικρυς κατὰ τοῦ Βρυεννίου ὅλους  
*others having-run-ahead-of straight against — Bryennios full*  
 χαλάσας ῥυτῆρας ἐφέρετο. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν τὸ δόρυ  
*having-slackened reins was-borne and he indeed the spear*  
 μάλα σφοδρῶς ἐρείδει κατὰ τῶν στέρνων ἐκείνου, ὁ δὲ  
*very violently thrusts against the breast his he but*  
 γοργῶς τοῦ κουλεοῦ τὸ ξίφος ἐλκύσας μῆπω φθάσαντος  
*swiftly from-the sheath the sword having-drawn not-yet having-had-time*  
 τοῦ δόρατος κραταιότερον ἐρεισθῆναι τοῦτό τε ἀπέκοψεν  
*the spear more-forcefully to-be-thrust it both cut-off*  
 αὐτίκα καὶ τὸν τρώσαντα κατὰ τῆς κλειδὸς  
*at-once and the(-man) having-wounded(-him) on the collarbone*  
 πλήξας ὅλῳ βραχίονι κατενεγκὼν τὴν πληγὴν ἅμα  
*having-struck with-whole arm having-brought-down the blow at-once*  
 τὴν χεῖρα πᾶσαν ἐξέτεμεν αὐτῷ θώρακι. οἱ μὲν οὖν  
*the arm whole cut-off with-the-very breastplate the indeed then*  
 Τοῦρκοι ἄλλος ἐπ' ἄλλῳ καταλαμβάνοντες τοῖς συνεχέσι  
*Turks one after another arriving with-the continuous*  
 βέλεσι τὸ στράτευμα κατεσκίαζον. οἱ δέ γε περὶ  
*missiles the army overshadowed those and at-least around*  
 τὸν Βρυνένιον ἐπλήγησαν μὲν τῷ αἰφνιδίῳ, ὅμως  
*— Bryennios were-struck indeed by-the suddenness nevertheless*  
 συλλέξαντες ἑαυτοὺς καὶ εἰς τάξεις καταστησάμενοι τὸ  
*having-gathered themselves and into ranks having-set the*  
 τοῦ πολέμου βάρος ἐδέξαντο ἄλλος ἄλλον παρακαλοῦντες  
*of-the war weight received one another exhorting*  
 ἀνδρίζεσθαι. οἱ μὲντοι Τοῦρκοι καὶ ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ βραχύ  
*to-be-brave the however Turks and the my father briefly*  
 τι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἀντικαταστάντες ἐξῆς φεύγειν  
*somewhat against the enemies having-stood-firm next to-flee*

ἐσχηματίζοντο κατ' ὀλίγον ἐφέλκοντες εἰς τὰς ἐνέδρας τοὺς  
*pretended by little drawing into the ambushes the*  
 πολεμίους καὶ τεχνικῶς ὑποσύροντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὴν  
*enemies and skillfully drawing-them-on when and at the*  
 πρώτην γεγόνασιν ἐνέδραν, ἐξ ὑποστροφῆς κατὰ μέτωπον  
*first they-have-come ambush from turning-back to face*  
 τούτοις εἰστήκεσαν. καὶ συνθήματός τινος γεγονότος εὐθὺς  
*to-them they-stood and signal some having-been-given at-once*  
 καθάπερ σφηκίαί τινες ἄλλος ἀλλαχόθεν διεξιππάζοντο  
*like wasps'-nests some one from-elsewhere rode-about*  
 τῶν ἐλλοχίζόντων καὶ ἀλαλαγμῷ πολλῷ καὶ βοῇ  
*of-the(-men) lying-in-ambush and with-war-cry much and shout*  
 καὶ τοῖς ἐπαλλήλοις τοξεύμασι τὰ τε ὦτα κατάρκροτα  
*and with-the successive arrows the both ears deafened*  
 τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν Βρυέννιον ἐποίησαντο καὶ τὰ ὄμματα  
*of-those about — Bryennios they-made and the eyes*  
 ξυνεζόφωσαν τῇ πυκνότητι τῶν βελῶν ἀπανταχόθεν  
*darkened with-the density of-the missiles from-everywhere*  
 διεκπιπτόντων. ἐνταῦθα δὲ μὴ ἀντιστήναι δυνάμενον τὸ  
*falling there and not to-withstand being-able the*  
 τοῦ Βρυεννίου στράτευμα (ἤδη γὰρ πᾶς κατετέτρωτο  
*— of-Bryennios army already for every(-man) was-wounded*  
 καὶ ἵππος καὶ ἄνθρωπος) πρὸς τροπὴν ἀπέκλινε τὴν  
*both horse and man to rout turned the*  
 σημαίαν καὶ τὸν νῶτον παίειν παρέσχε τοῖς ἐναντίοις.  
*standard and the back to-strike offered to-the opponents*  
 ἀλλ' ὃ γε Βρυέννιος καίτοι πολλὰ βαρυνόμενος ὑπὸ  
*but — at-least Bryennios although much being-weighed-down by*  
 τοῦ πολέμου καὶ σὺν βίᾳ ὠθούμενος ἐδείκνυ τὸ ἀνδρεῖον  
*the war and with force being-pushed showed the courage*  
 καὶ εὐψυχον αἰὲν μὲν ἐπιστροφάδην τύπτων τὸν  
*and bravery always indeed turning-about striking the(-man)*



ἐπιόντα, αἰὲ δὲ τὰ τῆς φυγῆς καλῶς καὶ ἀνδρείως  
*attacking always and the(-things) of-the flight well and bravely*  
 διοικονομούμενος. συνήραντο δὲ τούτῳ καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς ἐξ  
*managing helped and him also the brother from*  
 ἑκατέρου μέρους καὶ ὁ υἱὸς καὶ κατ' ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ θαῦμα  
*each side and the son and at that of-time marvel*  
 τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐδείχθησαν ἡρωϊκῶς ἀνταγωνισάμενοι. ἤδη  
*to-the enemy they-were-shown heroically fighting-back already*  
 δὲ τοῦ ἵππου καμόντος καὶ μὴ δυναμένου φεύγειν ἢ καὶ  
*and the horse having-tired and not being-able to-flee or even*  
 διώκειν (ἐγγὺς γὰρ ἦν τοῦ ἀποπεπνευκέναι διὰ τοὺς  
*to-pursue near for it-was of-the to-have-expired because-of the*  
 ἐπαλλήλους δρόμους) ἀνασειράσας τοῦτον ὁ Βρυέννιος  
*successive runs having-reined-in it — Bryennios*  
 καθάπερ τις ἀθλητὴς γενναῖος εἰστήκει πρὸς τὰς λαβὰς  
*like some athlete noble stood to the holds*  
 καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν δύο τῶν Τούρκων γενναίους ἐξεκαλέσατο.  
*and to himself two of-the Turks noble called-out*  
 ὧν ὁ μὲν εἷς παίει τῷ δόρατι, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἔφθη  
*of-whom the indeed one strikes with-the spear but not had-time*  
 δοῦναι βαρεῖαν πληγὴν καὶ λαμβάνει ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς  
*to-give heavy blow and receives from the right*  
 τάνδρὸς βαρυτέραν. φθάνει γὰρ ἀποκόψας τούτου τὴν  
*of-the-man heavier anticipates for having-cut-off his the*  
 χεῖρα ὁ Βρυέννιος τῷ ξίφει, ἢ μετὰ τοῦ δόρατος πρὸς  
*hand — Bryennios with-the sword which with the spear to*  
 τοῦδαφος ἐξεκυλίσθη. ἄτερος δὲ τούτων τοῦ ἰδίου ἵππου  
*the-ground rolled-out the-other and of-these from-the own horse*  
 καταπηδήσας καθάπερ τις πάρδαλις ἤλατο ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου  
*having-leapt-down like some leopard leapt onto the horse*  
 τοῦ Βρυεννίου ἐναρμόσας ἑαυτὸν ἐπὶ τῆς ὀσφύος. καὶ ὁ  
*— of-Bryennios having-fitted himself on the loins and he*

μὲν εἵχετο τούτου ἀπρίξ καὶ ἐπιβαίνειν ἐπειράτο τοῦ  
*indeed held-on to-him fast and to-mount tried the*  
 νώτου, ὁ δὲ καθάπερ θηρίον ἐπιστρέψας ἑαυτὸν ἐκκεντεῖν  
*back he but like beast having-turned himself to-stab*  
 διὰ τοῦ ξίφους ἐβούλετο. οὐ μέντοι κατὰ νοῦν ἐχώρει  
*with the sword wished not however according-to mind went*  
 αὐτῷ τὰ πράγματα, αἰεὶ τι τοῦ κατὰ νῶτον Τούρκου  
*for-him the affairs always somewhat the on back Turk*  
 λυγίζομένου καὶ τὰς τρώσεις ἐκφεύγοντος. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ  
*bending and the wounds escaping since and also*  
 ἡ δεξιὰ αὐτῷ ἀπειρήκει κενεμβατοῦσα καὶ ἀπέειπεν ὁ  
*the right-hand his had-given-out striking-the-air and gave-up the*  
 ἀθλητῆς, ἐνταῦθα πρὸς ἅπασαν χεῖρα πολεμίων ἐνδεδόκειν  
*athlete there to every hand of-enemies surrendered*  
 ἑαυτόν. οἱ καὶ συλλαβόμενοι τοῦτον καὶ ὥσπερ μέγα  
*himself who and having-seized him and as-if great*  
 κῦδος ἀράμενοι κομίζουσιν Ἀλεξίῳ τῷ Κομνηνῷ οὐ πάνν  
*glory having-won bring to-Alexios the Komnenos not very*  
 μὲν τοι πορρωτέρω καθεστηκότι τῆς τοῦ Βρυεννίου  
*indeed surely farther standing from-the — of-Bryennios*  
 ἀλώσεως, ἐκτάττοντι δὲ τὰς τε τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ  
*capture marshaling and the both of-the barbarians and*  
 τὰς ἑαυτοῦ φάλαγγας καὶ πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον ἐρεθίζοντι.  
*the own phalanxes and to the war rousing*  
 καὶ πρότερον μὲν διὰ τινων κηρύκων τὴν ἄλωσιν τοῦ  
*and earlier indeed through some heralds the capture of-the*  
 ἀνδρὸς διεπέμφαντο, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ αὐτὸν παριστῶσι τῷ  
*man they-sent-word then and also him they-present to-the*  
 στρατηγῷ θέαμα ὄντως φοβερὸν καὶ πολεμοῦντα καὶ  
*general spectacle truly fearsome both fighting and*  
 ἀλίσκόμενον. οὕτω μὲν οὖν τὸν Βρυέννιον εἰς χεῖρας ἔχων  
*being-captured thus indeed then — Bryennios in hands having*

ὁ Κομνηνὸς Ἀλέξιος δορύκτητον τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐκπέμπει  
— Komnenos Alexios spear-won to-the emperor sends  
Βοτανειάτῃ μηδέν τι λυμηνάμενος αὐτοῦ τὰ ὄμματα  
Botaneiates not-at-all anything having-injured his the eyes  
ὅλως ὁ ἀνὴρ. οὐ γὰρ ἦν τοιοῦτος ὁ Κομνηνός,  
at-all the man not for he-was such — Komnenos  
ὥστε μετὰ τὴν ἄλωσιν ἐπεξέρχεσθαι τοῖς ἐπ’ αὐτὸν  
so-as after the capture to-proceed-against those against him  
καταστᾶσιν, ἀλλ’ εἰς τιμωρίαν αὐτάρκη ἐνόμιζε τὴν τοῦ  
having-risen but as punishment sufficient he-reckoned the of-the  
πολεμίου ἄλωσιν· τὰ δ’ ἐντεῦθεν φιланθρωπίαι τε καὶ  
enemy capture the(-things) and thereafter kindnesses both and  
φιλοφροσύνη καὶ φιλοτιμία πολλή. ὅπερ καὶ τῷ Βρυεννίῳ  
friendly-acts and generosity much which also-in — Bryennios  
ἐνεδείξατο. καὶ γὰρ ἱκανὸν αὐτῷ μετὰ τὴν ἄλωσιν  
he-displayed and for considerable with-him after the capture  
συμπορευθεὶς διάστημα, ἐπὰν τὸν \*\*\* οὕτω καλούμενον  
having-traveled distance when the (lacuna) thus called  
τόπον κατέλαβεν ἀνακτήσασθαι τῆς λύπης χρησταῖς  
place he-reached to-restore from-the grief with-good  
ἐλπίσι τὸν ἄνδρα βουλευθεὶς πρὸς αὐτὸν ἔφη “ἀποβάντες  
hopes the man having-wished to him he-said having-dismounted  
τῶν ἵππων καθεζώμεθα μικρὸν ἑαυτοὺς διαναπαύσοντες”.  
from-the horses let-us-sit-down a-little ourselves about-to-rest  
ὁ δὲ τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς δεδιὼς κίνδυνον μεμνηνόςιν ἐόκει  
he but the about soul fearing danger to-madmen was-like  
καὶ οὐ γὰρ ῥαστώνης ἐν χρεῖα ἦν. πῶς γὰρ ὁ  
and not at-least of-ease in need he-was how for the(-one)  
καὶ αὐτὴν ἀπολεγόμενος τὴν ζωὴν; ἀλλ’ ὅμως τῷ  
even itself renouncing the life but nevertheless to-the  
τοῦ στρατηγοῦ εὐθὺς ὑπετάγη βουλῇματι. τοιοῦτον γὰρ  
of-the general at-once submitted will such for

τὸ δοῦλον πρὸς ἅπαν τὸ ἐπιταττόμενον ῥαδίως  
*the servile(-condition) to every the(-thing) commanded easily*  
 ὑπείκον, καὶ μᾶλλον εἰ δορυάλωτον ἄγοιτο. ἀποβάντες  
*yielding and more if spear-captured it-be-led having-dismounted*  
 τοῖνυν οἱ δημαγωγοὶ τῶν ἵππων, ὁ μὲν ἔνθεν ὡς  
*therefore the leaders from-the horses the(-one) indeed on-this-side as*  
 ἐπὶ στιβάδος ἐπὶ πόας εὐθὺς ἀνέκειτο χλοερᾶς, ἐκείθι δ'  
*on pallet on grass at-once reclined green there and*  
 ὁ Βρυέννιος ρίζης ὕπερθεν ὑψικόμου δρυὸς τὴν κεφαλὴν  
*— Bryennios root above high-foliaged of-oak the head*  
 ἀνέχων. κακείνος μὲν ἐκάθευδε, τὸν δ' οὐκ εἶχε νήδυμος  
*holding-up and-that-one indeed slept him but not held sweet*  
 ὕπνος, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ τῆς γλυκείας ποιήσεως, ἀλλὰ τὸν  
*sleep this indeed the of-the sweet poetry but the*  
 ὀφθαλμὸν ἀνατείνας καὶ τὸ ἀπηωρημένον τοῖς πτόρθοις  
*eye having-raised and the hung-up on-the branches*  
 ξίφος θεασάμενος, ἐπεὶ μηδένα μηδαμοῦ τότε παρόντα ἑώρα,  
*sword having-beheld since no-one anywhere then present he-saw*  
 ἀνακτησάμενος τῆς ἀθυμίας ἑαυτὸν κρείττονος γίνεταί  
*having-recovered from-the despondency himself of-stronger becomes*  
 λογισμοῦ καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα βουλεύεται.  
*reasoning and to-kill the my father plans*  
 καὶ τάχα ἂν εἰς ἔργον ἀπέβη τὸ βούλευμα, εἰ μὴ  
*and perhaps — into deed would-have-turned-out the plan if not*  
 τις ἄνωθεν θεία τοῦτον διεκώλυσε δύναμις τὸ ἄγριον τοῦ  
*some from-above divine him prevented power the savagery of-the*  
 θυμοῦ ἐξημερώσασα καὶ ἱλαρὸν τῷ στρατηγῷ ἐνατενίζειν  
*anger having-tamed and cheerful at-the general to-gaze*  
 παρασκευάσασα. ταῦτα ἐγὼ ἐκείνου διηγουμένου πολλάκις  
*having-prepared these(-things) I he narrating often*  
 ἤκουον. ἔνεστι δὲ τῷ βουλομένῳ ἐντεῦθεν κατανοεῖν,  
*heard it-is-possible and for-the(-one) wishing from-this to-perceive*

ὅπως τὸν Κομνηνὸν ἐς μείζονα ἀξίαν παρεφύλαττετο ὁ  
*how — Komnenos for greater dignity kept-in-store —*  
 θεὸς καθάπερ τι χρῆμα τίμιον τὰ Ῥωμαίων σκῆπτρα  
*God like some thing precious the of-(the)-Romans scepters*  
 δι' αὐτοῦ ἐπανακαλέσασθαι θέλων. εἰ δέ τι μετὰ  
*through him to-recall wishing if but anything after*  
 ταῦτα συμβέβηκε τῷ Βρυεννίῳ τῶν ἀβουλήτων, αἰτία  
*these(-things) has-befallen — to-Bryennios of-the unwished(-things) cause*  
 τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν βασιλέα τινῶν, ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἀναίτιος.  
*of-those about the emperor some the my father blameless*

XI • BASILAKIOS AT THE BARDARIOS

*Borilos takes Bryennios from Alexios and does with him what he did. Alexios is sent at once against Basilakios, a man admired for size and strength, who has subdued everything from Epidamnos onward, proclaimed himself emperor, and taken Thessalonike. Alexios camps between the old and new beds of the Bardarios. Expecting a night attack, he leaves his tent lit with lamps and the monk Ioannikios inside, and withdraws with the army to wait.*

Τὰ μὲν οὖν κατὰ τὸν Βρυέννιον οὕτω διήνυστο.  
*the(-things) indeed then concerning — Bryennios thus had-been-accomplished*  
 ὁ δὲ μέγας δομέστικος Ἀλέξιος καὶ ἐμὸς πατὴρ οὐκ ἔμελλεν  
*the but grand domestic Alexios and my father not was-about*  
 ἀτρεμῆσειν, ἀλλ' ἐξ ἀγώνων εἰς ἀγῶνας μεταχωρεῖν. ὁ  
*to-keep-still but from contests to contests to-pass —*  
 γὰρ Βορίλος τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν Βοτανειάτην οἰκειότατος  
*for Borilos of-the(-men) about — Botaneiates most-intimate*  
 βάρβαρος ἐξελθὼν τῆς πόλεως καὶ ὑπαντήσας τῷ  
*barbarian having-gone-out from-the city and having-met the*  
 μεγάλῳ δομestikῷ καὶ ἐμῷ πατρὶ τὸν Βρυέννιον ἐκ  
*grand domestic and my father — Bryennios from*

τῶν χειρῶν αὐτοῦ παραλαβὼν ἔδρασεν ὃ τι δὴ καὶ  
*the hands his having-taken-over did what — indeed also*  
 ἔδρασεν· ἐπισκίπτει δὲ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως τῷ ἐμῷ  
*he-did enjoins and from the emperor to-the my*  
 πατρὶ χωρεῖν ὥς ἐπὶ τὸν Βασιλάκιον ἤδη καὶ τοῦτον  
*father to-go as against — Basilakios already also him*  
 βασιλείας περιθέμενον διάδημα καὶ τὴν ἐσπέραν μετὰ  
*of-empire having-put-on diadem and the west after*  
 γε τὸν Βρυέννιον ἀκατασχέτως κυμαίνοντα. ὁ γάρ τοι  
*at-least — Bryennios irresistibly agitating — for surely*  
 Βασιλάκιος οὗτος ἀνὴρ μὲν ἦν τῶν πάνυ θαυματομένων  
*Basilakios this man indeed was of-the very admired*  
 ἐπ' ἀνδρεία τε καὶ θυμῷ καὶ τόλμῃ καὶ ῥώμῃ· ἄλλως δὲ  
*for courage both and spirit and daring and strength otherwise and*  
 ἄνθρωπος τυραννικὴν ψυχὴν ἔχων ἐφέιλκεν εἰς ἑαυτὸν τὰς  
*a-man tyrannical soul having drew to himself the*  
 ὑπερηφάνους τιμὰς καὶ ἀναρρήσεις τὰς μὲν ἐπενοεῖτο,  
*arrogant honors and acclamations some indeed he-devised*  
 τὰς δὲ προσέταττε. τοῦ γὰρ Βρυεννίου καθαιρεθέντος  
*others and he-ordered — for Bryennios having-been-deposed*  
 οὗτος καθάπερ ἐκείνου διάδοχος γεγωνὼς τὴν πᾶσαν εἰς  
*he as his successor having-become the whole on*  
 ἑαυτὸν ἀνεδέξατο τῆς τυραννίδος ὑπόθεσιν. καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς  
*himself took-up of-the tyranny enterprise and from —*  
 Ἐπιδάμνου ἀρξάμενος (μητρόπολις δὲ αὕτη προκαθημένη  
*Epidamnus having-begun metropolis and this presiding-over*  
 τοῦ Ἰλλυρικοῦ) μέχρι τῆς τῶν Θετταλῶν πόλεως ἦκε  
*— of-Illyricum as-far-as the of-the Thessalians city came*  
 πάντα καταστρεφάμενος αὐτὸς ἑαυτὸν καὶ χειροτονήσας  
*all having-subdued he himself both having-elected*  
 εἰς βασιλέα καὶ εὐφημήσας καὶ τὸν πλάνητα τούτου  
*as emperor and having-acclaimed and the wandering his*

στρατὸν ὅποι καὶ βούλοιτο μεταφέρων. ἦν γὰρ καὶ ἄλλως  
*army wherever also he-might-wish moving was for also otherwise*  
μὲν θαυμαζόμενος ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐπὶ τε μεγέθει σώματος καὶ  
*indeed admired the man for both size of-body and*  
κράτει βραχιόνων καὶ προσώπου σεμνότητι, οἷς μᾶλλον  
*strength of-arms and of-face dignity by-which more*  
ἀλίσκεται τὸ ἀγροικικὸν τοῦτο καὶ στρατιωτικὸν ἔθνος. οὐ  
*is-captivated the rustic this and soldierly nation not*  
γὰρ διορᾷ εἰς ψυχὴν οὐδ' ἐνατενίζει πρὸς ἀρετὴν, ἀλλὰ  
*for it-sees-through into soul nor gazes at virtue but*  
μέχρι τῶν τοῦ σώματος ἀρετῶν ἵσταται τόλμαν καὶ ῥώμην  
*as-far-as the of-the body virtues it-stops daring and strength*  
καὶ δρόμον καὶ μέγεθος θαυμάζον καὶ ταῦτα κρῖνον ἄξια  
*and speed and size admiring and these(-things) judging worthy*  
ἀλουργίδος καὶ διαδήματος. ὁ δὲ καὶ ταῦτα ἔχων οὐκ  
*of-purple and of-diadem he and also these(-things) having not*  
ἀγεννή, καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν εἶχεν ἀνδρείαν καὶ ἀκατάπληκτον·  
*ignoble also the soul had brave and undaunted*  
καὶ ὅλως οὗτος ὁ Βασιλάκιος τυραννικὸν τι καὶ ἔπνει  
*and altogether this — Basilakios tyrannical something both breathed*  
καὶ ἔβλεπε. φθέγμα τε γὰρ αὐτῷ βροντῶδες καὶ οἷον  
*and looked voice both for to-him thunderous and such-as*  
καταπλήξαι στρατιὰν ὅλην καὶ ἐμβόημα ἱκανὸν συστεῖλαι  
*to-strike-dumb army whole and shout sufficient to-check*  
ψυχῆς θράσος. καὶ ἄμαχος ἐν λόγοις ἐπίσης ἐπιχειρῶν  
*of-soul boldness and irresistible in words equally attempting*  
ἐπ' αἶψα τε καὶ συστεῖλαι τὸν στρατιώτην εἰς πόλεμον καὶ  
*to-raise both and to-check the soldier to war and*  
φυγὴν. μετὰ τοιούτων πλεονεκτημάτων στρατευόμενος ὁ  
*flight with such advantages campaigning the*  
ἀνὴρ καὶ περὶ αὐτὸν συλλεξάμενος ἄμαχον στρατιὰν τὴν  
*man and around him having-gathered irresistible army the*

Θετταλῶν πόλιν καταλαμβάνει, καθάπερ ἔφημεν. ὁ δέ  
*of-(the)-Thessalians city seizes as we-said the but*  
 γε ἐμὸς πατὴρ ὁ Κομνηνὸς Ἀλέξιος ὡς πρὸς Τυφῶνα  
*at-least my father — Komnenos Alexios as against Typhon*  
 μέγαν ἢ ἑκατοντάχειρα Γίγαντα ἀντιπαραταξάμενος καὶ  
*great or hundred-banded Giant having-arrayed-against and*  
 πᾶσαν ἑαυτῷ ἀνεγείρας στρατηγικὴν μηχανὴν καὶ φρόνημα  
*all in-himself having-roused generalship device and spirit*  
 γενναῖον ὡς πρὸς ἀντίπαλον ἀξιόμαχον παρεσκεύαστο.  
*noble as against opponent worthy-in-battle had-prepared*  
 καὶ μήπω τὸν ἐκ τῶν προτέρων ἄθλων κοινορτὸν  
*and not-yet the from the earlier contests dust*  
 ἀποτιναξάμενος μηδὲ τὸν λύθρον τοῦ ξίφους καὶ τῶν  
*having-shaken-off nor the gore from-the sword and from-the*  
 χειρῶν ἀποπλυνάμενος ὥσπερ λέων ἐχώρει βλοσυρὸς  
*hands having-washed-off like lion went grim*  
 πρὸς τὸν χαυλιόδοντα τοῦτον σὺν Βασιλάκιον τὸν θυμὸν  
*against the tusked this boar Basilakios the spirit*  
 αὐτοῦ ἀνεγείρας. καὶ καταλαμβάνει δῆτα τὸν ποταμὸν  
*his having-roused and reaches indeed the river*  
 Βαρδάριον· οὕτω γὰρ ἐγχωρίως αὐτὸν ὀνομάζουσι· ρεῖ  
*Bardarios thus for locally it they-name flows*  
 μὲν γὰρ ἄνωθεν ἀπὸ τῶν ἐγγύθεν τῆς Μυσίας ὄρων,  
*indeed for from-above from the nearby — of-Mysia mountains*  
 παραμείβων δὲ πολλοὺς μεταξὺ τόπους καὶ διορίζων πρὸς  
*passing-by and many between places and dividing toward*  
 τε τὴν ἑω καὶ τὴν ἐσπέραν τὰ τε Βερροῖα καὶ  
*both the east and the west the(-lands) both to-Berroia and*  
 τὰ Θεσσαλονίκη προσήκοντα ἐκδίδωσιν εἰς τὴν καθ'  
*the(-lands) to-Thessalonike belonging empties into the by*  
 ἡμᾶς καὶ νοτιάν θάλασσαν. πάσχουσι δὲ οἱ μέγιστοι τῶν  
*us and southern sea suffer and the greatest of-the*



ποταμῶν τοιοῦτόν τι. ἐπειδὰν διὰ τῆς προσχώσεως  
*rivers such something when through the silting*  
 ἀνάστημά τι ἀξιόλογον ἐπιφορήσωσι γῆς, τότε δὴ ἐπὶ  
*rise some considerable they-bring-down of-earth then indeed to*  
 τὰ κατάρροπα ῥέουσιν ὥσπερ δὴ μεταμείβοντες τὰς  
*the sloping(-ground) they-flow as-if indeed changing the*  
 πρώτας κοίτας αὐτῶν καὶ τὴν μὲν παλαιὰν καταλείπουσι  
*first beds their and the indeed old leave*  
 πάροδον διάκενον ὑγροῦ καὶ χηρεύουσιν ὕδατος, ἣν  
*course empty of-moisture and bereft of-water which*  
 δὲ νῦν διοδεύουσιν, ἐμπιπλώσι ῥευμάτων πολλῶν. τούτων  
*and now they-traverse they-fill with-streams many these*  
 οὖν τῶν δυεῖν παρόδων, τῆς τε παλαιᾶς χαράδρας καὶ  
*then the two courses of-the both old ravine and*  
 τῆς ἄρτι γενομένης πορείας, τὸ μεταξὺ θεασάμενος ὁ  
*of-the just made passage the between having-beheld the*  
 στρατηγικώτατος οὗτος Ἀλέξιος καὶ ἐμὸς πατὴρ καὶ  
*most-skilled-general this Alexios and my father and*  
 τὸν μὲν ὁλκὸν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὡς ἀσφάλειαν θέμενος ἐκ  
*the indeed channel of-the river as security having-made on*  
 θατέρου, τῇ δὲ παλαιᾷ διόδῳ ἤδη φάραγγι γεγωνυῖα  
*the-one(-side) the and old passage already gorge having-become*  
 ἐκ τῆς τοῦ ῥεύματος ἐπιρροίας καθάπερ αὐτοφυεῖ  
*from the of-the stream inflow as-if natural*  
 ἀποχρησάμενος διώρυχι ἐστρατοπέδευεν, οὐ πλεῖον τῶν  
*having-used trench encamped not more than-the*  
 δυεῖν ἢ τριῶν σταδίων ἀλλήλων ἀποδιεστηκότων.  
*two or three stades from-each-other being-distant*  
 καὶ εὐθὺς ἐν παραγγελίᾳ πάντες ἦσαν, ἡμέρας μὲν  
*and at-once in command all were by-day indeed*  
 ἀναπαύσασθαι καὶ παραμυθῆσαι ὕπνῳ τὸ σῶμα καὶ  
*to-rest and to-refresh with-sleep the body and*

τοῖς ἵπποις τροφήν δοῦναι τὴν ἀρκοῦσαν· μέλλουσι γὰρ  
*to-the horses food to-give the sufficient they-are-about for*  
 τῆς ἑσπέρας καταλαβούσης ἀγρυπνήσαί τε καὶ ἐλπίζειν  
*the evening having-come to-stay-awake both and to-expect*  
 ἀδόκητόν τι παρὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἐπισυμβῆναι. ταῦτα  
*unexpected something from the enemy to-befall these(-things)*  
 δέ, οἶμαι, διωκονόμετο ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ κίνδυνον ὑφορώμενος  
*and I-think had-arranged the my father danger suspecting*  
 κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν ἐκείνην παρὰ τῶν πολεμίων. ἐπιθήσεσθαι  
*during the evening that from the enemy to-attack*  
 γὰρ ἑαυτῷ τούτους ἤλπιζεν εἴτ' ἐκ πολυπειρίας τοῦτο  
*for himself them he-expected whether from great-experience this*  
 προμαντευόμενος εἴτε ἄλλως εἰκάσας. οὐ μὲν τὰ  
*foreseeing or otherwise having-guessed not however the(-things)*  
 τῆς προφητείας αὐτῷ εἰς μακρὰν ἐληλύθει οὐδὲ προέγνω  
*of-the prophecy to-him to far had-gone nor he-foresaw*  
 μέν, οὐ τὸ δέον δὲ διωκῆσατο, ἀλλ' ἀπάρας τῆς  
*indeed not the needful and he-arranged but having-set-out from-the*  
 τούτου σκηνῆς ἅμα τοῖς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν στρατιώταις σὺν  
*his tent together-with the about him soldiers with*  
 ὅπλοις καὶ ἵπποις καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς πρὸς μάχην ἐπιτηδείοις  
*arms and horses and all the(-things) for battle suitable*  
 ἀπέστη μὲν τῆς σκηνῆς λαμπάδας τε καταλελοιπῶς  
*he-withdrew indeed from-the tent lamps both having-left*  
 ἐκεῖθι πανταχόθεν φαινούσας καὶ τινα τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτὸν  
*there everywhere shining and one of-the about him*  
 οἰκεῖον Ἰωαννίκιον πάλαι τὸν μοναχικὸν ἐλόμενον βίον  
*intimate Ioannikios long-ago the monastic having-chosen life*  
 τὴν σκηνὴν καταπιστεύσας καὶ ὅσα ἐπεφέρετο εἰς  
*the tent having-entrusted and as-much-as he-carried for*  
 τε τράπεζαν χρεώδη καὶ τὴν ἄλλην παρασκευήν· αὐτὸς  
*both table needful and the other equipment himself*

δὲ πορρωτάτῳ ἀπὼν ἐκάθητο μετὰ τῆς ἐνόπλου  
*and very-far going-away sat with the armed*  
 στρατιᾶς τὸ μέλλον караδοκῶν, τοῦτο τεχναζόμενος, ἵν' ὁ  
*army the future awaiting this contriving that —*  
 Βασιλάκιος ἀνημμένας ἀπανταχόθεν πυρκαϊὰς ἰδὼν καὶ  
*Basilakios kindled everywhere fires having-seen and*  
 λαμπαδουχομένην τὴν τοῦμοῦ πατρὸς σκηνὴν οὔῃσαιτο  
*lit-with-lamps the of-my father tent might-think*  
 ἐκεῖθι τοῦτον εἶναι διαναπαυόμενον, ὥς ἐντεῦθεν ἐκείνῳ  
*there him to-be resting as hence to-him*  
 τοῦτον ἀλώσιμον εἶναι καὶ ὑποχείριον.  
*him capturable to-be and in-bis-hands*

## XII • THE NIGHT ATTACK

*Basilakios falls on the empty camp and searches the tent, mocking the lisping domestic and questioning the monk, until he realizes he has been tricked. Alexios attacks the disordered enemy and cuts off the sword hand of a man he takes for Basilakios. In the darkness he fights everywhere; the Cappadocian Goules breaks his sword on Basilakios' helmet, Peter Tornikios kills many, and a Celt of Alexios' own strikes him with a spear by mistake and is pardoned.*

Οὐκ εἰς μάτην, καθάπερ εἰρήκειμεν, ἡ μαντεία τοῦμοῦ πατρὸς  
*not in vain as we-had-said the divination of-my father*  
 Ἀλεξίου. ἐπῆλθε γὰρ τῷ προσδοκωμένῳ στρατοπέδῳ  
*Alexios came-upon for the expected camp*  
 ἀθρόον ὁ Βασιλάκιος σὺν ἵππεῦσί τε καὶ πεζοῖς  
*suddenly — Basilakios with horsemen both and foot-soldiers*  
 μυριάνδρον στρατιὰν ἐπαγόμενος καὶ τὰς μὲν κλισίας  
*ten-thousand-strong army bringing and the indeed huts*  
 ἐφεῦρεν ἐκασταχοῦ ἀναλαμπούσας πυρί, ἔξαστράπτουσιν  
*he-found everywhere blazing with-fire flashing*

δὲ καὶ τὴν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ σκηνὴν θεασάμενος ὥς  
 and also the of-the general tent having-beheld as  
 εἶχε ῥύμης εἰς ταύτην εἰσεληλύθει πολυτάρακτόν τι  
 he-had of-impetus into it had-entered confused something  
 καὶ θορυβῶδες βοῶν. ὥς δ' οὐκ ἦν οὐδαμοῦ ὁ  
 and tumultuous shouting when but not was anywhere the(-man)  
 προσδοκώμενος οὐδέ τις ἀνέπτη στρατιώτης ἐκείθεν τὸ  
 expected nor any flew-out soldier from-there the  
 παράπαν ἢ στρατηγός, εἰ μὴ πού τινες καταλελειμμένοι  
 at-all or general if not perhaps some left-behind  
 τῶν θητευόντων εὐκαταφρόνητοι, ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐβόα καὶ  
 of-the servants contemptible still more he-shouted and  
 ἐκεκράγει “ποῦ ποτέ ἐστιν ὁ τραυλός;” οὕτως καὶ  
 cried-out where ever is the lisper thus also  
 τοῖς ῥήμασι εἰς τὸν μέγαν δομέστικον ἀποσκώπτων. ἦν  
 with-the words at the grand domestic jeering was  
 γὰρ τᾶλλα μὲν οὗτος ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ Ἀλέξιος εὖστομος  
 for in-the-rest indeed he the my father Alexios eloquent  
 καὶ οὐδεὶς οὕτω ῥήτωρ ἦν αὐτοφυῆς ἔν τε ἐνθυμήμασι  
 and no-one so orator was natural in both arguments  
 καὶ ἐπιχειρήμασι, μόνον δὲ κατὰ τὸν φθόγγον τοῦ  
 and proofs only but in the sound of-the  
 ῥῶ ὑπωλίσθαι τε μετρίως καὶ ἀσυμφανῶς διώκλα ἢ  
 rho slipped both moderately and indistinctly faltered the  
 γλῶττα, καίτοι κατὰ τᾶλλα στοιχεῖα τὸν ῥοῦν ἀκάθεκτον  
 tongue although in the-other letters the flow unchecked  
 ἔχουσα. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν οὕτως ὀνειδίζων ἐβόα καὶ διηρευνᾶτο  
 having but he indeed thus reviling shouted and searched  
 καὶ ἀνέτρεπε πάντα καὶ κιβώτια καὶ σκίμποδας καὶ σκεύη  
 and turned-over all both chests and cots and baggage  
 καὶ αὐτὴν δὴ τὴν τοῦμοῦ πατρός κλίνην, μὴ πως ὁ  
 and itself indeed the of-my father bed lest perhaps the

στρατηγὸς ἔν τινι τούτων κέκρυπτο. καὶ θαμὰ πρὸς τε  
*general in some of-these was-hidden and often at both*  
 τὸν μοναχὸν οὕτω καλούμενον Ἰωαννίκιον ἐνέβλεπε· καὶ  
*the monk so called Ioannikios he-looked and*  
 γὰρ διὰ σπουδῆς ἐπεποίθητο ἡ μήτηρ ἐν ἀπάσαις ταῖς  
*for with zeal had-made the mother in all the*  
 αὐτοῦ ἐκστρατεαῖς ὁμόσκηνον ἔχειν τῶν τιμωτέρων τινὰ  
*his campaigns tent-mate to-have of-the more-honored some*  
 μοναχόν, καὶ ὁ εὖνους οὗτος υἱὸς ὑπέικε τῷ μητρικῷ  
*monk and the well-disposed this son yielded to-the maternal*  
 θελήματι οὐ τὰ ἐν βρέφει μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐς  
*will not the(-years) in infancy only but also into*  
 μείρακας παραγγείλας καὶ μέχρις ἂν γυναικὶ συνηρμόσθη·  
*youth having-entered and until — to-wife he-was-joined*  
 καὶ τὰ τῆς σκηνῆς ἅπαντα ὁ Βασιλάκιος διηρυνᾶτο  
*and the(-things) of-the tent all — Basilakios searched*  
 καί, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ τοῦ Ἀριστοφάνους, ἐρεβοδιφῶν οὐκ  
*and this indeed the — of-Aristophanes searching-Erebus not*  
 ἀνίει πυνθανόμενος ἅμα καὶ τὸν Ἰωαννίκιον περὶ  
*he-ceased inquiring at-the-same-time also — Ioannikios about*  
 τοῦ δομεστίκου. τοῦ δὲ πρὸ ὥρας ἐξίεναι ξὺν παντὶ  
*the domestic he and before hour to-go-out with all*  
 τῷ στρατεύματι δισχυριζομένου, γνοὺς ὅτι πολὺν τὸν  
*the army insisting having-learned that great the*  
 πλάνον ὑπέμεινε καὶ τοῖς ἅπασιν ἀπειπάμενος ἄλλας ἐκ  
*deception he-had-suffered and in-the all having-given-up other from*  
 ἄλλων φωνὰς μεταμείβων ἐβόα “ἄνδρες συστρατιῶται,  
*other cries changing shouted men fellow-soldiers*  
 ἡπατήμεθα· ὁ πόλεμος ἔξωθεν”. οὐπω τέλος ἔσχεν ὁ  
*we-have-been-deceived the war outside not-yet end had the*  
 λόγος αὐτῷ, καὶ ἐξιούσι τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἐφίσταται  
*speech to-him and going-out from-the camp comes-upon*

τούτοις ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ὁ Κομνηνὸς Ἀλέξιος προπηδήσας  
*them the my father — Komnenos Alexios having-leapt-ahead*  
τῆς στρατιᾶς σὺν ὀλίγοις τισὶ μετὰ σφοδρότητος. καὶ τινα  
*of-the army with few some with violence and some*  
εἰς τάξιν συνιστῶντα τὰς φάλαγγας θεασάμενος (καὶ γὰρ  
*into rank drawing-up the phalanxes having-beheld and for*  
οἱ πλείους τῶν στρατιωτῶν τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν Βασιλάκιον  
*the most of-the soldiers of-the about — Basilakios*  
εἰς τὴν λείαν ἑαυτοὺς ἐπιδεδωκότες καὶ τὰ λάφυρα —  
*to the booty themselves having-given and the spoils*  
τοῦτο γὰρ καὶ πάλαι τῷ μῶ πατρὶ ἐμεμηχάνητο — οὐπω  
*this for also long-ago to-my father had-been-contrived not-yet*  
ἔφθησαν συνελθεῖν καὶ εἰς παράταξιν καταστήναι, καὶ  
*had-had-time to-come-together and into battle-line to-be-set and*  
ἐπέστη αὐτοῖς ἀθρόον κακὸν ὁ μέγας δομέστικος), ἰδὼν  
*came-upon them suddenly evil the grand domestic having-seen*  
δὲ τὸν καθιστῶντα τὰς φάλαγγας καὶ νομίσας εἶτε  
*and the(-man) setting the phalanxes and having-thought whether*  
ἀπὸ τοῦ μεγέθους εἶτε ἀπὸ τῆς τῶν ὅπλων λαμπρότητος  
*from the size or from the of-the arms brilliance*  
(καὶ γὰρ ἀντέστειλε τούτῳ τὰ ὅπλα πρὸς τὴν ἀστράν  
*and for flashed-back for-him the arms to the starry*  
βολήν), ἐκείνον εἶναι τοῦτον τὸν Βασιλάκιον, συναντήσας  
*beam that-one to-be this — Basilakios having-met*  
αὐτῷ γοργῶς παίει κατὰ τῆς χειρός· ἡ δ' εὐθὺς μετὰ  
*him swiftly strikes on the hand which and at-once with*  
τοῦ ξίφους εἰς γῆν ἔρριπτο, ὅπερ μεγάλως τὴν φάλαγγα  
*the sword to earth was-flung which greatly the phalanx*  
συνετάραξεν. οὐ μὲν ὁ Βασιλάκιος ἦν, ἀλλὰ τις τῶν  
*threw-into-confusion not however — Basilakios was(-it) but some(-one) of-the*  
περὶ τὸν Βασιλάκιον γενναιότατος οὐδὲν τοῦ Βασιλακίου  
*around — Basilakios most-noble in-nothing — than-Basilakios*

ὅσον γε τὰ εἰς ἀνδρείαν λειπόμενος. βαρὺς οὖν  
*as-far-as at-least the(-things) in courage falling-short grievous then*  
 τοῦ λοιποῦ κατ' αὐτῶν κυλινδούμενος καὶ τοξεύμασι  
*for-the rest against them rolling and with-arrows*  
 βάλλων καὶ δόρατι τιτρώσκων καὶ ἀλαλαγμοῖς ἐμβοῶν  
*shooting and with-spear wounding and with-war-cries shouting-at*  
 καὶ νυκτὶ συγχέων καὶ πάντα καὶ τόπον καὶ χρόνον  
*and with-night confounding both all and place and time*  
 καὶ ὄργανον εἰς νίκην λαμβάνων καὶ τούτοις προσφυῶς  
*and instrument for victory taking and these aptly*  
 ἀποχρώμενος ἀκλονήτῳ φρονήματι καὶ ἀσυγχύτῳ τῇ  
*using with-unshaken spirit and unconfused in-the*  
 διανοίᾳ καὶ ἄλλον ἄλλοσε φεύγοντα προλαμβάνων πάντα  
*mind and one elsewhere fleeing overtaking all*  
 διέκρινε καὶ τὸν ἐχθρὸν καὶ τὸν φίλιον. ἀλλὰ καί  
*he-distinguished both the enemy and the friend but also*  
 τις ἀνὴρ Καππαδόκης Γούλης τὸ ἐπώνυμον, εὖνους  
*a-certain man Cappadocian Goules by-the surname well-disposed*  
 θεραπῶν τοῦμοῦ πατρός, τὴν χεῖρα γενναῖος, τὸν θυμὸν  
*servant of-my father in-the hand noble in-the spirit*  
 εἰς πολέμους ἀκάθεκτος, τὸν Βασιλάκιον θεασάμενος καὶ  
*for wars unrestrainable — Basilakios having-beheld and*  
 ἀκριβῶς ἐγνωκὼς παίει κατὰ τῆς κόρυθος. ἀλλὰ τὸ  
*exactly having-recognized strikes on the helmet but the(-fate)*  
 τοῦ Μενέλεω πρὸς τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον πέπονθε. τὸ γὰρ ξίφος  
*— of-Menelaos against — Alexander suffered the for sword*  
 αὐτοῦ τριχθὰ τε καὶ τετραχθὰ διατρυφθὲν ἐξέπεσε  
*his into-three both and into-four having-been-shattered fell-out*  
 τῆς χειρός, τῆς λαβῆς καταλειφθείσης ἐν τῇ χειρί. ὃν  
*from-the hand the hilt left in the hand whom*  
 ὁ στρατηγὸς θεασάμενος εὐθὺς διελοιδορεῖτο, ὅτι μὴ  
*the general having-beheld at-once reviled because not*

κατάσχοι τὸ ξίφος, καὶ ἄνανδρον ἀπεκάλει τοῦτον. ἀλλ'  
*be-held-fast the sword and unmanly called him but*  
 ὁ στρατιώτης τὴν καταλειφθεῖσαν τοῦ ξίφους λαβὴν  
*the soldier the left of-the sword hilt*  
 παραδεικνὺς πραότερον ἐποίει τὸν μέγαν δομέστικον. καί  
*showing milder made the grand domestic and*  
 τις δ' ἄλλος Μακεδών, Πέτρος τὴν κλήσιν Τορνίκιος  
*a-certain and other Macedonian Peter by-the name Tornikios*  
 τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν, μέσον τῶν πολεμίων ἐμπεσὼν πολλοὺς  
*by-the surname middle of-the enemy having-fallen-on many*  
 τούτων ἀνῆρει. ἡ δὲ φάλαγξ εἴπετο ἀγνοοῦσα τὰ  
*of-them killed the but phalanx followed not-knowing the(-things)*  
 δρώμενα· ἐν σκότει γὰρ τῆς μάχης καθισταμένης οὐχ οἶοί  
*being-done in darkness for the battle being-fought not able*  
 τε ἦσαν ἅπαντες τὰ γινόμενα ὁρᾶν. ὁ δὲ Κομνηνὸς  
*— were all the(-things) happening to-see — but Komnenos*  
 ἐπὶ τὸ μήπω διασπασθὲν τῆς φάλαγγος ἔτετο παίων  
*at the not-yet broken-apart(-part) of-the phalanx hurled-himself striking*  
 τοὺς ἀντικαθισταμένους καὶ ἀνθυποστρέφων αὐθις εἰς  
*those opposing and turning-back again to*  
 τοὺς ἰδίους, σπεύδων καὶ τὸ ἔτι συνιστάμενον τῆς τοῦ  
*the own(-men) hastening and the still holding-together(-part) of-the —*  
 Βασιλακίου παραλῦσαι φάλαγγος καὶ διαπεμπόμενος εἰς  
*of-Basilakios to-break-up phalanx and sending to*  
 τοὺς ὀπισθεν καὶ παρακελευόμενος μὴ μέλλειν, ἀλλ'  
*the(-men) behind and urging not to-delay but*  
 ἔπεσθαί οἱ καὶ καταλαμβάνειν ταχύτερον. ἐν τοσούτῳ  
*to-follow him and to-overtake more-quickly in so-much(-time)*  
 δὲ ἀνὴρ τις Κελτὸς τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν δομέστικον, ὧν  
*and man a-certain Celt of-the(-men) about the domestic that*  
 ἐν βραχεὶ τὰ πάντα διηγῆσωμαι, γενναῖος στρατιώτης καὶ  
*in brief the all I-may-narrate noble soldier and*



Ἄρεως ὅλος ἔμπλεως τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα ἰδὼν μεσόθεν  
*of-Ares wholly full the my father having-seen from-the-midst*  
 τῶν πολεμίων ἄρτι ἐξίόντα ἐσπασμένον τὸ ξίφος θερμὸν  
*of-the enemy just coming-out having-drawn the sword hot*  
 ἀπὸ τοῦ αἵματος ἀναπέμπον ἀτμὸν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων  
*from the blood sending-up vapor and of-the enemy*  
 νομίσας ἓνα ἀθρόον αὐτῷ ἐμπεσὼν παίει τῷ δόρατι  
*having-thought one suddenly on-him having-fallen strikes with-the spear*  
 περὶ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τάχα ἂν ἔξεδρον τὸν στρατηγὸν  
*about the breast and perhaps — unseated the general*  
 ἐπεποιήκει, εἰ μὴ αὐτὸς ἅμα τε πρὸς τὸ ἐδραιότερον  
*would-have-made if not he-himself at-once both to the firmer*  
 ἑαυτὸν ἐφῆδράσατο καὶ ὀνομαστὶ τοῦτον ἐκάλεσεν  
*himself had-settled-in-the-seat and by-name him called*  
 ἀποκόψειν ἀπειλησάμενος διὰ τοῦ ξίφους παραχρήμα τὴν  
*to-cut-off having-threatened with the sword immediately the*  
 κεφαλὴν. ὁ δέ, ἐπειδὴ πως τὸν ἀγνοοῦντα προὔβαλετο  
*head he but since somehow the not-knowing(-plea) he-put-forward*  
 καὶ τὴν νύκτα καὶ τὸ συγκεχύσθαι περὶ τὴν μάχην,  
*and the night and the to-have-been-confused about the battle*  
 μετὰ τῶν ζώντων ἡρίθμητο.  
*with the living was-counted*

*At dawn Basilakios' brother Manuel rallies the army from a hill but is struck down with a club by Kourtikios. Basilakios flees to Thessalonike, which admits him; Alexios encamps and threatens to storm it, and the citizens let him in. Basilakios holds the acropolis until its guards hand him over. On the way back, the emperor's men blind him near a spring at Chlempina, which still bears his name. Anna calls this the third labor of Alexios as Herakles, and for all these deeds he is proclaimed sebastos before the senate.*

Τὰ μὲν νυκτὸς ἔργα τοῦ δομεστίκου τῶν σχολῶν σὺν  
*the indeed by-night deeds of-the domestic of-the scholae with*  
 ὀλίγοις τοιαῦτα· ἡμέρας δὲ ἄρτι διαγελώσης καὶ τοῦ  
*few such(-were) (the)-day and just smiling and the*  
 ἡλίου τοῦ ὀρίζοντος ὑπερκύψαντος οἱ τοῦ Βασιλακίου  
*sun the horizon having-peeped-over the — of-Basilakios*  
 φαλαγγάρχαι ἔσπευδον ὅλη γνῶμη ἐπισυλλέγειν τοὺς  
*phalanx-commanders hastened with-whole mind to-gather the(-men)*  
 περὶ τὴν λείαν ἐσπουδακότας καὶ ἀπολειφθέντας τῆς  
*about the booty having-been-busy and left-behind from-the*  
 μάχης. ὁ δὲ μέγας δομέστικος τὸ ἴδιον καταστήσας  
*battle the and grand domestic the own having-set*  
 στράτευμα κατὰ τοῦ Βασιλακίου αὐθις ἔετο. πόρρωθεν  
*army against — Basilakios again hurled-himself from-afar*  
 δέ τινας αὐτῶν οἱ τοῦ δομεστίκου θεασάμενοι καὶ κατ'  
*and some of-them the(-men) of-the domestic having-beheld and against*  
 αὐτῶν σφοδρῶς ἐξορμήσαντες ἐτρέψαντο καὶ τινας αὐτῶ  
*them violently having-charged routed and some to-him*  
 ζωγρίαν ἐπανεληλυθότες προσήγον. ὁ δὲ τοῦ Βασιλακίου  
*alive having-come-back brought the and — of-Basilakios*  
 ἀδελφὸς Μανουὴλ ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς ἀνελθὼν ἐπερρώννυε  
*brother Manuel on hill a-certain having-gone-up encouraged*

τὸ στράτευμα μέγα φωνῶν ὦδε “τοῦ Βασιλακίου ἡ  
*the army loudly shouting thus — of-Basilakios the*  
 σήμερόν ἐστιν ἡμέρα καὶ νίκη”. εἰς δέ τις Βασίλειος  
*today is day and victory one and a-certain Basil*  
 τὴν κλήσιν Κουρτίκιος τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν, γνωστὸς καὶ  
*by-the name Kourtikios by-the surname known and*  
 συνήθης τοῦ Βρυεννίου ἐκείνου Νικηφόρου, περὶ οὗ ὁ  
*familiar — of-Bryennios that Nikephoros about whom the*  
 λόγος ἐμνήσθη, καὶ τὰ εἰς πολέμους ἀκάθεκτος,  
*account made-mention and the(-things) in wars unrestrainable*  
 προθέων τῆς τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ παρατάξεως ἄνεισι πρὸς τὸν  
*running-ahead of-the — of-Komnenos battle-line goes-up to the*  
 λόφον. ὁ δὲ Βασιλάκιος Μανουὴλ τοῦ κουλεοῦ τὸ ξίφος  
*hill — but Basilakios Manuel from-the sheath the sword*  
 σπασάμενος ὅλας ἡνίας χαλάσας σφοδρῶς κατ’ αὐτοῦ  
*having-drawn full reins having-slackened violently against him*  
 ἔετο· ὁ δὲ Κουρτίκιος οὐ διὰ ξίφους, ἀλλὰ τὴν  
*hurled-himself — but Kourtikios not through sword but the*  
 ἀπηωρημένην τῇ ἐφесτρίδι ράβδον ἐφελκύσας παίει τοῦτον  
*hung on-the cloak club having-drawn strikes him*  
 κατὰ τοῦ κράνους καὶ παραχρῆμα καταβάλλει τοῦ ἵππου  
*on the helmet and immediately strikes-down from-the horse*  
 καὶ δεσμώτην τοῦτον ἐπισυρόμενος καθάπερ τι λάφυρον  
*and prisoner him dragging like some spoil*  
 τῷμῳ πατρὶ προσῆγεν. ἐν τοσούτῳ δὲ καὶ τὸν Κομνηνὸν  
*to-my father brought in so-much and also — Komnenos*  
 μετὰ τῶν ἰδίων ἀναφανέντα ταγμάτων τὸ ἐκλειπόμενον  
*with the own having-appeared divisions the failing*  
 τοῦ Βασιλακίου στράτευμα θεασάμενον μικρὸν ἀντισχόν  
*— of-Basilakios army having-beheld a-little having-beld-out*  
 εἰς φυγὴν ἐξώρμησε. καὶ ὁ μὲν Βασιλάκιος πρόσθεν  
*to flight rushed and — indeed Basilakios ahead*

ἔφευγεν, ὁ δὲ Κομνηνὸς Ἀλέξιος ἐδίωκε. καταλαβόντων δὲ  
 fled — and Komnenos Alexios pursued having-arrived and  
 εἰς Θεσσαλονίκην, εὐθὺς οἱ Θεσσαλονικεῖς τὸν Βασιλάκιον  
 at Thessalonike at-once the Thessalonians — Basilakios  
 ἐδέξαντο τῷ στρατηγῷ ἐπιζυγώσαντες παραχρῆμα τὰς  
 received to-the general having-barred immediately the  
 πύλας. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὥς ἀνῆκεν ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ οὐδ'  
 gates but not-even so relented the my father nor  
 ἀπεδύσατο τὸν θώρακα οὐδὲ τὸ κράνος ἀπέθετο οὐδὲ τὴν  
 took-off the breastplate nor the helmet laid-aside nor the  
 ἀσπίδα τῶν ὤμων παρεῖτο οὐδὲ τὸ ξίφος ἀπέρριψεν,  
 shield from-the shoulders let-go nor the sword threw-away  
 ἀλλὰ στρατοπεδεύσας ἡπείλει τειχομαχίας τῇ πόλει καὶ  
 but having-encamped he-threatened wall-assaults to-the city and  
 πόρθησιν ἀντικρυς. καὶ ἐθέλων διασῶσαι τὸν ἄνδρα διὰ  
 sacking outright and wishing to-save the man through  
 τοῦ συνεφεπομένου αὐτῷ μοναχοῦ Ἰωαννικίου (ἄνῃρ δὲ  
 the accompanying him monk Ioannikios man and  
 οὗτος ἐπ' ἀρετῇ διαβόητος) τὰ περὶ εἰρήνης πρὸς  
 this for virtue renowned the(-things) about peace to  
 τὸν Βασιλάκιον ἡρώτα, ὥστε τὰς πίστεις λαβόντα, μηδὲν  
 — Basilakios he-proposed so-that the pledges having-received nothing  
 δεινὸν πείσεσθαι, ἐγχειρίζειν αὐτῷ ἑαυτὸν τε ὁμοῦ καὶ  
 dreadful he-would-suffer to-hand-over to-him himself both together and  
 τὴν πόλιν. καὶ ὁ μὲν Βασιλάκιος ἀπειθὴς ἦν, οἱ δὲ  
 the city and — indeed Basilakios unpersuaded was the but  
 Θεσσαλονικεῖς δέει τοῦ μὴ ἀλῶναι τὴν πόλιν καὶ δεινὸν  
 Thessalonians from-fear of-the lest to-be-taken the city and dreadful  
 τι παθεῖν παρεχώρουν τῷ Κομνηνῷ τῆς εἰσόδου.  
 something to-suffer granted — to-Komnenos the entrance  
 ἀλλ' ὁ Βασιλάκιος αἰσθόμενος τοῦ γινομένου ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 but — Basilakios having-perceived the(-thing) happening from the

πλήθους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν μεταβαίνει καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης εἰς  
*multitude to the acropolis passes and from this onto*  
 ἐκείνην ἐφάλλεται. καὶ οὐδ' ὥς ἐπιλανθάνεται πολέμου καὶ  
*that leaps and not-even so forgets war and*  
 μάχης, καίτοι τοῦ δομestikou πίστεις αὐτῷ διδόντος μηδέν  
*battle although the domestic pledges to-him giving nothing*  
 τι παθεῖν ἀνήκεστον. ἀλλ' ὥρᾱτό γε ὁ Βασιλάκιος  
*anything to-suffer irremediable but was-seen at-least — Basilakios*  
 καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς καὶ ἐν οἷς ἐστενοχωρεῖτο λίαν ἀνὴρ.  
*also in the dangers and in which he-was-hard-pressed very man*  
 οὐδὲ γὰρ ὑφείναι τι τοῦ ἀνδρώδους καὶ τοῦ γενναίου  
*not-even for to-give-up anything of-the manly and of-the noble*  
 ἡβούλετο, ἕως ἐκείθεν αὐτὸν οἱ τῆς ἀκροπόλεως  
*he-wished until from-there him the(-men) of-the acropolis*  
 οἰκήτορες καὶ φύλακες ἐξέλασαντες ἅπαντες ἄκουτα καὶ  
*inhabitants and guards having-driven-out all unwilling and*  
 βία τοῦτον τῷ μεγάλῳ δομestikῷ παρέδωκαν. εὐθὺς  
*by-force him to-the grand domestic handed-over at-once*  
 δὲ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τὴν τούτου ἄλωσιν διαμεμνηκῶς  
*and to the emperor the his capture having-reported*  
 αὐτὸς ἐπ' ὀλίγον τῇ Θεσσαλονίκῃ ἐγκαρτερήσας καὶ  
*he for a-little — in-Thessalonike having-stayed and*  
 τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ καταστησάμενος λαμπρὸς στεφανίτης  
*the(-things) in it having-settled brilliant crowned-victor*  
 ἐπανήει. οἱ δὲ πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως πεμφθέντες μεταξὺ  
*returned the(-men) and by the emperor sent between*  
 Φιλίππων καὶ Ἀμφιπόλεως τῷ πατρὶ συναντήσαντες  
*Philippi and Amphipolis my father having-met*  
 τὰς περὶ αὐτοῦ ἐγγράφους προστάξεις βασιλικὰς αὐτῷ  
*the about him written orders imperial to-him*  
 ἐγχειρίσαντες, παραλαβόντες τὸν Βασιλάκιον περὶ τι  
*having-banded having-taken-over — Basilakios near a-certain*

χωρίον Χλεμπίναν καλούμενον ἀπαγαγόντες ἐγγὺς τῆς ἐν  
*village Chlempina called having-led-away near the in*  
 αὐτῷ πηγῆς τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς αὐτοῦ ἐξορύττουσιν· ἐξ οὗ  
*it spring the eyes his gouge-out from which*  
 καὶ μέχρι τῆς δεῦρο ἢ πηγῇ Βασιλακίου κέκληται. τοῦτο  
*also until the present the spring of-Basilakios has-been-called this*  
 τρίτον ἄθλον πρό γε τῆς βασιλείας καθάπερ τινὶ  
*third labor before at-least the reign as to-some*  
 Ἡρακλεῖ τῷ μεγάλῳ Ἀλεξίῳ γεγέννητο. ἂν γάρ τις  
*Herakles to-the great Alexios had-been if for someone*  
 Ἐρυμάνθιον κάπρον τὸν Βασιλάκιον τοῦτον καλέσειεν,  
*Erymantbian boar — Basilakios this should-call*  
 Ἡρακλέα δέ τινα καθ' ἡμᾶς γενναιότατον τὸν ἐμὸν  
*Herakles and a-certain in our(-time) most-noble the my*  
 πατέρα Ἀλέξιον, οὐκ ἂν ἀμάρτοι τὸ τῆς ἀληθείας.  
*father Alexios not — would-miss the(-mark) of-the truth*  
 ταῦτα μὲν ἔστω πλεονεκτήματα καὶ πρὸ τοῦ θρόνου  
*these(-things) indeed let-be advantages and before the throne*  
 κατορθώματα τῷ Κομνηνῷ Ἀλεξίῳ, ὧν ἀπάντων γέρας  
*successes — to-Kommenos Alexios of-which all prize*  
 ἀπέλαβε παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος τὴν τοῦ σεβαστοῦ ἀξίαν  
*be-received from the autocrat the of-the sebastos dignity*  
 σεβαστὸς ἀναρρηθεὶς ἐκ μέσης συγκλήτου.  
*sebastos proclaimed from midst of-(the)-senate*

*Like a body harmed from without and within, the Roman state produced its own tyrants and then imported Robert of Normandy, whom Michael Doukas made his kin by betrothing his son Constantine to Robert's daughter. Anna declares she will write the truth even against her mother's kin. Robert is of obscure fortune, tyrannical, cunning, huge, fair-haired, broad-shouldered, his eyes flashing fire, his shout able to rout armies, and subject to no one.*

Καθάπερ, οἶμαι, τὰ πονηρευόμενα τῶν σωμάτων πῇ  
just-as I-think the ailing of-the bodies at-one-time  
μὲν ταῖς ἔξωθεν αἰτίαις κακοῦνται, ἔστι δ' ὅπου καὶ  
indeed by-the external causes are-harmed it-is and where also  
τὰ αἷτια τῶν νοσημάτων ἀφ' ἑαυτῶν ἀναβλύζουσι,  
the causes of-the diseases from themselves well-up  
καὶ αἰτιώμεθα πολλάκις μὲν τὰς τοῦ περιέχοντος  
and we-blame often indeed the of-the surrounding(-air)  
ἀνωμαλίας καί τινας τροφῶν ποιότητος πυρετῶν γενέσεις,  
irregularities and some of-foods qualities of-fevers origins  
ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ χυμῶν σηπεδόνας· οὕτω δῆτα καὶ ἡ  
sometimes and also of-humors putrefactions thus indeed also the  
τῶν Ῥωμαίων κακότης κατ' ἐκείνο καιροῦ νῦν μὲν  
of-the Romans ill-state at that of-time now indeed  
ἀνεβλάστησε θανατώδεις κῆρας τοὺς προειρημένους ἄνδρας  
sprouted deadly dooms the aforesaid men  
ἐκείνους, λέγω δὴ Οὐρσελίους καὶ Βασιλακίους καὶ  
those I-mean indeed Ourselioi and Basilakioi and  
ὅσοι τὸ τυραννικὸν συνεπλήρου πλῆθος, νῦν δὲ  
as-many-as the tyrannical filled multitude now and  
ἐξωθέν τινας καὶ ἐπεισάκτους τυράννους τὰ τῆς  
from-outside some and imported tyrants the(-things) of-the  
τύχης ταύτη ἐπεισηγάγετο ἀπρόσμαχόν τι κακὸν καὶ  
fortune to-it brought-in irresistible something evil and

ἀνίατον νόσημα, καθά γε καὶ τὸν ἐπὶ τυραννικῇ γνώμῃ  
*incurable disease as at-least also the for tyrannical mind*  
 διαβόητον Ῥομπέρτον ἐκείνον τὸν ἀλαζόνα, ὃν Νορμανία  
*notorious Robert that the braggart whom Normandy*  
 μὲν ἤνεγκε, φαυλότης δὲ παντοδαπὴ καὶ ἐθρέψατο  
*indeed bore baseness and of-every-kind both nursed*  
 καὶ ἐμαίευσεν. ἡ δὲ Ῥωμαίων ἐχθρὸν τηλικούτον  
*and delivered the and of-(the)-Romans(-state) enemy so-great*  
 ἐφ' ἑαυτῆς εἷλκυσε πρόφασιν δεδωκυῖα τῶν ἀπ' ἐκείνου  
*upon itself drew pretext having-given of-the from him*  
 πολέμων κῆδος ἑτερόφυλόν τε καὶ βάρβαρον καὶ τοῖς  
*wars marriage-alliance foreign both and barbarian and to-the*  
 πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀπροσάρμοστον, μᾶλλον δὲ ἀπροσεξία τοῦ τότε  
*with us unsuited rather and inattention of-the then*  
 κρατοῦντος Μιχαὴλ τοῦ τὰς τοῦ γένους σειρὰς πρὸς  
*ruling Michael the(-one) the of-the family lines to*  
 τοὺς Δούκας ἀνάπτοντος. εἰ δὲ καὶ καθαπτοίμην τινὸς  
*the Doukai attaching if and even I-should-censure some(-one)*  
 τῶν καθ' αἷμά μοι προσηκόντων (καὶ γὰρ καμοὶ τὰ  
*of-the by blood to-me related and for also-to-me the(-blood)*  
 πρὸς μητρὸς ἐκείθεν καταρρεῖ), νεμεσάτω μηδεὶς· τὴν  
*on mother's(-side) from-there flows let-be-indignant no-one the*  
 τε γὰρ ἀλήθειαν ἐξ ἀπάντων προειλόμην ξυγγράφειν· καὶ  
*both for truth over all I-chose to-write and*  
 ὅσον ἐπὶ τούτῳ τὰς ἐξ ἀπάντων μέμψεις ἀνεστειλάμην.  
*as-far-as on this the from all reproaches I-have-put-off*  
 ἐκεῖνος γὰρ ὁ εἰρημένος αὐτοκράτωρ ὁ Δούκας Μιχαὴλ  
*that for the said autocrat — Doukas Michael*  
 τὴν τοῦ βαρβάρου τούτου θυγατέρα εἰς τὸν ἑαυτοῦ υἱὸν  
*the of-the barbarian this daughter to the own son*  
 κατηγγυήσατο Κωνσταντῖνον, κἀντεῦθεν ἀνερράγη τὰ  
*betrothed Constantine and-thereupon broke-out the(-things)*



τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ περὶ μὲν τοῦ υἱέος τοῦ βασιλέως  
*of-the enemies and about indeed the son of-the emperor*  
 τουτουὶ Κωνσταντίνου καὶ τοῦ περὶ αὐτὸν γαμικοῦ  
*this-here Constantine and the about him marriage*  
 συναλλάγματος καὶ ὅλως τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ κήδους καὶ  
*contract and altogether the barbaric marriage-alliance and*  
 δὴ καὶ ὅπως εἶχε κάλλους τε καὶ μεγέθους ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ  
*indeed also how he-was of-beauty both and size the man and*  
 ὁποῖος ἦν τὴν φύσιν καὶ ποδαπός, κατὰ καιρὸν ἐροῦμεν,  
*what-kind he-was in-the nature and whence in season we-will-tell*  
 ἐπειδὰν ἀπολοφυροίμην καὶ τὰς ἐμὰς συμφορὰς μικρὸν  
*when I-shall-have-lamented also the my misfortunes a-little*  
 μετὰ τὴν τοῦ κήδους τούτου διήγησιν καὶ τὴν ἡτταν  
*after the of-the marriage-alliance this narration and the defeat*  
 τῆς βαρβαρικῆς ἀπάσης δυνάμεως καὶ τὴν ἀπώλειαν τῶν  
*of-the barbarian all force and the destruction of-the*  
 Νορμανόθεν τυράννων, οὓς ἐξ ἀλογίας κατὰ τῆς τῶν  
*from-Normandy tyrants whom from folly against the of-the*  
 Ῥωμαίων ἐθρέψατο. ἀλλὰ πρότερον δεῖ ἀνωθέν πού  
*Romans(-state) it-nursed but first it-is-needful from-above somewhere*  
 τὸν λόγον ἀναγαγούσαν τὰ περὶ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου  
*the account having-brought-back the(-things) about — Robert*  
 τούτου διηγῆσασθαι, ὅπως τε εἶχε γένους καὶ τύχης καὶ  
*this to-narrate how both he-was of-family and fortune and*  
 εἰς οἶον κράτος καὶ ὕψος ἢ φορὰ τῶν πραγμάτων  
*to what-kind-of sovereignty and height the course of-the affairs*  
 τοῦτον ἀνήνεγκε, μᾶλλον δέ, ἢ εὐσεβέστερον φαίην, οὗ  
*him carried rather and that more-piously I-may-say where*  
 παρεχώρησε τοῦτον ἢ πρόνοια προελθεῖν ἐνδοῦσα πρὸς  
*allowed him the providence to-advance having-given-way to*  
 τὰς ἐκείνου κακοτρόπους ὁρμάς τε καὶ μηχανάς. ὁ δὲ  
*the his wicked impulses both and devices — and*

Ῥομπέρτος οὗτος Νορμάνος τὸ γένος, τὴν τύχην ἄσημος,  
*Robert this Norman by-the race in-the fortune obscure*  
 τὴν γνώμην τυραννικός, τὴν ψυχὴν πανουργότατος, τὴν  
*in-the mind tyrannical in-the soul most-villainous in-the*  
 χεῖρα γενναῖος, ἐπιθέσθαι μὲν δεινότατος πλούτῳ καὶ  
*hand noble to-attack indeed most-formidable on-wealth and*  
 περιουσίᾳ μεγάλων ἀνδρῶν, καταπραῖσαι δὲ ἀφυκτότατος,  
*on-substance of-great men to-accomplish and most-inescapable*  
 εἰς τὸ ἀναντίρρητον τὰ τοῦ σκοποῦ περιάγων. τὰ  
*to the uncontested the(-things) of-the aim bringing-round the(-things)*  
 δὲ τοῦ σώματος τοσοῦτος εἰς μέγεθος, ὥς καὶ τῶν  
*and of-the body so-great in size as even than-the*  
 μεγίστων ὑπερανέχειν, πυρσὸς τὸ χρῶμα, τὴν κόμην  
*greatest to-tower-above ruddy in-the color in-the hair*  
 ξανθός, τοὺς ὤμους εὐρύς, τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς \*\*\* ἀλλὰ  
*fair in-the shoulders broad in-the eyes (lacuna) but*  
 πῦρ ἀπ' αὐτῶν μονονουχὶ ἀπεσπινθηρίζετο, καὶ ὅπου μὲν  
*fire from them all-but sparkled and where indeed*  
 ἔδει διοργανῶσαι τὴν φύσιν τὸ πλάτος, εὐμήχανον  
*it-was-needful to-fashion the nature the breadth well-made*  
 ἦν, ὅπου δὲ ἀποστενῶσαι τοῦτο, εἰς τὸ εὐρυθμον  
*was where and to-narrow this to the well-proportioned*  
 διωμάλιστο. οὕτως ἐξ ἄκρας κεφαλῆς εἰς πόδας ὁ ἀνὴρ  
*had-been-leveled thus from top of-head to feet the man*  
 κατερρύθμιστο, ὥς πολλῶν λεγόντων πολλάκις ἀκήκοα.  
*had-been-proportioned as from-many saying often I-have-heard*  
 τὸ δὲ φθέγμα, Ὅμηρος μὲν περὶ Ἀχιλλέως ἐποίησεν, ὥς  
*the and voice Homer indeed about Achilles composed that*  
 ἄρα φωνήσαντος ἐκείνου φαντασίαν ἐσχίκεσαν οἱ  
*after-all having-shouted he an-impression had the(-men)*  
 ἀκούοντες πολλῶν θορυβούντων, τούτου δὲ τοῦ ἀνδρός, ὥς  
*bearing of-many making-tumult of-this and the man as*

φασι, τὸ ἐμβόημα πολλὰς ἐτρέπετο μυριάδας. οὕτως ἔχων  
 they-say the shout many turned myriads thus being  
 καὶ τύχης καὶ φύσεως καὶ ψυχῆς ἀδούλωτος ἦν, ὥς  
 both in-fortune and in-nature and in-soul unenslaved he-was as  
 εἰκός, μηδενὶ τῶν ἀπάντων ὑποταττόμενος. τοιαῦται γὰρ αἱ  
 (is)-likely to-no-one of-the all being-subject such for the  
 μεγάλοι φύσεις, ὥς φασι, καὶν τύχης ὧσιν ἀφαιροτέρας.  
 great natures as they-say even-if of-fortune they-be of-bumbler

XV • ROBERT AND WILLIAM MASCABELES

*Leaving Normandy with a handful of men, Robert lives as a brigand in Lombardy. William Mascabeles, who rules much of the land bordering Lombardy, betroths a daughter to him and gives him a city, but Robert plots against him. He sets four men in ambush in a marsh between two hills and his own horsemen on one hill, persuades William to dismount and talk on the other, then seizes him; Robert spears one of William's horsemen and the rest flee. Held in the fortress he gave as dowry, William loses his teeth one by one for gold and finally his eyes.*

Τοιοῦτος δὲ ὢν ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ ἄγεσθαι ὅλως μὴ ἀνεχόμενος,  
 such and being the man and to-be-led at-all not enduring  
 ἀπὸ Νορμανίας ἀπάρας μετὰ τινων ἱππέων, πέντε  
 from Normandy having-set-out with some horsemen five  
 δὲ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς καὶ πεζοὶ τριάκοντα οἱ πάντες,  
 and were horsemen and foot-soldiers thirty the(-men) all  
 ἐξελθὼν τῆς πατρίδος περὶ τὰς ἀκρολοφίας καὶ  
 having-gone-out from-the fatherland about the hilltops and  
 τὰ ἄντρα καὶ τὰ ὄρη τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας διέτριβε  
 the caves and the mountains — of-Lombardy he-spent-his-time  
 χειρὸς ληστρικῆς κατάρχων καὶ τοῖς ὁδίταις ἐπιτιθέμενος  
 of-band robber being-leader and the wayfarers attacking

ὅπου μὲν ἵππους, ὅπου δὲ καὶ πράγματα ἄλλα τινὰ  
*where indeed horses where and also goods other some*  
 καὶ ὅπλα προσεπικτώμενος. καὶ τὰ προοίμια τοῦ βίου  
*and arms acquiring-besides and the preludes of-the life*  
 τούτῳ αἱμάτων ἦσαν ἐκχύσεις καὶ ἀνδροφονίαι πολλαί.  
*for-him of-bloods were sheddings and murders many*  
 χρονοτριβῶν δὲ ἐν τοῖς μέρεσι τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας οὐκ  
*lingering and in the parts — of-Lombardy not*  
 ἔλαθε Γελῖελμον τὸν Μασκαβέλην, ὃς κατ'  
*he-escaped-the-notice-of William the Mascabeles who at*  
 ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ μέρους μεγίστου τῶν παρακειμένων τῇ  
*that of-time of-part greatest of-the(-lands) bordering —*  
 Λογγιβαρδία ἡγεμὼν ἐτύγχανεν ὧν ὅθεν τὰς εἰσόδους  
*Lombardy ruler happened being whence the revenues*  
 δαιμιλεῖς ἀν' ἔτος ἐλάμβανε κἀντεῦθεν δυνάμεις ἱκανὰς  
*abundant by year he-received and-thence forces considerable*  
 ἐπαγόμενος ἐπιφανὴς ἦν ἀρχηγός. μεμαθηκὼς δὲ περὶ  
*bringing illustrious he-was leader having-learned and about*  
 τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ὁποῖός ἐστι κατ' ἅμφω, ψυχὴν καὶ σῶμά  
*— Robert what-kind he-is in both soul and body*  
 φημι, προσήκατό τε ἀβούλως τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ μίαν τῶν  
*I-mean admitted both ill-advisedly the man and one of-the*  
 θυγατέρων τούτῳ κατηγγυήσατο. καὶ πληρώσας τὸ κῆδος,  
*daughters to-him betrothed and having-fulfilled the marriage*  
 θαυμάσας αὐτὸν τῆς τε φύσεως καὶ τῆς περὶ τὰ  
*having-admired him for-the both nature and for-the about the*  
 στρατιωτικὰ ἐμπειρίας οὐμενοῦν τὰ κατὰ γνώμην  
*military(-things) experience not-at-all the(-things) according-to mind*  
 ἡντύχησεν. καὶ γὰρ καὶ πόλιν καθαπερεὶ τι ἔδνον αὐτῷ  
*he-prospered and for also city as-it-were some bride-gift to-him*  
 ἐδεδώκει καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ προσεπεφιλοτιμήσατο. ὁ δὲ περὶ  
*he-had-given and other some he-had-bestowed-besides he and toward*

αὐτὸν δύσοντας γενόμενος καὶ ἐπανάστασιν κατ' αὐτοῦ  
*him ill-disposed having-become and rising against him*  
 μελετήσας τὰ μὲν πρῶτα τὸν εὖνον ὑπεκρίνετο  
*having-planned the(-things) indeed first the well-disposed(-man) he-played*  
 καὶ τὰς δυνάμεις προσετίθει τριπλασιάσας μὲν τοὺς  
*and the forces increased having-tripled indeed the*  
 ἵππεῖς, εἰς δὲ διπλασίους τοὺς πεζοὺς ποιησάμενος. καὶ  
*horsemen to and double the foot-soldiers having-made and*  
 τοὺν τεύθεν ὑπέρρει τὰ τῆς εὐνοίας καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν  
*thereafter ebbed the(-things) of-the goodwill and by little*  
 παρεγυμνοῦτο ἡ κακοήθεια. καὶ οὐ διελύμπανε προφάσεις  
*was-laid-bare the malice and not he-left-off pretexts*  
 καθ' ἑκάστην σκανδάλων διδοὺς καὶ λαμβάνων καὶ τρόπους  
*by each(-day) of-offenses giving and taking and ways*  
 συνεχεῖς μηχανώμενος, ἀφ' ὧν ἔριδες τε καὶ μάχαι καὶ  
*continual contriving from which quarrels both and battles and*  
 πόλεμοι εἰώθασιν τίκεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ ῥήθεις Γελέλιμος  
*wars are-wont to-be-born since and the said William*  
 ὁ Μασκαβέλης πλούτῳ καὶ δυνάμει κατὰ πολὺν διέφερεν  
*the Mascabeles in-wealth and in-power by much surpassed*  
 αὐτοῦ, ἀπογνοὺς ὁ Ῥομπέρτος τὴν κατὰ πρόσωπον πρὸς  
*him having-despaired — Robert the in face against*  
 αὐτὸν μάχην βουλήν βουλευέται πονηράν. καὶ προβάλλεται  
*him battle plan plans wicked and puts-forward*  
 μὲν τὴν εὖνοιαν καὶ τὸ μεταμέλον πλάττεται καὶ ὑπορύττει  
*indeed the goodwill and the repentance feigns and digs-under*  
 δόλον αὐτῷ δεινὸν καὶ δυσφώρατον, τὰς τε πόλεις αὐτοῦ  
*treachery for-him dreadful and hard-to-detect the both cities his*  
 κατασχεῖν καὶ κύριος γενέσθαι τῶν προσόντων ἀπάντων  
*to-seize and lord to-become of-the possessions all*  
 τῷ Μασκαβέλει. καὶ πρῶτα μὲν τὰ πρὸς εἰρήνην  
*— to-Mascabeles and first indeed the(-things) toward peace*

ἐπερωτᾷ καὶ συνελθεῖν εἰς λόγους αὐτοπροσώπως  
*he-inquires-about and to-come-together into talks in-person*  
 διαπρεσβεύεται, ὁ δὲ τὴν πρὸς αὐτὸν εἰρήνην ἀσπάζεται  
*he-negotiates he and the toward him peace welcomes*  
 φιλῶν τὴν θυγατέρα ἐξόχως καὶ συντίθεται τὴν ὁμίλιαν  
*loving the daughter exceedingly and agrees-on the meeting*  
 ἐς νέωτα. ὁ δὲ Ῥομπέρτος καταγγέλλει τόπον αὐτῷ,  
*for tomorrow — and Robert announces place to-him*  
 ἐν ᾧ συνελθόντας διαλεχθῆναι προσήκει καὶ τὰς  
*in which having-come-together to-confer it-is-fitting and the*  
 πρὸς ἀλλήλους συνθέσθαι σπονδάς. ἀκρολοφίαι δὲ ἦσαν  
*with each-other to-conclude treaties hilltops and were*  
 δύο ἐξ ἴσου τῆς πεδιάδος ἐξυπανέχουσαι κατὰ  
*two from equal(-height) from-the plain rising facing*  
 διάμετρον τὴν θέσιν λαχοῦσαι, τὸ δὲ μεταξὺ τούτων  
*opposite the position having-obtained the and between them*  
 ἐλώδες ἦν καὶ κατάσκιον δένδροις παντοδαποῖς καὶ φυτοῖς.  
*marshy was and shaded with-trees of-every-kind and plants*  
 ἔνθα καὶ λόχον ἐστήσατο ὁ δεινὸς ἐκεῖνος Ῥομπέρτος  
*where also ambush set the dread that Robert*  
 τέσσαρας ἄνδρας ἐνόπλους γενναιοτάτους παρεγγυησάμενος  
*four men armed most-noble having-charged*  
 πανταχόσε παπταίνειν τὰ ὄμματα· ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἴδοιεν  
*everywhere to-peer the eyes when and they-should-see*  
 αὐτὸν μετὰ τοῦ Γελιέλμου συμπλεκόμενον, εὐθὺς πρὸς  
*him with — William grappling at-once to*  
 ἐκεῖνον ἀναδραμεῖν μηδὲν τὸ παράπαν μελλήσαντας.  
*that-one to-run-up nothing the at-all having-delayed*  
 ταῦτ' οὖν προκατασκευάσας ὁ κακουργότατος ἐκεῖνος  
*these(-things) then having-prepared the most-villainous that*  
 Ῥομπέρτος τὴν μὲν τῶν ἀκρολοφιῶν εἰς τὴν μετὰ τοῦ  
*Robert the indeed of-the hilltops for the with —*

Μασκαβέλη ὁμίλιαν χρησιμεύουσιν κατέλιπε φθάσας  
*Mascabeles meeting serving left having-been-first*  
 ταύτην ὑποδείξει αὐτῷ, θατέραν δὲ οἶον ἰδιοποιησάμενος  
*it to-show to-him the-other and as-if having-appropriated*  
 πεντεκαίδεκα ἰππέας καὶ πεζοὺς ὥσεί ἕξ καὶ πεντήκοντα  
*fifteen horsemen and foot-soldiers about six and fifty*  
 μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ συλλαβόμενος ἀνελθὼν ἐν αὐτῇ συνέταξε τὴν  
*with himself having-taken having-gone-up on it arranged the*  
 βουλὴν πᾶσαν τοῖς ἀξιολογωτέροις τούτων ἐξορησάμενος  
*plan whole to-the more-notable of-them having-divulged*  
 καὶ ἐνὶ τούτων παραγγείλας τὰ αὐτοῦ ὄπλα βαστάζειν,  
*and to-one of-them having-ordered the his arms to-carry*  
 ἀσπίδα καὶ κράνος καὶ ἀκινάκην, ὥς ῥαδίως διὰ τούτων  
*shield and helmet and short-sword so-that easily through these*  
 ἐξοπλισθεῖν, καὶ τοῖς λοχῶσι τέσσαρσιν ἐπισκήψας, ἵν'  
*he-might-be-armed and to-the ambushing four having-enjoined that*  
 ὀπηνίκα τῷ Μασκαβέλῃ συμπλακέντα τοῦτον θεάσονται,  
*when — with-Mascabeles grappled him they-should-see*  
 θάπτον ἀναδράμωσι πρὸς αὐτόν. καὶ ὁ Γελέλιμος κατὰ  
*more-quickly they-should-run-up to him and — William on*  
 τὴν συγκειμένην ἡμέραν ἤρχετο πρὸς τὴν ἀκρώρειαν εἰς  
*the agreed day came to the hill-ridge to*  
 τὸν τόπον, ὃν φθάσας αὐτῷ ὁ Ῥομπέρτος ὑπέδειξε,  
*the place which having-been-first to-him — Robert showed*  
 τὰς μετ' αὐτοῦ συνθήκας πληρώσων. ὃν ἰδὼν ἐκεῖνος  
*the with him agreements about-to-fulfill whom having-seen he*  
 ἐγγύθεν γενόμενον, αὐτῷ τε ἰππότης προσυπηντήκει  
*near having-come to-him both as-horseman had-gone-to-meet*  
 καὶ ἀσπασάμενος ἐδεξιοῦτο μάλα εὐθύμως. ἔστησαν οὖν  
*and having-greeted welcomed(-him) very cheerfully stood then*  
 ἄμφω εἰς τὸ πρανὲς μικρὸν τῆς ἀκρολοφίας ὑποκλίναντες  
*both to the slope a-little of-the hilltop having-turned-down*

ὁμιλοῦντες, ἅττα καὶ ἔμελλον ποιεῖν. ὁ δὲ δεινὸς  
*discussing what and they-were-about to-do the but dread*  
 ἐκεῖνος Ῥομπέρτος λόγους ἐκ λόγων συνείρων ἔτριβε  
*that Robert words from words stringing wore-away*  
 τὸν καιρόν, εἰτά φησι πρὸς τὸν Γελέλιμον “ἵνα τί τοῖς  
*the time then he-says to — William for what with-the*  
 ἵπποις ἐποχούμενοι κοπιῶμεν; ἀποβάντες καθεδούμεθα εἰς  
*horses riding are-we-wearying having-dismounted we-will-sit-down on*  
 τοῦδαφος καὶ ἀφροντίστως περὶ ὧν χρὴ ὁμιλήσομεν.”  
*the-ground and carelessly about what is-needful we-will-talk*  
 πείθεται ὁ Μασκαβέλης νήπιος ἀγνοήσας τὸν δόλον  
*is-persuaded — Mascabeles childish not-having-known the treachery*  
 καὶ οὗ κακοῦ φέρεται, καὶ ἀποβαίνοντα τὸν Ῥομπέρτον  
*and to-what evil he-is-borne and dismounting — Robert*  
 τοῦ ἵππου θεασάμενος πεζὸς καὶ αὐτὸς τηνικαῦτα  
*from-the horse having-beheld on-foot also he-himself then*  
 εἰστήκει καὶ τῇ γῇ τὸν ἀγκῶνα διερεισάμενος αὐθις  
*stood and on-the ground the elbow having-propped again*  
 λόγων κατήρχετο. ὁ δὲ Ῥομπέρτος δουλείαν ὠμολόγει  
*of-words began — and Robert servitude professed*  
 τοῦ λοιποῦ τῷ Μασκαβέλῃ καὶ πίστιν εὐεργέτην αὐτὸν  
*for-the rest — to-Mascabeles and loyalty benefactor him*  
 καὶ κύριον ὀνομάζων. θεασάμενοι δὲ τούτους οἱ τοῦ  
*and lord naming having-beheld and them the(-men) —*  
 Μασκαβέλη τῶν ἵππων ἀποβάντας καὶ λόγων ἄλλων  
*of-Mascabeles from-the horses having-dismounted and of-words other*  
 ὥσπερ καταρχομένους, καμόντες ἀπὸ τε τοῦ καύσωνος ἀπὸ  
*as-if beginning having-tired from both the heat from*  
 τε τοῦ δεηθῆναι καὶ τροφῆς καὶ ποτοῦ (ῥα γὰρ θέρους  
*and the to-have-needed both food and drink season for of-summer*  
 ἦν, ὀπηνίκα τὰς ἀκτῖνας ὁ ἥλιος κατὰ κορυφὴν εἴωθε  
*it-was when the rays the sun at zenith is-wont*



βάλλειν) καὶ τῆς ἀλέας ἀφορήτου γινομένης οἱ μὲν τῶν  
to-cast and the heat unbearable becoming some indeed from-the  
ἵππων ἀποβαίνοντες τοὺς χαλινούς περὶ τοὺς πτόρθους τῶν  
horses dismounting the bridles round the branches of-the  
δένδρων ἀναδεσμούντες εἰς τοῦδαφος κατεκλίνοντο ταῖς  
trees tying on the-ground lay-down with-the  
ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν δένδρων σκιαῖς ἀναψυχόμενοι,  
from the horses and the trees shades cooling-themselves  
οἱ δὲ οὔκαδε ἐχώρουν. ἀλλ' οὔτοι μὲν οὕτως· ὁ δὲ τὰ  
others and homeward went but these indeed thus the and in-the  
πάντα δεινὸς Ῥομπέρτος οὕτω ταῦτα προκαταστήσας  
all(-things) dread Robert thus these(-things) having-prepared  
ἀθρόον ἐπιφύεται τῷ Μασκαβέλῃ καὶ τὸ ἥμερον ἀφείς  
suddenly fastens-on — to-Mascabeles and the gentle having-dropped  
βλέμμα πρὸς τὸ ὀργιώτερον μεταβάλλεται καὶ φόνιον  
look to the more-wrathful changes and murderous  
αὐτῷ ἐπιβάλλει τὴν χεῖρα. καὶ συμπλακεῖς ἀντισυνεπλέκετό  
on-him lays the hand and having-grappled grappled-back  
τε καὶ εἶλκε καὶ εἶλκετο, καὶ ἐκυλίωντο ἄμφω κατὰ τοῦ  
both and dragged and was-dragged and rolled both down the  
πρανοῦς. τούτους δὲ οἱ λοχῶντες τέτταρες ἐκέينو  
slope them and the(-men) ambushing four those  
ἄνδρες θεασάμενοι ἀναδύντες τοῦ ἔλλους ἐπέδραμον ἤδη  
men having-beheld having-emerged from-the marsh ran-up already  
τῷ Γελιέλμῳ καὶ ξυνδήσαντες ἀπανταχόθεν ἀνέτρεχον ὥς  
— to-William and having-bound from-all-sides ran-up as  
πρὸς τοὺς εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν ἀκρώρειαν ἰσταμένους ἵππεῖς  
toward the(-men) on the other bill-ridge standing horsemen  
τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου, ἤδη καὶ αὐτῶν ὑποκαλπαζόντων κατὰ  
— of-Robert already also them trotting-down down  
τοῦ πρανοῦς πρὸς αὐτούς· ὀπισθεν δὲ ἐδίωκον οἱ τοῦ  
the slope toward them behind and pursued the(-men) —

Γελιέλμου. ὁ δέ γε Ῥομπέρτος ἐπιβὰς τοῦ ἵππου  
*of-William — but at-least Robert having-mounted the horse*  
 κράνος τε καὶ δόρυ λαβὼν καὶ γοργῶς ἐναγκαλισάμενος  
*helmet both and spear having-taken and swiftly having-embraced(-it)*  
 καὶ ἀσπίδι περιφράξας ἑαυτὸν ἐπιστραφεὶς πλήττει ἓνα  
*and with-shield having-fenced himself having-turned strikes one*  
 τῶν τοῦ Γελιέλμου διὰ δόρατος, ὁ δ' ἅμα  
*of-the(-men) — of-William with spear he and together-with*  
 τῇ πληγῇ καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν συναφήρητο. ἐν τοσοῦτῳ  
*the blow also the soul was-deprived-of in so-much(-time)*  
 τὴν φορὰν τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν πενθερὸν ἱππέων ἀναχαίτισας  
*the rush of-the about the father-in-law horsemen having-checked*  
 καὶ τὴν ἀπὸ τούτων βοήθειαν ἀνακόψας (οἱ δέ γε  
*and the from them help having-cut-off the and at-least*  
 λοιποὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς αὐτῶν καταβαίνοντας ἱππότας  
*remaining the over head their descending horsemen*  
 τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ὡς καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ τόπου βοηθουμένους  
*— of-Robert as also from the place being-helped*  
 θεασάμενοι παραχρῆμα τὰ νῶτα διδόασιν), οὕτω γοῦν  
*having-beheld immediately the backs give thus at-any-rate*  
 τὴν φορὰν τῶν τοῦ Μασκαβέλη ἱππέων ἀνακόψαντος τοῦ  
*the rush of-the — of-Mascabeles horsemen having-cut-off —*  
 Ῥομπέρτου, ἄγεται τῆνικαῦτα ὁ Μασκαβέλης δέσμιος καὶ  
*Robert is-led then — Mascabeles bound and*  
 αἰχμάλωτος εἰς ὃπερ δέδωκεν αὐτῷ εἰς προῖκα φρούριον,  
*captive to which he-had-given to-him as dowry fortress*  
 ὅτε τὴν θυγατέρα τούτῳ κατηγγνήσατο. καὶ εἶχεν ἄρα  
*when the daughter to-him he-betrothed and had after-all*  
 τότε τὸν οἰκεῖον δεσπότην ἢ πόλις ἔμφρουρον, φρούριον  
*then the own master the city garrisoned fortress*  
 ἐντεῦθεν εἰκότως προσαγορευομένη. οὐδὲν δὲ χεῖρον καὶ  
*thence fittingly being-called nothing and worse also*

τὴν ὀμότητα τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου διηγῆσασθαι. ἐπειδὴ γὰρ  
 the cruelty — of-Robert to-narrate when for  
 ἅπαξ ἐγκρατὴς ἐγγόνει τοῦ Μασκαβέλη, τὰ πρῶτα  
 once master he-had-become — of-Mascabeles the first(-things)  
 μὲν τῶν ὀδόντων ἀπάντων ἀποστερεῖ, ἐφ' ἐκάστῳ  
 indeed of-the teeth all he-deprives(-him) for each  
 τούτων προσαιπαιτῶν πολυτάλαντον ὀλκὴν νομισμάτων καὶ  
 of-these demanding-besides many-talent weight of-coins and  
 πυνθανόμενος, οὗ ταῦτα ἐναπέθετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἔληγεν  
 inquiring where these(-things) he-had-deposited since and not he-ceased  
 ἀπαράσσων, ἔστ' ἂν ἅπαντα ἔλαβε, καὶ ἅμα οἱ τε  
 knocking-out until — all he-took and at-the-same-time the both  
 ὀδόντες ἐξέλιπον καὶ τὰ χρήματα, ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς  
 teeth failed and the money on the eyes  
 Γελιέλου ἐπιβάλλει τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς ὁ Ῥομπέρτος καὶ  
 of-William lays the eyes — Robert and  
 φθονήσας τούτῳ τῶν ὄψεων ἀποστερεῖ τῶν ὀμμάτων.  
 having-begrudged him of-the sight deprives(-him) of-the eyes

XVI · DUKE OF LOMBARDY AND THE FALSE MICHAEL

*Master of all, Robert becomes duke of Lombardy and plans war on the Romans, his pretext Michael's betrothal of his son Constantine to Robert's daughter Helena. One story says a monk, Rhaiktor, impersonated the deposed Michael; a likelier one, that Robert, checked by his nobles and Gaita, had such a monk found. He parades him as emperor, wins his counts, and marries two daughters to Raymond and Eubulus.*

Πάντων οὖν ἐγκρατὴς γενόμενος ἠϋξάνετό τε τὸ ἐντεῦθεν  
 of-all then master having-become he-grew both — thenceforth  
 ὀσημέραι καὶ εἰς τὸ τυραννικώτερον ἀποκλίνων ταῖς πόλεσιν  
 daily and to the more-tyrannical inclining to-the cities

τε προσετίθετο πόλεις καὶ τοῖς χρήμασι χρήματα. καὶ ἐν  
*both added cities and to-the money money and in*  
 βραχεὶ πρὸς τὴν δουκικὴν περιωπὴν ἀναβεβηκὼς δοῦξ  
*short(-time) to the ducal eminence having-risen duke*  
 Λογγιβαρδίας ἀπάσης ὠνομάζετο. ἐντεῦθεν οὖν ἅπαντες  
*of-Lombardy all was-named thereupon then all*  
 πρὸς τὸν κατ' αὐτοῦ φθόνον ἡρεθίζοντο. ὁ δὲ φρενίρης  
*to the against him envy were-provoked he but sbrewd*  
 ὢν ἀνὴρ ὅπου μὲν θωπείαις χρησάμενος πρὸς τοὺς  
*being man where indeed flatteries having-used toward those*  
 ἀντικαθισταμένους αὐτῷ, ὅπου δὲ καὶ δωρήμασι τοὺς  
*opposing him where and also with-gifts the*  
 μεταξὺ τοῦ πλήθους θορύβους ἐξωμαλίσατο καὶ τὸν κατ'  
*among the multitude tumults smoothened-over and the against*  
 αὐτοῦ φθόνον τῶν μεγιστάνων εὐμηχάνως κατέστειλεν,  
*him envy of-the magnates skillfully checked*  
 ἔστι δ' οὗ καὶ ὅπλοις χειρωσάμενος ἅπαν τὸ κράτος  
*it-is and where also with-arms having-subdued all the sovereignty*  
 Λογγιβαρδίας τε καὶ τῆς ὁμορούσης χώρας εἰς ἑαυτὸν  
*of-Lombardy both and of-the bordering land onto himself*  
 ἀνεδήσατο. αἰεὶ δέ τι ὁ Ῥομπέρτος οὗτος ἐπινοῶν  
*bound always and something — Robert this devising*  
 τυραννικώτερον καὶ φανταζόμενος τὴν βασιλείαν Ῥωμαίων  
*more-tyrannical and imagining the empire of-(the)-Romans*  
 προφάσεως, ὡς ἔφην, τῆς πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Μιχαὴλ  
*of-pretext as I-said of-the with the autocrat Michael*  
 συμπενθερίας ἐπιδραξάμενος τὸν πρὸς Ῥωμαίους ἀνερρίπιζε  
*marriage-connection having-grasped the against (the)-Romans fanned*  
 πόλεμον. ἔφθηνεν γὰρ εἰρηκότες, ὅτι Μιχαὴλ ὁ  
*war we-have-already for said that Michael the*  
 αὐτοκράτωρ οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως τὴν τοῦ τυράννου τούτου  
*autocrat not I-know how the of-the tyrant this*

θυγατέρα (Ἑλένη δὲ αὕτη προσηγορεύετο) τῷ υἱῷ  
*daughter Helena and she was-called to-the son*  
 Κωνσταντίνῳ κατηγγνήσατο. πάλιν δὲ μεμνημένη τοῦ  
*Constantine betrothed again and remembering the*  
 νεανίσκου τούτου παθαίνομαι τήν τε ψυχὴν καὶ τοὺς  
*youth this I-am-moved the both soul and the*  
 λογισμοὺς συγχέομαι· ἀνακόπτομαι δὲ τὴν ἀμφὶ τοῦτον  
*thoughts I-am-confounded I-check-myself and the about him*  
 διήγησιν φυλάττουσα πάντα καιρῷ τῷ προσήκοντι. τοῦτο  
*narration reserving all for-occasion the fitting this*  
 δὲ μόνον οὐχ ὑπομένω μὴ λέγειν, κἂν ἔξω τοῦ καιροῦ  
*but only not I-endure not to-say even-if outside of-the occasion*  
 λέγοιμι, ὥς ἄγαλμα φύσεως ἦν ὁ νεανίας ἐκεῖνος καὶ θεοῦ  
*I-should-say that statue of-nature was the young-man that and of-God*  
 χειρῶν, ὥς οὕτως εἰπεῖν, φιλοτίμημα. εἰ γὰρ καὶ μόνον  
*of-hands as so to-say pride if for even only*  
 ἐθεάσατό τις αὐτόν, εἶπεν ἂν ὥς τοῦ παρ' Ἑλλήσι  
*beheld someone him he-would-have-said — that of-the among Greeks*  
 μυθευομένου χρυσοῦ γένους ἀπορροή· οὕτως ἀμήχανον εἶχε  
*fabled golden race offshoot so extraordinary he-had*  
 τὸ κάλλος. ἐγὼ δὲ μετὰ τοσοῦτους ἐνιαυτοὺς μεμνημένη  
*the beauty I and after so-many years remembering*  
 τοῦ νεανίου τούτου δακρύων ἐμπίπλαμαι· ἐπέχω δὲ ὅμως  
*the young-man this with-tears I-am-filled I-restrain but nevertheless*  
 τὸ δάκρυον καὶ ταμιεύω πρὸς τοὺς ἐπικαίρους τῶν τόπων,  
*the tear and I-store-up for the fitting of-the places*  
 ἵνα μὴ τὰς μονωδίας τῶν ἐμῶν ἀναμιγνῷσα ταῖς  
*that not the laments of-the my(-sorrows) mingling with-the*  
 ἱστορικαῖς διηγῇσεσι τὴν ἱστορίαν συγχέοιμι. οὗτος γὰρ  
*historical narratives the history I-may-confound this for*  
 ὁ νεανίσκος, περὶ οὗ κἀνταῦθα καὶ ἀλλαχόσε εἰρήκειμεν,  
*the youth about whom both-here and elsewhere we-had-spoken*

προχρόνιος πρὸ ἡμῶν καὶ πρὶν ἡμεῖς τὸν ἥλιον ἴδοιμεν,  
*born-before before us and before we the sun might-see*  
 μνηστήρ ἐγεγόνει τῆς τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου Ἑλένης καθαρὸς καὶ  
*suitor had-become of-the — of-Robert Helena pure and*  
 ἀμόλυντος, καὶ τὰ ἔγγραφα συναλλάγματα ἐπ' αὐτῇ  
*undefiled and the written contracts concerning her*  
 ἐγεγράφεισαν κἂν ἀτέλεστα καὶ ἐν ἐπαγγελίαις μόνον,  
*had-been-written even-if unfulfilled and in promises only*  
 ἀτελοῦς τὴν ἡλικίαν ὄντος τοῦ νεανίσκου· διεσπίασθη  
*unripe in-the age being the youth were-broken*  
 δὲ ἅμα τῷ τῆς βασιλείας ἐπιβῆναι τὸν βασιλέα  
*and at-once with-the of-the empire to-mount the emperor*  
 Νικηφόρον τὸν Βοτανειάτην. ἀλλ' ἐξετραπόμην τοῦ  
*Nikephoros the Botaneiates but I-digressed from-the*  
 λόγου, ἐπανελείσομαι δ' αὖθις ἀφ' οὗπερ ἐξετραπόμην.  
*account I-will-return but again from whence I-digressed*  
 ὁ γάρ τοι Ῥομπέρτος ἐκεῖνος ἐξ ἀφανοῦς πάνυ τύχης  
*— for surely Robert that from obscure quite fortune*  
 περιφανῆς γεγωνῶς καὶ πολλὴν δύναμιν ἀθροίσας περὶ  
*illustrious having-become and much force having-gathered around*  
 αὐτὸν ἐπεβάλετο καὶ Ῥωμαίων αὐτοκράτωρ γενέσθαι καὶ  
*himself undertook also of-(the)-Romans autocrat to-become and*  
 προφάσεις εὐλόγους δῆθεν ἐπλάττετο τῆς πρὸς Ῥωμαίους  
*pretexts plausible supposedly fabricated of-the toward (the)-Romans*  
 δυσμενείας καὶ τῶν πολέμων. διττὸς δὲ ἐντεῦθεν φέρεται  
*enmity and of-the wars twofold and thence is-borne*  
 λόγος. ὁ μὲν γὰρ φημίζεται τε καὶ διαρρεῖ καὶ μέχρι  
*account the-(one) indeed for is-rumored both and spreads and as-far-as*  
 τῆς ἡμετέρας ἀκοῆς ἔφθασεν, ὅτι τις μοναχὸς Ῥαϊκτωρ  
*the our bearing has-reached that a-certain monk Rhaiktor*  
 ὀνομαζόμενος ὑπεκρίθη τὸν βασιλέα Μιχαὴλ καὶ πρὸς  
*named impersonated the emperor Michael and to*

τὸν Ῥομπέρτον τοῦτον καὶ συμπένθερον αὐτομολήσας τὰς  
 — Robert this and fellow-father-in-law having-deserted the  
 οἰκείας συμφορὰς ὠλοφύρετο. οὗτος γὰρ μετὰ τὸν Διογένην  
 own misfortunes lamented he for after — Diogenes  
 τῶν σκῆπτρων Ῥωμαίων ἐπειλημμένος καὶ βραχύν τινα  
 the scepters of-(the)-Romans having-taken-hold and short some  
 χρόνον διαπρέψας τὴν βασιλείαν παρελύθη μὲν  
 time having-been-distinguished the empire was-released indeed  
 τῆς ἀρχῆς ὑπὸ τοῦ Βοτανειάτου ἐπαναστάντος αὐτῷ,  
 from-the rule by — Botaneiates having-risen-up against-him  
 τὸν δὲ τῶν μοναχῶν ὑπέδω βίον, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τὸν  
 the and of-the monks put-on life after and these(-things) the  
 ἀρχιερατικὸν ποδήρη καὶ τὴν κίδαριν ἡμφιέσατο, εἰ  
 archiepiscopal foot-length(-robe) and the miter he-put-on if  
 βούλει δέ, καὶ τὴν ἐπωμίδα. τοῦτο δὲ συνεβούλευσεν ὁ  
 you-wish and also the shoul-der-mantle this and advised the  
 καῖσαρ Ἰωάννης, ὁ πρὸς πατρὸς αὐτῷ θεῖος, τὸ κοῦφον  
 caesar John the on father's(-side) to-him uncle the levity  
 εἰδὼς τοῦ τηνικαῦτα κρατοῦντος καὶ μή τι πάθοι  
 knowing of-the then ruling(-man) and lest something he-should-suffer  
 δεινότερον δεδιώς. τοῦτον ὑπεκρίθη ὁ εἰρημένος μοναχὸς  
 more-dreadful fearing him impersonated the said monk  
 ἐκεῖνος Ῥαϊκτωρ ἢ καὶ ὡς οὕτως εἰπεῖν ῥέκτης τῶν  
 that Rbaiktor or even as so to-say rogue of-the  
 ἀπανταχοῦ τολμηρότατος. πρόσεισί τε τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ ὡς  
 everywhere most-audacious approaches both — to-Robert as  
 δῆθεν συμπενθέρῳ καὶ τὰ τῆς ἀδικίας ἐκτραγωδεῖ,  
 supposedly fellow-father-in-law and the(-things) of-the injustice tells-as-tragedy  
 ὡς καθαιρεθεῖ μὲν τῶν βασιλικῶν θρόνων καὶ εἰς ὅπερ  
 how he-was-deposed indeed from-the imperial thrones and to which  
 σχῆμα τοῦτον ὁρώη περιελθεῖν. καὶ διὰ τούτων πάντων  
 garb him he-sees to-have-come and through these all

εἰς ἄμυναν ἐξεκαλείτο τὸν βάρβαρον. τὴν γὰρ καλὴν  
 to defense called-out the barbarian the for fair  
 φησι μείρακα τὴν αὐτοῦ νύμφην Ἑλένην ἀπερίστατον  
 he-says girl the his bride Helena helpless  
 καταλείβει καὶ χήραν ἄντικρυς τοῦ νυμφίου. τὸν γὰρ  
 to-have-left and widow outright of-the bridegroom the for  
 υἱὸν Κωνσταντῖνον καὶ τὴν βασιλίδαν Μαρίαν προσρῆναι  
 son Constantine and the empress Maria to-have-gone-over  
 τῷ Βοτανειάτῃ καὶ ἄκοντας διὰ τὴν τυραννίδα ἐβόα.  
 — to-Botaneiates and unwilling because-of the tyranny he-shouted  
 ταῦτα λέγων παρώξυνέ τε τὸν θυμὸν τοῦ βαρβάρου  
 these(-things) saying he-provoked both the anger of-the barbarian  
 καὶ πρὸς πόλεμον κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐξώπλιζε. τοιοῦτος μὲν  
 and to war against (the)-Romans armed such indeed  
 λόγος διαρρεῖ μου τὰς ἀκοάς, καὶ οὐκ ἔχω γε διὰ  
 account flows-through my the ears and not I-hold at-least as  
 θαύματος, εἴ τινες ἀδοξότατοί τινες τοὺς ἐπὶ δόξης  
 marvel if some most-obscure(-men) some(-men) those in glory  
 καὶ γένους εὐγενοῦς ὑποκρίνονται. ἕτερος δέ με περιβομβεῖ  
 and of-family noble impersonate other and me buzzes-around  
 πιθανώτερος λόγος ἐτέρωθεν φημιζόμενος, ὥς οὔτε μοναχός  
 more-plausible account from-elsewhere rumored that neither monk  
 τις τὸν βασιλέα Μιχαὴλ ὑπεκρίνατο οὔτε τοιοῦτόν τι  
 any the emperor Michael impersonated nor such something  
 τὸν Ῥομπέρτον πρὸς τὸν κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐκίνησε πόλεμον,  
 — Robert to the against (the)-Romans moved war  
 ἀλλ' αὐτὸς ὁ βάρβαρος πολυτροπώτατος ὢν τὰ τοιαῦτα  
 but himself the barbarian most-versatile being the such(-things)  
 ῥαδίως ἐπλάττετο. ἔχει γὰρ ὧδε τὰ ἐφεξῆς. αὐτὸς μὲν,  
 easily fabricated it-stands for thus the following he indeed  
 ὥς φασιν, ὁ Ῥομπέρτος ῥαδιουργότατος ὢν καὶ τὴν  
 as they-say — Robert most-unscrupulous being and the



κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ὠδίνων μάχην καὶ πρὸ πολλοῦ πρὸς  
*against (the)-Romans travailing-with battle and before long for*  
τὸν πόλεμον παρασκευαζόμενος ἐκωλύετο μὲν ὡς ἀδίκων  
*the war preparing was-hindered indeed as unjust*  
πολέμων ἄρχων καὶ κατὰ Χριστιανῶν εὐτρεπιζόμενος  
*wars beginning and against Christians making-ready*  
παρά τινων τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἐνδοξοτάτων ἀνδρῶν καὶ  
*by some of-the around him most-distinguished men and*  
αὐτῆς τῆς γυναικὸς αὐτοῦ Γαίτης καὶ ἀνεκόπτετο πολλάκις  
*herself of-the wife his Gaita and was-checked often*  
ἐπιχειρήσας τῆς τοιαύτης ὁρμῆς· βουλόμενος δὲ πιθανὴν  
*having-attempted of-the such impulse wishing and plausible*  
τὴν πρόφασιν τοῦ πολέμου ποιήσασθαι πέμπει τινὰς  
*the pretext of-the war to-make he-sends some*  
ἄνδρας εἰς Κοτρῶνην τὰ ἀπόρρητα καταπιστεύσας αὐτοῖς  
*men to Kotrone the secrets having-entrusted to-them*  
τῶν βεβουλευμένων καὶ ἐπισκίπτει τοιαῦτα· ὡς εἴ τινα  
*of-the plans and enjoins such(-things) that if some*  
μοναχὸν εὔροιεν βουλόμενον ἐκεῖθεν ἐνθάδε διαπερᾶσαι  
*monk they-should-find wishing from-there hither to-cross*  
εἰς προσκύνησιν τοῦ νεῶ τῶν κορυφαίων καὶ πολιούχων  
*for veneration of-the temple of-the chief and guardian*  
τῆς Ῥώμης ἀποστόλων, ἐξ αὐτῆς ὄψεως μὴ πάνυ τὸ  
*— of-Rome apostles from very appearance not very the*  
δυσγενὲς ἐμφαίνοντα, τοῦτον ἀσμένως ἐναγκαλίσασθαι  
*low-born displaying him gladly to-embrace*  
καὶ οἰκειωσαμένους πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀγαγεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν  
*and having-befriended to him to-bring when and the*  
προειρημένον ἐφεῦρον Ῥαίκτωρα, ἄνδρα ποικίλον τε καὶ  
*aforsaid they-found Rhaiktor man cunning both and*  
πρὸς πανουργίαν ἀπαράμιλλον, δηλοῦσι τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ διὰ  
*in villainy matchless they-show — to-Robert through*

γραμμάτων κατὰ τὸ Σαλερηνὸν ἐνδιατρίβοντι, ὅτιπερ “ὁ  
*letters at — Salerno staying that the*  
 σὸς κηδεστῆς Μιχαὴλ ὁ τῆς βασιλείας ἐξεωθεῖς  
*your relative-by-marriage Michael the from-the empire having-been-thrust-out*  
 κατέλαβε τὴν ἀπὸ σοῦ ἐξαιτούμενος βοήθειαν”. οὕτω  
*has-arrived the from you asking help thus*  
 γὰρ αὐτοῖς ὁ Ῥομπέρτος ὑπέθετο τὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν  
*for to-them — Robert had-suggested the to him*  
 ἐκθεῖναι γραφάς. ὁ δὲ ἐν χερσὶ ταύτας λαβὼν παρευθὺς  
*to-set-out letters he and in hands them having-taken straightway*  
 μὲν τῇ ὁμενέτιδι ὑπαναγινώσκει, εἶτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς  
*indeed to-the wife reads-aloud then having-gathered the*  
 κόμητας ἅπαντας ὑποδείκνυσι καὶ τούτοις τὰ γράμματα,  
*counts all shows also to-them the letters*  
 ὡς μηκέτι κωλύεσθαι παρ’ αὐτῶν εὐλόγου τάχα αἰτίας  
*as no-longer to-be-hindered by them reasonable perhaps cause*  
 δραξάμενος. συντίθενται ἅπαντες παραχρῆμα τῇ τοῦ  
*having-seized agree all immediately to-the —*  
 Ῥομπέρτου βουλῇ, καὶ οὕτως προσήκατό τε αὐτὸν καὶ  
*of-Robert plan and thus he-received both him and*  
 εἰς ὁμιλίαν ἐλήλυθεν. ἐντεῦθεν τὰ πάντα δραματουργεῖ  
*into converse came thereupon the all he-dramatizes*  
 καὶ σκηνὴν περιτίθησιν, ὡς ὁ βασιλεὺς εἶη Μιχαὴλ ὁ  
*and stage puts-round that the emperor were Michael the*  
 μοναχὸς ἐκεῖνος, ὡς καθαιρεθεῖν τῶν θρόνων, ὡς τὴν  
*monk that that he-was-deposed from-the thrones that the*  
 γυναῖκα καὶ τὸν παῖδα καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα πρὸς τοῦ  
*wife and the son and the-rest all by —*  
 Βοτανειάτου τυράννου ἀφαιρεθεῖν, καὶ ὡς τοῦτον ἀδίκως  
*Botaneiates tyrant were-taken-away and that him unjustly*  
 καὶ παρὰ πάντα δίκαιον λόγον ἀντὶ τῆς ταινίας τε καὶ  
*and against all just reason instead-of the fillet both and*

τοῦ διαδήματος τὸ μοναχικὸν περιέθεντο σχῆμα, καὶ “νῦν  
*the diadem the monastic they-put-on garb and now*  
 ἰκέτης ἦκέ” φησι “πρὸς ἡμᾶς”. ταῦτα εἰς μέσους  
*suppliant he-has-come he-says to us these(-things) into the-midst*  
 ἐδημηγόρει ὁ Ῥομπέρτος τὴν τε βασιλείαν αὐτῷ διὰ  
*harangued — Robert the both empire for-him because-of*  
 τὸ κῆδος ἐπανασωθῆναι πρεσβέων καὶ ἀξιῶν  
*the marriage-alliance to-be-restored urging and deeming-worthy*  
 ἐκάστης ἡμέρας τὸν μοναχὸν ἐκείνον, ὡς δῆθεν τὸν  
*each day the monk that as supposedly the*  
 βασιλέα Μιχαήλ, καὶ προεδρίας καὶ θρόνων ὑψηλοτέρων  
*emperor Michael both of-precedence and of-thrones higher*  
 καὶ τιμῆς ὑπερβαλλούσης καὶ ἄλλοτε ἄλλως τὰς  
*and of-honor surpassing and at-other-times in-other-ways the*  
 δημηγορίας πλαττόμενος, νῦν μὲν ἐλεεινολογούμενος, οἷα  
*harangues fabricating now indeed lamenting what*  
 πέπονθεν ἐπὶ θυγατρὶ, νῦν δὲ τοῦ συμπενθέρου φειδόμενος  
*he-has-suffered over daughter now and the fellow-father-in-law sparing*  
 ἐφ’ οἷσιν κακοῖς περιπέπτωκεν, νῦν δὲ προσπαροξύνων  
*at what evils he-has-fallen-into now and inciting-further*  
 τε καὶ διεγείρων πρὸς πόλεμον τὸ περὶ αὐτὸν βάρβαρον  
*both and rousing to war the around him barbarian(-host)*  
 ποικίλως ἐπαγγελλόμενος τούτοις χρυσοῦ θημῶνας, οὓς  
*variously promising to-them of-gold heaps which*  
 ἐκ τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἔχειν τούτοις κατεπηγγέλλετο.  
*from the of-(the)-Romans(-land) to-have to-them he-promised*  
 ἐντεῦθεν πάντας ἐλκυσάμενος τῆς ῥινὸς καὶ πλουσιωτέρους  
*thereupon all having-drawn by-the nose both richer*  
 καὶ πενεστέρας ἀπάρας τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας, μᾶλλον δὲ  
*and poorer having-set-out — from-Lombardy rather and*  
 πᾶσαν αὐτὴν ἐλκυσάμενος καταλαμβάνει τὴν Σάλερνον  
*all it having-drawn reaches — Salerno*

μητρόπολιν οὔσαν Μέλφης, ἐν ᾗ τὰ κατὰ τὰς  
 metropolis being of-Melfi in which the(-things) concerning the  
 ἄλλας θυγατέρας αὐτοῦ πάντα καταπράξας καλῶς ἐντεῦθεν  
 other daughters his all having-accomplished well thence  
 τὰ πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον ἐξαρτύεται. δύο δὲ ἦσθιν  
 the(-things) for the war fits-out two and were  
 αὐτῷ· τὴν γὰρ τρίτην ἡ βασιλὶς τῶν πόλεων εἶχεν  
 to-him the for third the queen of-the cities had  
 ἐξ αὐτοῦ θαλάμου δυστυχῇ. ὁ γὰρ νεανίας ἐκεῖνος ἐξ  
 from very bridal-chamber unfortunate the for young-man that from  
 ἀρχῆς αὐτῆς οὐπω ἔφηβος ὢν ἀπεστρέφετο τοῦτι τὸ  
 beginning itself not-yet adolescent being turned-away-from this-here the  
 κῆδος καθάπερ τοὺς μορμολυττομένους τὰ βρέφη.  
 marriage-alliance as those frightening the infants  
 τούτων δὲ τὴν μὲν Ῥαϊμόντῳ τῷ υἱῷ κόμητος  
 of-these and the(-one) indeed to-Raymond the son of-count  
 Βραχεωνῶνος κατηγγυήσατο, τὴν ἑτέραν δὲ συνέζευξε τῷ  
 of-Barcelona he-betrothed the other and he-joined —  
 Εὐβούλῳ ἐπιφανεστάτῳ καὶ τούτῳ κόμητι. οὐδὲ ταῦτα  
 to-Eubulus most-illustrious also this(-one) count nor these  
 τὰ συναλλάγματα πρὸς τὸ ἀσύμφορον ἑώρα Ῥομπέρτῳ·  
 the contracts to the disadvantageous looked for-Robert  
 ἀλλὰ πανταχόθεν γὰρ συνεκεκρότητο καὶ συνηθροίζετο  
 but from-everywhere for he-had-forged-together and gathered  
 ἑαυτῷ δύναμιν, ἐκ γένους, ἐκ τυραννίδος, ἐξ ἀγχιστείας,  
 for-himself power from family from tyranny from kinship  
 ἐξ ἄλλων τρόπων παντοδαπῶν, ὧν ἂν τις οὐδὲ  
 from other ways of-every-kind which — someone not-even  
 ἐπινοήσαιο.  
 might-think-of

*The pope, quarreling with King Henry of Alamania over the sale of churches, outrages Henry's envoys; Anna sets the Latin claim of papal primacy against Constantinople's precedence from Chalcedon. Fearing Henry and Robert together, the pope swears peace with Robert at Benevento, vainly on both sides. He raises the Saxons Landulf and Welf against Henry; Landulf falls, the papal army flees, and Henry marches on Rome. Both seek Robert's alliance; he answers Henry evasively and writes the pope that he is arming against the Romans.*

Ἐμπίπτει δὲ μεταξὺ καί τι τοιοῦτον, ὅπερ ἄξιον  
*happens and meanwhile also something such which worthy*  
 ἀφηγήσασθαι. ἔστι γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο εἰς εὐτυχίαν τούτου  
*to-narrate it-is for also this to good-fortune his*  
 ἀναφερόμενον. καὶ γὰρ καὶ τοὺς τῆς δύσεως ἅπαντας  
*being-referred and for also the of-the west all*  
 ἀρχηγούς ἀναχαιτίζεσθαι τῆς πρὸς τοῦτον φορᾶς σφόδρα  
*leaders to-be-checked from-the against him onset greatly*  
 τῆς τῶν πραγμάτων εὐροίας τῷ βαρβάρῳ λογίζομαι,  
*of-the of-the affairs smooth-course for-the barbarian I-reckon*  
 ἀπανταχόθεν τῆς τύχης αὐτῷ συνεργούσης καὶ ἐπαιρούσης  
*from-everywhere the fortune him helping and raising*  
 εἰς τυραννίδα καὶ πᾶν τὸ ἐπωφελὲς περατουμένης. ὁ  
*to tyranny and every the advantageous accomplishing the*  
 γάρ τοι πάπας τῆς Ῥώμης (γενναία δὲ αὕτη ἀρχή  
*for surely pope — of-Rome noble and this office*  
 καὶ στρατεύμασι παντοδαποῖς περιφραττομένη) μετὰ τοῦ  
*and with-armies of-every-kind fenced-about with the*  
 ῥήγος Ἀλαμανίας Ἐνερίχου διαφορὰν ἐσχηκὼς ἐβούλετο  
*king of-Alamania Henry quarrel having-had wished*  
 πρὸς συμμαχίαν ἐλκύσαι Ῥομπέρτον ἤδη περιφανέστατον  
*to alliance to-draw Robert already most-illustrious*

γεγονότα καὶ πρὸς μεγάλας ἀρχὰς ἀκμάσαντα. ἡ δὲ  
*having-become and to great powers having-come-to-the-height the and*  
 διαφορὰ ρήγος τε καὶ πάπα τοιαύτη τις ἦν. ὁ μὲν  
*quarrel of-king both and of-pope such a-certain was the(-one) indeed*  
 γὰρ κατητιᾶτο τὸν ῥῆγα Ἐνέριχον ὡς τὰς ἐκκλησίας οὐ  
*for accused the king Henry that the churches not*  
 προῖκα διδόντα, ἀλλὰ δωρημάτων ἀποδιδόμενον καὶ που  
*freely giving but for-gifts selling and somewhere*  
 καὶ ἀναξίοις ἀνδράσι τὴν ἀρχιερωσύνην καταπιστεύοντα  
*also to-unworthy men the high-priesthood entrusting*  
 καὶ τοιούτων ἐγκλημάτων ἐδίωκεν. ὁ δέ γε ῥῆξ  
*and of-such charges prosecuted(-him) the but at-least king*  
 Ἀλαμανίας τυραννίδος τὸν πάπαν ἐγράφετο, ὡς ἄτερ  
*of-Alamania of-tyranny the pope indicted that without*  
 γνώμης αὐτοῦ τὸν ἀποστολικὸν ἐξαρπάσειε θρόνον. καὶ  
*consent his the apostolic he-had-seized throne and*  
 που καὶ ἀπηναισχυντήκει πρὸς τοῦτον καὶ ἱταμωτέροις  
*somewhere also had-been-shameless toward him and more-reckless*  
 ἐχρήσατο λόγοις, ὥς, εἰ μὴ ἐκσταίῃ τῆς αὐθαιρέτου  
*used words that if not he-should-step-down from-the self-chosen*  
 προεδρίας, μεθ' ὕβρεως ἐκείθεν ἀπελαθήσεται. τούτων οὖν  
*presidency with insult from-there he-will-be-driven-out these then*  
 ἀκούσας ὁ πάπας τῶν λόγων κατὰ τῶν πρέσβων εὐθὺς  
*having-heard the pope the words against the envoys at-once*  
 ἐμεμήνει καὶ αἰκισάμενος πρότερον ἀπανθρώπως, εἶτα καὶ  
*raged and having-maltreated first inhumanly then also*  
 κείρας τὰς κεφαλὰς καὶ ἐπικείρας τοὺς πώγωνας, τὰς  
*having-shorn the heads and having-clipped the beards the*  
 μὲν ψαλίσι, ξυρῶ δὲ τοὺς πώγωνας, καὶ ἄλλο τι  
*indeed with-shears with-razor and the beards and other something*  
 προσεξεργασάμενος ἀτοπώτατον καὶ βαρβαρικὴν ὕβριν  
*having-done-besides most-outrageous and barbarian insolence*

ὑπερελαῦνον ἀφῆκεν· εἶπον ἂν καὶ τὴν ὕβριν, εἰ μή  
*surpassing let-go I-would-have-told — also the insolence if not*  
 με καὶ γυναικεία καὶ βασιλικὴ ἐπέιχεν αἰδώς. ἐκεῖνο γὰρ  
*me both womanly and imperial held-back modesty that for*  
 οὐχ ὅπως ἀνάξιον ἀρχιερέως τὸ παρ' ἐκείνου πραχθέν,  
*not only unworthy of-high-priest the(-thing) by him done*  
 ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὅλως ἀνθρώπου Χριστιανικὸν ἐπιφερομένου καὶ  
*but not-even at-all of-a-man Christian bearing also*  
 τοῦνομα· ἐβδελυξάμην καὶ τὸ ἐνθύμημα τοῦ βαρβάρου, μὴ  
*the-name I-loathed also the thought of-the barbarian not*  
 ὅτι γε τοῦργον, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸν γραφέα κάλαμον καὶ τὸν  
*to-say at-least the-deed since even the writing reed and the*  
 χάρτην ἐμόλυνα ἄν, εἰ τὸ πραχθέν κατὰ μέρος  
*paper I-would-have-defiled — if the(-thing) done in detail*  
 διεξήειν. ἀλλ' εἰς παράστασιν καὶ βαρβαρικῆς ὕβρεως  
*I-recounted but for demonstration both of-barbaric insolence*  
 καὶ ὅτι ὁ χρόνος ῥέων ἦθη ἀνδρῶν παντοδαπὰ πρὸς  
*and that the time flowing characters of-men of-every-kind to*  
 κακίαν ἀναφύει καὶ πάντολμα, ἀρκέσει αὐτὸ τοῦτο τὸ  
*wickedness grows and all-daring will-suffice itself this the*  
 μὴδὲ μικρόν τι τοῦ πραχθέντος ἀνασχέσθαι ἡμᾶς  
*not-even small something of-the(-thing) done to-bear us*  
 παρεμφῆναι ἢ διηγῆσασθαι. καὶ ταῦτα ἀρχιερέως, ὦ δίκη,  
*to-show or to-narrate and this of-high-priest O justice*  
 καὶ ταῦτα πρώτου ἀρχιερέως καὶ ταῦτα προκαθημένου τῆς  
*and this of-first high-priest and this presiding-over the*  
 οἰκουμένης ἀπάσης γενομένου, ὥσπερ οὖν καὶ οἱ Λατῖνοι  
*inhabited-world all having-become as then also the Latins*  
 λέγουσί τε καὶ οἴονται· ἔστι γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο τῆς ἀλαζονείας  
*say both and think it-is for also this of-the arrogance*  
 αὐτῶν. μεταπεπτωκότων γὰρ τῶν σκήπτρων ἐκείθεν ἐνθάδε  
*their having-passed for the scepters from-there hither*

εἰς τὴν ἡμεδαπὴν τε καὶ ἡμετέραν βασιλῖδα πόλιν καὶ  
 to the our-land both and our queen city and  
 δὴ καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου καὶ ἅμα πάσης τῆς τάξεως  
 indeed also of-the senate and at-the-same-time all the order  
 μεταπέπτωκε καὶ ἡ τῶν θρόνων ἀρχιερατικὴ τάξις. καὶ  
 has-passed also the of-the thrones high-priestly order and  
 δεδώκασιν οἱ ἀνέκαθεν βασιλεῖς τὰ πρεσβεῖα τῷ θρόνῳ τῆς  
 have-given the from-of-old emperors the precedence to-the throne —  
 Κωνσταντινουπόλεως, καὶ μάλιστα ἡ ἐν Χαλκηδόνι σύνοδος  
 of-Constantinople and most the at Chalcedon council  
 εἰς περιωπὴν πρωτίστην τὸν Κωνσταντινουπόλεως  
 to eminence highest the(-bishop) of-Constantinople  
 ἀναβιβασαμένη τὰς ἀνὰ τὴν οἰκουμένην διοικήσεις  
 having-raised the throughout the inhabited-world dioceses  
 ἀπάσας ὑπὸ τοῦτον ἐτάξατο. μήποτε οὖν ἡ τοιαύτη πρὸς  
 all under him ranked perhaps then the such toward  
 τοὺς πρέσβεις ὕβρις ἀνεφέρετο πρὸς τὸν πεπομφότα  
 the envoys insolence was-referred to the(-one) having-sent  
 οὔσα, οὐ μόνον ὅτι τούτους ἐκόλασεν, ἀλλ' ὅτι καὶ  
 being not only because them he-punished but because also  
 καινὴν τινα τὴν εἰς αὐτοὺς γενομένην ὕβριν αὐτὸς πρῶτος  
 new some the against them done insolence he first  
 ἐξεύρατο. ἤνιττετο γὰρ δι' ὧν ἐποίει τὸ τοῦ ῥηγός,  
 invented he-binted for through what he-did the of-the king  
 ὡς οἶμαι, εὐκαταφρόνητον, ὥσπερ τις ἡμίθεος ἡμιόνῳ  
 as I-think contemptibility as-if some demigod with-a-mule  
 διαλεγόμενος διὰ τῶν καθυβρισμένων τουτωνὶ πρέσβειν.  
 conversing through the outraged these-here envoys  
 ὁ μὲν οὖν πάπας ἔπειδὴ ταῦτα πεπραχὼς καὶ τοὺς  
 the indeed then pope since these(-things) having-done and the  
 πρέσβεις οὕτως, ὡς εἶπον, ἀποπεμφάμενος πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα,  
 envoys thus as I-said having-dismissed against the king



μέγιστον πόλεμον ἀνῆρέθισεν· ἵνα δὲ μὴ τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ  
 greatest war stirred-up that and not — with-Robert  
 προσθέμενος ὁ ῥήξ ἀφορητότερος γένοιτο, φθάνει τὰ  
 having-sided the king more-unbearable might-become he-hastens the(-things)  
 πρὸς εἰρήνην τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ διακηρυκευσάμενος, οὐδὲ  
 toward peace — to-Robert having-proposed-by-herald not  
 πρότερον φιλίως διακείμενος πρὸς αὐτόν. πυθόμενος γὰρ  
 earlier friendly being-disposed toward him having-learned for  
 τὸν δοῦκα Ῥομπέρτον κατειληφότα τὴν Σάλερνον ἀπάρας  
 the duke Robert having-seized — Salerno having-set-out  
 ἐκεῖνος τῆς Ῥώμης εἰς Βενεβενδὸν παραγίνεται. καὶ διὰ  
 he — from-Rome to Benevento arrives and through  
 πρέσβων πρὸς ἀλλήλους διαλεχθέντες εἴθ' οὕτως καὶ  
 envoys with each-other having-conferred then thus also  
 αὐτοπροσώπως ἐντετυχηκότες ἀλλήλοις· καὶ γὰρ ὁ μὲν  
 in-person having-met each-other and for the indeed  
 τῆς Βενεβενδοῦ μετὰ τοῦ οἰκείου ξυντάγματος, ὁ δὲ  
 — from-Benevento with the own detachment the(-other) and  
 τῆς Σαλέρνου μετὰ στρατιᾶς ἐξιόντες, κᾶθ' οὕτως τῶν  
 — from-Salerno with army going-out and-then thus the  
 στρατευμάτων γεγονότων ἐκ διαστήματος ἱκανοῦ, ἐκάτερος  
 armies having-been at distance considerable each  
 τοῦ οἰκείου τάγματος ἀποστάς, συνηλθέτην τε τῶ  
 from-the own division having-stood-apart came-together both the-two  
 ἄνδρε καὶ πίστει παρ' ἀλλήλων καὶ ὅρκους λαβόντες  
 men and pledges from each-other and oaths having-received  
 ὑπέστρεψαν. οἱ δὲ ὅρκοι, ἵν' ὁ μὲν πάπας τὴν τε τοῦ  
 returned the and oaths that the indeed pope the both of-the  
 ῥήγος ἀξίαν περιθειή αὐτῷ καὶ συμμαχίαν δοίη καιροῦ  
 king dignity should-put-on him and alliance should-give occasion  
 καλοῦντος κατὰ Ῥωμαίων· ὁ δὲ δούξ ἀνθωρκίζετο τῷ  
 calling against (the)-Romans the and duke swore-in-turn to-the

πάπα προσβοθηεῖν ὅποι βούλοιτο. μάταια δ' ἄρα ἦσαν  
*pope to-help wherever he-might-wish vain but after-all were*  
 τὰ τῶν ὀρκων παρ' ἀμφοτέρων τελούμενα. ὃ τε  
*the(-things) of-the oaths by both being-performed the both*  
 γὰρ πάπας κατὰ τοῦ ῥηγὸς εὖ μάλα παρώξυντο καὶ  
*for pope against the king very much had-been-provoked and*  
 ὁ πρὸς ἐκείνον πόνος κατήπειγεν, ὃ τε δοῦξ Ῥομπέρτος  
*the against him toil pressed the both duke Robert*  
 τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἐπωφθαλμία καὶ ὥσπερ τις κάπρος  
*with-the of-(the)-Romans covetousness and like some boar*  
 ἄγριος τοὺς ὀδόντας κατὰ τούτων ἐτετρίγει τε καὶ τὸν  
*wild the teeth against them gnashed both and the*  
 θυμὸν ἔθηγεν, ὥστε μέχρι λόγων οἱ ὅρκοι τούτων. καὶ  
*spirit whetted so-that as-far-as words the oaths of-them and*  
 ὁμνύντες αὐτίκα τὸ πρὸς ἀλλήλους οἱ βάρβαροι τὸ  
*swearing at-once the toward each-other the barbarians for-the*  
 παραντίκα καὶ παρεσπόνδουν. ὁ μὲν δοῦξ Ῥομπέρτος  
*forthwith also broke-the-truce the indeed duke Robert*  
 συστρέψας τοὺς χαλινούς ἐπὶ τὴν Σάλερνον ἔσπευδεν, ὁ  
*having-turned the bridles to — Salerno hastened the*  
 δὲ κατάπτυστος οὗτος πάπας (οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔχω τί ποτ' ἂν  
*but despicable this pope nor for I-can what ever —*  
 ἄλλο τοῦτον ἐπονομάζειν τὴν ἀπάνθρωπον ἐκείνην ὕβριν  
*other him to-call the inhuman that insolence*  
 ἐνθυμηθεῖσα τὴν εἰς τοὺς πρέσβεις) μετὰ πνευματικῆς  
*having-considered the against the envoys with spiritual*  
 χάριτος καὶ εὐαγγελικῆς εἰρήνης ἐπὶ τὸν πόλεμον ὁ  
*grace and evangelical peace to the war the*  
 δεσπότης ἐχώρει ὅλη γνῶμη καὶ ὅλαις χερσὶ τὸν  
*master went with-whole mind and with-whole hands the*  
 ἐμφύλιον, ὁ εἰρηνικὸς ταῦτα καὶ τοῦ εἰρηνικοῦ μαθητής.  
*civil(-war) the peaceful(-one) these(-things) and of-the peaceful(-one) disciple*

τοὺς γὰρ Σάξοντας αὐτίκα καὶ τοὺς Σαξόνων ἡγεμόνας  
*the for Saxons at-once and the of-(the)-Saxons leaders*  
 Λαντουλφόν τε καὶ Οὐέλκον μεταπεμψάμενος καὶ πολλὰ  
*Landulf both and Welf having-summoned and many*  
 μὲν καὶ ἄλλα ἐν ὑποσχέσεσιν ὑποτείνας καὶ ῥῆγας  
*indeed and other(-things) in promises having-held-out and kings*  
 ποιήσειν τῆς ἐσπέρας ἀπάσης ἐπαγγελάμενος εἰς ἑαυτὸν  
*to-make of-the west all having-promised to himself*  
 ὑποσύρει τοὺς ἄνδρας. οὕτως ἐκείνος εὐκολον εἶχε τὴν  
*draws-over the men thus that-one ready had the*  
 δεξιὰν εἰς χειροθεσίαν ῥηγῶν τοῦ Παύλου παρακούων,  
*right-hand for laying-on-of-hands of-kings — Paul disobeying*  
 ὡς ἔοικε, “χειρας ταχέως μηδενὶ ἐπιτίθει” λέγοντος· ὁ  
*as it-seems hands quickly on-no-one lay saying he*  
 δὲ τὸν δούκα Λογγιβαρδίας ἐταινίου καὶ τοὺς Σάξοντας  
*and the duke of-Lombardy crowned and the Saxons*  
 τούτους ἔστεφε. συναγροχότος τοίνυν ἑκατέρου τὰς δυνάμεις  
*these garlanded having-gathered therefore each the forces*  
 αὐτῶν, τοῦ τε ῥηγὸς Ἀλαμανίας Ἐνερίχου καὶ τοῦ  
*their the both king of-Alamania Henry and the*  
 πάπα, καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους παραταξαμένων ἢ τε κερατίνη  
*pope and against each-other having-drawn-up the both horn*  
 σάλπιγξ τὸ ἐνδόσιμον ἐδεδώκει καὶ συνερράγησαν εὐθὺς αἱ  
*trumpet the signal had-given and clashed at-once the*  
 φάλαγγες καὶ μάχη ἐξ ἑκατέρων ἀνερριπίσθη μεγάλη καὶ  
*phalanxes and battle from both-sides was-kindled great and*  
 παραμόνιμος. ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον γὰρ ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους  
*persistent to so-great(-a-degree) for from each side*  
 ἡνδρίσαντο καὶ ταῖς ἀπὸ τῶν δοράτων τρώεσι καὶ  
*they-were-brave and in-the from the spears wounds and*  
 τοξευμάτων βολαῖς ἐνεκαρτέρησαν, ὥς ἐν βραχεὶ χρόνῳ  
*of-arrows volleys held-out that in brief time*

πᾶσαν τὴν ὑποκειμένην πεδιάδα ὑπὸ τῶν αἱμάτων τῶν  
 all the lying-below plain by the bloods the  
 ἀπὸ τῶν φόνων ἐνθαλαττεύεσθαι καὶ τοὺς ὑπολοίπους  
 from the slaughters to-become-a-sea and the remaining  
 ἄνδρας ἐμπλέοντας τῷ πολλῷ λύθρῳ μάχεσθαι· ἔστιν  
 men swimming in-the much gore to-fight there-is  
 ὅπου καὶ τοῖς νεκροῖς σώμασι συμποδιζομένους διαπίπτειν  
 where also by-the dead bodies being-entangled to-fall  
 καὶ τῷ ποταμῷ τῶν αἱμάτων ἐμπνίγεσθαι. εἰ γὰρ ὑπὲρ  
 and in-the river of-the bloods to-be-drowned if for over  
 τὰς τριάκοντα χιλιάδας ἄνδρες κατ' ἐκείνην τὴν μάχην,  
 the thirty thousands men in that the battle  
 ὥς φασιν, ἐπεπτώκεισαν, πόσος ῥοὺς αἵματος κατερρνή,  
 as they-say had-fallen how-great flow of-blood ran-down  
 πόσον διάστημα γῆς τῷ λύθρῳ πεπάλακτο. εἶχον  
 how-great extent of-earth with-the gore had-been-spattered had  
 οὖν, ὡς οὕτως εἰπεῖν, ἴσας ὑσμίνῃ τὰς κεφαλὰς καὶ  
 then as so to-say equal in-battle the heads and  
 ἑκατέρα μερίς, ἕως ὃ τῶν Σαξόνων ἡγεμὼν Λαντουλφος  
 each side while the of-the Saxons leader Landulf  
 διεῖπε τὸν πόλεμον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐκεῖνος καιρίαν ἐβλήθη καὶ  
 directed the war when but he mortally was-struck and  
 αὐτίκα τὴν ψυχὴν ἀφήκεν, ἔκλινεν ἢ φάλαγξ τοῦ πάπα  
 at-once the soul gave-up gave-way the phalanx of-the pope  
 καὶ τὰ νῶτα τοῖς ἐχθροῖς ἐδεδώκει οὐκ ἀναμιάκτως οὐδ'  
 and the backs to-the enemies had-given not bloodlessly nor  
 ἄνευ τραυμάτων φεύγοντες. ἔφεπε δὲ τούτους κλονέων  
 without wounds fleeing pursued and them routing  
 ὁ Ἐνέριχος καὶ μάλα θαρρήσας τὴν μεταδίωξιν,  
 — Henry and very having-taken-courage the pursuit  
 ἐξ ὅτου καὶ τὸν Λαντουλφον ἐπύθετο πεπτωκότα καὶ  
 from when also — Landulf be-learned having-fallen and

πολεμίας χειρὸς ἔργον γεγενημένον. ἀλλ' ἔστη τοῦ  
*of-enemy hand work having-become but he-stopped from-the*  
 δρόμου καὶ ἀναπνεῖν ἐπέταττε τὰ στρατεύματα. καὶ  
*running and to-take-breath ordered the armies and*  
 ἐξοπλισάμενος αὖθις ἐπὶ τὴν Ῥώμην ἔσπευδε πολιορκήσιν  
*having-armed again to — Rome hastened to-besiege*  
 αὐτὴν προθυμούμενος. ἐνθύμιον ἐνταῦθα λαμβάνει ὁ  
*it being-eager reflection there takes the*  
 πάπας τὰς συνθήκας καὶ τοὺς ὄρκους τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου καὶ  
*pope the agreements and the oaths — of-Robert and*  
 διαπρεσβεύεται πρὸς αὐτὸν εἰς συμμαχίαν ἀποπειρώμενος.  
*sends-envoys to him for alliance trying*  
 καὶ δὴ κατὰ ταῦτόν καὶ ὁ Ἑνέριχος συμμαχίαν  
*and indeed at the-same(-time) also — Henry alliance*  
 ἐζήτει πέμψας κατὰ τῆς πρεσβυτάτης Ῥώμης ὁρμώμενος.  
*sought having-sent against the most-venerable Rome setting-out*  
 ἀλλ' ἔδοξεν ἑκάτερος τότε λήρος Ῥομπέρτῳ τοιαῦτα  
*but seemed each then nonsense to-Robert such(-things)*  
 ἐπιζητῶν· ἐκεῖνος δὲ πρὸς μὲν τὸν ῥῆγα ἄλλον τρόπον  
*seeking he and to indeed the king in-other manner*  
 καὶ ἀγράφως ἀπεκρίνατο, πρὸς δὲ τὸν πάπαν ἐπιστολὴν  
*and unwritten answered to but the pope letter*  
 διεχάραξεν. εἶχε δὲ τὰ τῆς ἐπιστολῆς ὥδέ πως  
*he-wrote had and the(-things) of-the letter thus somehow*  
 “τῷ μεγάλῳ ἀρχιερεῖ καὶ κυρίῳ μου Ῥομπέρτος δούξ  
*to-the great high-priest and lord my Robert duke*  
 ἐν θεῷ. τὴν γεγενημένην κατὰ σοῦ τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἔφθορον  
*by God the having-happened against you of-the enemies attack*  
 διακηκούς οὐ πάνυ τι τῇ ἀκοῇ προσεθέμην εἰδώς,  
*having-beard not very at-all to-the report I-gave-beed knowing*  
 ὥς οὐκ ἄν τις τολμήσειεν ἀντάραι σοι χεῖρας. τίς  
*that not — anyone would-dare to-raise-against you hands who*

γὰρ κατὰ τοσούτου πατρός ἐπιχειρήσειεν, εἰ μὴ μαίνουτο;  
*for against so-great father would-attempt if not be-were-mad*  
 ἐμὲ δὲ ἴσθι πρὸς πόλεμον βαρύτατον ἐξοπλιζόμενον καὶ  
*me and know for war heaviest arming and*  
 πρὸς ἔθνος δυσκαταγώνιστον. Ῥωμαῖοι γὰρ εἰσι πρὸς  
*against nation hard-to-conquer (the)-Romans for are against*  
 οὓς ὁ πόλεμος, οἳ πᾶσαν γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν τροπαίων  
*whom the war who all earth and sea with-trophies*  
 ἐνέπλησαν. σοὶ δὲ ἀλλ' ἀπὸ ψυχῆς βαθείας πίστιν  
*filled to-you and but from soul deep loyalty*  
 ὀφείλω, ἣν καὶ καιροῦ καλοῦντος παράσχοιμι". οὕτως  
*I-owe which also occasion calling I-would-furnish thus*  
 ἐκεῖνος καὶ ἀμφοτέρων τῶν εἰς συμμαχίαν καλούντων  
*he also of-both those to alliance calling*  
 τοὺς πρέσβεις, τοὺς μὲν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ ταύτῃ, τοὺς δὲ  
*the envoys some indeed with-the letter this others and*  
 πιθανοῖς τισι λόγοις διακρουσάμενος ἀπεπέμψατο.  
*with-plausible some words having-put-off dismissed*

## XVIII · ROBERT'S LEVY

*Robert, imitating Herod's madness, levies the old and the young of Lombardy and Apulia, untrained boys and old men who fall on their faces, amid the laments of their women, and drills them at Salerno. He leaves his son Roger to rule Apulia and help the pope, and sends his younger son Bobemond, his living image, to the region of Avlona. Bobemond falls like a thunderbolt on Kanina, Hiericho, and Avlona, burning as he goes; father and son, says Anna, were locusts.*

Ἀλλὰ μὴ παρώμεν τὰ κατὰ Λογγιβαρδίαν αὐτῷ  
*but not let-us-pass-over the(-things) in Lombardy by-him*  
 διαπεπραγμένα πρὶν ἥκειν εἰς τὸν Αὐλῶνα σὺν τῷ  
*accomplished before to-come to — Avlona with the*

στρατεύματι. ὁ μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἄλλως ἦν τυραννικὸς ἀνὴρ  
*army                    he indeed for also otherwise was tyrannical man*  
καὶ πικρότατος, τότε δὲ καὶ Ἡρώδου μιμεῖται μανίαν. μὴ  
*and most-bitter                    then and even of-Herod imitates madness not*  
γὰρ ἀρκούμενος τοῖς ἀνέκαθεν ἐστρατευμένοις ἀνδράσι  
*for being-content with-the from-of-old having-served men*  
καὶ πρὸς μάχην ἐπισταμένοις ὀπλίζεσθαι νεοσύλλεκτον  
*and for battle knowing-how to-arm newly-levied*  
ποιεῖται στράτευμα μηδεμιᾶς φειδόμενος ἡλικίας· ἀλλὰ  
*makes army no sparing age but*  
καὶ τὴν ἔξωρον καὶ τὴν ἄωρον πανταχόθεν συναγιοχῶς  
*both the past-age and the under-age from-everywhere having-gathered*  
Λογγιβαρδίας τε καὶ Ἀπουλῆϊας εἰς ἑαυτὸν ἐφειλκύσατο.  
*of-Lombardy both and of-Apulia to himself drew*  
καὶ ἦν ἰδεῖν καὶ παῖδας καὶ μερακίσκους καὶ γέροντας  
*and it-was to-see both boys and lads and old*  
ἀνθρώπους οἰκτρούς, οἱ μὴδ' ὅσον ἐν ὀνείροις ὄπλον  
*men pitiable who not-even as-much-as in dreams weapon*  
ἐθεάσαντο, τότε δὴ ἐνδεδυμένους θώρακα καὶ ἀσπίδα  
*had-beheld then indeed having-put-on breastplate and shield*  
κρατοῦντας καὶ τόξον ἀφυῶς πάντη καὶ πλημμελῶς  
*holding and bow awkwardly wholly and clumsily*  
τείνοντας καὶ κατὰ στόμα πίπτοντας, ἐπειδὰν βαδίζειν  
*drawing and on face falling when to-march*  
ἐξῆν. ταῦτα δὴ ταῦτα θορύβου μὲν πρόφασις ἦσαν  
*was-possible these indeed these(-things) of-uproar indeed pretext were*  
τῇ χώρᾳ Λογγιβαρδίας ἀκαταπαύστου, καὶ πανταχοῦ  
*to-the land of-Lombardy unceasing and everywhere*  
κλαυθμὸς ἀνδρῶν καὶ ὀλολυγμὸς γυναικῶν, καὶ ἐμερίζετο  
*weeping of-men and wailing of-women and was-shared*  
ταύταις τὰ τῆς συγγενείας. ἡ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν  
*by-these the(-things) of-the kinship the(-one) indeed for of-them*

ἀστράτευτον ἄνδρα ἐθρήνει, ἣ δὲ ἀπειροπόλεμον  
*unfit-for-war husband lamented the(-other) and inexperienced-in-war*  
 παῖδα, ἄλλη δὲ ἀδελφὸν γεωργὸν ἢ πρὸς ἄλλα ἔργα  
*son another and brother farmer or in other works*  
 ἡσυχολημένον. ταῦτα μὲν ἄντικρυς, καθάπερ εἶπον, μανίας  
*occupied these(-things) indeed outright as I-said of-madness*  
 ἦσαν Ἡρώδου ἢ καὶ πλέον Ἡρώδου. ἐκεῖνος μὲν γὰρ κατὰ  
*were of-Herod or even more than-Herod that-one indeed for against*  
 τῶν βρεφῶν ἐμεμῆνει μόνον, οὗτος δὲ καὶ κατὰ παίδων  
*the infants raged only this-one and both against boys*  
 καὶ πρεσβυτέρων. ἀλλὰ καίπερ οὕτως ἐχόντων τούτων  
*and elders but although thus being them*  
 ἀνασκήτως, ὥς οὕτω γε φάναι, ἐγύμναζε τε καθ' ἡμέραν  
*untrained as so at-least to-say he-exercised both by day*  
 ἐκάστην καὶ συνεκρότει τὰ τῶν νεοσυλλέκτων σώματα.  
*each and drilled the of-the newly-levied bodies*  
 ταῦτα μὲν ἐν Σαλέρνῳ συνεπεπτώκει Ῥομπέρτῳ, πρὶν  
*these(-things) indeed in Salerno had-befallen to-Robert before*  
 εἰς Ὑδροῦντα παραγενέσθαι. ἐκεῖσε γὰρ προεξέπεμψε  
*to Hydrous to-arrive there for he-had-sent-ahead*  
 στράτευμα ἱκανώτατον αὐτὸν ἀπεκδεχόμενον, ἐπειδὴν  
*army very-considerable him awaiting when*  
 ἅπαντα καταστήσειε τὰ κατὰ τὴν χώραν Λογγιβαρδίαν  
*all he-should-settle the(-things) in the land Lombardy*  
 καὶ πρὸς τοὺς πρέσβεις τὰς προσηκούσας ἀποκρίσεις  
*and to the envoys the fitting answers*  
 ποιήσαιτο. τοσοῦτον μέντοι τῷ πάπᾳ προσέθετο, ὅτι τῷ  
*should-make so-much however to-the pope he-conceded that to-the*  
 υἱῷ αὐτοῦ Ῥογέρῃ, ὃν Ἀπουλῆϊας ἀπάσης κεχειροτόνηκεν  
*son his Roger whom of-Apulia all he-had-appointed*  
 ἄρχοντα καὶ Βοριτύλαν τὸν ἀδελφόν, ἐπέσκηψεν, ἐπειδὴν  
*ruler and Boritylas the brother he-enjoined when*



ὁ τῆς Ῥώμης θρόνος πρὸς βοήθειαν αὐτοὺς προσκαλοῖτο  
*the — of-Rome throne to help them should-summon*  
 κατὰ τοῦ Ἑνερίχου ῥηγός, προθυμότατα πρὸς αὐτὸν  
*against — Henry king most-eagerly to him*  
 ἀφικέσθαι καὶ τὴν δυνατὴν εἰσενεγκεῖν συμμαχίαν. τὸν  
*to-come and the possible to-contribute alliance —*  
 μέντοι Βαίμουντον, τὸν νεώτερον τῶν υἱέων αὐτοῦ καὶ  
*however Bohemond the younger of-the sons his and*  
 κατὰ πάντα παρεμφερῇ τῷ πατρὶ καὶ τόλμαν καὶ ῥώμην  
*in all(-things) resembling the father both daring and strength*  
 καὶ γενναιοσύνη καὶ θυμὸν ἀκατάσχετον (ὅλως γὰρ οὗτος  
*and nobility and spirit unrestrainable wholly for he*  
 τοῦ πατρὸς ἀποσφράγισμα ἦν καὶ τῆς ἐκείνου φύσεως  
*of-the father stamp was and of-the his nature*  
 ἔμφυχον ἐκμαγεῖον) μετὰ βαρυτάτου στρατεύματος ἐν τοῖς  
*living impression with heaviest army in the*  
 καθ' ἡμᾶς ἀποστέλλει χωρίοις τοῖς ἀμφὶ τὸν Αὐλῶνα  
*near us he-sends places the about — Avlona*  
 τόποις ἐπιπηδήσονται. ὁ δὲ αὐτίκα ξὺν ἀπειλῇ καὶ  
*regions about-to-leap-upon he and at-once with threat and*  
 ἀκατασχέτῳ ῥύμῃ καθάπερ τις ἐπιρρυεὶς κεραυνὸς τῶν τε  
*unrestrainable impetus like some streaming thunderbolt — both*  
 Κανίνων καὶ Ἱεριχῶ καὶ τοῦ Αὐλῶνος παντὸς ἐπελάβετο  
*Kanina and Hiericho and — Avlona whole seized*  
 καὶ αἰεὶ τι τὰ ξυμπαρακείμενα ἤρει καὶ ἐπυρπόλει  
*and always something the(-places) lying-near took and burned*  
 μαχόμενος. καὶ ἦν ὡς ἀληθῶς πρὸ τοῦ πυρὸς καπνὸς  
*fighting and it-was as truly before the fire smoke*  
 δριμύτατος καὶ πρὸ τῆς μεγάλης πολιορκίας πολιορκίας  
*most-acrid and before the great siege of-siege*  
 προοίμιον. βρούχους ἄντικρυς καὶ ἀκρίδας εἶπεν  
*prelude locusts outright and grasshoppers would-have-called*

ἄν τις αὐτούς, τὸν πατέρα καὶ τὸν υἱόν· τὰ  
 — someone them the father and the son the(-things)  
 γὰρ κατάλοιπα Ῥομπέρτου ὁ τούτου υἱὸς Βαϊμόνδος  
 for left-over of-Robert the his son Bobemond  
 προσεπενείματο καὶ κατέφαγεν. ἀλλὰ μήπω γε τοῦτον  
 grazed-upon and devoured but not-yet at-least him  
 εἰς τὸν Αὐλώνα διαπεράσωμεν· προεξεταζέσθω δὲ τὰ  
 to — Avlona let-us-carry-across let-be-examined-first and the(-things)  
 κατὰ τὴν ἀντιπέραν ἤπειρον αὐτῷ πεπραγμένα.  
 on the opposite mainland by-him done

## XIX · RAOUL'S EMBASSY

*At Hydrous Robert waits for his wife Gaita, who campaigns at his side, then gathers his army and fleet at Brentesion. His envoy Raoul returns from Byzantium with no answer and argues against war: the monk is an impostor, since Raoul saw the real Michael in a monastery, and Alexios has deposed Botaneiates and shares the throne with Constantine. Robert rages, Raoul flees to Bobemond, and Rhaiktor threatens Raoul's brother. Anna laughs at both men, each using the other.*

Ἀπάρas γὰρ ἐκεῖθεν γίνεται κατὰ τὸν Ὑδροῦντα, εἴτ'  
 having-set-out for from-there he-comes to — Hydrous then  
 ἐκεῖθι διακαρτερήσας ὀλίγας ἡμέρας καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα  
 there having-awaited few days and the wife  
 Γαῖταν ἀπεκδεχόμενος (καὶ γὰρ καὶ αὐτὴ ξυνεστράτευε τῷ  
 Gaita awaiting and for also she campaigned-with the  
 ἀνδρὶ καὶ χρημᾶ ἦν ἡ γυνὴ φοβερὸν, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐξοπλίσαιτο)  
 husband and thing was the woman fearsome when she-armed-herself  
 ὥς ἐνηγκαλίσαιτο ταύτην ἐπελθοῦσαν, ἄρας ἐκεῖθεν  
 when he-embraced her having-arrived having-set-out from-there  
 πάλιν ὅλῳ στρατεύματι τὸ Βρεντήσιον καταλαμβάνει·  
 again with-whole army — Brentesion reaches

ἔστι δὲ τοῦτο ἐπίνειον τῆς ὅλης Ἰαπυγίας εὐλμενώτατον.  
*is and this port of-the whole Iapygia best-harbored*  
 ἐνταῦθα δὲ καταπτὰς ἐκαραδόκει τε τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν  
*there and having-swooped he-awaited both the army whole*  
 ἐνταῦθα συναθροισθῆναι καὶ τὰς νῆας ἀπάσας, ὅσαι  
*there to-be-gathered and the ships all as-many-as*  
 τε φορτίδες ἦσαν καὶ ὅσαι μακρὰ καὶ πολεμιστήριον·  
*both cargo(-ships) were and as-many-as long and warlike*  
 ἐκεῖθεν γὰρ ἐπὶ τάδε τὸν ἀπόπλουν ἐδόκει ποιεῖν. καὶ  
*from-there for to here the sailing he-resolved to-make and*  
 ἅμα ὁπόταν κατὰ τὴν Σάλερνον ἦν, πρέσβυν  
*at-the-same-time when at — Salerno he-was envoy*  
 ἐξαποστέλλει τινὰ τῶν ἀμφ’ αὐτὸν μεγιστάνων Ῥαοὺλ  
*he-sends-off one of-the about him magnates Raoul*  
 ἐπονομαζόμενον πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Βοτανειάτην ἤδη μετὰ  
*named to the emperor Botaneiates already after*  
 τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Δούκαν τῶν σκήπτρων ἐπειλημμένον·  
*the autocrat Doukas the scepters having-taken-hold*  
 ἐκαραδόκει καὶ τούτου τὰς ἀποκρίσεις. αὐτῷ τε γὰρ  
*he-awaited also his the answers to-him both for*  
 ἐπεπόμφει μέμψεις τινὰς καὶ προφάσεις δῆθεν εὐλόγους  
*he-had-sent reproaches some and pretexts supposedly plausible*  
 τοῦ προκειμένου πολέμου, ὅτι τὴν θυγατέρα μνηστευθεῖσαν  
*of-the impending war that the daughter betrothed*  
 τῷ βασιλεῖ Κωνσταντίνῳ, ὡς ὁ λόγος φθάσας  
*to-the emperor Constantine as the account having-anticipated*  
 ἐδήλωσε, τὴν μὲν ἀπέζευξε τοῦ νυμφίου, τοῦ δὲ  
*showed her indeed he-had-separated from-the bridegroom from-him and*  
 τὴν βασιλείαν παρείλετο, καὶ ὡς ἡδικηκότος πρὸς ἄμυναν  
*the empire had-taken-away and as having-done-wrong for requital*  
 αὐτὸς εὐτρεπίζοιτο. τῷ δὲ τηνικαῦτα μεγάλῳ δομεστικῷ  
*he made-ready to-the and then grand domestic*

καὶ ἐξάρχῳ τῶν δυτικῶν στρατευμάτων (οὗτος δ' ἦν  
*and commander of-the western armies he and was*  
 ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ Ἀλέξιος) δῶρά τέ τινα ἐπεπόμφει καὶ  
*the my father Alexios gifts both some he-had-sent and*  
 γράμματα φιλίαν ἐπαγγελλόμενα. ταῦτα караδοκῶν  
*letters friendship promising these(-things) awaiting*  
 ἡτρέμει τῷ Βρεντησίῳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ μήπω τῶν στρατευμάτων  
*he-kept-still — at-Brentesion since and not-yet the armies*  
 συλλεγέντων ἀπάντων καὶ τῶν νηῶν ἀπωσθειῶν τῶν  
*having-been-gathered all and the ships having-been-pushed-off the*  
 πλειόνων εἰς θάλασσαν ἦκε Βυζαντόθεν ὁ Ῥαοὺλ καὶ  
*more to sea came from-Byzantium — Raoul and*  
 μηδεμίαν ἀπόκρισιν πρὸς τὰ μεμνηνυμένα ἐπενεγκὼν  
*no answer to the(-things) reported having-brought*  
 εἰς θυμὸν ἀνερρίπισε πλέω τὸν βάρβαρον καὶ μᾶλλον  
*into anger fanned more the barbarian and more*  
 ὅτι καὶ δικαιολογίας ἤπτετο πρὸς τοῦτον τοιαύτης τῶν  
*since also of-plea he-laid-bold toward him of-such from-the*  
 πρὸς τοὺς Ῥωμαίους πολέμων ᾠπαγούσης, πρῶτα μὲν  
*against the Romans wars turning-away first indeed*  
 ὅτι ὁ ἐφεπόμενος αὐτῷ μοναχὸς ὑποκριτὴς ἐστὶ καὶ γόης  
*that the following him monk impostor is and sorcerer*  
 ἀνὴρ καὶ ὑποδύεται τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Μιχαὴλ καὶ ὅλως  
*man and assumes-the-part-of the autocrat Michael and altogether*  
 πλάσμα ἐστὶ τὸ κατ' αὐτόν. ἐκείνον γὰρ ἰδεῖν φησι  
*fabrication is the(-thing) about him that-one for to-have-seen he-says*  
 μετὰ τὴν ἀπὸ θρόνου καθαίρεσιν ἐν τῇ βασιλίδι πόλει  
*after the from throne deposition in the queen city*  
 φαιὸν ἐνδεδυμένον τριβώνιον καὶ ἐν μοναστηρίῳ διάγοντα  
*dark having-put-on cloak and in monastery living*  
 ἐπιμελὲς ποιησάμενος τὸ αὐταῖς ὄψεσι τὸν καταβεβλημένον  
*careful having-made the with-own eyes the deposed*

βασιλέα θεάσασθαι. ἔπειτα προσετίθει καὶ τοῦτο, ὃ  
*emperor to-behold then he-added also this which*  
 καὶ κατὰ τὴν ὑποστροφὴν συμπεπτωκὸς ἤκηκόει. ὁ γὰρ  
*also during the return having-happened he-had-heard the for*  
 ἐμὸς πατὴρ τῆς βασιλείας ἐπιδραξάμενος, ὥς ὕστερον  
*my father the empire having-grasped as later*  
 διηγῆσομαι, τὸν Βοτανειάτην τῶν βασιλείων ἐξήλασε καὶ  
*I-will-narrate — Botaneiates from-the palace drove-out and*  
 τὸν τοῦ Δούκα υἱὸν τὸν περιφανέστατον Κωνσταντῖνον  
*the — of-Doukas son the most-illustrious Constantine*  
 ἐκεῖνον ἐν τοῖς ὑφ' ἡλίον προσηκάμενος μετεδίδου αὐθις  
*that-one among the(-men) under sun having-received shared again*  
 τῆς βασιλείας. τοῦτο κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἀκηκοὺς ὁ Ῥαοὺλ  
*the empire this on the road having-heard — Raoul*  
 εἰς πειθῶ καὶ ταῦτα προσῆγε παραλύειν πειρώμενος  
*to persuasion also these(-things) brought to-undo trying*  
 τὴν τοῦ πολέμου σκευήν. “τίνι γὰρ δικαίῳ λόγῳ πρὸς  
*the of-the war equipment with-what for just reason against*  
 Ἀλέξιόν” φησι “πολεμήσομεν τοῦ Βοτανειάτου τὰς ἀρχὰς  
*Alexios he-says shall-we-make-war — Botaneiates the beginnings*  
 δεδοκότος τῆς ἀδικίας καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν σὴν Ἑλένην  
*having-given of-the injustice and the daughter the your Helena*  
 τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν σκήπτρων ἀποστερήσαντος; τὰ γὰρ  
*from-the Roman scepters having-deprived the(-things) for*  
 παρ' ἄλλων εἰς ἡμᾶς γινόμενα οὐκ ἂν ἑτέροις τοῖς μὴ  
*by others to us happening not — on-others those not*  
 προσκεκρουκόσι κατὰ δίκην ἐνέγκοι πόλεμον. μὴ ἔχοντος  
*having-offended in justice would-bring war not having*  
 δὲ τοῦ πολέμου δικαίαν πρόφασιν τὰ ξύμπαντα  
*and the war just pretext the(-things) all*  
 φροῦδα, καὶ νῆες καὶ ὄπλα καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ παρασκευὴ πᾶσα  
*gone both ships and arms and men and preparation all*

πολεμιστήριος”. ταῦτα ῥηθέντα ἐξώργισεν ἐπὶ πλέον  
*warlike these(-things) said enraged to more*  
 Ῥομπέρτον· ἐμεμήνει γὰρ καὶ ἔμελλε τῷ χεῖρε τούτῳ  
*Robert be-raged for and was-about the-two hands on-him*  
 ἐπιβαλεῖν. ἐκ θατέρου δὲ καὶ ὁ πεπλασμένος ἐκεῖνος  
*to-lay on the-other(-side) and also the fabricated that*  
 Δούκας καὶ ψευδοβασιλεὺς Μιχαήλ, ὃν καὶ Ῥαϊκτώρα  
*Doukas and false-emperor Michael whom also Rhaiktor*  
 ὠνομάκαμεν, ἐσχετλιάζε τε καὶ ἐδυσφόρει καὶ οὐκ εἶχεν,  
*we-have-named was-indignant both and was-vexed and not had*  
 ὅπως κατάσχοι τὴν ὀργήν, οὕτω σαφῶς ἐξελεγχόμενος, ὥς  
*how he-might-check the anger thus clearly being-exposed that*  
 οὐκ εἶη βασιλεὺς ἐκεῖνος ὁ Δούκας, ἀλλὰ ψευδεπίπλαστος  
*not he-was emperor that — Doukas but false-fabricated*  
 βασιλεὺς. ὦν δὲ καὶ ἄλλως ἐξωργισμένος ὁ τύραννος  
*emperor being and also otherwise enraged the tyrant*  
 κατὰ τοῦ Ῥαοὺλ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ Ῥογέρι πρὸς Ῥωμαίους  
*against — Raoul the brother Roger to (the)-Romans*  
 αὐτομολήσαντος καὶ διαμεμνηυκότος ἅπαντα τὰ κατὰ  
*having-deserted and having-reported all the(-things) concerning*  
 τὸν παρασκευαζόμενον πόλεμον ἡβουλήθη κακόν τι  
*the being-prepared war wished evil something*  
 δρᾶσαι τῷ Ῥαοὺλ τὸν παραυτίκα θάνατον ἀπειλήσας. ὁ  
*to-do — to-Raoul the immediate death having-threatened he*  
 δὲ μὴδ’ ὅλως πρὸς τὴν φυγὴν ἐρραθυμικῶς πρὸς τὸν  
*but not at-all toward the flight having-been-slack to —*  
 Βαϊμούντον ἐδραπέτευσεν ὥσπερ τι κρησφύγετον ἐκ τοῦ  
*Bohemond ran-away as some refuge from the*  
 σχεδὸν αὐτὸν ἐφευράμενος. ἐτραγώδει δὲ καὶ ὁ Ῥαϊκτώρ  
*nearby him having-found ranted and also — Rhaiktor*  
 τὰς παλαμναιοτάτας ἀπειλὰς τὰδελεφῶ τοῦ Ῥαοὺλ τῷ  
*the most-murderous threats against-the-brother — of-Raoul the(-one)*

πρὸς Ῥωμαίους αὐτομολήσαντι μεγάλα τε κεκραγὼς καὶ  
*to (the)-Romans having-deserted loudly both having-cried-out and*  
 τὸν μηρὸν τῇ δεξιᾷ πλήττων καὶ ἐξαιτούμενος τὸν  
*the thigh with-the right striking and demanding —*  
 Ῥομπέρτον καὶ λέγων “ἐν τούτῳ καὶ μόνον αἰτῶ, ὡς  
*Robert and saying one this and only I-ask that*  
 εἰ τῆς βασιλείας ἐπιδραξαίμην καὶ ἀποκατασταίην τοῖς  
*if the empire I-should-grasp and I-should-be-restored to-the*  
 θρόνοις, παραδοῦναί μοι τὸν Ῥογέρην, καὶ εἰ μὴ τοῦτον  
*thrones to-hand-over to-me — Roger and if not him*  
 οἰκτίστῳ θανάτῳ παραδοίην αὐτίκα ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει  
*to-most-pitiable death I-should-hand-over at-once in middle of-the city*  
 ἀνασταυρώσας, τάδε καὶ τάδε πείσομαι ἐκ θεοῦ”. ἀλλὰ  
*having-crucified such and such I-shall-suffer from God but*  
 μεταξύ τῶν διηγήσεων τούτων γελᾶν ἔπεισί μοι τοὺς  
*between the narratives these to-laugh comes-over me the*  
 ἄνδρας τούτους καὶ τῆς ἀπονοίας καὶ τῆς κουφότητος,  
*men these both at-the folly and at-the levity*  
 μᾶλλον δὲ τῆς κατ’ ἀλλήλων ἀλαζονείας. ὁ μὲν γάρ  
*rather and at-the against each-other boasting — indeed for*  
 τοι Ῥομπέρτος πρόφασιν εἶχε τὸν ἀπατεῶνα τοῦτον  
*surely Robert pretext had the impostor this*  
 καὶ δέλεαρ καὶ οἶόν τι πρόσχημα τοῦ συμπενθέρου  
*and bait and as-it-were some screen of-the fellow-father-in-law*  
 καὶ βασιλέως καὶ διεδείκνυ τοῦτον ταῖς πόλεσι καὶ  
*and emperor and displayed him to-the cities and*  
 πρὸς ἀποστασίαν ἐπήρεν, ἐφ’ οὓς ἂν παραγένοιτο καὶ  
*to revolt incited to whom — he-might-come and*  
 συμπεῖθειν ἡδύνατο, ἐν νῷ ἔχων, ἐπειδὴν κατὰ ροῦν αὐτῷ  
*to-persuade could in mind having when with stream for-him*  
 τὰ τοῦ πολέμου καὶ τῆς τύχης ἐπέλθοι, ἐπὶ τοῦ  
*the(-things) of-the war and of-the fortune should-come on the*

τραχήλου ράπίσας ἀποπέμψαι σὺν γέλωτι μετὰ γὰρ τὴν  
*neck having-slapped to-send-off with laughter after for the*  
 θήραν καταγελᾶται τὸ δέλεαρ. ὁ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐλπίσιν  
*hunt is-laughed-at the bait he and also himself on-hopes*  
 ἡπατημέναις ἐτρέφετο, εἴ που συμβαίῃ καὶ μετᾶσχοι  
*deceived fed if perhaps it-should-happen and he-should-share*  
 κράτους τινός, οἷα φιλεῖ πολλάκις γίνεσθαι παραλόγως,  
*sovereignty some such-as is-wont often to-happen unexpectedly*  
 ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνος μὲν τῆς βασιλείας ἀπρὶξ ἐπιδράξοιτο, ὥς οὐκ  
*but he indeed the empire tightly would-grasp as not*  
 ἂν τὸν βάρβαρον Ῥομπέρτον προσηκαμένον εἰς βασιλείαν  
*— the barbarian Robert accepting into empire*  
 τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ δήμου καὶ τοῦ στρατεύματος, αὐτῷ δὲ  
*the Roman people and the army him and*  
 τῷ τέως ἀποχρῶτο καθάπερ ὀργάνῳ εἰς τὴν ὅλην τῆς  
*in-the meantime he-would-use as instrument for the whole of-the*  
 σκευωρίας οἰκονομίαν. ταῦτα ἐνθυμουμένη μοι μειδιᾷ  
*plot management these(-things) reflecting to-me to-smile*  
 ἐπέρχεται καὶ γέλως ἐπιτρέχει τοῖς χεῖλεσι πρὸς λύχνον  
*comes and laughter runs-over the lips at lamp*  
 ἐπισυρούσῃ τὸν κάλαμον.  
*drawing the reed*



*Robert gathers a hundred and fifty ships and thirty thousand men at Brentesion, chooses the short winter crossing to Dyrrachion, takes his son Roger along after all, and seizes Korypho and other forts. Monomachatos, slandered by Borilos and Germanos, had won the post of duke of Illyricum and met Alexios at Pege on the way. At Dyrrachion he answers Alexios' request for money with promises but sends none, courts Robert and the Dalmatian rulers Bodin and Michaelas, and keeps every door open. Anna turns now to her father's reign.*

Ὁ μέντοι Ῥομπέρτος πᾶσαν δύναμιν συναγροχῶς κατὰ τὸ  
 — however Robert all force having-gathered at —  
 Βρεντήσιον τὰς τε ναῦς αὐτῷ καὶ τοὺς στρατιώτας (αἱ  
 Brentesion the both ships for-him and the soldiers the  
 μὲν γὰρ νῆες εἰς ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα συνηρίθμηντο, οἱ  
 indeed for ships to hundred and fifty were-counted the  
 δὲ στρατιῶται εἰς τριάκοντα χιλιάδας ξύμπαντες ἐτύγχανον  
 and soldiers to thirty thousand all happened  
 συμποσούμενοι ἑκάστης νηὸς ἄνδρας ἀπολαμβάνουσης  
 amounting each ship men receiving  
 διακοσίους μεθ' ὅπλων καὶ ἵππων) καὶ οὕτως ἐχόντων  
 two-hundred with arms and horses and thus being  
 παρασκευῆς, ἐπειδὴν οἷς προσοκείλειαν, ὡπλισμένοις  
 of-equipment when whom they-should-put-in-to armed  
 τούτοις καὶ ἰππόταις περιτύχοιεν, ἔμελλε διαφεῖναι πρὸς  
 them and horsemen they-should-meet was-about to-cross to  
 τὴν Ἐπίδαμνον πόλιν, ἣν Δυρράχιον κατὰ τὸ νῦν  
 — Epidamnos city which Dyrrachion according-to the now  
 ἐπικρατήσαν ἔθος προσονομάζομεν. ἐδόκει μὲν γὰρ  
 prevailing custom we-name be-intended indeed for  
 ἐξ Ὑδροῦντος πρὸς τὰς Νικοπόλεις διαπερᾶν καὶ  
 from Hydrous to the Nikopoleis to-cross and

τήν τε Ναύπακτον καὶ τὰ ξυμπαρακείμενα χωρία καὶ  
 — both Naupaktos and the lying-near places and  
 φρούρια πάντα κύκλω περιλαβεῖν. ἀλλ' ἐπειδήπερ εἰς  
 forts all round to-take but since to  
 πολὺ πλάτος ἡνέωκτο τὸ ἐκεῖθεν ἐνθάδε πέλαγος ἢ τὸ  
 great breadth had-opened the from-there hither sea than the  
 ἀπὸ Βρεντησίου πρὸς τὸ Δυρράχιον, προεῖλετο μᾶλλον  
 from Brentesion to — Dyrrachion he-chose rather  
 τοῦτον τὸν κατάπλου ἐκείνου ἅμα μὲν καὶ τὴν  
 this the passage than-that at-the-same-time indeed also the  
 ταχίστην κέλευθον προαιρούμενος, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὴν  
 swiftest route choosing at-the-same-time and also the  
 ῥαστώνην τῷ στόλῳ περιποιούμενος. καὶ γὰρ χειμέριος  
 ease for-the fleet securing and for wintry  
 ἦν ἡ ὥρα καὶ ὁ ἥλιος πρὸς τοὺς νοτίους κύκλους  
 was the season and the sun to the southern circles  
 ἀπελαννόμενος καὶ τῷ αἰγοκέρωτι πλησιάζων ὑπετέμετο  
 being-driven and the Capricorn approaching cut-short  
 τὰ ἡμερήσια διαστήματα. ὣν οὖν μὴ ἐξ Ὑδροῦντος  
 the daily distances that then not from Hydrous  
 ἀφείς ἀρχομένης ἡμέρας νυκτοπλοήσειε καὶ κλύδωσί  
 having-set-off beginning day he-might-sail-by-night and to-squalls  
 τισι προσπελάσειεν, ἐπὶ τὸ Δυρράχιον ἐκ Βρεντησίου  
 some might-come-near to — Dyrrachion from Brentesion  
 ὅλοις ιστίοις ἀπενεχθῆναι ἐβουλεύσατο. τὰ μήκη γὰρ τοῦ  
 with-full sails to-be-carried he-resolved the lengths for of-the  
 διαστήματος τῆς ὁδοῦ συνετέμετο ἐπιστενουμένου τοῦ  
 distance of-the way were-cut-short narrowing the  
 Ἀδριαντικοῦ πελάγους ἐκεῖθι. οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ τὸν υἱὸν  
 Adriatic sea there not however even the son  
 Ῥογέρην κατόπιν ἀπέλιπε, καθάπερ βεβούλητο πρότερον,  
 Roger behind left as he-had-intended earlier

Ἀπουληΐας αὐτὸν κεχειροτονηκὼς κύριον, ἀλλ' οὐκ οἶδ'  
*of-Apulia him having-appointed lord but not I-know*  
 ὅπως μεταδόξαν αὐτὸν πάλιν συνεφεπόμενον εἶχε.  
*how having-changed-his-mind him again following-with had*  
 μεταξύ δὲ τοῦ πρὸς τὸ Δυρράχιον κατάπλου τήν  
*in-the-midst and of-the to — Dyrrachion passage the*  
 τε Κορυφῶ πόλιν ὀχυρωτάτην καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ ἡμέτερα  
*both Korypho city strongest and other some our*  
 φρούρια ἐξ ἀποστολῆς κατέσχε. καὶ ὁμήρους ἔκ τε  
*forts from sending seized and hostages from both*  
 Λογγιβαρδίας καὶ Ἀπουληΐας ἀναλαβόμενος καὶ τὴν χώραν  
*Lombardy and Apulia having-taken and the land*  
 ἀργυρολογήσας ἅπασαν καὶ φορολογήσας προσδοκῆσιμος  
*having-levied-silver-from all and having-taxed expected*  
 ἦν τῷ Δυρραχίῳ προσεσχηκέναι. δοῦξ δὲ τηνικαῦτα  
*was — at-Dyrrachion to-have-put-in duke and then*  
 ἐτύγχανε παντὸς τοῦ Ἰλλυρικοῦ Γεώργιος ὁ Μονομαχάτος  
*happened of-all — Illyricum George the Monomachatos*  
 παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Βοτανειάτου ἀποσταλείς. καίτοι  
*by the autocrat Botaneiates sent although*  
 πρότερον τὴν ἀποστολὴν ἀπεπέμπετο καὶ οὐδ' ὅλως ἦν  
*earlier the mission he-declined and not at-all was*  
 εὐπειθὴς πρὸς τὴν λειτουργίαν ταύτην, ἀλλ' οἷ γε  
*compliant toward the office this but the at-least*  
 βάρβαροι δούλοι τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος (Σκύθαι γὰρ ἦσαν  
*barbarians slaves of-the autocrat Scythians for were*  
 Βορίλος τε καὶ Γερμανός) ἐνεκότουν τε τῷ Μονομαχάτῳ  
*Borilos both and Germanos bore-a-grudge both — against-Monomachatos*  
 καὶ ἀεί τι δεινότερον κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐννοοῦντες κατεῖπον  
*and always something more-dreadful against him devising denounced*  
 αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα συρράψαντες, ὅποσα  
*him to the autocrat having-stitched-together whatever*

γε καὶ βεβούλουντο, καὶ τοσοῦτον ἀνέφλεξαν τὸν τοῦ  
*at-least also they-wished and so-much inflamed the of-the*  
 βασιλέως κατ' αὐτοῦ θυμόν, ὡς ἐπιστραφέντα ποτὲ πρὸς  
*emperor against him anger that having-turned once to*  
 τὴν βασιλῖδα Μαρίαν ἐρεῖν “ἐχθρὸν τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων  
*the empress Maria to-say enemy of-the of-the Romans*  
 ἡγεμονίας τὸν Μονομαχάτον τοῦτον ὑπόπτευκα”. τοῦτο  
*dominion — Monomachatos this I-have-suspected this*  
 ἀκροασάμενος Ἰωάννης ὁ Ἀλανός, φίλος ἐς τὰ μάλιστα  
*having-heard John the Alan friend to the utmost*  
 ὦν τοῦ Μονομαχάτου, γινώσκων δὲ καὶ τὴν τῶν Σκυθῶν  
*being — of-Monomachatos knowing and also the of-the Scythians*  
 πρὸς αὐτὸν μῆνιν καὶ τὰς συχνὰς κατ' αὐτοῦ εἰσηγήσεις  
*against him wrath and the frequent against him denunciations*  
 ἅπαντα τά τε τοῦ βασιλέως ῥήματα τά τε τῶν Σκυθῶν  
*all the both of-the emperor words the and of-the Scythians*  
 πρὸς τὸν Μονομαχάτον ἀπελθὼν ἐξορχεῖται καὶ περὶ τοῦ  
*to — Monomachatos having-gone divulges and about the*  
 συμφέροντος βουλευσασθαι ξυμβουλεύει. ὁ δὲ (νουνεχῆς  
*advantageous to-deliberate advises he and sensible*  
 γὰρ ἦν) καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ προσελθὼν προαρπάξει τὴν ἐπὶ  
*for he-was also to-the emperor having-approached snatches-first the for*  
 τὸ Δυρράχιον λειτουργίαν λόγοις κολακευτικοῖς καταθέλξας  
*— Dyrrachion office with-words flattering having-charmed*  
 αὐτόν. καὶ ὡς πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδαμνον συνταξάμενος καὶ τὰς  
*him and as toward — Epidamnos having-taken-leave and the*  
 ἐπὶ τῇ δουικῇ ζώνῃ προστάξεις ἐγγράφως ἀνεληφώς,  
*for the ducal belt orders in-writing having-received*  
 ἐπισπευδόντων εὖ μάλα πρὸς τοῦτο τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐκείνων  
*urging well very to this the Scythians those*  
 Γερμανοῦ καὶ Βορίλου, εἰς δευτέραν ἡμέραν τῆς βασιλίδος  
*Germanos and Borilos on second day from-the queen*

πόλεως ἔξεισι τὴν Ἐπίδαμνον ἀφορῶν καὶ τὴν Ἰλλυρίδα  
*city goes-out — Epidamnos looking-toward and the Illyrian*  
 χώραν. ἀλλὰ περιτυγχάνει περί που τὴν λεγομένην  
*land but meets near somewhere the called*  
 Πηγὴν, ἔνθα καὶ ναὸς ὠκοδόμηται τῆς ἐμῆς δεσπότιδος  
*Pege where also temple has-been-built of-the my mistress*  
 παρθένου καὶ θεομήτορος ἐν τοῖς ἀνὰ Βυζαντίδα  
*virgin and Mother-of-God among the throughout Byzantine*  
 πόλιν ναοῖς περιβόητος, τῷ ἐμῷ πατρὶ Ἀλεξίῳ. οἱ  
*city temples renowned — my father Alexios they*  
 δὲ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, καὶ ὁ μὲν Μονομαχάτος ἄρχεται  
*and saw each-other and — indeed Monomachatos begins*  
 λόγων πρὸς τὸν μέγαν δομέστικον περιπαθῶν καὶ ὡς  
*words to the grand domestic lamenting and that*  
 ὑπερόριος γίνοιτο δι' ἐκεῖνον καὶ τὴν πρὸς τοῦτον  
*beyond-the-frontier he-had-become because-of him and the toward him*  
 φιλίαν, καὶ ὅτι οἱ Σκύθαι οἱ πᾶσι ἐποφθαλμιῶντες  
*friendship and that the Scythians the at-everyone looking-enviously*  
 Βορίλος καὶ Γερμανὸς ὅλον τοῦ φθόνου τὸν τροχὸν  
*Borilos and Germanos whole of-the envy the wheel*  
 κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐξεκύλισαν καὶ δὴ τῶν οἰκείων καὶ τῆς  
*against him rolled and indeed from-the own(-people) and from-the*  
 φίλης ταύτης πόλεως εὐπροσώπως ἐξορίζουσι. καὶ πάντα  
*dear this city speciously they-banish and all*  
 κατὰ μέρος ἐκτραγωδήσας, ὅσα τε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα  
*in detail having-tragedized as-much-as both to the emperor*  
 συκοφαντηθεὶ καὶ πάθει παρὰ τῶν δούλων, ἡξιούτο  
*he-was-slandered and suffered from the slaves was-deemed-worthy*  
 παραμυθίας ὅτι πλείστης παρὰ τοῦ δομεστικοῦ τῆς  
*of-consolation as much-as-possible from the domestic of-the*  
 δύσεως, οἷος ἐκεῖνος ψυχὴν ἐπικουφίσαι βαρυνομένην ταῖς  
*west such he soul to-lighten weighed-down with-the*

συμφοραῖς. καὶ τέλος ἐπειπόντος, ὡς ἄρα θεὸς εἴη τῶν  
*misfortunes and finally having-said that after-all God was of-the*  
 τοιούτων ἐκδικητῆς καὶ ὡς μεμνήσθαι φιλίας τῆς πρὸς  
*such(-things) avenger and as to-remember friendship the toward*  
 αὐτὸν ὑπομνήσαντος, ὁ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ Δυρράχιον ὥρμα,  
*him having-reminded the(-one) indeed to — Dyrrachion set-out*  
 τὸν δ' ἀφήκεν εἰσδύναι τὴν βασιλεύουσαν πόλιν. ὁ δὲ  
*the(-other) and he-let to-enter the reigning city — and*  
 Μονομαχάτος καταλαβὼν τὸ Δυρράχιον καὶ ἀμφοτέρων  
*Monomachatos having-reached — Dyrrachion and of-both*  
 τὴν παρασκευὴν ἀκηκοὺς τὴν τε τοῦ τυράννου Ῥομπέρτου  
*the preparation having-heard the both of-the tyrant Robert*  
 καὶ τὴν ἐπανάστασιν Ἀλεξίου, ἐν ζυγῷ καὶ σταθμῷ τὰ  
*and the rising of-Alexios in scale and weight the(-things)*  
 κατ' αὐτὸν διετίθετο. καὶ πρὸς μὲν τὸ φανερόν ἀντίξως  
*concerning himself arranged and to indeed the open(-view) hostile*  
 εἶχεν ἀμφοτέροις, εἶχε δέ τι τὰ τῆς προδήλου  
*he-was to-both had and somewhat the(-things) of-the evident*  
 μάχης καὶ τοῦ φαινομένου βαθύτερον. ὁ μὲν γὰρ μέγας  
*battle and of-the apparent deeper the indeed for grand*  
 δομέστικος γράμμασιν αὐτῷ μεμηνύκει τὰ συμπεσόντα,  
*domestic by-letters to-him had-reported the(-things) having-befallen*  
 ὅτι τε τῶν ὀμμάτων ἀποστέρησις τούτῳ ἡπείλητο  
*that both of-the eyes deprivation to-him had-been-threatened*  
 καὶ ὡς ἄρα διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἀνάγκην καὶ τὴν  
*and that after-all because-of this the necessity and the*  
 μελετωμένην τυραννίδα τοῖς τυραννοῦσιν ἀντεπιτίθεται  
*planned tyranny against-those tyrannizing he-counter-attacks*  
 καὶ χρὴ τοῦτον διαναστῆναι ὑπὲρ τοῦ φίλου καὶ πρὸς  
*and it-is-needful him to-rise-up for the friend and to*  
 αὐτὸν ἐθελῆσαι πέμψαι ὅθεν δῆποτε χρήμα τούτῳ  
*him to-be-willing to-send from-whenever ever money for-him*

συνειλεγμένον. “δεῖ δὴ γάρ” φησι “χρημάτων, καὶ  
*collected it-is-needful indeed for he-says of-money and*  
 ἄνευ τούτων οὐδὲν ἔστι γενέσθαι τῶν δεόντων”. ὁ δὲ  
*without these nothing is-possible to-be-done of-the needful(-things) he and*  
 χρήματα μὲν οὐκ ἔπεμψε, φιλοφρονησάμενος δὲ τοὺς  
*money indeed not sent having-received-kindly and the*  
 πρέσβεις γράμματα τούτοις ἐπιτίθησιν ἀντὶ χρημάτων  
*envoys letters to-them entrusts instead-of money*  
 τοιόνδε νοῦν περιέχοντα, ὡς αὐτὸς μὲν εἰς τὴν τήμερον  
*such sense containing that he indeed to the present*  
 τὴν ἀρχαίαν φιλίαν διαφυλάττοι καὶ εἰς τὸ ἐξῆς φυλάττειν  
*the old friendship kept and for the future to-keep*  
 κατεπαγγέλλοιτο· περὶ δὲ τοῦ ἐπιτεταγμένου χρυσοῦ  
*promised about and the requested gold*  
 σφόδρα μὲν καὶ αὐτὸν γλίχεσθαι ἐμπειν ὅποσα γε  
*very indeed also himself to-long to-send as-much-as at-least*  
 βούλοιο χρήματα. “ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐπέσχε με πρᾶγμα δίκαιον.  
*he-might-wish money but for held-back me matter just*  
 καὶ γὰρ πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως Βοτανειάτου πεμφθεὶς καὶ  
*and for by the emperor Botaneiates having-been-sent and*  
 τὰς πίστεις τῆς δουλείας αὐτῷ δεδοκῶς οὐ καλὸς ἂν  
*the pledges of-the service to-him having-given not good —*  
 οὐδέ σοι δόξω καὶ εὖνους τὰ εἰς βασιλέας  
*even to-you I-would-seem and well-disposed in-the(-things) toward emperors*  
 ἀνὴρ, εἴ γε τοῖς σοῖς ἐπιτάγμασιν ἐκ τοῦ σχεδὸν  
*man if at-least to-the your commands from the near(-moment)*  
 ὑπέιξομαι. εἰ δὲ τὴν βασιλείαν σοι ἐπιβραβεύσειεν ἢ  
*I-shall-yeild if but the empire to-you should-award the*  
 ἄνωθεν πρόνοια, ὡς πρῶτον φίλος ἐγὼ πιστὸς ἦν, καὶ  
*from-above providence as first friend I faithful was also*  
 μετὰ ταῦτα δούλος πιστότατος ἔσομαι.” ταῦτα τοῦ  
*after these(-things) slave most-faithful I-shall-be these(-things) —*

Μονομαχάτου πρὸς τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα σχεδιάσαντος καὶ ἐν  
*Monomachatos to the my father having-improvised and at*  
 ταυτῷ αὐτόν τε ἅμα, λέγω δὴ τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα,  
*the-same(-time) him both at-once I-mean indeed the my father*  
 καὶ τὸν Βοτανειάτην ὑποποιουμένου, πρὸς δὲ τούτοις  
*and — Botaneiates winning-over besides and these*  
 πρὸς τὸν βάρβαρον Ῥομπέρτον γυμνοτέρους ποιησαμένου  
*to the barbarian Robert more-naked having-made*  
 λόγους καὶ εἰς λαμπρὰν ἀποστασίαν ἀναρρηγνυμένου,  
*words and into open revolt bursting*  
 πολλὰ κατηγορεῖν ἔχω. ἀλλ' ἔοικέ πως τὰ τοιαῦτα  
*much to-accuse I-can but it-seems somehow the such*  
 ἦθι τῶν ἀνθρώπων παλίμβολα καὶ πολλὰ χρώματα  
*characters of-the men changeable and many colors*  
 μεταλαμβάνοντα κατὰ τὰς τῶν πραγμάτων μεταβολάς,  
*taking-on according-to the of-the affairs changes*  
 καὶ τῷ μὲν κοινῷ οἱ τοιοῦτοι πάντες ἀξύμφοροι,  
*and to-the indeed common(-good) the such all unprofitable*  
 ἐαυτοῖς δὲ εἰς ἀσφαλέστατοι τὰ κατ' αὐτοὺς καὶ  
*to-themselves but are most-safe the(-things) concerning themselves and*  
 μόνους ξυμφέροντα διοικονομούμενοι καὶ ὡς τὰ πολλὰ  
*alone profitable managing and as the many(-times)*  
 ἀποτυγχάνοντες. ταῦτα μὲν οὕτως ὁ τῆς ἱστορίας  
*failing these(-things) indeed thus the of-the history*  
 ἵππος τῆς λεωφόρου ἐξέδραμε· πάλιν δὲ τοῦτον εἰς τοὺς  
*horse from-the highway ran-out again and it to the*  
 προτέρους δρόμους ἐπαναγάγωμεν καὶ γεγονότα ἐξήνιον.  
*former courses let-us-bring-back and having-become unbridled*  
 ὁ γάρ τοι Ῥομπέρτος καὶ πρότερον σφαδάζων πρὸς τὴν  
*— for surely Robert even before struggling toward the*  
 καθ' ἡμῶν περαίωσιν καὶ τὸ Δυρράχιον φανταζόμενος,  
*against us crossing and — Dyrrachion imagining*



τότε δὴ καὶ μᾶλλον ἐξεφλέγετο καὶ χεῖρας καὶ πόδας  
*then indeed also more was-inflamed and hands and feet*  
 ἀκάθεκτος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ναυστολίαν καὶ τοὺς στρατιώτας  
*unrestrainable he-was toward the voyage and the soldiers*  
 ἐπέσπευδε καὶ λόγοις παροξυντικοῖς παρεθάρρυνεν. ὁ  
*urged and with-words provoking encouraged —*  
 δὲ Μονομαχάτος ταῦτα κατασκευάσας καὶ ἄλλην τινὰ  
*and Monomachatos these(-things) having-arranged also another some*  
 τοιαύτην ἀσφάλειαν ἐαυτῷ ἐπωκοδομεῖτο. τὸν τε γὰρ  
*such security for-himself built-on — both for*  
 Βοδῖνον καὶ τὸν Μιχαηλᾶν τοὺς ἐξάρχους τῶν Δαλματῶν  
*Bodin and — Michaelas the rulers of-the Dalmatians*  
 διὰ τινων γραφῶν ἐαυτῷ ὑπεποιήσατο φίλους καὶ δωρεαῖς  
*through some writings for-himself won-over friends and with-gifts*  
 προκατείληφε τὰς γνώμας αὐτῶν θύρας παντοδαπὰς  
*had-seized-beforehand the minds their doors of-every-kind*  
 ἐαυτῷ ὑπανοίγων. εἰ γὰρ τοῦ τε Ῥομπέρτου καὶ Ἀλεξίου  
*for-himself opening-up if for — both Robert and Alexios*  
 ἀστοχήσειε καὶ ἀμφοτέρων ἀποκριθεῖν, εὐθὺς Δαλματίας  
*he-should-miss and by-both should-be-rejected straight to-Dalmatia*  
 ἐλάσειε πρὸς τε Βοδῖνον καὶ Μιχαηλᾶν αὐτόμολος  
*he-would-drive to both Bodin and Michaelas deserter*  
 γενησόμενος. ἐχθρῶν γὰρ τούτων ἀναφανέντων λοιπὸς  
*about-to-become enemies for these having-appeared remaining*  
 ἄρα ὁ Μιχαηλᾶς κατηλπίζετο τούτῳ καὶ ἐτέρωθεν  
*after-all — Michaelas was-hoped-for by-him and on-the-other-side*  
 ὁ Βοδῖνος, πρὸς οὓς καὶ φυγεῖν παρεσκεύαστο, τῶν  
*— Bodin to whom also to-flee he-had-prepared the(-winds)*  
 ἀπὸ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου δηλονότι καὶ Ἀλεξίου ἀντιπνευσάντων  
*from — Robert evidently and Alexios having-blown-against*  
 αὐτῷ. ταῦτα μὲν ἐχέτω ταύτη. καιρὸς δὲ ἤδη  
*him these(-things) indeed let-stand thus time and now*

τραπέσθαι πρὸς τὴν βασιλείαν τοῦμοῦ πατρὸς καὶ ὅπως  
*to-turn to the reign of-my father and how*  
 καὶ ἐξ οἷων ἀφορμῶν εἰς τὸ βασιλεύειν ἐλήλυθε,  
*and from what-kind-of starting-points to the to-reign he-came*  
 διηγῆσασθαι. οὐ γὰρ τὰ πρὸ τῆς βασιλείας αὐτῷ  
*to-narrate not for the(-things) before the empire his*  
 ἐσκεψάμην ἐρεῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅσα βασιλεύων κατώρθωκεν  
*I-proposed to-tell but also as-much-as reigning he-achieved*  
 ἢ ἐξήμαρτεν, εἰ γε τέως σφαλέντα τοῦτον εὐρήσομεν  
*or erred if at-least meanwhile having-slipped him we-shall-find*  
 ἐν ᾧασι δι' ὧν βαδιούμεθα. οὐ γὰρ ὡς πατρὸς  
*in all(-things) through which we-shall-go not for as father*  
 φεισαίμην, εἰ γέ μοι παρασταίῃ τι τῶν ἐκείνῳ μὴ  
*I-would-spare if at-least to-me should-appear any of-the by-him not*  
 καλῶς πεπραγμένων, οὐδὲ διὰ τὴν ὑποτρέχουσιν  
*well done(-things) nor because-of the creeping-in*  
 ὑποψίαν, ὅτι πατήρ ἐστι, περὶ οὗ ξυγγράφομεν, τὰ  
*suspicion that father is about whom we-write the*  
 κατορθώματα τούτῳ παραδραμούμεθα. ἐν ἐκατέροις γὰρ  
*achievements his we-shall-pass-over in each for*  
 ἀδικήσομεν τὴν ἀλήθειαν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ταύτην ἐχούσῃ σκοπόν,  
*we-shall-wrong the truth to-me for this having aim*  
 ἄνωθεν καθάπερ πολλάκις εἴρηται, ὑπόθεσις ὁ πατήρ  
*from-the-start as often has-been-said subject the father*  
 καὶ βασιλεὺς ὑποβέβληται. τὸν οὖν Ῥομπέρτον ἐκέισε  
*and emperor has-been-laid-down — then Robert there*  
 καταλελοιπότες, οὐπερ ὁ λόγος αὐτὸν ἡγάγετο, τὰ  
*having-left where the account him led the(-things)*  
 κατὰ τὸν βασιλέα σκοπῶμεν ἤδη· τοὺς δὲ πολέμους  
*concerning the emperor let-us-consider now the and wars*

καὶ τὰς μάχας τὰς πρὸς τὸν Ῥομπέρτον ἐν ἑτέρῳ λόγῳ  
and the battles the against — Robert in other book  
ταμεινσόμεθα.

we-shall-reserve

BOOK II

XXI • THE BROTHERS AND THE SLAVES

*Isaac and Alexios Komnenos, sons of John, distinguish themselves under several emperors, and Botaneiates favors them, sharing his table and making Alexios domestic of the West. The slaves Borilos and Germanos, of Slav race, grow envious and plot. Isaac, married to a cousin of the empress Maria, has her household persuade her to adopt Alexios. The brothers, devoted like Orestes and Pylades, visit the palace often; they think of flight but keep the plan secret, fearing the empress would tell the emperor.*

Ὅθεν μὲν οὖν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ Ἀλέξιος ὥρμητο καὶ  
whence indeed then the autocrat Alexios had-come and  
ἐξ οἴου γένους τὸν βουλόμενον εἰδέναι εἰς τὰς  
from what-kind-of family the(-one) wishing to-know to the  
τοῦμοῦ καίσαρος συγγραφὰς παραπέμπομεν· ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ  
of-my caesar writings we-send but indeed also  
τὰ περὶ τοῦ βασιλέως Νικηφόρου τοῦ Βοτανειάτου  
the(-things) about the emperor Nikephoros the Botaneiates  
ἐκεῖθεν ἐλκύσεται. Μανουὴλ μὲν οὖν τὸν πρωτότοκον  
from-there he-will-draw Manuel indeed then the first-born  
ἀδελφὸν Ἰσαακίου καὶ Ἀλεξίου καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν τῶν  
brother of-Isaac and of-Alexios and of-the rest of-the  
ἐξ Ἰωάννου τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ καὶ πρὸς πατρὸς ἐμοῦ  
from John the Komnenos and on father's(-side) my  
πάππου κατηγμένων στρατηγὸν αὐτοκράτορα ἢ Ἀσία εἶχεν  
grandfather descended general autocrat — Asia had

ἅπαντα τοῦ προβεβασилευκότος Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ Διογένης  
*all the having-reigned-before Romanos the Diogenes*  
 τοῦτον προχειρισαμένου, αὐθις δὲ καὶ τὸν Ἰσαάκιον  
*him having-appointed again and also — Isaac*  
 δοῦκα ἢ Ἀντιόχου ἐκληρώσατο, πολλοὺς πολέμους καὶ  
*duke the of-Antiochus(-city) obtained many wars and*  
 μάχας ἀγωνισαμένους, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ τρόπαια κατὰ τῶν  
*battles having-fought many and also trophies against the*  
 ἀντικειμένων στήσαντας. καὶ μετ' αὐτοὺς οὐμὸς πατὴρ  
*opponents having-set-up and after them my father*  
 Ἀλέξιος στρατηγὸς αὐτοκράτωρ προὔβηλτο κατὰ τοῦ  
*Alexios general autocrat was-put-forward against —*  
 Οὐρσελίου παρὰ τοῦ τότε βασιλεύοντος Μιχαὴλ τοῦ Δούκα  
*Ourselios by the then reigning Michael the Doukas*  
 ἀποσταλεῖς. ὥς δὲ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς Νικηφόρος περιδέξιον  
*sent when and also the emperor Nikephoros dexterous*  
 τοῦτον περὶ τὰ πολεμικὰ ἐθεάσατο, ἀκηκοὺς δὲ καὶ  
*him in the warlike(-things) beheld having-heard and also*  
 ὅπως περὶ τὴν ἑὴ συνὼν τὰδελφῷ Ἰσαακίῳ ὑπὲρ τὸν  
*how about the east being-with the-brother Isaac beyond the*  
 αὐτοῦ χρόνον ἐν διαφόροις ἀγῶσιν ἐμπέπτωκεν ἀριστεὺς  
*his age in different contests he-had-engaged champion*  
 ἀναφανείς καὶ ὅπως τὸν Οὐρσελίον κατετροπώσατο,  
*having-appeared and how — Ourselios he-routed*  
 διαφερόντως ἡγάπα καὶ τοῦ Ἰσαακίου οὐκ ἔλαττον. καὶ  
*exceedingly he-loved(-him) and — of-Isaac not less and*  
 ἐνστερνιζόμενος ἅμφω τὰδελφῷ ἰλαρὸν ἐνητένιζεν, ἔστιν  
*embracing both the-two-brothers cheerfully gazed-at(-them) it-is*  
 οὐ καὶ τῆς αὐτῆς τραπέζης ἀξίων. ἀνέφλεγε  
*where also of-the same table deeming(-them)-worthy kindled*  
 τοῦτο τὸν κατ' αὐτῶν φθόνον καὶ μᾶλλον τῶν εἰρημένων  
*this the against them envy and more of-the said*

δύο βαρβάρων Σθλαβογενῶν, τοῦ τε Βορίλου φημὶ καὶ  
*two barbarians of-Slav-race — both of-Borilos I-mean and*  
 τοῦ Γερμανοῦ. ὁρῶντες γὰρ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ἐς αὐτοὺς  
*— of-Germans seeing for the of-the emperor to them*  
 εὐμένειαν καὶ ὅτι καθ' ὥραν ταῖς τοῦ φθόνου τοξείαις  
*favor and that by hour by-the of-the envy archeries*  
 βαλλόμενοι ἄτρωτοι διαμένουσιν, ἐξετήκοντο. τὸν γὰρ  
*being-shot unwounded they-remain they-wasted-away — for*  
 Ἀλέξιον, κἂν οὐπω τὸν ἱουλον ἐπανθούonta εἶχεν, ἐν πᾶσιν  
*Alexios even-if not-yet the down blooming he-had in all(-things)*  
 εὐδοκιμοῦnta ὁρῶν ὁ βασιλεὺς στρατηγὸν αὐτοκράτορα  
*distinguishing-himself seeing the emperor general autocrat*  
 τῆς ἐσπέρας ἀναδείκνυσιν τῷ τῶν προέδρων τετιμηκὼς  
*of-the west appoints with-the of-the proedroi having-honored*  
 ἀξιώματι. ὅσα μὲν οὖν καὶ κατὰ τὴν ἐσπέραν οὗτος  
*dignity as-many-as indeed then also in the west he*  
 ἀνέστησε τρόπαια καὶ ὁπόσους ἀποστάτας καταγωνισάμενος  
*set-up trophies and how-many rebels having-overcome*  
 ζωγρίαν ἤγε τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἀρκούντως προλέλεκται. ἀλλὰ  
*alive led to-the emperor sufficiently has-been-told-before but*  
 ταῦτα τοῖς δούλοις οὐκ ἤρεσκεν, ἐξέκαε δὲ μᾶλλον  
*these(-things) to-the slaves not pleased burned and more*  
 αὐτῶν ἀναφλέγοντα τὸν φθόνον. οἱ καὶ πολλὰ μὲν  
*of-them kindling the envy who also many(-things) indeed*  
 ὑπετονθόρουζον βυσοδομοῦntες κατ' αὐτῶν, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ  
*muttered plotting against them many and also*  
 κρύφια λέγοντες τῷ βασιλεῖ, τινὰ δὲ καὶ εἰς τοῦμφανές,  
*secret saying to-the emperor some and also into the-open*  
 ἄλλα δὲ δι' ἐτέρων, μεθοδείαις τισὶ χρώμενοι  
*other(-things) and through others with-methods some using*  
 ἐκποδῶν τούτους γενέσθαι παντοίως ἐσπούδαζον. ἀπορία  
*out-of-the-way them to-become in-every-way they-strove with-perplexity*

γοῦν συνεχόμενοι οἱ Κομνηνοὶ δέον ἐλογίσαντο τοὺς  
*at-any-rate being-held the Komnenoi needful reckoned the(-men)*  
 περὶ τὴν γυναικωνῖτιν ὑποποιήσασθαι καὶ δι' αὐτῶν τὴν  
*about the women's-quarters to-win-over and through them the*  
 τῆς βασιλίδος ἐπὶ πλεόν εὐμένειαν ἐπισπάσασθαι. ἐπαγωγὸν  
*of-the empress on more favor to-draw persuasive*  
 γὰρ οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ λιθὴν καταμαλάξαι ψυχὴν δυνάμενοι  
*for the men even of-stone to-soften soul being-able*  
 καὶ παντοίοις ἐπιχειρήμασι. τοῦτο ἤδη κατώρθου ὁ  
*and by-all-kinds-of attempts this already achieved —*  
 Ἰσαάκιος πάλαι πρὸς αὐτῆς ἐπὶ τῇ ἰδίᾳ ἐξαδέλφῃ εἰς  
*Isaac long-ago by her to the own cousin into*  
 κῆδος προσληφθεὶς, ὁ γενναιότατος ὢν ἐν λόγοις καὶ  
*marriage having-been-taken the most-noble being in words and*  
 πράξεσι καὶ τὰ πλείστα τῷ πατρὶ ἐμφορῆς. ἀλλ'  
*deeds and in-the most(-things) to-my father like but*  
 ἐπεὶ τὰ περὶ αὐτὸν καλῶς προκεχώρηκε, πολλὰ  
*since the(-things) about him well had-gone-forward much*  
 φροντίζων ἦν περὶ τὰδελφοῦ, καὶ ὅσον ἐκεῖνος τούτῳ  
*caring he-was about the-brother and as-much-as he him*  
 εἰς τὴν τοῦ κήδους τότε συνήρετο ὑπόθεσιν, τοσοῦτον  
*in the of-the marriage then helped subject so-much*  
 οὗτος ἐσπουδάκει μὴδ' αὐτὸν τῆς βασιλίδος πορρωτέρω  
*he had-been-eager not-even him from-the empress farther*  
 καθεστάναι. Ὁρέστην μὲν οὖν καὶ Πυλάδην φίλους ὄντας  
*to-stand Orestes indeed then and Pylades friends being*  
 τοσοῦτον τὸν πρὸς ἀλλήλους πόθον ἔχειν φασίν, ὡς ἐν  
*so-much the toward each-other longing to-have they-say that in*  
 καιρῷ μάχης ἀμελεῖν μὲν ἐκάτερον τῶν καθ' ἑαυτοῦ  
*time of-battle to-neglect indeed each the against himself*  
 πολεμίων, ἀμύνειν δὲ τοὺς ἐπιφερομένους θατέρῳ καὶ  
*enemies to-ward-off and those attacking the-other and*

προαρπάζειν ἄτερον τὰς πρὸς θάτερον ἐρχομένας τῶν  
*to-snatch-first the-one the against the-other coming of-the*  
 οἰστῶν βολὰς τὰ στέρνα ὑπέχοντα. τοιοῦτον καὶ ἐπὶ  
*arrows volleys the breasts holding-out such also with*  
 τούτοις ἦν συνορᾶν. ἄμφω γὰρ τὰδελφῶ καὶ τοὺς  
*these it-was to-see both for the-two-brothers both the*  
 κινδύνους προαρπάζειν ἐβούλοντο καὶ τὰς ἀριστείας τε  
*dangers to-snatch-first wished and the prizes both*  
 καὶ τιμὰς καὶ ἀπλῶς τὰγαθὸν θατέρου ἴδιον ἄτερος  
*and honors and simply the-good of-the-other own the-one*  
 ἐλογίζετο καὶ αὖ τοῦναντίον. τοσοῦτον τὸν πόθον πρὸς  
*reckoned and again the-contrary so-much the longing toward*  
 ἀλλήλους εἶχον. τὰ μὲν οὖν κατὰ τὸν Ἰσαάκιον  
*each-other they-had the(-things) indeed then concerning — Isaac*  
 οὕτως ἐκ θείας ὠκονόμητο προνοίας· οὐ πολὺ τὸ ἐν  
*thus from divine had-been-arranged providence not much the(-time) in*  
 μέσῳ, καὶ οἱ περὶ τὴν γυναικωνῆτιν ταῖς τοῦ Ἰσαακίου  
*between and the(-men) about the women's-quarters by-the — of-Isaac*  
 ὑποθημοσύναις παραπείθουσι τὴν βασιλίδα υἱοθετήσασθαι  
*suggestions persuade the empress to-adopt*  
 τὸν Ἀλέξιον. πείθεται τούτοις, καὶ περὶ τὰ βασιλεία  
*— Alexios she-is-persuaded by-them and-when at the palace*  
 κατὰ τινα κυρίαν ἡμέραν καὶ ἄμφω γεγόνατον, ἡ βασιλὶς  
*on some appointed day and both had-come the empress*  
 υἱοθετεῖ τὸν Ἀλέξιον κατὰ τὸν παρακολουθήσαντα  
*adopts — Alexios according-to the having-followed*  
 περὶ τῶν τοιούτων πάλαι τύπον. ἀνέσφηλε γοῦν τοῦ  
*about the such(-things) long-ago form recovered at-any-rate for-the*  
 λοιποῦ τῆς πολλῆς φροντίδος ὁ μέγας τῶν ἐσπερίων  
*rest of-the much care the grand of-the western*  
 στρατευμάτων δομέστικος. κακτοτε θαμὰ τοῖς βασιλείοις  
*armies domestic and-from-then often to-the palace*

ἄμφω φοιτῶντες καὶ τὴν τοῖς βασιλεῦσι προσήκουσαν  
*both going and the to-the emperors fitting*  
 ἀποπληροῦντες προσκύνησιν καὶ μικρὸν ἐγκαρτεροῦντες  
*fulfilling obeisance and a-little waiting*  
 τῇ βασιλίδι προσήρχοντο. ταῦτα ἐπὶ πλεόν τὸν κατ'  
*to-the empress went these(-things) to more the against*  
 αὐτῶν φθόνον ἐξέκαε. τοῦτο δὲ διὰ πολλῶν οἱ Κομνηνοὶ  
*them envy burned this and through many(-proofs) the Komnenoi*  
 βεβαιούμενοι, δείσαντες, ἵνα μὴ ἀμφότεροι ταῖς πάγαις  
*being-assured having-feared that not both in-the snares*  
 αὐτῶν ἀλόντες οὐδὲ τὸν ἐπαρήγοντα ἔχωσι, τρόπον  
*their having-been-caught even the helper should-have way*  
 ἐζήτουν, δι' οὗ τὸ ἀσφαλὲς θεοῦ συλλαμβανομένου  
*they-sought through which the security God assisting*  
 ἑαυτοῖς περιποιήσαιτο. πολλοὺς οὖν λογισμοὺς συνάμα  
*for-themselves they-might-secure many then reasonings together-with*  
 τῇ μητρὶ ἀνελίζαντες καὶ πολλὰ πολλάκις διασκεψάμενοι  
*the mother having-turned-over and many(-things) often having-considered*  
 μίαν εὐρον κατὰ ἄνθρωπον σωτηρίας ἐλπίδα. ἡ δὲ ἦν  
*one they-found according-to man of-safety hope it and was*  
 τῇ βασιλίδι προσελθεῖν, ὅπηνίκα αἰτίαν τινὰ εὐπρόσωπον  
*to-the empress to-go when cause some fair-seeming*  
 πρὸς τοῦτο σχοίεν, καὶ τὸ ἀπόρρητον ἐξειπεῖν. εἶχον  
*for this they-should-have and the secret to-tell-out they-held*  
 δὲ ὅμως ὑποβρύχιον τὴν βουλὴν καὶ οὐδενὶ τὸ παράπαν  
*but however submerged the plan and to-no-one the at-all*  
 τὸ σκοπούμενον ἐξεκάλυπτον. προσεῖχον δὲ καθάπερ  
*the(-thing) planned they-revealed they-took-care and like*  
 οἱ θαλάττιοι, μὴ τὸ θήραμα προσοβήσωσιν. ἀποδρᾶναι  
*the sea(-fishermen) lest the prey they-should-frighten-off to-run-away*  
 μὲν γὰρ ἐμελέτων, ἐπεφόβηντο δὲ ἄρα τοῦτο πρὸς τὴν  
*indeed for they-planned they-had-feared but after-all this to the*



βασιλῖδα εἰπεῖν, μή πως ἐκείνη φθάσῃ τῷ βασιλεῖ  
*empress to-tell lest somehow she should-anticipate to-the emperor*  
 παραδηλῶσαι τὰ κατ' αὐτοὺς καὶ ἀμφοτέρων  
*to-reveal the(-things) concerning them and for-both*  
 κηδομένη καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν. τούτου τοίνυν  
*caring both the emperor and the men this therefore*  
 κατεγνωκότες τοῦ σκέμματος ἄλλοσε τρέπουσι τὴν βουλήν.  
*having-rejected the plan elsewhere they-turn the counsel*  
 δεινοὶ γὰρ τοῖς παραπεπτωκόσι καιροῖς ἀποχρήσασθαι.  
*clever for the having-befallen occasions to-use*

XXII • THE EMPRESS'S FEAR

*Botaneiates, old and childless, means to leave the throne to his young kinsman Synadenos rather than to the empress's son Constantine. Maria grieves in silence. Isaac and Alexios visit her, see her distress, and on the second visit pledge their loyalty; they learn her secret, promise to stand by her and her son, and ask to be warned of any plot. Thereafter they go to the palace on alternate days, so that if one is seized the other may escape.*

Ἐπεὶ γὰρ ὁ βασιλεὺς τεκνογονεῖν διὰ τὸ γῆρας οὐκ  
*since for the emperor to-beget-children because-of the old-age not*  
 ἐπεφύκει, δεδιὼς δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄφυκτον τῆς τοῦ θανάτου τομῆς  
*was-able fearing and also the inescapable of-the of-the death cutting*  
 περὶ τοῦ διαδεχομένου διεσκοπεῖτο. ἦν δὲ τηνικαῦτα  
*about the(-one) about-to-succeed he-considered there-was and then*  
 Συναδηνός τις ἐξ ἀνατολῶν ὀρμώμενος, ἐκ γένους  
*Synadenos a-certain from (the)-east coming from family*  
 λαμπροῦ, τὸ εἶδος ὠραῖος, τὴν φρένα βαθύς, ῥωμαλέος  
*brilliant in-the form handsome in-the mind deep strong*  
 τὴν χεῖρα, τὴν ἡλικίαν ἐς μεράκιον παραγγέλλων  
*in-the hand in-the age into youth entering*

καὶ ἄλλως δὲ προσήκων αὐτῷ κατὰ γένος· τῶν  
*and otherwise and related to-him by family than-the*  
 ἄλλων μᾶλλον ἐσκέπτετο διάδοχον αὐτὸν τῆς βασιλείας  
*others more he-thought successor him of-the empire*  
 καταλιπεῖν, καθάπερ τινὰ πάτριον κλῆρον τὸ κράτος  
*to-leave as some ancestral inheritance the sovereignty*  
 αὐτῷ διδούς, κακῶς βουλευόμενος. ἐξὸν γὰρ αὐτῷ τὸ  
*to-him giving badly deliberating being-possible for for-him the*  
 ἀσφαλὲς μέχρι τέλους περιποιήσασθαι, ἅμα δὲ καὶ  
*security to end to-secure at-the-same-time and also*  
 δίκαιόν τι σκοπεῖν τὴν αὐτοκράτορος ἐξουσίαν τῷ  
*just something to-consider the of-autocrat authority to-the*  
 τῆς βασιλίδος υἱῷ Κωνσταντίνῳ καταλιπεῖν ὥς καὶ οἶόν  
*of-the empress son Constantine to-leave as also as-it-were*  
 τινα κλῆρον πρὸς πάππου καὶ πατρὸς αὐτῷ διαφέρουσιν  
*some inheritance from grandfather and father to-him belonging*  
 καὶ τὴν βασιλίδαν μᾶλλον διὰ τοῦτο ἐπ' αὐτῷ θαρρεῖν  
*and the empress more because-of this in him to-trust*  
 καὶ τὸ εὖνουν ἐπαύξειν, λέληθεν ἑαυτὸν ὁ γηραλέος ἄδικά  
*and the goodwill to-increase escaped himself the old-man unjust*  
 τε καὶ ἀξύμφορα διασκοπούμενος καὶ κατὰ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ  
*both and inexpedient considering and against the own*  
 κεφαλῆς τεκταίνων κακά. τούτων ὑποψιθιριζομένων ἦσθετο  
*head contriving evils these being-whispered perceived*  
 ἡ βασιλὶς καὶ περίλυπος ἦν τὸν τοῦ παιδὸς κίνδυνον  
*the empress and very-grieved she-was the of-the son danger*  
 ὑφορωμένη. καὶ ἦν ἀθυμοῦσα μὲν, οὐδενὶ δὲ τὴν λύπην  
*suspecting and was despondent indeed to-no-one but the grief*  
 ἐξορχουμένη. τοῦτο τοὺς Κομνηνοὺς οὐ διέλαθεν. εὐκαιρίαν  
*divulging this the Komnenoi not escaped opportunity*  
 οὖν, ἣν ἐζήτουν, εὐρηκότες τῇ βασιλίδι προσελθεῖν  
*then which they-sought having-found to-the empress to-go*

ἐβουλεύσαντο. τῆς δὲ πρὸς αὐτὴν ὁμιλίας τὴν καταρχὴν ἡ  
*they-resolved of-the and with her converse the beginning the*  
 μήτηρ τῷ Ἰσαακίῳ ἐπέτρεψε συμπαρόντος αὐτῷ τᾶδελεφου  
*mother — to-Isaac entrusted being-present with-him the-brother*  
 Ἀλεξίου. τῶν δὲ προσελθόντων τῇ βασιλίδι ὁ Ἰσαακίος  
*Alexios they and having-come to-the empress — Isaac*  
 φησι πρὸς αὐτήν “οὐχ ὥς χθὲς καὶ πρότρίτα ὁρῶμέν  
*says to her not as yesterday and the-day-before we-see*  
 σε, δέσποινα, ἔχουσιν, ἀλλ’ ὥς ὑπὸ λογισμῶν ἀνεκφόρων  
*you mistress being but as by thoughts unspoken*  
 δακνομένην καὶ σκεπτομένην, ὥς μὴ θαρρεῖν ἔχουσιν,  
*being-bitten and considering as not to-be-confident being-able*  
 πρὸς ὃν ἂν ἐκκαλύψειας τὸ ἀπόρητον”. ἡ δὲ τέως  
*to whom — you-might-reveal the secret she and for-a-while*  
 μὲν ἐκφαίνειν οὐκ ᾔθελε, βύθιον δέ τι στενάξασα  
*indeed to-disclose not wished deep and something having-groaned*  
 “οὐ χρή” φησι “τοὺς ἀλλοτρίαν οἰκοῦντας ἐπερωτᾶν·  
*not is-needful she-says those foreign(-land) inhabiting to-question*  
 αὐτὸ γὰρ τοῦτο ἐς λύπην αὐτοῖς ἀξιοχρεῶν. ἐμὲ δέ, φεῦ,  
*this-very for this to grief to-them sufficient me and alas*  
 οἶα ἐξ οἶων διεδέξατο καὶ ὁποῖά μοι,  
*what-kind-off(-things) after what-kind-off(-things) succeeded and what-kind for-me*  
 ὥς ἔοικε, μετ’ οὐ πολὺ ταμεινέται”. οἱ δὲ ἀποστάντες  
*as it-seems after not long is-being-stored-up they and having-withdrawn*  
 πλεῖω μὲν ῥήματα οὐ προσέθεντο· ἐς γῆν δὲ τοὺς  
*more indeed words not added to earth and the*  
 ὀφθαλμοὺς ἐπερείσαντες καὶ περιστείλαντες ἄμφω τῷ  
*eyes having-fixed and having-wrapped both the-two*  
 χεῖρε σύννους πρὸς μικρὸν εἰσθήκεσαν, εἶτα τὴν συνήθη  
*hands pensive for a-little stood then the customary*  
 προσκύνῃσιν ποιησάμενοι οἶκαδε ἀπήεσαν ἀγωνιῶντες. τῇ  
*obeisance having-made homeward went-away being-anxious on-the*

δ' ὕστεραίᾳ πάλιν προσεησόμενοι ἤκουσιν. ἱλαρώτερον δὲ  
*and next(-day) again about-to-question they-come more-cheerfully but*  
 ἢ πρῶην τούτοις ἀτενίζουσιν ὁρῶντες προσίασιν ἄμφω  
*than the-day-before at-them gazing seeing they-approach both*  
 καὶ φασι “σὺ μὲν δεσπότης, ἡμεῖς δὲ δοῦλοι εὐνούστατοι,  
*and say you indeed mistress we and slaves most-loyal*  
 πᾶν ὅτιοῦν ἐτοίμως ἔχοντες ὑπὲρ τῆς σῆς βασιλείας παθεῖν.  
*every whatever readily being for the your reign to-suffer*  
 καὶ μὴ σε λογισμός τις διαταραττέτω εἰς διψυχίαν ὅλως  
*and not you thought any let-trouble into double-mindedness at-all*  
 εἰσάγων”. ἐκ τούτων οὖν τῶν λόγων τὰ πιστὰ δεδωκότες  
*bringing from these then the words the pledges having-given*  
 τῇ βασιλίδι καὶ ἀπαλλάξαντες ἑαυτοὺς ὑποψίας ἀπάσης  
*to-the empress and having-freed themselves from-suspicion all*  
 τὸ ἀπόρρητον ἤδη συνίεσαν ὁξεῖς τε ὄντες καὶ ἀγχείνοι  
*the secret already they-understood sharp both being and quick-witted*  
 καὶ δεινοὶ θηρᾶσαι ἀνθρώπων ἐξ ὀλίγων ῥημάτων βαθέως  
*and clever to-hunt of-men from few words deeply*  
 ἐγκεκλιμένην γνώμην καὶ τέως ἀπόρρητον. καὶ αὐτίκα μάλα  
*lying mind and hitherto secret and at-once very*  
 προσετίθεντό τε τῇ βασιλίδι καὶ ἐκ πολλῶν εὖνους  
*attached-themselves both to-the empress and from many(-proofs) well-disposed*  
 αὐτοὺς φανερώς καταστήσαντες καὶ πᾶν εἰς ὅπερ ἂν  
*themselves openly having-shown and every to which-ever —*  
 αὐτοὺς προσκαλοῖτο, ἐκθύμως ἐπαμύνειν κατεπηγγέλαντο.  
*them she-might-summon ardently to-help promised*  
 συγχαίρειν τε χαίρουσῃ καὶ λυπουμενῇ συνανιᾶσθαι, τοῦτο  
*to-rejoice-with both rejoicing and grieving to-grieve-with this*  
 δὴ τὸ ἀποστολικόν, μάλα προθύμως συνέθεντο. καὶ ὥς  
*indeed the apostolic(-word) very eagerly they-agreed and as*  
 αὐθιγενεῖς ἡξίουσαν τούτους λογιέσθαι καὶ συνήθεις  
*born-of-the-same(-land) they-asked them to-reckon and kindred*

καὶ κεῖθεν ὁρμωμένους ὅθεν καὶ αὐτή, τοσοῦτον ἐπειπόντες,  
*and-from-there coming whence also she so-much having-added*  
 ὥς εἴ τι παρὰ τῶν φθονούντων αὐτῇ τε τῇ δεσποίνῃ  
*that if anything from the envious(-men) herself both to-the mistress*  
 καὶ τῷ αὐτοκράτορι κατ' αὐτῶν εἰσηγηθείη, τοῦτο αὐτοὺς  
*and to-the autocrat against them should-be-reported this them*  
 μὴ διαλανθάνοι τὸ παραυτίκα, ἵνα μὴ λάθωσι ταῖς  
*not should-escape for-the forthwith that not they-escape-notice into-the*  
 πάγαις τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἐμπεσούμενοι. τοῦτό τε ἡξίουσιν καὶ  
*snare of-the enemies about-to-fall this both they-asked and*  
 θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευον, ὥς σὺν θεῷ γε φάναι τὴν δυνατὴν  
*to-take-courage they-bade as with God at-least to-say the possible*  
 μετὰ προθυμίας εἰσενεγκεῖν βοήθειαν, ὥς ἑαυτῶν γε  
*with eagerness to-bring help as of-themselves at-least*  
 ἔνεκα μὴ ἐκπεπτωκέναι τῆς βασιλείας τὸν ταύτης υἱὸν  
*for-the-sake not to-have-fallen-out of-the empire the her son*  
 Κωνσταντῖνον. καὶ δὴ καὶ δι' ὄρκων ἐμπεδοῦν ἤθελον  
*Constantine and indeed also through oaths to-confirm they-wished*  
 τὰ συνδόξαντα· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐνὶ ἡν διατρίβειν διὰ  
*the(-things) agreed nor for it-was-possible to-delay because-of*  
 τοὺς ἐποφθαλμιῶντας. τῆς γε πολλῆς ἀνεκουφίσθησαν  
*the envious(-men) of-the at-least much were-relieved*  
 λύπης οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ ἐξανέφερον καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε μεθ'  
*grief the men and recovered and the from this(-time) with*  
 ἱλαρωτέρου προσώπου τῷ βασιλεῖ διελέγοντο, ὅποδα ποῖ  
*more-cheerful face to-the emperor conversed of-what-kind*  
 ἐκείνῳ καὶ μᾶλλον ἄτερος τούτων Ἀλέξιος συσκιᾶσαι  
*they and more the-one of-these Alexios to-overshadow*  
 ἀπόρρητον ἔννοιαν καὶ βυσσοδομευομένην ἐπιβουλήν τοῖς  
*secret thought and being-plotted plot with-the*  
 φαινομένοις προσχήμασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ φθόνος μᾶλλον εἰς  
*apparent pretexts since and the envy more into*

πυρσὸν ἀνήπτετο μέγιστον καὶ οὐδὲν τοῦ λοιποῦ τῶν  
*torch was-kindled greatest and nothing for-the rest of-the(-things)*  
 πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα κατ' αὐτῶν λεγομένων αὐτοὺς διελάνθανε  
*to the emperor against them being-said them escaped*  
 κατὰ τὰ πρόωγν συνδόξαντα, ἐγίνωσκον δὲ καὶ τοὺς  
*according-to the(-things) earlier agreed they-knew and also the*  
 δύο παραδυναστεύοντας δούλους βουλευομένους ἐκποδῶν  
*two influential slaves planning out-of-the-way*  
 τούτους ποιήσασθαι, οὐκέτι κατὰ τὸ σύνηθες ὁμοῦ τοῖς  
*them to-make no-longer according-to the custom together to-the*  
 βασιλείοις ἐφοίτων, ἀλλ' ἑτερήμερος ἦν ἐκάτερος. τὸ δὲ  
*palace they-went but on-alternate-days was each the and*  
 σκέμμα σοφόν τε καὶ Παλαμῆδειον, ἥν' εἰ γένοιτο  
*plan wise both and Palamedean that if it-should-happen*  
 τὸν ἕτερον τούτων κατασχεθῆναι διὰ τὰς λαθραίας  
*the one of-them to-be-arrested because-of the secret*  
 ἐπιβουλάς τῶν παραδυναστευόντων ἐκείνων Σκυθῶν, ἄτερος  
*plots of-the influential those Scythians the-other*  
 ἀποδράσειε, καὶ μὴ ἅμα καὶ ἅμφω ταῖς πάγαις τῶν  
*might-escape and not at-the-same-time also both in-the snares of-the*  
 βαρβάρων ἐμπεσοῦνται. ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν σκέμμα τοιοῦτον ἦν.  
*barbarians will-fall-into but the indeed plan such was*  
 οὐ μὲν κατὰ τὴν ὑποψίαν ἐκείνων ἀπηντήκει τούτοις  
*not however according-to the suspicion their befell to-them*  
 τὰ πράγματα. ἔφθασαν γὰρ κρείττους γενέσθαι τῶν  
*the affairs they-got-ahead for stronger to-become than-the*  
 ἐπιβουλευόντων ἀνδρῶν, ὥς ἔνθεν ὁ λόγος ἀφορμηθεὶς  
*plotting men as from-here the account having-started*  
 διὰ πάσης σαφηνείας δηλώσειε.  
*with all clearness may-show*

*When the Turks take Kyzikos, the emperor summons Alexios; Isaac happens to be at the palace. Kept for the emperor's table, they see the slaves whispering and fear a plot, until a servant of Isaac's passes him the news through the cook, so they have their answer ready: the city will easily be recovered. Thereafter they court the emperor's circle and win over the empress Maria: Isaac through his wife, her cousin; Alexios through his adoption.*

Τῆς πόλεως τοίνυν Κυζίκου κατασχεθείσης παρὰ τῶν  
*the city therefore of-Kyzikos having-been-seized by the*  
 Τούρκων, πυθόμενος τὴν τῆς πόλεως ἄλωσιν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ  
*Turks having-learned the of-the city capture the autocrat*  
 τὸν Κομνηνὸν αὐτίκα μετεκαλεῖτο Ἀλέξιον. ἔτυχε γὰρ  
*— Komnenos at-once summoned Alexios happened for*  
 κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν ἐκείνην ὁ Ἰσαάκιος ἐληλυθώς. ὡς  
*on the day that — Isaac having-come when*  
 δὲ εἰσερχόμενον τοῦτον παρὰ τὴν συνθήκην ὁ ἀδελφὸς  
*and coming-in him against the agreement the brother*  
 Ἰσαάκιος ἐθεάσατο, προσελθὼν ἠρώτα ὅτου χάριν  
*Isaac beheld having-approached he-asked for-what sake*  
 παρεγένετο. ὁ δ' εὐθὺς τὴν αἰτίαν εἰρήκει, “ὅτι μέ” φησιν  
*he-had-come he and at-once the cause had-told that me he-says*  
 “ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ προσεκαλέσατο”. εἰσελθόντων οὖν ἄμφω  
*the autocrat has-summoned having-entered then both*  
 καὶ τὴν συνήθη προσκύνησιν ποιησαμένων, ἐπεὶ ἀρίστου  
*and the customary obeisance having-made since of-lunch*  
 καιρὸς ἤδη παρῆν, προσμεῖναι μικρὸν παρακελευσάμενος  
*time already was-present to-wait a-little having-bidden*  
 προστάττει κοινῆς αὐτῷ τραπέζης μετεληχέναι. καὶ δὴ  
*orders of-common with-him table to-partake and indeed*  
 διαιρεθέντες ὁ μὲν περὶ τὸ δεξιὸν καθῆστο τῆς  
*having-been-divided the(-one) indeed at the right sat of-the*

τραπέζης, ὁ δὲ περὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον, ἀντικρὺ ἀλλήλων.  
*table the(-other) and at the left opposite each-other*  
 μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ τοῖς περιεστῶσιν ἐνατενίσαντες μετὰ  
*after a-little and at-the bystanders having-gazed with*  
 σκυθρωπότητος ψιθυρίζοντας ἑώρων. δέισαντες οὖν μή τι  
*sullenness whispering they-saw having-feared then lest something*  
 κατ' αὐτῶν ὄξυ μελετῶσιν οἱ δοῦλοι καὶ ὑπόγυος αὐτοῖς ὁ  
*against them sharp plan the slaves and imminent for-them the*  
 κίνδυνος εἴη, λαθριδίῳ βλέμμασιν ἀλλήλοις ἐνητένιζον μὴ  
*danger might-be with-secret glances at-each-other gazed not*  
 ἔχοντες ὅ τι καὶ δράσαιεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸ πολλοῦ τοὺς  
*having what — also they-might-do since and before much(-time) the(-men)*  
 περὶ τὸν βασιλέα ἅπαντας μελιχίῳ λόγοις προπομπαῖς  
*around the emperor all with-gentle words escortings*  
 τε καὶ παντοίαις δεξιώσεσιν ἐσφετερίζοντο καὶ αὐτὸν  
*both and all-kinds-of greetings they-had-made-their-own and himself*  
 τὸν ὀψοποιὸν δεξιωσάμενοι ἱλαρὸν αὐτοῖς προσβλέπειν  
*the cook having-greeted cheerful at-them to-look*  
 ἀνέπεισαν, τούτῳ προσελθὼν τις τῶν θεραπόντων Ἰσαακίου  
*persuaded to-him having-approached one of-the servants of-Isaac*  
 τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ φησιν “ἀπάγγελον τῷ κυρίῳ μου τὴν  
*the Komnenos says report to-the lord my the*  
 τῆς Κυζίκου κατάσχεσιν. γράμμα γὰρ ἐκείθεν ἦκει τοῦτο  
*— of-Kyzikos seizure letter for from-there has-come this*  
 μηνύον”. ὁ δ' εὐθὺς ἅμα τε ὄψα τῇ τραπέζῃ παρετίθει  
*reporting he and at-once together both dishes to-the table set*  
 καὶ ἅπερ παρὰ τοῦ ὑπηρετοῦ ἀνεδιδάχθη, ἀνεδίδασκε τὸν  
*and what from the servant he-was-taught taught —*  
 Ἰσαάκιον ἡρεμαίᾳ φωνῇ. ὁ δὲ μικρὸν ὑποκινήσας τὰ  
*Isaac with-quiet voice he and a-little having-moved the*  
 χεῖλη ἐσήμανε τὰδελεφῶ τὸ λεχθέν. ὅξυς δὲ ὢν περὶ  
*lips signified to-the-brother the(-thing) said sharp and being in*



τὸ νοεῖν καὶ πυρὸς θερμότερος ὁ Ἀλέξιος αὐτίκα  
*the to-understand and than-fire hotter — Alexios at-once*  
 προήρπασε τὸ λεγόμενον. ἀνέπνευσαν οὖν καὶ ἄμφω  
*snatched-up the(-thing) said breathed-again then also both*  
 τῆς κατασχούσης αὐτοὺς ἐννοίας. καὶ γεγονότες ἑαυτῶν  
*from-the having-held them thought and having-come-to themselves*  
 ἐσκοποῦντο, ἵν' εἴ πού τις αὐτοὺς ἔροιτο περὶ τούτου,  
*considered that if anywhere anyone them should-ask about this*  
 ἐτοίμως ἀποκριθήσονται, εἰ δὲ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτοὺς ἐς  
*readily they-would-answer if and also the emperor them to*  
 βουλὴν ἀγάγοι, προσηκόντως αὐτῷ βουλεύσοιντο. τοιαῦτα  
*counsel should-bring fittingly for-him they-would-counsel such(-things)*  
 τούτων λογιζομένων ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπιδὼν πρὸς τοὺς ἄνδρας  
*them reasoning the emperor having-looked to the men*  
 ὥς δὴ ἀγνοοῦντας αὐτοὺς τὰ κατὰ τὴν Κύζικον  
*as indeed not-knowing them the(-things) concerning — Kyzikos*  
 τὴν ἄλωσιν αὐτοῖς ἔλεγεν. οἱ δὲ (καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ἔτοιμοι  
*the capture to-them told they and and for they-were ready*  
 ψυχὴν θεραπεῦσαι κυμαινομένην βασιλέως ἐπὶ πορθηῆσει  
*soul to-tend tossing of-emperor at sackings*  
 πόλεων) ἀνήγειράν τε τὸ πεπτωκὸς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος  
*of-cities roused both the fallen of-the autocrat*  
 φρόνημα καὶ πρὸς ἐλπίδας ἀγαθὰς ἀνεθέρμηναν ῥαδίως τὴν  
*spirit and to hopes good warmed easily the*  
 πόλιν ἐπανασωθῆναι κατεγγυώμενοι. “μόνον” φησὶ “τὸ σὸν  
*city to-be-recovered guaranteeing only he-says the your*  
 κράτος ἐχέτω καλῶς· οἱ δέ γε πολιορκηταὶ τῆς πόλεως  
*sovereignty let-be well the and at-least besiegers of-the city*  
 ἑπταπλάσιον εἰς τὸν κόλπον αὐτῶν ἀπολήψονται ὧν  
*sevenfold into the bosom their will-receive of-what*  
 εἰργάσαντο”. τότε μὲν οὖν ἠγάσατο τούτους ὁ βασιλεὺς  
*they-have-done then indeed then admired them the emperor*

καὶ τῆς εὐωχίας ἀπολύσας τὸ ἐξῆς τῆς ἡμέρας  
*and from-the feast having-dismissed the following(-part) of-the day*  
 ἀπεριμερίμωως ἔσχε. τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε τοίνυν ἐπιμελὲς ἔσχον  
*without-care he-was for-the from this(-time) therefore care bad*  
 οἱ Κομνηνοὶ τοῖς βασιλείοις προσιέναι καὶ τοὺς περὶ  
*the Komnenoi to-the palace to-go and the(-men) around*  
 τὸν βασιλέα ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐναγκαλίζεσθαι καὶ αὐτοὺς μὲν  
*the emperor still more to-embrace and themselves indeed*  
 μὴ διδόναι λαβὴν τὸ παράπαν τοῖς κατ' αὐτῶν μελετῶσι  
*not to-give hold the at-all to-those against them planning*  
 μηδ' ἡντιναοῦν πρόφασιν ἀπεχθείας αὐτοῖς ὑπανοίγειν,  
*nor any-whatever pretext of-hostility to-them to-open-up*  
 πάντας δὲ ἀναπείθειν στέργειν αὐτοὺς καὶ τὰ ὑπὲρ  
*all and to-persuade to-love them and the(-things) for*  
 αὐτῶν φρονεῖν τε καὶ λέγειν. προσεμηχανῶντο δέ τι  
*them to-think both and to-say they-contrived and something*  
 πλέον ὑποποιεῖσθαι καὶ τὴν βασιλῖδα Μαρίαν καὶ ὅλους  
*more to-win-over also the empress Maria and wholly*  
 αὐτοὺς ἐκείνην καὶ βλέπειν καὶ ἀναπνεῖν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ  
*them her both to-see and to-breathe — indeed for*  
 Ἰσαάκιος καὶ τὸ κῆδος τὸ ἐπὶ τῇ ἐξαδέλφῃ αὐτῆς  
*Isaac also the marriage-alliance the with the cousin her*  
 προβαλλόμενος τὴν παρρησίαν ξυνέτεινεν· ὁ δ' ἐμὸς  
*putting-forward the frankness heightened the but my*  
 πατὴρ οὐχ ἥττον μὲν καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐξ ἀγχιστείας  
*father not less indeed also because-of the from affinity*  
 συγγένειαν, πλέον δὲ τὴν υἰοθεσίαν λαμπρὰν ὑπόθεσιν  
*kinship more but the adoption brilliant ground*  
 τῶν πρὸς τὴν βασιλῖδα εἰσόδων ποιούμενος παντάπασιν  
*of-the to the empress entries making altogether*  
 ἀνέμφαντος ἦν καὶ τὸν φθόνον τῶν πονηρευομένων αὐτῷ  
*inconspicuous was and the envy of-the wicked(-men) to-him*

συνεσκίαζεν. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτὸν τὸ βαρύμηνι  
overshadowed nor for escaped him the grievous-wrath  
τῶν βαρβάρων ἐκείνων δούλων καὶ τὸ τοῦ βασιλέως  
of-the barbarian those slaves and the of-the emperor  
κουφότατον. καὶ εἰκότως μὴ ἐκπεσεῖν τῆς ἐκείνης εὐνοίας  
most-fickle(-nature) and fittingly not to-fall-out of-the her goodwill  
ἐφρόντιζον, ἵνα μὴ ἐντεῦθεν τοῖς ἐχθροῖς παρανάλωμα  
they-took-care that not thence to-the enemies prey  
γένοντο. τὰ γὰρ τοι κουφότατα ἦθη εὐμετάφορά  
they-should-become the for surely most-fickle characters easily-changed  
πως καὶ Εὐρίπου δίκην ὡς ἐν παλιρροία περιπλαζόμενα.  
somehow and of-Euripus like as in ebb-and-flow wandering

XXIV • THE PLOT AND THE FLIGHT

*The slaves plan to summon the brothers at night and blind them on a false charge, and the Komnenoi see revolt as their one hope. Ordered to bring troops into the city against the Hagarenes who sacked Kyzikos, Alexios summons the officers loyal to him; when Borilos questions this before the emperor, Alexios' answer prevails. That evening the slaves prepare their ambush, Borilos aiming at the throne, some say, and an Alan magistros brings their plans to the Komnenoi by night. Pakourianos, pressing for haste, and Oumbertopoulos join Alexios under oath, both devoted to him for his courage and generosity. At dawn on the Monday after Cheese Sunday he leaves the city, and the people sing of the falcon that flew.*

Ταῦτα ὁρῶντες οἱ δούλοι καὶ ὅπως οὐ κατὰ σκοπὸν  
these(-things) seeing the slaves and how not according-to aim  
αὐτοῖς τὸ πρᾶγμα προήει οὐδὲ ἢ τῶν τοιούτων ἀνδρῶν  
for-them the matter proceeded nor the of-the such men  
ἀπώλεια εὐχερὴς αὐτοῖς ἐστι τῆς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἐς  
destruction easy for-them is the of-the autocrat toward  
αὐτοὺς εὐμενείας ὁσημέραι ἀξινούσης, πολλὰ μὲν  
them goodwill daily increasing many(-things) indeed

εἰπόντες, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἀπειπόντες ἐφ' ἑτέραν ἀτραπὸν  
*having-said many and also having-given-up onto another path*  
 ἐτράπησαν. τίς δὲ αὕτη; ἥν' ἐν μιᾷ νυκτὶ μετακαλεσάμενοι  
*turned what and this that in one night having-summoned*  
 τούτους βουλῆς ἄτερ τοῦ κρατοῦντος ἐκποδὼν τοὺς  
*them counsel without of-the ruler out-of-the-way the*  
 ἄνδρας ποιήσονται τοὺς αὐτῶν ὀφθαλμοὺς ἐξορύξαντες  
*men they-should-make the their eyes having-gouged-out*  
 ψευδῇ αἰτίαν ἀναπλάσάμενοι. τοῦτο τοὺς Κομνηνοὺς οὐ  
*false charge having-fabricated this the Komnenoi not*  
 διέλαθε. καὶ ἐπεὶ πολλὰ γνωσιμαχήσαντες ὑπόγουν τὸν  
*escaped and since much having-wavered imminent the*  
 κίνδυνον ἔγνωσαν, μίαν σωτηρίας ἐλπίδα τὴν ἀποστασίαν  
*danger they-recognized one of-safety hope the revolt*  
 ἐδόκουν πρὸς ταύτην κατ' ἀνάγκην πολλὴν συνωθούμενοι.  
*they-thought toward this by necessity much being-pushed*  
 τί γὰρ δεῖ περιμένειν τὸν ἐπενεγκόντα μύδρον  
*why for must-one wait-for the(-man) having-brought red-hot-iron*  
 τοῖς ὄμμασι καὶ τὸν ἐν αὐτοῖς ἥλιον ἀποσβέσοντα;  
*to-the eyes and the in them sun about-to-quench*  
 ὑποβρύχιον οὖν ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς τὴν γνώμην ταύτην εἶχον.  
*submerged then in the souls the plan this they-held*  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ μετ' οὐ πολὺ προσετέτακτο ὁ Ἀλέξιος τινα  
*since and after not long had-been-ordered — Alexios some*  
 μερίδα τῆς στρατιᾶς εἰσαγαγεῖν μέλλουσαν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι  
*portion of-the army to-bring-in about to-be-armed*  
 κατὰ τῶν πορθησάντων τὴν πόλιν Κυζίκου Ἀγαρηνῶν  
*against the having-sacked the city of-Kyzikos Hagarenes*  
 (ἔτυχε γὰρ τῆνικαῦτα δομέστικος ὢν τῆς ἐσπέρας),  
*happened for then domestic being of-the west*  
 ἀφορμῆς εὐλόγου δραζάμενος τοὺς εὖνως πρὸς αὐτὸν  
*pretext reasonable having-seized those favorably toward him*

ἔχοντας τῶν τοῦ στρατοῦ ἡγεμόνων μετὰ τῶν ὑπ’  
*being of-the of-the army leaders with those under*  
 αὐτοὺς διὰ γραμμάτων μετεκαλέσατο. καὶ δὴ κινηθέντες  
*them through letters be-summoned and indeed having-moved*  
 ἅπαντες πρὸς τὴν μεγαλόπολιν ἡπείγοντο. ἐν τοσούτῳ δὲ  
*all toward the great-city hastened in so-much and*  
 εἰσελθὼν τις ἐξ ὑποθήκης θατέρου τῶν δούλων, τοῦ  
*having-come-in someone from prompting of-the-one of-the slaves the*  
 λεγομένου Βορίλου, ἤρετο τὸν βασιλέα, εἰ κατὰ γνώμην  
*so-called Borilos asked the emperor if according-to will*  
 αὐτοῦ τὰς δυνάμεις ἀπάσας ὁ μέγας δομέστικος εἰς τὴν  
*his the forces all the grand domestic into the*  
 βασιλεύουσαν πόλιν εἰσάγει. ὁ δ’ εὐθὺς μετακαλεσάμενος  
*reigning city brings-in he and at-once having-summoned*  
 τοῦτον ἡρώτα, εἰ ἀληθές ἐστι τὸ λεγόμενον. καὶ ὃς  
*him asked if true is the(-thing) said and he*  
 αὐτίκα τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἠρνέιτο, ὅτι στρατιά τις εἰσάγεται  
*at-once this indeed not denied that army some is-brought-in*  
 τῇ ἐκείνου κελεύσει, πρὸς δὲ τὸ πᾶσαν ἀπανταχόθεν  
*by-the his order to but the all from-everywhere*  
 ἐνταυθοὶ συναθροίζεσθαι πιθανῶς παρεκρούετο. “ὁ γάρ  
*hither to-be-gathered plausibly turned-aside the for*  
 τοι στρατός” φησι “διεσπαρμένος ὢν ἀπανταχόθεν ἄλλος  
*surely army he-says scattered being from-everywhere one*  
 ἄλλοθεν ἥκει λαβὼν τὸ ἐνδόσμιον· καὶ οἱ τούτους  
*from-elsewhere comes having-received the signal and those them*  
 ὁρῶντες ἐκ διαφόρων μερῶν τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἡγεμονίας  
*seeing from different parts of-the of-the Romans dominion*  
 ἀθρόους ἀφικνουμένους νομίζουσιν ὥς ἀπὸ συνθήματος  
*in-crowds arriving think that from agreement*  
 πάντα τὸν στρατὸν ἐνταυθοὶ συναθροίζεσθαι τῇ θέᾳ  
*all the army hither to-be-gathered by-the sight*

καὶ μόνη ἑξαπατῶμενοι.” καίτοι τοῦ Βορίλου πολλὰ  
 even alone being-deceived although — Borilos many(-things)  
 πρὸς τούτους τοὺς λόγους ἀνθυπενεγκόντος, ἰσχυρότερος  
 against these the words having-counteracted stronger  
 καὶ οὕτως ἦν ὁ Ἀλέξιος καὶ ὅλαις ἐκράτει ψήφοις.  
 even thus was — Alexios and with-all prevailed votes  
 ὁ δὲ Γερμανὸς ἀπλούστερος ὢν οὐ πᾶν τοῦ Ἀλεξίου  
 — and Germanos simpler being not very — Alexios  
 κατέτρεχεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲ τὰ εἰσηγηθέντα ταῦτα  
 attacked since and not-even the(-things) suggested these  
 κατὰ τοῦ δομεστικοῦ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ἐξετάραξε ψυχὴν,  
 against the domestic the of-the emperor disturbed soul  
 καιροῦ λαβόμενοι ἀδείας (ἐσπέρα δὲ ἦν) τὴν κατὰ  
 occasion having-taken of-license evening and it-was the against  
 τῶν Κομνηνῶν ἐνέδραν ἐξήρτυον. ἔστι μὲν γὰρ ἄλλως  
 the Komnenoi ambush they-prepared is indeed for otherwise  
 φύσει τὸ δοῦλον τοῖς δεσπότηαις πολέμιον, ὅταν δὲ  
 by-nature the slave(-class) to-the masters hostile when and  
 τῶν δεσποτῶν ἀστοχήσῃ, ἐξουσίας δραξάμενον κατὰ τῶν  
 the masters it-misses power having-seized against the  
 ὁμοδούλων ἀνύποιστον γίνεται. τοιούτου γοῦν ἐπειράθη  
 fellow-slaves unbearable it-becomes such at-any-rate experienced  
 καὶ ἥθους καὶ φρονήματος τῶν εἰρημένων δούλων ὁ  
 both character and spirit of-the said slaves —  
 Κομνηνὸς Ἀλέξιος. ἐντεῦθεν οἱ ἤδη ῥηθέντες οὐχ ὑπὲρ  
 Komnenos Alexios thence the(-men) already mentioned not for  
 τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος κατὰ τῶν Κομνηνῶν ἐμηνίων· ἀλλ’  
 the autocrat against the Komnenoi were-wrathful but  
 ἐβασίλειά μὲν ὁ Βορίλος, ὥς τινες ἔφασαν, ὁ δὲ γε  
 aimed-at-empire indeed — Borilos as some said — but at-least  
 Γερμανὸς κοινωνὸς ὢν αὐτῷ τοῦ σκέμματος ἐπιμελῶς  
 Germanos partner being with-him of-the plan carefully

σὺν αὐτῷ ἐνέδραν ἐξήρτυε. καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους τὰ  
*with him ambush prepared and to each-other the(-things)*  
 βουλευόμενα διελέγοντο καὶ ὅπως ἂν αὐτοῖς κατὰ νοῦν  
*planned discussed and how — for-them according-to mind*  
 ἀποβαίῃ τὸ πρᾶγμα· καὶ εἰς τοῦμφανὲς ἤδη ἐξέφερον  
*might-turn-out the matter and into the-open already brought*  
 τὸ ὑπ' ὀδόντα τέως λαλούμενον. ἡκροᾷτό τις τῶν  
*the under tooth hitherto spoken heard one of-the(-things)*  
 λεγομένων Ἀλανὸς τὸ γένος, μάγιστρος τὴν ἀξίαν,  
*said Alan by-the race magistros by-the rank*  
 ἐκ πολλοῦ προσφκειωμένος τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ τοῖς  
*from long-ago intimate with-the emperor also-among the*  
 οἰκείοις διατελὼν. τῆνικαῦτα γοῦν μέσης ἐξελθὼν  
*household remaining then at-any-rate middle having-gone-out*  
 φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς ἐκτρέχει πρὸς τοὺς Κομνηνοὺς  
*watch of-the night runs-out to the Komnenoi*  
 ἀπαγγελὼν ἅπαντα τῷ μεγάλῳ δομεστικῷ. τινὲς δέ  
*about-to-report all to-the grand domestic some and*  
 φασι μηδὲ τὴν βασιλίδα τὴν πρὸς τοὺς Κομνηνοὺς τοῦ  
*say not-even the empress the to the Komnenoi of-the*  
 μαγίστρου ἄφιξιν παντάπασις ἡγνοηκέναι. ὁ δὲ εἰσάγει  
*magistros arrival altogether to-have-been-ignorant-of he and brings-in*  
 τοῦτον τῇ μητρὶ καὶ τὰδελφῷ. ἐνωτισθέντες δὲ τὴν  
*him to-the mother and to-the-brother having-beard and the*  
 ἀπνεκταίαν ἐκείνην ἀγγελίαν, δέον ἐλογίσαντο τὸ τέως  
*abominable that news needful they-reckoned the hitherto*  
 κρυπτόμενον εἰς τοῦμφανὲς ἀγαγεῖν καὶ ξὺν θεῷ τὴν σφῶν  
*hidden into the-open to-bring and with God the their*  
 σωτηρίαν περιποιήσασθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ μετὰ τὴν ἐπιούσαν  
*safety to-secure since and after the following(-day)*  
 ἐμεμαθήκει τὸ στράτευμα καταλαβεῖν τὴν Τζουρουλόν  
*he-had-learned the army to-reach — Tzouroulos*

(πολίχνιον δὲ τοῦτο περί που τὴν Θράκην κείμενον),  
*small-town and this near somewhere — Thrace lying*  
 ὁ δομέστικος περὶ πρώτην φυλακὴν τῆς νυκτὸς φοιτᾷ  
*the domestic about first watch of-the night goes*  
 πρὸς τὸν Πακουριανόν (ἀνὴρ δὲ οὗτος μικρὸς μὲν ἔην  
*to — Pakourianos man and this small indeed was*  
 δέμας κατὰ τὸν ποιητήν, πλὴν ἀλλὰ μαχητῆς, γένους  
*in-build according-to the poet however but fighter of-family*  
 λαμπροῦ ἐξ Ἀρμενίων ὀρμώμενος) καὶ ἀνακοινοῦται  
*brilliant from Armenians coming and communicates*  
 τούτῳ τὰ πάντα, τὴν μῆνιν τῶν δούλων, τὸν φθόνον,  
*to-him the all(-things) the wrath of-the slaves the envy*  
 τὴν ἐκ πολλοῦ κατ' αὐτῶν μελέτην καὶ τὴν ἐξ ὑπογίου  
*the from long-ago against them planning and the from imminent*  
 μελετωμένην τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν αὐτῶν ἐκκοπήν, καὶ ὡς οὐ  
*being-planned of-the eyes their cutting-out and that not*  
 χρὴ ὡς ἀνδράποδα παθεῖν, ἀλλὰ δράσαντάς τι  
*it-is-needful like slaves to-suffer but having-done something*  
 γενναῖον ἀπολέσθαι, εἰ καὶ τούτου δεήσει· καὶ τοῦτο  
*noble to-perish if even this should-be-needed and this*  
 γὰρ ἴδιον μεγαλοψυχίας ἔλεγεν. ὁ δὲ ἅπαντα διακηκοὺς  
*for mark of-magnanimity he-said he and all having-beard*  
 καὶ συνιδὼν ὡς οὐ χρὴ μέλλειν ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις,  
*and having-perceived that not it-is-needful to-delay in the such(-things)*  
 ἀλλὰ ταχέως γενναιοτέρου ἔργου ἐφάπτεσθαι, φησιν “εἰ  
*but quickly of-nobler deed to-take-hold he-says if*  
 μὲν αὐγαζούσης τῆς αὔριον ἐξέλθῃς τῶν ἐνταυθοί,  
*indeed dawning the tomorrow you-go-out from-the(-places) here*  
 συνέψομαί σοι καὶ γὰρ προθύμως ἐπαγωνισόμενος. εἰ δὲ ἐς  
*I-will-follow you I-too eagerly about-to-fight-along if but for*  
 νέωτα φυλάξεις τὸ βουλευόμενον, ἀλλ' ἐμέ γ' ἴσθι  
*tomorrow you-will-keep the(-thing) planned but me at-least know*



αὐτὸν ἐμὲ προσελθόντα τῷ βασιλεῖ παραυτίκα καὶ σοῦ  
*myself me having-gone to-the emperor immediately both you*  
καὶ τῶν σὺν σοὶ κατειπεῖν μηδὲ μικρὸν ἀναβαλόμενον”. ὁ  
*and those with you to-denounce not-even a-little having-delayed be*  
δὲ “ἐπεὶ σε τῆς ἐμῆς κηδόμενον ὁρῶ σωτηρίας, θεοῦ δὲ  
*and since you of-the my caring I-see safety of-God and*  
τοῦτο πάντως ἔργον, οὐκ ἀποστήσομαί σου τῆς βουλῆς,  
*this surely work not I-will-stand-aside your from-the counsel*  
πλὴν ἀλλὰ χρὴ δι’ ὅρκου τὸ ἀσφαλὲς ἐκάτερον  
*however but it-is-needful through oath the security each*  
ἔχειν”. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ πίστεις πρὸς ἀλλήλους δι’ ὅρκων  
*to-have thence surely also pledges toward each-other through oaths*  
ἐποιησάτην, ὡς ἄρα, εἰ εἰς τὸν βασιλείον θρόνον αὐτὸν  
*the-two-made that after-all if into the imperial throne him*  
ἀγάγοι θεός, ἐκείνον ἐς τὴν τοῦ δομεστίκου ἀξίαν  
*should-bring God that-one to the of-the domestic dignity*  
ἀναγάγῃ, ἣν νῦν αὐτὸς ἐν τῷ τέως κατεῖχεν. ἐξελθὼν  
*he-would-raise which now he in the meanwhile held having-gone-out*  
οὖν ἐκεῖθεν ὁ Κομνηνὸς Ἀλέξιος καὶ τοῦ Πακουριανοῦ  
*then from-there — Komnenos Alexios and — from-Pakourianos*  
ἀπαλλαγείς πρὸς ἕτερον ἄνδρα καὶ αὐτὸν ἀρειμάνιον  
*having-parted to another man also himself warlike*  
τὸν Οὐμπερτόπουλον ἄπεισι καὶ τὸν ἴδιον ἀπαγγέλλει  
*— Oumbertopoulos goes-away and the own reports*  
σκοπὸν καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν παρίστησι, καθ’ ἣν διαδρᾶναι  
*aim and the cause presents for which to-escape*  
βουλόμενος εἰς συμμαχίαν καὶ αὐτὸν προσκαλεῖται. ὁ δ’  
*wisbing into alliance also him he-calls he and*  
εὐθὺς κατενεύκει. “κἀμὲ δ’” ἔφη “πάντως ἔξεις  
*at-once had-nodded-assent me-too and he-said surely you-will-have*  
εὐψύχως σου καὶ μάλα προκινδυνεύοντα”. προσέκειντο  
*bravely for-you also very running-risks-before were-devoted*

δὲ καὶ τῷ Ἀλεξίῳ μᾶλλον οἱ εἰρημένοι ἄνδρες τὰ τε  
*and also — to-Alexios more the said men the both*  
 ἄλλα, καὶ διότι ἀνδρεία καὶ συνέσει τῶν ἄλλων  
*other(-things) and because in-courage and understanding than-the others*  
 διέφερε· φιλοδωρότατόν τε ὄντα καὶ τὴν χεῖρα, εἴπερ τις  
*he-surpassed most-generous both being and in-the hand if-ever any*  
 ἄλλος, περὶ τὰς δόσεις εὐκίνητον λίαν ὑπερηγάπων, καίτοι  
*other about the givings ready-moving greatly they-loved(-him) although*  
 μὴ πάνυ τι πλούτῳ περιρρεόμενον. οὐ γὰρ ἦν τῶν  
*not very at-all with-wealth abounding not for he-was of-the(-men)*  
 ἀρπαζόντων καὶ πρὸς τὸ πλουτεῖν διακεχνηότων. τὸ γὰρ  
*snatching and to the being-rich gaping the for*  
 ἐλευθέριον οὐκ ἐν πλήθει παροχῆς χρημάτων κρίνεσθαι  
*liberal(-quality) not in abundance of-giving of-money to-be-judged*  
 εἴωθεν, ἀλλὰ γνώμῃ ταλαντεύεσθαι πέφυκεν. ἔστι γὰρ  
*is-wont but by-will to-be-weighed is-natural it-is-possible for*  
 τὸν ὀλίγα κεκτημένον καὶ πρὸς λόγον τῶν ἐνόντων  
*the(-man) little having-acquired and in proportion of-the available*  
 καταβαλόντα ἐλευθέριον εἶναι, τὸν δέ γε πλούτον  
*having-paid-out liberal to-be the(-man) but at-least wealth*  
 πολὺν ἔχοντα καὶ τῇ γῇ κατορύττοντα ἢ μὴ πρὸς  
*much having and in-the earth burying or not in*  
 λόγον τοῦτον τῷ δεομένῳ παρέχοντα ἄλλον Κροῖσον ἢ  
*proportion it to-the needy providing another Croesus or*  
 χρυσομανῇ Μίδα κίμβικά τε καὶ γλίσχρον καὶ ἓνα τῶν  
*gold-mad Midas skinflint both and stingy and one of-those*  
 διαπριόντων τὸ κύμινον εἰπὼν ἂν τις οὐ διαμάρτοι τοῦ  
*sawing the cumin having-called — someone not would-miss the*  
 δέοντος. πάσαις τοίνυν ἀρεταῖς κεκοσμημένον τὸν Ἀλέξιον  
*needful with-all therefore virtues adorned — Alexios*  
 οἱ ἤδη ῥηθέντες ἄνδρες ἀνέκαθεν καὶ πάλαι γινώσκοντες  
*the already said men from-of-old and long-ago knowing*

τὴν αὐτοῦ ἀνάρρησιν καὶ ἡγάπων καὶ ἐπηύχοντο. ὁ  
*the his proclamation both loved(-him) and prayed(-for-it) —*  
 δὲ Ἀλέξιος καὶ ἐξ αὐτοῦ αἰτήσας ὄρκον καὶ λαβὼν  
*and Alexios also from him having-asked oath and having-received*  
 δρομαῖος ἄπεισιν οἴκαδε καὶ πάντα ἀνακοινοῦται τοῖς  
*running goes-away home and all communicates to-the*  
 αὐτοῦ. νύξ ἦν ἡ τῆς τυροφάγου κυριακῆς, καθ’ ἣν  
*bis(-people) night it-was the of-the cheese-eating Lord’s-day on which*  
 οὐμὸς πατὴρ ταῦτα ἐσκέπτετο. τῇ δὲ μετ’ αὐτὴν ὀρθρου  
*my father these(-things) considered on-the and after it of-dawn*  
 βαθέος μετὰ τῶν ἀμφ’ αὐτὸν ἐξεληλύθει τῆς πόλεως. ἔνθεν  
*early with those about him had-gone-out of-the city thence*  
 τοι καὶ τὸ πλῆθος ἀποδεξάμενον τῆς ὁρμῆς τὸν Ἀλέξιον  
*surely also the multitude having-approved for-the impulse — Alexios*  
 καὶ τῆς ἀγχινοίας ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν πραγμάτων ἀσμάτιον  
*and for-the shrewdness from very the deeds little-song*  
 αὐτῷ ἀνεπλέξαντο ἐξ ἰδιώτιδος μὲν συγκεῖμενον γλώττης,  
*for-him wove from common indeed composed tongue*  
 αὐτὴν δὲ τὴν τοῦ πράγματος ἐπίνοιαν ἐμμελέστατά πως  
*itself and the of-the matter conception most-tunefully somehow*  
 ἀνακρουόμενον καὶ παρεμφαῖνον τὴν τε προαίσθησιν  
*striking-up and displaying the both foresight*  
 τῆς κατ’ ἐκείνου, ἐπιβουλῆς καὶ τὰ παρ’ αὐτοῦ  
*of-the against him plot and the(-things) by him*  
 μεμηχανημένα. τὸ δὲ ἀσμάτιον αὐταῖς λέξεσιν εἶχεν οὕτως·  
*contrived the and little-song in-very words had thus*  
 “τὸ σάββατον τῆς τυρινῆς χαρεῖς Ἀλέξιε ἐνόησες το  
*the Saturday of-the cheese(-week) rejoicing Alexios you-perceived it*  
 καὶ τὴν δευτέραν τὸ πρωῒ ὕπα καλῶς γεράκιμ μου.” εἶχε  
*and the Monday the morning go well falcon my was*  
 δὲ ὥδέ πως ἐννοίας τὸ διαφημιζόμενον ἐκείνο ἀσμάτιον,  
*and thus somehow of-sense the being-spread-abroad that little-song*

ὥς ἄρα “κατὰ μὲν τὸ τυρώνυμον σάββατον ὑπέρευγέ  
*that after-all on indeed the cheese-named Saturday bravo*  
 σοι τῆς ἀγχινούας, Ἀλέξιε, τὴν δὲ μετὰ τὴν κυριακὴν  
*to-you for-the shrewdness Alexios the and after the Sunday*  
 δευτέραν ἡμέραν καθάπερ τις ὑψιπέτης ἰέραξ ἀφίπτασο  
*second day like some high-flying hawk fly-off*  
 τῶν ἐπιβουλευόντων βαρβάρων”.  
*from-the plotting barbarians*

## XXV • THE WOMEN IN SANCTUARY

*When Anna Dalassene has betrothed Botaneiates' grandson to Manuel's daughter, she fears the boy's tutor will betray the plot, and gathers the household at evening as if for worship. Her sons lock the boy and tutor in, lead the women and children on foot to the forum of Constantine, and ride for Blachernai. Dalassene sends the pursuing tutor back and takes refuge in Saint Nicholas, called the Refuge. Summoned by the emperor's envoys, she demands a cross large enough to make his oath public, and Isaac's wife stands with her. The emperor yields; the women are confined in the Petrion convent with the protovestiaria, who wins the guards with food and so learns all the news.*

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ μήτηρ τῶν Κομνηνῶν ἡ Δαλασσηνὴ Ἄννα  
*since and the mother of-the Komnenoi — Dalassene Anna*  
 γαμβρὸν ἔφθασεν εἰσποιήσασθαι ἐπὶ τῇ θυγατρὶ Μανουήλ  
*son-in-law had-already to-adopt for the daughter of-Manuel*  
 τοῦ πρωτοτόκου τῶν υἱῶν αὐτῆς τὸν τοῦ Βοτανειάτου  
*the first-born of-the sons her the — of-Botaneiates*  
 ἔγγονον, πτοηθεῖσα μὴ ὁ παιδαγωγὸς αὐτοῦ γνοῖς  
*grandson having-been-alarmed lest the tutor his having-learned*  
 τὴν ἐπιβουλήν προσαγγεῖλη τῷ βασιλεῖ βουλὴν ἀρίστην  
*the plot should-report to-the emperor counsel best*  
 βουλευέται. καὶ δὴ προσκυνήσεως χάριν τῶν τοῦ θεοῦ  
*counsels and indeed of-worship for-the-sake of-the — of-God*

ἀγίων ἐκκλησιῶν ἀθροισθῆναι κελεύει πάντας ἑσπέρας.  
 holy churches to-be-gathered she-orders all in-the-evening  
 ἦν γὰρ αὐτῇ σύνηθες εἰς τὰ ἱερὰ τεμένη φοιτᾶν. γίνεται  
 was for for-her customary to the holy precincts to-go happens  
 τοῦτο. καὶ δὴ πάντες, ὡς ἔθος, παρήσαν ἐξῆγόν τε  
 this and indeed all as custom were-present led-out and  
 τοὺς ἵππους τῶν ἵπποστάθμων ἐπιμελῶς στρωννύειν  
 the horses from-the stables carefully to-spread  
 σχηματιζόμενοι τὰς γυναιξὶ πρεπούσας ἐφeskτρίδας. ὁ  
 feigning the for-women fitting saddle-cloths the  
 δέ γε τοῦ Βοτανειάτου ἔγγονος σὺν τῷ παιδαγωγῷ  
 and at-least — of-Botaneiates grandson with the tutor  
 ὕπνωττον· ἀπομεμέριστο γάρ τι τοῦτοις οἶκημα ἴδιον. περὶ  
 were-sleeping had-been-allotted for some to-them dwelling own about  
 πρώτην δὲ φυλακὴν τοὺς πυλεῶνας κλείσαντες οἱ Κομνηνοὶ  
 first and watch the gates having-locked the Komnenoi  
 μέλλοντες ἤδη ὀπλίζεσθαι καὶ τῆς βασιλευούσης πόλεως  
 about already to-arm-themselves and from-the reigning city  
 ἀφιππάσασθαι τῇ μητρὶ παρέσχον τὰς κλεῖς ἐκλεισάν  
 to-ride-away to-the mother gave the keys they-locked  
 τε ἀψοφητὶ καὶ τὰς θύρας τοῦ δώματος, ἐν ᾧ ὁ ἐπ'  
 and noiselessly also the doors of-the house in which the for  
 ἐγγόνῃ γαμβρὸς αὐτῆς ὁ Βοτανειάτης ἀφύπνωττεν, οὐ  
 granddaughter in-law her — Botaneiates was-sleeping not  
 μέντοι ἀκριβῶς κατασφαιισάμενοι ὡς ἐφαρμόσαι ταύτας  
 however exactly having-secured so-as to-fit them  
 ἀλλήλαις, ἵνα μὴ ψόφος τις γεγωνὼς διωπνίσῃ αὐτόν.  
 to-each-other that not noise any having-arisen should-wake him  
 τούτων οὕτω γινομένων τὸ πλεῖστον παρῳχῇκει τῆς  
 these thus happening the most had-passed of-the  
 νυκτός. πρὸ ἀλεκτοροφωνίας οὖν πρώτης τοὺς πυλεῶνας  
 night before cockcrow then first the gates

ἀνοίξαντες τήν τε μητέρα καὶ τὰς ἀδελφὰς καὶ τὰς  
*having-opened the both mother and the sisters and the*  
 σφὼν γυναῖκας καὶ τὰ παῖδιά συμπαραλαβόντες μέχρι τοῦ  
*own wives and the children having-taken-along as-far-as the*  
 Κωνσταντινίου φόρου ὁμοῦ πεζῇ συναπήεσαν. κακείθεν  
*Constantinian forum together on-foot went-away-together and-from-there*  
 συνταξάμενοι ταύταις ἐκείνοι μὲν πρὸς τὰ ἐν Βλαχέρναις  
*having-bidden-farewell to-them they indeed to the at Blachernai*  
 βασιλεία μάλα ὀξέως ἐξέδραμον· αὐται δὲ πρὸς τὸν  
*palace very swiftly ran-out they and to the*  
 τῆς μεγάλης Σοφίας νεῶν σὺν σπουδῇ ἔθειον. ὁ δὲ τοῦ  
*of-the great Wisdom temple with haste ran the but —*  
 Βοτανειάτου παιδαγωγὸς διυπνισθεὶς καὶ γνοὺς τὸ  
*of-Botaneiates tutor having-woken and having-learned the(-thing)*  
 γενόμενον ἐξῆι πρὸς αὐτοὺς δᾶδα τῶν χεροῖν ἔχων  
*having-happened went-out toward them torch in-the-two hands having*  
 φθάνει τε κατὰ τάχος αὐτοὺς τοῦ τῶν ἁγίων τεσσαράκοντα  
*overtakes and with speed them the of-the holy forty*  
 τεμένους ἐγγὺς μήπω κατειληφότας. θεασαμένη δὲ τοῦτον  
*precinct near not-yet having-reached having-beheld and him*  
 εὐθὺς ἡ Δαλασσηνὴ καὶ μήτηρ τῶν ἀριστέων ἐκείνων  
*at-once — Dalassene and mother of-the noble those*  
 παίδων φησὶ “κατεῖπον ἡμῶν τινες, ὥς ἐπυθόμην, τῷ  
*sons says have-denounced us some as I-learned to-the*  
 βασιλεῖ. ἄπειμι γοῦν εἰς τὰς ἁγίας ἐκκλησίας τῇ  
*emperor I-am-going at-any-rate to the holy churches the*  
 αὐτῶν χρωμένη, καθὼς ἂν δυναίμην, ἐπαρωγῇ· κακείθεν  
*their using as — I-may-be-able help and-from-there*  
 ἀνγαζούσης ἡμέρας ἀπελεύσομαι πρὸς τὰ βασιλεία. ἄπιθι  
*dawning day I-will-go to the palace go-away*  
 τοίνυν αὐτός, ἔν’ ὀπηνίκα οἱ πυλωροὶ ἀνοίξωσι, περὶ τῆς  
*therefore yourself that when the gatekeepers open about the*

ἡμῶν αὐτοῖς ἀπαγγείλῃς ἐλεύσεως”. ὁ δ’ εὐθὺς πρὸς  
*our to-them you-may-report coming he and at-once to*  
 τὸ κελευσθὲν ἡπείγετο. αἱ δὲ φθάνουσι πρὸς τὸ τοῦ  
*the(-thing) ordered hastened they and arrive at the of-the*  
 ἱεράρχου Νικολάου τέμενος, ὃ Προσφύγιον μέχρι τῆς  
*hierarch Nicholas precinct which Refuge to the*  
 δεῦρο εἰώθασιν ὀνομάζειν, ἀγχοῦ τῆς μεγάλης ἐκκλησίας καὶ  
*present they-are-wont to-name near the great church and*  
 πρῶν ἐνιδρυμένον πάλαι ἐπὶ σωτηρία τῶν ἐπ’ ἐγκλήμασιν  
*formerly founded long-ago for safety of-those for charges*  
 ἀλικομένων, ὥς μέρος τυγχάνον τοῦ μεγάλου τεμένους  
*being-caught as part being of-the great precinct*  
 καὶ ἐπίτηδες, οἶμαι, κατασκευασθὲν τοῖς ἀρχαίοις, ἵνα πᾶς  
*and on-purpose I-think constructed by-the ancients that every*  
 ὁ ἐπ’ ἐγκλήματι ἀλοὺς καὶ φθάσας εἴσω τούτου  
*the(-man) for charge caught and having-managed inside it*  
 γενέσθαι τῆς ἐκ τῶν νόμων τηνικαῦτα ἐλευθερώται  
*to-be from-the from the laws then may-be-freed*  
 πουνῆς. οἱ γὰρ πάλαι βασιλεῖς τε καὶ καίσαρες πολλῆς  
*penalty the for of-old emperors both and caesars of-much*  
 προμηθείας ἡξίουσαν τὸ ὑπήκουον. ὁ δέ γε ἐν τῷ  
*forethought deemed-worthy the subjects the(-man) but at-least in the*  
 τοιούτῳ τεμένει προσμένων ταχέως αὐταῖς οὐκ ἀπεζύγου  
*such precinct waiting quickly to-them not unbarred*  
 τὰς θύρας, ἀλλ’ ἐπυνθάνετο, τίνες καὶ ὅθεν εἶν. εἰς δέ  
*the doors but inquired who and whence they-might-be one and*  
 τις τῶν σὺν αὐταῖς “γυναῖκές” φησιν “ἔξ ἀνατολῶν.  
*a-certain of-those with them women he-says from (the)-east*  
 τὰ δὲ πρὸς χρεῖαν ἅπαντα δαπανήσασαι ἐπισπεύδουσι  
*the(-things) and for need all having-spent hasten*  
 τὴν προσκύνησιν οἵκαδε ἐθέλουσαι ἐπανελθεῖν”. ὁ δ’  
*the worship homeward wishing to-return he and*

εὐθὺς ἀποζυγώσας τὰς θύρας παραχωρεῖ ταύταις τῆς  
*at-once having-unbarred the doors grants to-them the*  
 εἰσόδου. τῇ δ' ἐπαύριον ἐκκλησιάσας ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τὴν  
*entrance on-the and next(-day) having-convened the autocrat the*  
 σύγκλητον, ἐπειδὴ τὰ κατὰ τοὺς ἄνδρας μεμαθήκοι,  
*senate since the(-things) concerning the men he-had-learned*  
 τὰ εἰκότα πρὸς τούτους ἐδημηγόρησε καταδρομὴν τοῦ  
*the fitting(-things) to them harangued attack on-the*  
 δομεστίκου ποιούμενος. ἐκπέμπει δὲ τηνικαῦτα πρὸς τὰς  
*domestic making sends and then to the*  
 γυναῖκας τὸν τε καλούμενον Στραβορωμανὸν καὶ τινα  
*women the both called Straboromanos and a-certain*  
 Εὐφημιανὸν τὴν κλήσιν μετακαλούμενος αὐτὰς εἰς τὰ  
*Euphemianos by-the name summoning them to the*  
 βασιλεία. ἡ δὲ Δαλασσηνὴ πρὸς αὐτοὺς “εἵπατέ” φησι  
*palace — and Dalassene to them say she-says*  
 “πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα· οἱ παῖδες οἱ ἐμοὶ δοῦλοί εἰσι  
*to the autocrat the sons the my slaves are*  
 πιστοὶ τῆς σῆς βασιλείας καὶ προθύμως ἐξυπηρετοῦντες  
*faithful of-the your majesty and eagerly serving*  
 αὐτῇ ἐπὶ πᾶσι οὐκ ἐφείσαντο οὔτε ψυχῶν οὔτε σωμάτων  
*it in all not they-spared either souls or bodies*  
 ἀεὶ προκινδυνεύοντες ἐκθύμως ὑπὲρ τοῦ σοῦ κράτους.  
*always running-risks-first ardently for the your sovereignty*  
 ὁ δὲ κατ' αὐτῶν φθόνος μὴ φέρων τὴν εἰς αὐτοὺς  
*the but against them envy not bearing the toward them*  
 εὖνοιαν τε καὶ κηδεμονίαν τῆς σῆς βασιλείας μέγαν  
*goodwill both and care of-the your majesty great*  
 τὸν κίνδυνον κατ' αὐτῶν καθ' ὥραν ἐξήρτυεν· ὥς δὲ  
*the danger against them by hour prepared when and*  
 καὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς αὐτῶν ἐξορύττειν ἐμελέτησαν, τοῦτο  
*also the eyes their to-gouge-out they-planned this*



αἰσθόμενοι καὶ μὴ φέροντες τὸν τοιοῦτον ἄδικον κίνδυνον  
*having-perceived and not bearing the such unjust danger*  
 τῆς πόλεως οὐχ ὡς ἀποστάται ἐξῆλθον, ἀλλ' ὡς  
*from-the city not as rebels they-went-out but as*  
 δοῦλοι πιστοὶ ἅμα μὲν τὸν ὑπόγυον ἀποδιδράσκοντες  
*slaves faithful at-once indeed the imminent fleeing*  
 κίνδυνον, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὰ κατ' αὐτῶν μελετώμενα  
*danger at-once and also the(-things) against them being-planned*  
 τὸ κράτος σου ἀναδιδάζοντες καὶ τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς σῆς  
*the sovereignty your about-to-inform and the from the your*  
 βασιλείας ἐξαιτησόμενοι βοήθειαν.” οἱ δὲ ἐπέκειντο σφόδρα  
*majesty about-to-request help they and pressed vehemently*  
 μετακαλοῦμενοι ταύτην· ἀγανακτήσασα δὲ ἡ γυνή φησι  
*summoning her having-become-indignant and the woman says*  
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς “παραχωρήσατέ μοι εἰς τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ  
*to them allow me into the — of-God*  
 ἐκκλησίαν εἰσελθούσῃ προσκυνῆσαι. ἄτοπον γάρ ἐστιν εἰς  
*church having-entered to-worship absurd for it-is to*  
 τοὺς πυλεῶνας αὐτῆς φθάσασαν μὴ εἰσελθεῖν καὶ μεσίτιδι  
*the gates its having-come not to-enter and as-mediatrix*  
 τῇ παναχράντῳ δεσποίνῃ καὶ θεομήτορι χρήσασθαι εἰς τε  
*the all-immaculate mistress and Mother-of-God to-use toward both*  
 τὸν θεὸν καὶ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ψυχὴν.” τὴν εὐλογον οὖν  
*— God and the of-the emperor soul the reasonable then*  
 αἴτησιν τῆς γυναικὸς αἰδεσθέντες οἱ πρέσβεις παραχωροῦσιν  
*request of-the woman having-respected the envoys grant*  
 αὐτῇ τῆς εἰσόδου. ἡ δὲ βραδεῖ ποδὶ στείχουσα ὡς οἶον  
*her the entrance she and with-slow foot walking as-if as-it-were*  
 ὑπὸ τοῦ γήρως καὶ τῆς λύπης κεκμηκυῖα, μᾶλλον δὲ  
*by the old-age and the grief exhausted rather and*  
 καὶ τὸν κεκμηκότα ὑποκρινομένη περὶ τε αὐτά που τὰ  
*also the exhausted(-one) playing about both very somewhere the*

εἰσόδια τοῦ ἱεροῦ βήματος πελάσασα καὶ γονυκλισίας  
*entrances of-the holy sanctuary having-drawn-near and genuflections*  
 δύο ποιησαμένη περὶ τὴν τρίτην καθεσθείσα χαμαὶ  
*two having-made at the third having-sat-down on-the-ground*  
 ἀπρίξ τῶν ἁγίων εἶχετο θυρῶν ἐπιβωμένη ὡς “εἰ μὴ  
*tightly the holy held doors crying-out that if not*  
 τὰς χεῖρας ἀποτμηθεῖν, οὐκ ἂν τοῦ ἱεροῦ τεμένους  
*the hands I-be-cut-off not — from-the holy precinct*  
 ἐξέλθοιμι, εἰ μὴ τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως ὥσπερ ἐχέγγον  
*I-would-go-out if not the of-the emperor as pledge*  
 τῆς σωτηρίας δεξαίμην σταυρόν”. ἐκβαλὼν δὲ ὁ  
*of-the safety I-should-receive cross having-taken-out and —*  
 Στραβορωμανὸς ὅνπερ ἐπέφερετο ἐγκόλπιον σταυρόν  
*Straboromanos which he-wore pectoral cross*  
 ἐδίδου. ἡ δὲ “οὐκ ἀφ’ ὑμῶν τὴν πληροφορίαν αἰτῶ, ἀλλ’  
*gave she and not from you the assurance I-ask but*  
 ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐπιζητῶ τὴν εἰρημένην βοήθειαν.  
*from himself the emperor I-seek the said help*  
 καὶ οὐδ’ ἀπλῶς ἐν μικρῷ μεγέθει τὸν διδόμενον ἂν  
*and not-even simply in small size the given —*  
 σταυρόν δεξαίμην, ἀλλ’ ἀξιόλογον τὸ μέγεθος ἔχοντα”,  
*cross I-would-receive but considerable the size having*  
 τοῦτο δὲ ἐπέζητει, ἵνα καταφανὲς πρὸς ἐκείνην τὸ ὄρκιον  
*this and she-sought that manifest to that-one the oath*  
 γίνοιτο· ἐν μικρῷ γὰρ σταυρίῳ τῆς ὑποσχέσεως γινομένης  
*might-become on small for little-cross the promise being-made*  
 τάχα ἂν τοὺς πολλοὺς τὰ ἐμπεδούμενα διελάνθανον·  
*perhaps — the many the(-things) being-confirmed would-escape*  
 “ἐκείνου τοίνυν τὴν κρίσιν καὶ τὸν ἔλεον ἀνακαλοῦμαι.  
*his therefore the judgment and the mercy I-invoke*  
 ἅπιτε, ἀπαγγείλατε αὐτῷ”. ἡ δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ Ἰσαακίῳ νύμφῃ  
*go-away report to-him the and for — Isaac bride*

αὐτῆς (προέφθασε γὰρ εἰς τὸν ναὸν εἰσελθεῖν ἅμα τῷ  
*her had-gone-ahead for into the temple to-enter together with-the*  
 τὰς πύλας ἀνεωχθῆναι διὰ τὸν ὄρθριον ὕμνον) τὴν  
*the gates to-be-opened because-of the dawn hymn the*  
 ἐπικαλύπτουσιν ὁθόνην τὸ πρόσωπον περιελούσά φησι  
*covering veil the face having-taken-off says*  
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς “αὕτη μὲν, εἰ βούλεται, ἀπερχέσθω ἡμεῖς  
*to them she indeed if she-wishes let-her-go we*  
 δὲ πληροφορίας ἄτερ τοῦ ἱεροῦ οὐκ ἐξερχόμεθα, κὰν  
*but assurance without from-the holy(-place) not go-out even-if*  
 θανεῖν ἡμᾶς πρόκειται”. ἰδόντες οὖν τὸ ἐνστατικὸν τῶν  
*to-die us lies-before having-seen then the obstinacy of-the*  
 γυναικῶν καὶ ὅπως ἀναισχυντότερον αὐτοῖς ἢ πρότερον  
*women and how more-shamelessly to-them than before*  
 προσεφέροντο, καὶ πτοηθέντες μὴ θόρυβος γένηται,  
*they-behaved and having-been-alarmed lest uproar should-arise*  
 ἀπελθόντες ἀπήγγειλαν πάντα τῷ βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ φύσει  
*having-gone-away reported all to-the emperor he and by-nature*  
 ἀγαθὸς ὢν, ἐπικαμφθεὶς καὶ τοῖς τῆς γυναικὸς λόγοις,  
*good being having-been-bent also by-the of-the woman words*  
 ἀποστέλλει τὸν ἐπιζητούμενον σταυρὸν πρὸς αὐτὴν πᾶσαν  
*sends the requested cross to her all*  
 ἀφροντισίαν αὐτῇ διδούς. καὶ οὕτω τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ ἀγίας  
*freedom-from-care to-her giving and thus from-the — of-God holy*  
 ἐκκλησίας ἐξελθοῦσαν περιορισθῆναι παρακελεύει μετὰ τε  
*church having-gone-out to-be-confined orders with both*  
 τῶν θυγατέρων καὶ νυμφῶν αὐτῆς εἰς τὴν ἀγχού  
*the daughters and daughters-in-law her into the near*  
 τῆς Σιδηρᾶς διακειμένην γυναικειάν μονὴν τῶν Πετρίων.  
*the Iron(-gate) lying women's monastery of-the Petrian*  
 μετὰ κλητὸν δὲ ποιεῖται καὶ τὴν συμπειθέραν αὐτῆς τὴν  
*summoned and makes also the fellow-mother-in-law her the*

τοῦ καίσαρος Ἰωάννου νύμφην (πρωτοβεστιαρία δὲ ἦν  
*of-the caesar John daughter-in-law protovestiaria and was*  
 αὐτὴ τὸ ἀξίωμα) ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν Βλαχέρναις τεμένους, ὃ  
*she in-the rank from the at Blachernai precinct which*  
 ἐπ' ὀνόματι τῆς δεσπότιδος ἡμῶν θεομήτορος ᾠκοδόμητο,  
*in name of-the mistress our Mother-of-God had-been-built*  
 καὶ εἰς τὴν ῥηθείσαν μονὴν τῶν Πετρίων καὶ αὐτὴν  
*and into the said monastery of-the Petrian also her*  
 εἶναι παρακελεύεται καὶ προστάττει τοὺς τε πιθῶνας  
*to-be orders and commands the both wine-cellar*  
 καὶ σιτῶνας αὐτῶν καὶ πάντα τὰ ταμεῖα τηρεῖσθαι  
*and granaries their and all the storerooms to-be-kept*  
 ἀμειαγώγητα. καθ' ἐκάστην οὖν πρωΐαν ἄμφω τοῖς  
*unplundered by each then morning both to-those*  
 φυλάττουσι προσερχόμεναι ἐπυνθάνοντο, εἴ τι ἀπὸ  
*guarding coming inquired if anything from*  
 τῶν παιδῶν αὐτῶν μεμαθήκεσαν. οἱ δὲ ἀπλοϊκώτερον  
*the sons their they-had-learned they and rather-simply*  
 αὐταῖς προσφερόμενοι ἀπήγγελλον ἅπαν τὸ ἀκουσθέν.  
*to-them behaving reported all the(-thing) heard*  
 ἡ δὲ πρωτοβεστιαρία ἐλευθέρα καὶ χεῖρα καὶ γνώμην  
*the and protovestiaria free both in-hand and in-mind*  
 οὔσα βουλομένη τε τοὺς φυλάσσοντας σφετερίσασθαι  
*being wishing and those guarding to-make-her-own*  
 ἐπέταττεν αὐτοῖς ἀναλαμβάνεσθαι ἀπὸ τῶν βρωσίμων  
*ordered them to-take from the foodstuffs*  
 εἰς ἰδίαν χρῆσιν ὅποσα καὶ βούλονται· ἐφέϊτο γὰρ  
*for own use as-much-as also they-might-wish it-was-allowed for*  
 αὐταῖς ἀπαραποδίστως εἰσάγεσθαι τὰ πρὸς χρείαν.  
*to-them unbindered to-be-brought-in the(-things) for need*  
 ἐντεῦθεν προθυμότεροι πρὸς τὰς ἀπαγγελίας οἱ φύλακες  
*thereupon more-eager for the reports the guards*

ἐγεγόνεισαν, κᾶκτοτε ἔκφορα πάντα ποιούντων ἐκείνων  
*had-become and-from-then known all making they*  
 οὐδὲν αὐτὰς διελάνθανε.  
*nothing them escaped*

XXVI • THE CAESAR JOINS

*The rebels break the locks of a gate at the Blachernai, maim the horses they leave in the imperial stables, and ride to the Kosmidion monastery. There they persuade George Palaiologos to join them; his wife and mother-in-law are left in the Blachernai church, and he follows with his money. All of them join the domestic's army at Tzouroulos. Told of the revolt, the caesar John Doukas slaps his grandson, then joins them, taking a Byzantine's gold and recruiting Turks on the way. The villages proclaim Alexios emperor, all but Orestias, and the rebels camp at Schiza.*

Τὰ μὲν οὖν κατὰ τὰς γυναῖκας τοιαῦτα· οἱ δέ  
*the(-things) indeed then concerning the women such(-were) the and*  
 γε ἀποστάται φθάσαντες τὴν περὶ τὸ βραχιόνιον τῶν  
*at-least rebels having-reached the near the arm-wall of-the*  
 Βλαχερνῶν ἱσταμένην πύλην καὶ τὰς κλεῖς κατεάξαντες  
*Blachernai standing gate and the bolts having-broken*  
 ἀδεῶς ἐξεληλύθεισαν εἰς τοὺς βασιλικοὺς ἵπποστάθμους.  
*fearlessly had-gone-out to the imperial stables*  
 καὶ τοὺς μὲν τῶν ἵππων αὐτοῦ που καταλιμπάνουσι  
*and some indeed of-the horses there somewhere leave*  
 πρότερον τοὺς ὀπισθεν πόδας ἀπ' αὐτῶν τῶν μηρῶν τῷ  
*first the hind feet from very the thighs with-the*  
 ξίφει ἀποτεμόντες, τοὺς δ' ἀναλαβόμενοι, ὅσοι τούτοις  
*sword having-cut-off others and having-taken as-many-as to-them*  
 ἔδοξαν χρησιμώτεροι, ἐκεῖθεν ταχέως τὸ ἀγχοῦ που τῆς  
*seemed more-useful from-there quickly the near somewhere of-the*

μεγαλοπόλεως μοναστήριον, ὃ Κοσμιδίων ἐπωνόμασται,  
*great-city monastery which Kosmidion has-been-named*  
 καταλαμβάνουσι. καὶ γάρ, ἵνα μεταξύ πως ἐπιδιγησαίμην  
*reach and for that meanwhile somehow I-may-narrate-besides*  
 καὶ σαφέστερον ἡμῖν ὁ λόγος προῆ, τὴν εἰρημένην  
*and more-clearly for-us the account may-proceed the said*  
 ἄνωθεν πρωτοβεστιαρίαν, πρὶν ἢ τὸν βασιλέα ταύτην  
*above protovestiaria before than the emperor her*  
 μετακαλέσασθαι, ὡς ὁ λόγος φθάσας ἐδήλωσε, κείθι  
*to-summon as the account having-anticipated showed there*  
 καταλαμβάντες ταύτη τε συνετάττοντο ἐπὶ τῷ ἐξελαύνειν  
*having-found with-her both they-took-leave upon the to-drive-out*  
 ἐκεῖθεν καὶ Γεώργιον τὸν Παλαιολόγον ἀνέπειθον μεθ'  
*from-there and George the Palaiologos tried-to-persuade with*  
 ἑαυτῶν συλλαβεῖν καὶ συναπαίρειν αὐτοῖς κατηνάγκαζον.  
*themselves to-help and to-set-out-with them compelled*  
 οὐπω γὰρ ἦσαν ἔκφορα τὰ κατ' αὐτοὺς θέμενοι  
*not-yet for were known the(-things) concerning them having-made*  
 πρὸς τὸν ἄνδρα δι' ὑποψίαν εὐπρόσωπον. ἦν γὰρ  
*to the man because-of suspicion fair-seeming was for*  
 ὁ πατὴρ τοῦ Γεωργίου τουτουῖ τῷ βασιλεῖ εὐνούστατος  
*the father — of-George this-here to-the emperor most-loyal*  
 ἐς τὰ μάλιστα, καὶ ἡ τῆς ἀποστασίας πρὸς τοῦτον  
*to the utmost and the of-the revolt to him*  
 ἀπογύμνωσις οὐκ ἀκίνδυνος. τὰ μὲν οὖν πρῶτα  
*disclosure not without-danger the(-things) indeed then first*  
 ὁ Παλαιολόγος πρὸς τούτους οὐκ εἶχεν εὐαγώγως  
*— Palaiologos toward them not was tractably*  
 πολλά τε ἀντιτεινόμενος καὶ κατονειδίζων τὴν πρὸς  
*many(-things) both objecting and reproaching the toward*  
 ἐκεῖνον τούτων διαπιστίαν καὶ ὅτι ὕστερον, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ  
*him their distrust and that later this indeed the*

πεπαρομιασμένον, νοῦν οἶσαντες καὶ τοῦτον ἀνακαλοῦνται.  
*proverbial mind having-brought also him they-summon*  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἡ πρωτοβεστιαρία ἡ τοῦ Παλαιολόγου  
*since and also the protovestiaria the — of-Palaiologos*  
 πενθερὰ βαρεῖα ἐνέκειτο τούτῳ συνεξελθεῖν καὶ ἀπειλοῦσα  
*mother-in-law heavily pressed on-him to-go-out-with and threatening*  
 αὐτῷ τὰ δεινότατα, μαλακώτερος γίνεται. φροντίζει δὲ  
*him the most-dreadful(-things) softer becomes takes-thought and*  
 τὸ ἐντεῦθεν περὶ τῶν γυναικῶν, τῆς τε αὐτοῦ γαμετῆς  
*— thereupon about the women of-the both his wife*  
 Ἄννης καὶ Μαρίας τῆς πενθερᾶς αὐτοῦ, τὰ πρώτα  
*Anna and Maria the mother-in-law his the first(-things)*  
 τοῦ γένους ἐκ τῶν Βουλγάρων ἐχούσης, κάλλους δὲ  
*of-the family from the Bulgarians having of-beauty and*  
 τοσοῦτον ἐπισυρομένης καὶ εὐαρμοστίας μελῶν καὶ μερῶν,  
*so-much drawing and of-harmony of-limbs and parts*  
 ὥστε μηδεμίαν φανῆναι κατ' ἐκείνο καιροῦ τὴν ταύτης  
*so-that none to-appear at that of-time the than-her*  
 ὠραιότεραν. οὐκ ἄνευ οὖν φροντίδος ἦσαν τὰ κατ'  
*lovelier not without then care were the(-things) concerning*  
 αὐτὴν τῷ Παλαιολόγῳ καὶ Ἀλεξίῳ. ταύτῃ τοι καὶ γνώμην  
*her — to-Palaiologos and to-Alexios thus surely also opinion*  
 ἔσχον οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Ἀλέξιον ἐκείθεν ἀνελόμενοι ταύτας  
*had the(-men) about — Alexios from-there having-taken them*  
 οἱ μὲν εἰς τι φρούριον ἀπαγαγεῖν, ὁ δὲ Παλαιολόγος  
*some indeed to some fortress to-lead-away — and Palaiologos*  
 εἰς τὸ ἐν Βλαχέρναις τέμενος τῆς θεομήτορος. καὶ κρατεῖ  
*to the at Blachernai precinct of-the Mother-of-God and prevails*  
 ἡ τοῦ Γεωργίου γνώμη. εὐθὺς οὖν ἀπελθόντες μετ'  
*the — of-George opinion at-once then having-gone-off with*  
 αὐτῶν παρέθεντο ταύτας τῇ πανάγῳ μητρὶ τοῦ τὰ  
*them entrusted them to-the all-pure mother of-the the*

πάντα συνέχοντος λόγου. αὐτοὶ δὲ παλινοστήσαντες, ὅθεν  
 all holding-together Word they and having-retuned whence  
 ἐξήεσαν, ἐσκόπουν ὅ τι δὴ καὶ ποιήσαιεν. ὁ δὲ  
 they-had-gone-out considered what — indeed also they-should-do — and  
 Παλαιολόγος “ὕμᾱς μὲν” φησιν “ἀπέρχεσθαι χρή· ἐγὼ  
 Palaiologos you indeed he-says to-go-away it-is-needful I  
 δὲ τάχιον ὑμᾶς καταλήψομαι τὰ προσόντα μοι χρήματα  
 and more-quickly you will-overtake the belonging to-me money  
 συνεπιφερόμενος”. ἔτυχε γὰρ πᾶσαν τὴν ἐν κινήτοις  
 bringing-along happened for all the in movables  
 αὐτοῦ θεωρουμένην περιουσίαν ἔχων ἐγκειμένην ἐκεῖσε. μὴ  
 his considered property having lying there not  
 μελλήσαντες οὖν εὐθὺς τῆς προκειμένης ὁδοιπορίας εἶχοντο·  
 having-delayed then at-once of-the lying-before journey they-held  
 ἐκεῖνος δὲ τοῖς τῶν μοναχῶν ὑποζυγίοις ἐπισάξας τὰ  
 he and on-the of-the monks beasts-of-burden having-loaded the  
 ἑαυτοῦ ὀπισθεν αὐτῶν ἤλαυνε. καὶ φθάσας σὺν τούτοις  
 own(-goods) behind them drove and having-reached with them  
 εἰς Τζουρουλόν (κώμη δὲ καὶ αὕτη Θρακική) διασώζεται  
 at Tzouroulos village and also this Thracian is-preserved  
 κακεῖσε τυχαίως τῷ ἐξ ἐπιταγῆς τοῦ δομεστίκου  
 and-there by-chance with-the by command of-the domestic  
 καταλαβόντι στρατεύματι ἠνώθησαν ἅπαντες. δέον οὖν  
 having-arrived army they-were-united all needful then  
 κρίναντες περὶ τῶν συμπεσόντων αὐτοῖς δηλώσαι  
 having-judged about the(-things) having-befallen them to-make-known  
 τῷ Δούκᾳ Ἰωάννῃ τῷ καίσαρι ἐν τοῖς ἰδίοις κτήμασι  
 — to-Doukas John the caesar in the own estates  
 τῶν Μωροβούνδου αὐλιζομένῳ ἀπεστάλκασι τὸν τὴν  
 of-the Moroboundos staying they-have-sent the(-man) the  
 ἀποστασίαν ἐκεῖνῳ μηνύσοντα. φθάσας δὲ ὁ τὴν  
 revolt to-him about-to-report having-arrived and the(-man) the



ἀγγελίαν ἐκείνην κομίζων περὶ δειλὴν ἑώραν ἔξω τῶν  
*news that bringing about twilight early outside of-the*  
 οὐδῶν τῆς αὐλίδος εἰστήκει τὸν καίσαρα ἀναζητῶν. ἰδὼν  
*threshold of-the lodging stood the caesar seeking having-seen*  
 δὲ τοῦτον ὁ ἔγγονος αὐτοῦ Ἰωάννης, νέος ἔτι ὢν καὶ  
*and him the grandson his John young still being and*  
 μήπω μεираκίον καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἀδιασπάρτως συνὼν τῷ  
*not-yet a-youth and because-of this inseparably being-with the*  
 καίσαρι, δρομαῖος εἴσεισι καὶ καθεύδοντα τοῦτον διυπνίσας  
*caesar running goes-in and sleeping him having-woken*  
 ἀπαγγέλλει τὴν ἀποστασίαν. ὁ δ' εὐθὺς πληγείς τῇ ἀκοῇ  
*reports the revolt he and at-once struck by-the report*  
 ραπίζει τὸν υἱὼνὸν κατὰ κόρρης καὶ μὴ τοιαῦτα ληρεῖν  
*slaps the grandson on temple and not such(-things) to-babble*  
 ἐπειπὼν ἀπώσατο. κακεῖνος μετὰ μικρὸν πάλιν εἰσελθὼν  
*having-said pushed-away and-he after a-little again having-come-in*  
 τὴν αὐτὴν ἀγγελίαν κομίζει προσθέμενος καὶ τὸν ἀπὸ  
*the same news brings having-added also the from*  
 τῶν Κομνηνῶν πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀποτοξευόμενον λόγον. εἶχε  
*the Komnenoi to him shot-off word had*  
 δὲ ὁ λόγος μεταξύ που καί τι ἀστείότατον τὴν  
*and the word between somewhere also something most-witty the*  
 τυραννίδα συναινιττόμενον ὥς “ἡμεῖς μὲν” φησιν “ὄψον  
*tyranny hinting-at that we indeed he-says dish*  
 μάλα καλὸν ἡτρεπίσαμεν καὶ καρυκείας οὐκ ἄτερ· σὺ  
*very fine have-prepared and of-seasoning not without you*  
 δὲ ἀλλ' εἰ βούλει τῆς εὐωχίας μεταλαχεῖν, τὴν ταχίστην  
*but but if you-wish of-the feast to-partake the swiftest(-way)*  
 ἤκειν τῆς πανδαισίας μεταληψόμενος”. ἀνακαθίσας οὖν  
*to-come of-the banquet about-to-partake having-sat-up then*  
 καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἀγκῶνος ἑαυτὸν ἐπερείσας εἰσαγαγεῖν  
*and on the right elbow himself having-propped to-bring-in*

τὸν ἐκέλευεν ἐλθόντα κελεύει. τοῦ δὲ πάντα τὰ  
*the(-man) from-there having-come he-orders he and all the(-things)*  
 κατὰ τοὺς Κομνηνοὺς διηγησαμένου, “φεῦ μοι” ὁ καῖσαρ  
*concerning the Komnenoi having-narrated alas me the caesar*  
 εἰπὼν εὐθὺς ἐπιβάλλει τὰς χεῖρας ταῖς ὄψεσιν· ἐπὶ μικρὸν  
*having-said at-once lays the hands on-the eyes for a-little*  
 δὲ καὶ τῆς ὑπῆνης περιδραξάμενος, οἶον ἐν τοσοῦτῳ  
*and also the beard having-grasped as in so-much*  
 λογισμοὺς πολλοὺς ἀνελίσσων, εἰς ἐν τούτῳ ἤρεισεν ἑαυτόν,  
*reasonings many turning-over on one this fixed himself*  
 συναποστατῆσαι κακείνον. εὐθὺς οὖν μετακαλεσάμενος τοὺς  
*to-revolt-with he-too at-once then having-summoned the*  
 ἵπποκόμους καὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἐπιβὰς τῆς πρὸς τοὺς  
*grooms and the horse having-mounted the to the*  
 Κομνηνοὺς φερούσης ἤψατο. καὶ Βυζαντίῳ δέ τινα καθ’  
*Komnenoi leading(-road) took and a-Byzantine too a-certain on*  
 ὁδὸν ἐντυχὼν χρυσοῦ βαλάντιον ἱκανὸν ἐπιφερομένῳ  
*road having-met of-gold purse considerable carrying*  
 καὶ πρὸς τὴν μεγαλόπολιν ἀπιόντι ἤρετο αὐτόν, τούτῳ  
*and to the great-city going-off he-asked him this*  
 δὴ τὸ Ὀμηρικόν, “τίς πόθεν εἰς ἀνδρῶν;” καὶ ἐπειδὴ  
*indeed the Homeric who whence are-you of-men and since*  
 παρ’ αὐτοῦ ἐμάνθανεν, ὅτι τε χρυσὸν πολλὸν ἐπιφέρειται  
*from him he-learned that both gold much he-carries*  
 ἀπὸ τινῶν εἰσπράξεων καὶ ὅτι πρὸς τὸν κοιτῶνα  
*from some revenues and that to the treasury*  
 τοῦτον διακομίζει, βιάζεται τοῦτον συγκαταλῦσαι αὐτῷ  
*it he-conveys he-forces him to-lodge-with him*  
 ὑπισχνούμενος ὥς ἅμα ἡμέρα, οὐπὲρ ἂν βούλοιτο,  
*promising that together-with day where — he-might-wish*  
 βαδιέται. τοῦ δὲ ἐνισταμένου καὶ βαρέως φέροντος τούτῳ  
*he-would-go he and resisting and grievously bearing this*

ὁ καῖσαρ σφοδρότερον ἐπετίθετο καὶ ἔπεισε λέγων,  
*the caesar more-vehemently pressed and persuaded(-him) saying*  
 ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος ἐπιτρόχαλος ἐν λόγοις καὶ δεινὸς ἐν  
*what-kind he fluent in words and clever in*  
 νοήμασι πειθῶ τε ἐν γλώττῃ φέρων ἥπερ Αἰσχίνης ἄλλος  
*thoughts persuasion and on tongue bearing as Aeschines another*  
 ἢ Δημοσθένης. συμπαραλαβὼν οὖν τὸν τοιοῦτον καταλύει  
*or Demosthenes having-taken-along then the such(-man) lodges*  
 ἐν τινι δωματίῳ καὶ παντοίως φιλοφρονησάμενος τραπέζης  
*in some little-room and in-every-way having-received-kindly of-table*  
 τε ἀξιώσας καὶ διαναπαύσας καλῶς παρακατέσχε  
*both having-deemed-worthy and having-rested(-him) well detained*  
 τὸν ἄνδρα. κατὰ τὸ περίορθρον δὲ ἤδη, ὅτε καὶ ὁ  
*the man at the dawn and already when also the*  
 ἥλιος τὸν ἀνατολικὸν ὀρίζοντα καταλαμβάνειν ἐπείγεται,  
*sun the eastern horizon to-reach hastens*  
 ὁ μὲν Βυζάντιος ἐπιθέμενος τὰς ἐφεστρίδας τοῖς ἵπποις  
*the indeed Byzantine having-put-on the saddle-cloths to-the horses*  
 εὐθὺς Βυζαντίδος ἐλαύνειν ἡπείγετο. τοῦτο δὲ ὁ καῖσαρ  
*straight to-Byzantium to-drive hastened this and the caesar*  
 θεασάμενος “ἕα” φησὶ “καὶ συμπορεύου μεθ’ ἡμῶν”.  
*having-beheld ha he-says and journey-with with us*  
 ὁ δὲ μὴθ’ ὅπου πορεύεται γινώσκων, παντάπασι δὲ  
*he and not where he-goes knowing altogether and*  
 καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν δι’ ἣν τῆς τοιαύτης φιλοφροσύνης  
*also the cause because-of which of-the such kindness*  
 ἡξίωται ἀγνοῶν πάλιν δυσανασχετῶν ἦν καὶ  
*he-has-been-deemed-worthy not-knowing again annoyed was and*  
 ὑπόπτως εἶχε πρὸς τὸν καῖσαρ καὶ τὰς φιλοφροσύνας τοῦ  
*suspiciously was toward the caesar and the kindness of-the*  
 καίσαρος. ὁ δὲ ἐπέκειτο ἔλκων αὐτόν· ὥς δ’ οὐχ ὑπήκουε,  
*caesar he and pressed-on dragging him when but not he-obeyed*

μεταβαλὼν τραχυτέροις πρὸς τοῦτον ἐκέχρητο ῥήμασιν, εἰ  
*having-changed harsher toward him used words if*  
 μὴ τὸ προσταττόμενον ποιήσειε. μὴ ὑπακούοντος δὲ  
*not the(-tbing) ordered he-should-do not obeying and*  
 προστάττει τὰ μὲν προσόντα αὐτῷ ἅπαντα τοῖς ἰδίοις  
*orders the indeed possessions his all with-the own*  
 ἐνωθῆναι ὑποζυγίοις καὶ τὴν προκειμένην πορεύεσθαι, ἐκεῖνῳ  
*to-be-joined beasts-of-burden and the lying-before to-go to-him*  
 δὲ ἄδειαν δίδωσιν ὅπῃ βούλοιτο ἀπιέναι. ὁ δὲ τὴν μὲν  
*and leave gives wherever he-might-wish to-go-away he and the indeed*  
 εἰς τὰ βασιλεια εἴσοδον παντελῶς ἀπαγορεύσας, ἅτε δεδιὼς  
*into the palace entry altogether having-renounced as fearing*  
 μὴ καὶ ἔμφρουρος γένηται διὰ τὸ κεναῖς χερσὶν  
*lest also in-custody he-should-become because-of the with-empty hands*  
 τοῖς ἀμφὶ τὸν βασιλικὸν κοιτῶνα ὀφθῆναι, παλινδρομῆσαι  
*to-those about the imperial treasury to-be-seen to-run-back*  
 δὲ μὴ θέλων διὰ τὴν τοῖς πράγμασιν ἐπισπεσοῦσαν  
*and not wishing because-of the to-the affairs having-befallen*  
 ἀκαταστασίαν καὶ σύγχυσιν ἐκ τῆς ἀνακυψάσης ἤδη  
*instability and confusion from the having-emerged already*  
 τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ ἀποστασίας, καὶ μὴ βυολόμενος συνέπιετο  
*— of-Komnenos revolt even not wishing followed*  
 τῷ καίσαρι. γίνεται δέ τι κατὰ συντυχίαν τοιοῦτον.  
*the caesar happens and something by chance such*  
 ἀπερχόμενος ὁ καῖσαρ περιέτυχε Τούρκοις ἄρτι διαπερῶσι  
*going-away the caesar met Turks just crossing*  
 τὸν Εὐρὸν καλούμενον ποταμόν. ἀνασειράσας οὖν τὸν  
*the Euros called river having-reined-in then the*  
 χαλινὸν ἐπυνθάνετο ὅθεν καὶ ὅποι πορεύονται, ἅμα  
*bridle he-inquired whence and whither they-go at-the-same-time*  
 δὲ καὶ ὑποσχνεῖτο χρήματά τε πολλὰ δώσειν καὶ παντοίας  
*and also be-promised money both much to-give and all-kinds-of*

θεραπείας ἀξιῶσαι, εἰ πρὸς τὸν Κομνηνὸν σὺν αὐτῷ  
*attention to-deem-worthy if to — Komnenos with him*  
 φοιτήσουσι. συντίθενται οὖν τηνικαῦτα. καὶ ὃς ὄρκον ἐκ  
*they-would-go they-agree then at-that-time and he oath from*  
 τῶν ἡγεμόνων αὐτῶν ἀπαιτεῖ ἐμπεδῶσαι τὰς συνθήκας  
*the leaders their demands to-confirm the agreements*  
 διὰ τούτου βουλόμενος. οἱ δ' εὐθὺς κατὰ τὸ εἰθισμένον  
*through this wishing they and at-once according-to the custom*  
 αὐτοῖς τὸν ὄρκον ἐπλήρουν συμμαχῆσαι τῷ Κομνηνῷ μάλα  
*their the oath fulfilled to-fight-alongside — Komnenos very*  
 προθύμως διαβεβαιούμενοι. ἅπεισι τοίνυν συμπαραλαβὼν  
*eagerly affirming goes-away therefore having-taken-along*  
 καὶ τοὺς Τούρκους πρὸς τοὺς Κομνηνοὺς. οἱ δὲ πόρρω  
*also the Turks to the Komnenoi they and from-afar*  
 τοῦτον θεασάμενοι καὶ τὴν καινὴν ἄγρην ὑπεραγάμενοι καὶ  
*him having-beheld and the new catch exceedingly-admiring and*  
 μάλιστα τούτων οὐμὸς πατὴρ Ἀλέξιος οὐκ εἶχον ὑφ' ἡδονῆς  
*most of-them my father Alexios not had from pleasure*  
 ὃ τι καὶ δράσαιεν. προὔπαντήσας δὲ καὶ περιπλακέϊς  
*what — also they-might-do having-gone-to-meet and also having-embraced*  
 τὸν καίσαρα κατησπάζετο. τί τὸ ἐντεῦθεν; τῆς πρὸς  
*the caesar he-kissed(-him) what the thereupon of-the to*  
 τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἀπαγούσης ἦψαντο τοῦ καίσαρος τοῦτο  
*the reigning(-city) leading(-road) took the caesar this*  
 ὑποθεμένου καὶ ἐπισπεύσαντος. ἅπαντες οὖν οἱ κατὰ  
*having-suggested and having-urged all then the(-men) in*  
 τὰς κωμοπόλεις αὐτόμολοι προσερχόμενοι ἐφήμιζον τοῦτον  
*the towns deserts coming proclaimed him*  
 βασιλέα πλὴν τῶν κατὰ τὴν Ὀρεστιάδα. ἐκείνοι γὰρ  
*emperor except of-those in — Orestias they for*  
 ἐγκοτοῦντες πάλαι αὐτῷ διὰ τὴν τοῦ Βρυεννίου  
*bearing-a-grudge long-ago against-him because-of the — of-Bryennios*

κατάσχεσιν τῷ μέρει τοῦ Βοτανειάτου προσέκειντο.  
 capture to-the side — of-Botaneiates were-attached  
 καταλαβόντες οὖν τὸν Ἀθύραν κάκεισε διαναπαυσάμενοι  
 having-reached then — Athyras and-there having-rested  
 τὴν μετ' αὐτὴν ἐκείθεν ἀπάραντες τὰ Σχιζὰ κατέλαβον  
 the(-day) after it from-there having-set-out the Schiza reached  
 (κώμη δὲ καὶ τοῦτο Θρακική) κέῃθι τὸν χάρακα πηξάμενοι.  
 village and also this Thracian there the palisade having-fixed

## XXVII · ALEXIOS PROCLAIMED

*The army is divided between Isaac and Alexios. The caesar John Doukas, his grandsons Michael and John, and their brother-in-law George Palaiologos work for Alexios, promising the officers and the whole army rewards. Alexios defers to Isaac, though the army wants only him. Isaac presses the red sandal on his brother, recalling a priestly figure who once prophesied Alexios' reign in David's words and vanished. The Doukai lead the acclamation, the army takes it up, and the divided factions become one.*

Μετέωροι δὲ ἦσαν ἅπαντες караδοκοῦντες τὸ μέλλον  
 in-suspense and were all awaiting the future  
 καὶ τὸν ἐλπίζομενον ἀναρρηθῆναι βασιλέα ἐπιποθοῦντες  
 and the(-man) expected to-be-proclaimed emperor longing  
 ἰδεῖν. οἱ πλείους δὲ Ἀλεξίῳ τὸ κράτος ἐπηύχοντο,  
 to-see the most and for-Alexios the sovereignty prayed  
 ἀλλ' οὐδ' οἱ περὶ τὸν Ἰσαάκιον ἀναπεπτώκεσαν,  
 but not-even the(-men) around — Isaac had-been-slack  
 ὥς ἐνόν, ἅπαντας μεταχειριζόμενοι. στάσις δὲ ἦν  
 as being-possible all handling faction and was  
 ἀσύμβατος κατὰ τὸ φαινόμενον τῶν μὲν τοῦτον,  
 irreconcilable according-to the appearance some indeed him

τῶν δ' ἐκείνον οἰακοστρόφον τῆς βασιλικῆς περιωπῆς  
*others and that(-one) helmsman of-the imperial eminence*  
 ἱμειρομένων γενέσθαι. παρήσαν δὲ τότε καὶ οἱ ἐξ  
*longing to-become were-present and then also the(-men) by*  
 ἀγχιστείας τῷ Ἀλεξίῳ προσήκοντες, ὁ ἄνωθεν μνημονευθεὶς  
*affinity — to-Alexios related the above mentioned*  
 καῖσαρ Ἰωάννης ὁ Δούκας, ἀνὴρ καὶ βουλευσάσθαι  
*caesar John the Doukas man both to-counsel*  
 ἱκανὸς καὶ καταπράξασθαι περιδέξιος, ὃν καὶ γὰρ ἐπ'  
*able and to-accomplish dexterous whom I-too for*  
 ὀλίγον φθάσασα τεθέαμαι, καὶ Μιχαὴλ καὶ Ἰωάννης  
*a-little having-been-in-time have-beheld and Michael and John*  
 οἱ τούτου ἔγγονοι, ναὶ μὴν καὶ ὁ τούτων ἐπ' ἀδελφῇ  
*the his grandsons yes indeed and the their through sister*  
 γαμβρὸς Γεώργιος ὁ Παλαιολόγος, συμπαρόντες αὐτοῖς  
*in-law George the Palaiologos being-present with-them*  
 καὶ ἀγωνιῶντες καὶ τὰς ἀπάντων πρὸς τὸ αὐτοῖς βουλευτὸν  
*and struggling and the of-all to the to-them wished*  
 διαστρέφοντες γνώμας καὶ πάντα κάλων, ὃ φασι, κινεῦντες  
*turning minds and every rope as they-say moving*  
 καὶ πᾶσαν μηχανὴν εὐφυῶς τεχναζόμενοι, ὥστε τὸν  
*and every device cleverly contriving so-that —*  
 Ἀλέξιον ἀναρρηθῆναι. τοιγαροῦν καὶ τὰς ἀπάντων πρὸς  
*Alexios to-be-proclaimed accordingly also the of-all to*  
 τὸ αὐτοῖς βουλευτὸν μετέφερον γνώμας. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ  
*the to-them wished they-transferred minds thence surely also*  
 τοὺς τῷ Ἰσαακίῳ προσανέχοντας κατὰ βραχὺ ἐλαττοῦσθαι  
*those — to-Isaac adhering by little to-be-diminished*  
 συνέβαινε. ὅπου γὰρ Ἰωάννης ὁ καῖσαρ ἦν, οὐδεὶς τῶν  
*it-happened where for John the caesar was no-one of-the*  
 ἀπάντων ἀντέχειν ἡδύνατο. ἦν γὰρ ἀπαράμιλλος οὗτος  
*all to-resist could was for matchless be*

κατά τε φρονήματος ὄγκον καὶ σώματος μέγεθος καὶ  
*in both of-spirit weight and of-body size and*  
 μορφήν τυράννω προσήκουσαν. τί μὲν οὐκ ἔπραττον οἱ  
*form to-tyrant befitting what indeed not did the*  
 Δοῦκαι; τί δὲ οὐκ ἔλεγον; τί δὲ οὐχ ὑπισχνοῦντο ἀγαθὸν  
*Doukai what and not said what and not did-they-promise good*  
 ἔσσεσθαι τοῖς τε λογάσι καὶ τῷ κοινῷ τοῦ στρατοῦ,  
*to-be to-the both picked-men and to-the common(-body) of-the army*  
 εἰ ἐπὶ τὴν βασιλείον περιωπὴν Ἀλέξιος ἀναβαίη; φάσκοντες  
*if to the imperial eminence Alexios should-ascend saying*  
 ὥς “μεγίσταις ὑμᾶς δωρεαῖς καὶ τιμαῖς ἀνταμείβεται, ὥς  
*that with-greatest you gifts and honors he-will-repay as*  
 ἐκάστω προσήκει καὶ οὐχ ὥς ἔτυχε, καθάπερ οἱ ἀμαθεῖς  
*to-each is-fitting and not as it-happened as the ignorant*  
 καὶ ἄπειροι τῶν ἡγεμόνων, διὰ τὸ καὶ στρατοπεδάρχης  
*and inexperienced of-the leaders because-of the both camp-commander*  
 ὑμῶν χρόνον ἤδη συχνὸν χρηματίσαι καὶ μέγας τῆς  
*your time already long to-have-been and grand of-the*  
 ἐσπέρας δομέστικος καὶ κοινῶν ἀλῶν ὑμῖν μετασχεῖν  
*west domestic and of-common salt with-you to-have-shared*  
 ἐν λόχοις τε καὶ τοῖς κατασυστάδην πολέμοις γενναίως  
*in ambushes both and the hand-to-hand wars nobly*  
 ὑμῖν συναγωνιζόμενος, μὴ σαρκῶν, μὴ μελῶν, μηδὲ τῆς  
*with-you fighting-alongside not flesh not limbs nor the*  
 ψυχῆς αὐτῆς ὑπὲρ τῆς ὑμῶν φεισάμενος σωτηρίας, ὅρη  
*soul itself for the your having-spared safety mountains*  
 τε καὶ πεδιάδας μεθ’ ὑμῶν πολλάκις διελθών, τὰς ἐκ  
*both and plains with you often having-gone-through the from*  
 τῶν μόθων κακοπαθείας ἐπιστάμενος καὶ ἀκριβῶς ἅπαντας  
*the battles hardships knowing and exactly all*  
 ὁμοῦ καὶ καθ’ ἓνα γινώσκων, Ἀρηΐφίλος τε ὦν καὶ τοὺς  
*together and one-by one knowing dear-to-Ares both being and the*



γενναίους τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐξόχως ποθῶν". ἀλλὰ ταῦτα  
noble of-the soldiers exceedingly longing-for but these(-things)  
μὲν οἱ Δοῦκαι· ὁ δέ γε Ἀλέξιος πολλῆς τιμῆς ἡξίου  
indeed the Doukai — and at-least Alexios of-much honor deemed-worthy  
τὸν Ἰσαάκιον ἐν πᾶσιν αὐτὸν προτιμώμενος εἴτε διὰ  
— Isaac in all(-things) him preferring whether because-of  
τὸ φίλτρον τῆς ἀδελφότητος ἢ καὶ μᾶλλον, ὃ καὶ  
the love of-the brotherhood or also rather which also  
λεκτέον, ἐπειδὴ ἡ μὲν στρατιὰ ξύμπασα πρὸς τοῦτον  
must-be-said since the indeed army whole to him  
ξυνέρρει καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ βασιλείαν κατέσπενδε, πρὸς δὲ  
flowed-together and the his reign pressed-for to but  
τὸν Ἰσαάκιον οὐδ' ὅπως οἰοῦν ἐπεστρέφετο, ἔχων ἐκεῖθεν  
— Isaac not-even in-any-way turned having thence  
τὸ κράτος καὶ τὴν ἰσχὺν καὶ κατ' ἐλπίδας αὐτῷ τὸ  
the sovereignty and the strength and according-to hopes for-him the  
πράγμα γινόμενον ὁρῶν παρεμυθεῖτο τὸν ἀδελφὸν τῇ  
matter happening seeing he-constoled the brother with-the  
πρὸς τὴν βασιλείαν ὑποποιήσει πρᾶγμα οὐδὲν ἐκ τούτων  
toward the empire pretense matter nothing from these  
πάσχων ἀβούλητον, εἰ αὐτὸς μὲν παρὰ τῆς στρατιᾶς  
suffering unwanted if he indeed by the army  
ἀπάσης εἰς τοὺς ὑπερηφάνους ἄξοντας ἀναρπάζοιτο, ὃ  
whole to the haughty axles should-be-snatched-up he  
δὲ λόγοις ὑποσαίνει τὸν ἀδελφὸν καὶ πρόσχημα ποιῶτο  
and with-words should-fawn-on the brother and pretext should-make  
τὴν τοῦ κράτους δῆθεν ἐκχώρησιν. τοῦ καιροῦ γοῦν  
the of-the sovereignty supposedly yielding the time at-any-rate  
οὕτω τριβομένου συνείλετο τὸ ὀπλιτικὸν ἅπαν περὶ  
thus being-spent had-gathered the armed(-body) all about  
τὴν σκηνὴν μετέωροι ὄντες καὶ τὴν ἰδίαν ἕκαστος  
the tent in-suspense being and the own each

ἐπιθυμίαν εὐχόμενος τελεσθῆναι. ἀναστὰς δὲ ὁ Ἰσαάκιος  
*desire praying to-be-fulfilled having-stood-up and — Isaac*  
 καὶ λαβὼν τὸ φοινικοβαφὲς πέδιλον ὑποδιδύσκειν τὸν  
*and having-taken the purple-dyed sandal to-put-on the*  
 ἀδελφὸν ἐπειρᾶτο· ὡς δὲ ἐκεῖνος πολλάκις ἀνένευεν, “ἔα”  
*brother tried when and he often refused let-be*  
 φησί, “διὰ σοῦ ὁ θεὸς τὸ γένος ἡμῶν ἀνακαλέσασθαι  
*he-says through you — God the family our to-recall*  
 βούλεται”. ἀναμνήσας καὶ ὧν ὁ φανείς ποτε περὶ  
*wishes having-reminded also of-what the(-man) having-appeared once near*  
 που τὰ Καρπιανοῦ λεγόμενα ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων  
*somewhere the(-place) of-Karpianos called from the palace*  
 οἴκαδε ἀπερχομένων ἀμφοτέρων τῶν ἀδελφῶν πρὸς  
*homeward going-away both the brothers to*  
 αὐτὸν ἀπεφοίβασεν. ἐκεῖσε γὰρ γενομένοις ἀνὴρ τις  
*him prophesied there for having-come man a-certain*  
 τούτοις ὑπνητηκῶς εἶτε τῶν κρειττόνων τις ὢν  
*them having-met whether of-the higher(-beings) some(-one) being*  
 ἢ ἄλλως ἄνθρωπος τῶν μελλόντων, ὡς ἀληθῶς εἰπεῖν,  
*or otherwise a-man of-the future(-things) as truly to-say*  
 διορατικώτατος· ἐδόκει δ’ οὖν ἱερεὺς τὸ φαινόμενον ἀπὸ  
*most-clear-sighted seemed but then priest in-the appearance from*  
 γυμνῆς τῆς κεφαλῆς προσερχόμενος, πολὺς τὴν τρίχα, τὸ  
*bare the head approaching gray in-the hair in-the*  
 γένειον λάσιος· ἐπιλαμβάνεται τῆς κνήμης τοῦ Ἀλεξίου καὶ  
*beard shaggy takes-hold-of the leg — of-Alexios and*  
 πρὸς ἑαυτὸν πεζὸς ὢν ἱππότην ἐφελκυσάμενος πρὸς τὸ οὖς  
*to himself on-foot being horseman having-drawn to the ear*  
 τοῦτο δὴ τὸ τῆς Δαυιτικῆς ἀνεφθέγγατο λύρας “ἔντειναι  
*this indeed the of-the Davidic uttered of-lyre bend(-the-bow)*  
 καὶ κατευοδοῦ καὶ βασιλευε ἔνεκεν ἀληθείας καὶ πραότητος  
*and prosper and reign because-of truth and meekness*

καὶ δικαιοσύνης” καὶ προσεῖπε τῷ λόγῳ “αὐτοκράτορ  
*and justice and he-added to-the word autocrat*  
 Ἀλέξιε”. ταῦτα εἰπὼν καὶ οἷον προμαντευσάμενος  
*Alexios these(-things) having-said and as-if having-prophesied*  
 ἀφανῆς ὤχετο. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἦν τῷ Ἀλεξίῳ ἀλώσιμος,  
*invisible departed not for he-was — for-Alexios catchable*  
 καίτοι πανταχόσε περιπαπαίνοντι, εἴ που καὶ τοῦτον  
*although everywhere looking-round if somewhere also him*  
 θεάσαιτο, καὶ δὴ καὶ ὄλους λύσαντι χαλινούς καὶ τοῦτον  
*he-might-behold and indeed also full having-loosed reins and him*  
 μεταδιώκοντι, εἴ που καὶ καταλάβοιτο, ἵνα τίς τε  
*pursuing if somewhere also he-might-overtake(-him) that who both*  
 εἴη καὶ ὁπόθεν ἀκριβέστερον μάθοι. ἀλλ’ ὅμως  
*he-might-be and whence more-exactly he-might-learn but nevertheless*  
 ἀφανέστατον ἦν τὸ θεαθέν. ἐκεῖθεν δὲ ὑποστρέψαντα  
*most-invisible was the(-thing) beheld from-there and having-retuned*  
 ὁ ἀδελφὸς Ἰσαάκιος πολλὰ τε περὶ τοῦ φανέντος  
*the brother Isaac many(-things) both about the(-one) having-appeared*  
 ἐξεπυνθάνετο καὶ τὸ ἀπόρρητον ἠξίου παραγυμνούν· ὥς δὲ  
*inquired and the secret asked to-lay-bare when and*  
 ἐνέκειτο ἀπαιτῶν ὁ Ἰσαάκιος, ὁ Ἀλέξιος τὸ ἐντεῦθεν τὰ  
*pressed demanding — Isaac — Alexios for-the thereupon the*  
 πρῶτα μὲν ἀναβαλλομένῳ ἐώκει, μετὰ ταῦτα δὲ καὶ  
*first(-things) indeed postponing seemed after these(-things) and also*  
 τὸ λαληθὲν πρὸς αὐτὸν μυστικῶς ἐξωρχεῖτο. αὐτὸς  
*the(-thing) spoken to him secretly divulged he*  
 μὲν τοῖς ἔξωθεν λόγοις καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν πλάσμα  
*indeed with-the outward words and to the brother fabrication*  
 τὸ λεχθὲν ἐπεξηγούμενος καὶ φενάκην εἶναι ἐφθέγγετο,  
*the(-thing) said explaining and imposture to-be uttered*  
 κατὰ νοῦν δὲ ἔλκων τὸν φανέντα ἐκείνῳ ἱεροπρεπῇ  
*in mind but drawing the(-one) having-appeared to-him priestly*

ἄνδρα εἰς τὸν τῆς βροντῆς υἱὸν θεολόγον παρείκαξεν.  
*man to the of-the thunder son theologian likened*  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ τοῦ γέροντος προμαντεύματα καὶ ἅπερ  
*since and the(-things) of-the old-man prophecies and what*  
 εἶπεν ἐκεῖνος ἐν λόγοις ὁ Ἰσαάκιος ἐν τοῖς πράγμασιν  
*said he in words — Isaac in the deeds*  
 ἐθεᾶτο, ἐνίστατό τε ἀνδρικώτερον αὐτὸν βιαζόμενος καὶ  
*beheld he-insisted both more-manfully him forcing and*  
 τὸ ἐρυθροβαφὲς ἐνδιδύσκει ὑπόδημα, καὶ μᾶλλον ὁρῶν  
*the red-dyed puts-on shoe and more seeing*  
 τοῦ ὀπλιτικοῦ παντὸς τὴν διάπυρον ἐπιθυμίαν πρὸς τὸν  
*of-the armed(-body) whole the fiery desire toward —*  
 Ἀλέξιον. καὶ τὸ ἐντεῦθεν ἐξῆρχον οἱ Δοῦκαι τῆς εὐφημίας  
*Alexios and the thereupon began the Doukai the acclamation*  
 τά τε ἄλλα τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ οὗτοι ἀποδεχόμενοι καὶ  
*the both other(-things) the man also they approving and*  
 διότι ἡ τούτων προσγενὴς Εἰρήνη καὶ μήτηρ ἐμὴ κατὰ  
*because the their kinswoman Irene and mother my according-to*  
 νόμους συνήπτο τῷ ἐμῷ πατρί. σύναμα δὲ τούτοις καὶ  
*laws had-been-joined to-the my father together and with-these also*  
 οἱ ἐκ τοῦ αἵματος συμφυεῖς αὐτῶν ἀναβλαστήσαντες  
*the(-men) from the blood kindred their having-sprung*  
 τὸ αὐτὸ προθύμως ἐποιοῦν. τὸ δέ γε λοιπὸν τοῦ  
*the same eagerly did the and at-least rest of-the*  
 στρατοῦ διαδεξάμενον τὴν εὐφημίαν σχεδὸν ἐς αὐτὸν τὸν  
*army having-taken-up the acclamation almost to itself the*  
 οὐρανὸν ἀνέπεμπον τὰς φωνάς. καὶ ἦν ἰδεῖν καινόν  
*heaven sent-up the voices and it-was to-see new*  
 τι τηνικαῦτα συμβαῖνον, τοὺς πρότερον διηρημένους  
*something then happening the(-men) earlier divided*  
 τὰς γνώμας καὶ θάνατον ἐλέσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ τῆς σφῶν  
*in-the minds and death to-choose rather than of-the their*

ἐπιθυμίας ἀποτυχεῖν βουλομένους ὁμογνώμονας ἐν μιᾷ  
 desire to-fail wishing like-minded in one  
 καιροῦ ῥοπῇ γεγονότας καὶ τοσοῦτον, ὥς μηδ' εἴ ποτε  
 of-time moment having-become and so-much that not-even if ever  
 στάσις μεταξὺ τούτων ὅλως ἦν ἐπιγινώσκεισθαι.  
 faction between them at-all was to-be-recognized

XXVIII · MELISSENOΣ AND MANGANES

*Nikephoros Melissenos, proclaimed emperor at Damalis, proposes dividing the empire, the west to the Komnenoi and Asia to himself. They offer him the rank of caesar and Thessalonike and promise a chrysobull, but their secretary Manganes delays it for days with excuses. The Komnenoi move to Aretai near the city, a high and pleasant place where Romanos Diogenes built a residence, and probe the walls with archers and armored men.*

Ἐν ὅσῳ ταῦτα ἐτελείτο, φήμη τις περὶ τοῦ  
 in as-long-as these(-things) were-being-done rumor a-certain about —  
 Μελισσηνοῦ διέτρεχε φθάσαι τοῦτον μηνύουσα περὶ  
 Melissenos ran-through to-have-already him reporting near  
 τὴν Δάμαλιν μεθ' ἱκανῆς στρατιᾶς εὐφημεισθαί τε ὥς  
 — Damalis with considerable army to-be-acclaimed both as  
 βασιλέα ἤδη καὶ ἀλουργὰ ἡμφιεσμένον· οἱ δὲ τῷ  
 emperor already and purple(-robes) having-put-on they and the(-thing)  
 λεγομένῳ πιστεύειν τέως οὐκ εἶχον. τὰ δὲ κατ'  
 said to-believe for-the-time not could the(-things) and concerning  
 αὐτοὺς ἀκεῖνος μαθὼν πρέσβεις ταχὺ πρὸς αὐτοὺς  
 them he-too having-learned envoys quickly to them  
 ἐξαπέστειλεν. οἱ καὶ καταλαβόντες ἤδη τὰς πρὸς αὐτοὺς  
 sent-off they also having-arrived already the to them  
 γραφὰς ἐνεχείριζον οὕτωςί πως διεξιούσας “ὁ θεὸς με  
 letters handed thus somehow recounting — God me

μέχρι Δαμάλεως μετὰ τῆς ὑπ' ἐμὲ στρατιᾶς ἀσυνῇ  
*as-far-as Damalis with the under me army unbarned*  
 διεσώσατο. μεμάθηκα δὲ καὶ τὰ ὑμῖν ξυμπεσόντα καὶ  
*has-preserved I-have-learned and also the(-things) to-you having-befallen and*  
 ὡς τῆς κακονοίας τῶν δούλων ἐκείνων καὶ τῶν δεινῶν  
*how from-the malice of-the slaves those and the dreadful*  
 καθ' ὑμῶν ἐπιχειρημάτων θεοῦ προμηθεΐα ῥυσθέντες  
*against you attempts by-God's providence having-been-delivered*  
 τῆς ἑαυτῶν πεφροντίκατε σωτηρίας. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ γὰρ τῇ  
*for-the own you-have-taken-thought safety since and I-too by-the*  
 μὲν σχέσει θεοῦ νεύσει ἐξ ἀγχιστείας ὑμῖν προσωκείωμαι,  
*indeed relationship by-God's nod by affinity to-you am-related*  
 τῇ δὲ γνώμῃ καὶ τῇ πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἀρρήκτῳ διαθέσει  
*by-the and mind and by-the toward you unbreakable disposition*  
 οὐδενὸς τῶν καθ' αἷμα προσηκόντων ὑμῖν ἀποδέω, ὡς  
*to-none of-the by blood related to-you am-inferior as*  
 ὁ τὰ πάντα κρίνων οἶδε θεός, δέον ἡμᾶς κοινῶς  
*the the all judging knows God it-being-needful us in-common*  
 σκοπήσαντας περιποιήσασθαι ἑαυτοῖς τὸ ἀσφαλές τε καὶ  
*having-considered to-secure for-ourselves the security both and*  
 ἀκατάσειστον, ὅπως μὴ παντὶ ἀνέμῳ μεταφερώμεθα, ἀλλὰ  
*firmness so-that not by-every wind we-be-carried-about but*  
 καλῶς τὰ τῆς βασιλείας ἰθύνοντες ἐπ' ἀσφαλοῦς  
*well the(-things) of-the empire directing on secure*  
 βαίνωμεν τῆς κρηπίδος. τοῦτο δὲ πάντως ἡμῖν ἐσέεται,  
*we-may-walk the foundation this and surely for-us will-be*  
 εἰ θεοῦ νεύσει τῆς πόλεως παρ' ὑμῶν ἐαλωκυίας  
*if by-God's nod the city by you having-been-captured*  
 ὑμεῖς μὲν τὰ τῆς ἐσπέρας διεξάγοιτε πράγματα  
*you indeed the(-things) of-the west should-manage affairs*  
 θατέρου ὑμῶν ἀναρρηθέντος, ἐμοὶ δὲ τὰ τῆς  
*one-of-two of-you having-been-proclaimed to-me and the(-things) —*

Ἀσίας ἀποκληρωθῆναι ἐκχωρήσοιτε στεφνηφοροῦντι καὶ  
*of-Asia to-be-allotted you-would-concede wearing-a-crown and*  
 ἀλουργὰ περιβεβλημένῳ καὶ ἀναγορευομένῳ, ὥς ἔθος  
*purple(-robes) having-been-clad and being-proclaimed as custom*  
 τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν ἐστι, σὺν τῷ ἀναρρηθέντι ἐξ ὑμῶν,  
*for-the emperors is with the(-one) proclaimed from you*  
 ὥστε κοινὴν τὴν ἡμῶν εὐφημίαν γίνεσθαι, κὰν οἱ τόποι  
*so-that common the our acclamation to-become even-if the places*  
 καὶ τὰ πράγματα ἡμῖν ἀπομεμέρισται, τὴν τε γνώμην  
*and the affairs for-us have-been-divided the both mind*  
 μίαν καὶ τὴν αὐτὴν εἶναι. καὶ οὕτως ἡμῶν ἐχόντων  
*one and the same to-be and thus us being*  
 ἀστασίαστα δι' ἀμφοῖν διεξάγοιτο ἂν τὰ τῆς  
*without-faction through both would-be-managed — the(-things) of-the*  
 βασιλείας.” ταῦτα οἱ πρέσβεις ἀπαγγείλαντες ἀπόκρισιν  
*empire these(-things) the envoys having-reported answer*  
 μὲν αὐτοτελῇ τηνικαῦτα οὐκ ἐδέξαντο· τῇ δὲ μετ'  
*indeed complete then not received on-the(-day) and after*  
 αὐτὴν μετακαλεσάμενοι τούτους διὰ πολλῶν τὸ  
*it having-summoned them through many(-arguments) the*  
 ἀδύνατον τῶν παρὰ τοῦ Μελισσηνοῦ μηνυθέντων  
*impossibility of-the(-things) from — Melissenos reported*  
 ἐδείκνυν· τὰ δέ γε δοκοῦντα τούτοις ἐς νέωτα  
*showed the(-things) and at-least seeming(-good) to-them for tomorrow*  
 γνωρίσαι αὐτοῖς ἐπηγγέλλοντο διὰ Γεωργίου τοῦ  
*to-make-known to-them they-promised through George the*  
 καλουμένου Μαγγάνη, ᾧ καὶ τὴν αὐτῶν θεραπείαν  
*called Manganes to-whom also the their care*  
 ἀνέθεντο. τούτων οὕτω γινομένων οὐδὲ τῆς πολιορκίας  
*they-had-entrusted these thus happening not-even the siege*  
 κατερραθύμουν παντάπασιν, ἀλλὰ δι' ἀκροβολισμῶν,  
*they-neglected altogether but through skirmishes*

ὥς ἐνόν, τῶν τειχῶν ἀπεπειρώοντο τῆς πόλεως. τῇ  
*as being-possible of-the walls they-made-trial of-the city on-the*  
 δὲ μετ' αὐτὴν μετακαλεσάμενοι τούτους τὰ αὐτοῖς εἶπον  
*and after it having-summoned them the to-them they-told*  
 δοκοῦντα. τὰ δὲ ἦν τιμηθῆναι τὸν Μελισσηνὸν τῷ τοῦ  
*seeming(-good) it and was to-be-honored — Melissenos with-the of-the*  
 καίσαρος ἀξιώματι καὶ ταινίας ἀξιοθῆναι καὶ εὐφημίας  
*caesar dignity and of-fillet to-be-deemed-worthy and of-acclamation*  
 καὶ τῶν ἄλλων, ὅσα τῷ τοιούτῳ προσήκει ἀξιώματι,  
*and of-the others as-many-as to-the such befit dignity*  
 δοθῆναι δέ οἱ καὶ τὴν Θετταλοῦ μεγίστην πόλιν, ἐν  
*to-be-given and to-him also the of-(the)-Thessalian greatest city in*  
 ἣ καὶ ὁ ἐπ' ὀνόματι τοῦ μεγαλομάρτυρος Δημητρίου  
*which also the in name of-the great-martyr Demetrios*  
 περικαλλὲς ναὸς ᾠκοδόμηται, ὅπου καὶ τὸ μύρον ἐκ τῆς  
*very-beautiful temple has-been-built where also the myrrh from the*  
 ἐκείνου τιμίας σοροῦ βλύζον ἀεὶ μεγίστας ἰάσεις τοῖς  
*his precious coffin bubbling always greatest healings to-those*  
 μετὰ πίστεως προσιοῦσι παρέχει. οἱ δὲ δυσχεραίνοντες  
*with faith approaching furnishes they and being-displeased*  
 ἐπὶ τούτοις, ἐπεὶ ἐφ' οἷς μὲν ἔλεγον οὐκ εἰσηκούοντο,  
*at these since about what indeed they-spoke not they-were-heard*  
 ἐώρων δὲ πολλὴν τὴν κατὰ τῆς πόλεως τοῦ ἀποστάτου  
*they-saw and great the against the city of-the rebel*  
 παρασκευὴν καὶ παμπληθῆ τὴν ὑπ' αὐτὸν στρατιὰν οὖσαν  
*preparation and very-numerous the under him army being*  
 καὶ τὸν καιρὸν ἤδη αὐτοῖς ἀποστενούμενον, δεδιότες  
*and the time already for-them narrowing fearing*  
 μὴ τῆς πόλεως ἀλόουσης τεθαρρηκότες οἱ Κομνηνοὶ  
*lest the city having-been-taken having-taken-courage the Komnenoi*  
 οὐδ' ἄπερ νῦν ὑπισχνοῦνται θελήσωσι περατώσαι διὰ  
*not-even what now they-promise should-wish to-fulfill through*



χρυσοβούλλου λόγου ταῦτα γενέσθαι ἐγγράφως δι'  
*chrysobull word these(-things) to-happen in-writing through*  
 ἐρυθρῶν βεβαιωθέντος γραμμάτων ἡτοῦντο. κατανεύει  
*red confirmed letters they-asked consents*  
 πρὸς τοῦτο ὁ Ἀλέξιος ὁ ἀρτιφανῆς βασιλεὺς καὶ  
*to this — Alexios the newly-appeared emperor and*  
 μετακαλεσάμενος εὐθὺς Γεώργιον τὸν Μαγγάνην, ὃς καὶ  
*having-summoned at-once George the Manganes who also*  
 ὑπογραφεὺς αὐτῷ ἐχρημάτιζεν, ἀνατίθεται τούτῳ τὴν τοῦ  
*secretary to-him served entrusts to-him the of-the*  
 χρυσοβούλλου γραφὴν. ὁ δ' ἐπὶ τρισὶν ἡμέραις ὑπερετίθετο  
*chrysobull writing he and for three days delayed*  
 ἄλλοτε ἄλλας αἰτίας συνείρων, ποτὲ μὲν λέγων, ὥς  
*at-one-time other causes stringing-together at-times indeed saying that*  
 ἄρα κατάκοπος γεγὼς κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν ὅλην τῆς  
*after-all exhausted having-become during the day whole in-the*  
 νυκτὸς μὴ δύνασθαι γραφὴν ξυντελέσαι, ἄλλοτε δ' ὅτι  
*night not to-be-able writing to-complete at-another-time and that*  
 τὰ γεγραμμένα νυκτὸς σπινθήρ ἐμπεσὼν ἀπετέφρωσε.  
*the(-things) written in-the-night spark having-fallen burnt-to-ash*  
 τοιαῦτα καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ ὁ Μαγγάνης προφασιζόμενος  
*such(-things) and other some — Manganes making-excuses*  
 καὶ οἷον μαγανευόμενος ἄλλοτε ἄλλως ὑπερετίθετο.  
*and as-it-were playing-tricks at-one-time otherwise delayed*  
 ἀπάραντες δ' ἐκεῖθεν οἱ Κομνηνοὶ καταλαμβάνουσι ταχὺ  
*having-set-out and from-there the Komnenoi reach quickly*  
 τὰς καλουμένας Ἀρετάς. τόπος δὲ οὗτος ἀγχοῦ τῆς πόλεως  
*the called Aretai place and this near the city*  
 διακείμενος, ὑπερκείμενος μὲν τῆς πεδιάδος καὶ τοῖς  
*lying overlooking indeed the plain and to-those*  
 κάτωθεν ἱσταμένοις καὶ πρὸς τοῦτον ὀρώσιν εἰς λοφίαν  
*below standing and toward it looking into ridge*

ἀνατεινόμενος καὶ τὴν ἑτέραν μὲν πλευρὰν πρὸς θάλατταν  
*stretching-up and the one indeed side toward sea*  
 ἀπονεύων, κατὰ δὲ τὴν ἑτέραν πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον, ταῖς δέ  
*inclining on and the other toward — Byzantium on-the and*  
 γε λοιπαῖς δυσὶ πρὸς ἄρκτον καὶ δύσιν, παντὶ ἀνέμῳ  
*at-least remaining two(-sides) toward north and west by-every wind*  
 καταπνεόμενος, διειδὲς ὕδωρ καὶ πότιμον ἔχων ῥέον αἰεί,  
*blown-upon clear water and drinkable having flowing always*  
 φυτῶν δὲ καὶ δένδρων παντάπασιν ἀμοιρῶν· εἶπες  
*of-plants and and of-trees altogether destitute you-would-have-said*  
 ἂν ὑπὸ τινων δρυτόμων ἐκπεφαλακρῶσθαι τὸν λόφον.  
*— by some woodcutters to-have-been-made-bald the hill*  
 διὰ γοῦν τὸ τοῦ τόπου ἐπιτερπὲς καὶ εὐκρατον καὶ  
*because-of at-any-rate the of-the place pleasantness and temperateness also*  
 Ῥωμανὸς Διογένης ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ῥαστώνης μικρᾶς χάριν  
*Romanos Diogenes the autocrat of-relaxation little for-the-sake*  
 οἰκήματα λαμπρὰ καὶ ἀποχρῶντα βασιλεῦσιν ἀνήγειρεν.  
*dwellings splendid and sufficient for-emperors raised*  
 ἐκέλευε τοῖνυν γενόμενοι πέμποντες ἀπεπειρῶντο τοῦ τείχους  
*there therefore having-come sending they-made-trial-of the wall*  
 οὐ δι' ἐλεπόλεων ἢ μηχανῶν ἢ πετροβόλων τινῶν  
*not through siege-engines or machines or stone-throwers some*  
 ὀργάνων, ἐπεὶ μηδ' ὁ καιρὸς ἐδίδου, ἀλλὰ διὰ πελταστῶν  
*instruments since not-even the time allowed but through targeteers*  
 καὶ ἐκηβόλων καὶ δορυφόρων καὶ καταφράκτων ἀνδρῶν.  
*and archers and spearmen and armored men*

*Botaneiates, old and frightened, inclines to abdicate. Alexios, reckoning the city hard to take and his army unreliable, decides to suborn the guards. The caesar, mocked from the walls in his monk's habit, warns him off the Immortals, who are natives, and the Varangians, whose loyalty is hereditary, and points him to the Nemitzoi. Their leader, leaning over the wall, agrees to betray the city, and Alexios' men prepare to ride.*

Ὁ δέ γε Βοτανειάτης τὴν τῶν Κομνηνῶν ἀποστασίαν  
 — but at-least Botaneiates the of-the Komnenoi revolt  
 ὁρῶν πολυπληθῇ τε καὶ ἐκ παντοίων συνειλεγμένην  
 seeing very-numerous both and from all-kinds-of gathered  
 ἀνδρῶν καὶ πρὸς ταῖς πύλαις τῆς πόλεως ἐπειγομένην  
 men and to the gates of-the city pressing  
 ἤδη ἐγγίσαι, τὸν δέ γε Μελισσηνὸν Νικηφόρον περὶ  
 already to-approach — and at-least Melissenos Nikephoros near  
 τὴν Δάμαλιν φθάσαντα οὐχ ἥττω τούτων δύναμιν ἔχοντα  
 — Damalis having-arrived not less than-these force having  
 καὶ τῆς βασιλείας ὡσαύτως ἀντιποιούμενον, μὴ ἔχων ὃ  
 and the empire likewise claiming not having what  
 τι καὶ δράσειε μήτε ἀντιπαλαμαῖσθαι δυνάμενος πρὸς ἄμφω  
 — also he-might-do nor to-counter-scheme being-able against both  
 τὰ μέρη, ὑπὸ τοῦ γήρως ὑπόψυχρός τε ὢν καὶ μᾶλλον  
 the parts by the old-age somewhat-cold both being and more  
 περιδεής, κἂν ἐν νεότητι ἀνδρικώτατος ἦν, τοσοῦτον  
 very-fearful even-if in youth most-manly he-was so-much  
 τότε μόνον ἀνέπνει, ὅποσον αὐτὸν ἢ τοῦ τείχους περιβολῇ  
 then only he-breathed as-much-as him the of-the wall circuit  
 διεζώννυε, καὶ ἀπενενεύκει μᾶλλον πρὸς τὸ τῆς βασιλείας  
 girded and he-had-inclined more to the of-the empire  
 ἐκστήναι. ἔθθεν τοι καὶ ἑκπληξίς κατεῖχε καὶ θόρυβος  
 to-stand-down thence surely also consternation held and uproar

ἅπαντας καὶ ἀλώσιμα πάντα ἐδόκει γενήσεσθαι πάντοθεν.  
*all and capturable all seemed to-become from-all-sides*  
 ὡς δὲ δυσχερὴς ἢ τῆς πόλεως ἄλωσης τοῖς Κομνηνοῖς  
*when and difficult the of-the city capture to-the Komnenoi*  
 κατεφαίνετο (αἱ δὲ δυνάμεις ἐκ διαφόρων ξενικῶν τε καὶ  
*appeared the and forces from different foreign both and*  
 ἐγχωρίων συνελέγοντο· ὅπου δὲ πληθὺς διάφορος, ἐκεῖ καὶ  
*native were-gathered where and multitude various there also*  
 τὸ τῆς γνώμης διάφορον καταφαίνεται), βλέπων ὁ τὸ  
*the of-the opinion variety appears seeing the the*  
 νέον ἐνδεδυκὼς πέδιλον Ἀλέξιος τὸ δυσάλωτον τῆς  
*new having-put-on sandal Alexios the hard-to-capture(-nature) of-the*  
 πόλεως καὶ τὸ τῶν στρατιωτῶν παλίμβολον ὑποτοπάζων  
*city and the of-the soldiers changeableness suspecting*  
 εἰς ἑτέραν ἐτράπετο γνώμην, ἵνα θωπεῖαις τισὶ καὶ  
*to another turned plan that with-flatteries some and*  
 ὑποσχέσειν ὑποποισάμενός τις τῶν φυλασσόντων  
*promises having-won-over some of-the(-men) guarding*  
 τὰ τείχη καὶ κλέψας αὐτῶν τὴν γνώμην οὕτως αἰρήσει  
*the walls and having-stolen their the mind thus he-would-take*  
 τὴν πόλιν. ταῦτα δι' ὅλης νυκτὸς μελετήσας εἰς τὴν  
*the city these(-things) through whole night having-pondered into the*  
 σκηνὴν τοῦ καίσαρος ἅμα πρωὶ παραγίνεται ἀπαγγέλλων  
*tent of-the caesar at early comes reporting*  
 τὰ σκοπηθέντα καὶ ἀξιῶν ἅμα συνέψεσθαι οἱ καὶ  
*the(-things) considered and asking together to-follow him and*  
 κατασκοπῆσαι τὰ τείχη καὶ τὰς ἐπάλξεις ἀναθεωρῆσαι  
*to-spy-out the walls and the battlements to-survey*  
 καὶ τοὺς φυλάσσοντας (ἦσαν γὰρ ἐκ διαφόρων) καὶ  
*and the(-men) guarding they-were for from different(-peoples) and*  
 διαγνῶναι, ὅπως δυνατόν ἐστιν ἀλῶναι τὴν πόλιν. ὁ δὲ  
*to-discern how possible it-is to-be-taken the city he and*

βαρέως τοῦπίταγμα ἔφερεν, ἅτε τὸ μοναχικὸν οὕτω πρόην  
*grievously the-order bore as the monastic not-long earlier*  
 περιβεβλημένος ἀμφίον καὶ συνεῖς ὅτι καταγελῶτο  
*having-put-on garment and having-perceived that he-would-be-laughed-at*  
 ἂν ὑπὸ τῶν περὶ τὸ τεῖχος ἱσταμένων καὶ τὰς ἐπάλξεις,  
*— by the(-men) about the wall standing and the battlements*  
 εἰ οὕτως τὸν πλησιασμὸν τῶν τειχῶν ἀνεδύετο. ὅπερ καὶ  
*if thus the approach of-the walls he-shrank-from which also*  
 πέπονθεν. ὥς γὰρ βιασθεὶς τῷ Ἀλεξίῳ συνηκολούθηκεν,  
*he-suffered when for having-been-forced — with-Alexios he-followed*  
 εὐθὺς αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τῶν τειχῶν ἑωρακότες τὸν ἀββᾶν μετὰ  
*at-once him from the walls having-seen the abbot with*  
 τινος προσθήκης ὑβριστικῆς διετώθαζον. ὁ δὲ ἐπισυνάξας  
*some addition insulting they-jeered he and having-drawn-together*  
 τὸ ἐπισκύνιον καὶ ἔνδοθεν ὑβριζόμενος παρ' οὐδὲν ἐλογίζετο,  
*the brow and inwardly being-insulted at nothing reckoned(-it)*  
 πρὸς δὲ τὸν προκείμενον σκοπὸν ὅλον εἶχε τὸν νοῦν.  
*to but the lying-before aim whole had the mind*  
 εἰώθασι γὰρ οἱ φρόνημα στάσιμον ἔχοντες ἐμμένειν ἐφ'  
*are-wont for those mind steady having to-persist in*  
 οἷς ἂν κρίνωσι, τῶν δ' ἔξωθεν ἐπισυμβαίνόντων  
*what — they-judge the(-things) and from-outside befalling*  
 καταφρονεῖν. ἐπυνθάνετο οὖν, τίνες ἂν εἶεν οἱ  
*to-despise he-inquired then who — might-be the(-men)*  
 ἑκασταχοῦ τοὺς πύργους φυλάσσοντες. ὥς δὲ ἐνταῦθα  
*everywhere the towers guarding when and here*  
 μὲν ἐφεστάναι τοὺς ἀθανάτους λεγομένους ἐμάνθανε  
*indeed to-stand-over the Immortals so-called he-learned*  
 (στράτευμα δὲ τοῦτο τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς δυνάμεως ἰδιαίτατον),  
*army and this of-the Roman power most-particular*  
 ἐκέλευε δὲ τοὺς ἐκ τῆς Θούλης Βαράγγους (τούτους  
*there and the from — Thule Varangians these*

δὴ λέγω τοὺς πελεκυφόρους βαρβάρους), ἀλλαχόσε δὲ  
*indeed I-mean the axe-bearing barbarians elsewhere and*  
 τοὺς Νεμίτζους (ἔθνος δὲ καὶ τοῦτο βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τῇ  
*the Nemitzoi nation and also this barbarian and to-the*  
 βασιλείᾳ Ῥωμαίων δουλεῦον ἀνέκαθεν), φησὶ πρὸς τὸν  
*empire of-(the)-Romans serving from-of-old he-says to —*  
 Ἀλέξιον παραινῶν μήτε τοῖς Βαράγγοις ἐμβαλεῖν μήτε τοῖς  
*Alexios advising neither on-the Varangians to-fall nor on-the*  
 ἀθανάτοις προσεμβαλεῖν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτόχθονες ὄντες  
*Immortals to-make-an-attempt the(-ones) indeed for native being*  
 τῷ βασιλεῖ πολλὴν τὴν εἰς αὐτὸν ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἔχοντες  
*to-the emperor much the toward him of necessity having*  
 εὐνοίαν θάττον ἂν τὰς ψυχὰς προδοῖεν ἢ πονηρόν τι  
*goodwill sooner — the lives would-betray than wicked something*  
 κατ' αὐτοῦ μελετῆσαι πεισθήσονται· οἱ δέ γε ἐπὶ  
*against him to-plan they-will-be-persuaded the(-ones) and at-least on*  
 τῶν ὤμων τὰ ξίφη κραδαίνοντες πάτριον παράδοσιν  
*the shoulders the swords brandishing ancestral tradition*  
 καὶ οἷον παρακαταθήκην τινὰ καὶ κληρὸν τὴν εἰς  
*and as-it-were trust some and inheritance the toward*  
 τοὺς αὐτοκράτορας πίστιν καὶ τὴν τῶν σωμάτων αὐτῶν  
*the autocrats loyalty and the of-the bodies their*  
 φυλακὴν ἄλλος ἐξ ἄλλου διαδεχόμενοι τὴν πρὸς αὐτὸν  
*guarding one from another receiving the toward him*  
 πίστιν ἀκράδαντον διατηροῦσι καὶ οὐδὲ ψιλὸν πάντως  
*loyalty unshaken preserve and not-even bare at-all*  
 ἀνέξονται περὶ προδοσίας λόγον. τῶν δέ γε Νεμίτζων  
*will-endure about treason word of-the but at-least Nemitzoi*  
 ἀποπειρώμενος ἴσως οὐ πόρρω βαλεῖ σκοποῦ, ἀλλ'  
*trying perhaps not far he-will-shoot from-(the)-mark but*  
 εὐτυχήσει τὴν εἴσοδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὑπ' αὐτῶν τηρουμένου  
*will-succeed-in the entrance from the by them guarded*

πύργου. πείθεται τοίνυν τὸ ἐντεύθεν Ἀλέξιος τοῖς τοῦ  
*tower is-persuaded therefore for-the thereupon Alexios by-the of-the*  
 καίσαρος λόγοις ὥσπερ ἐκ θείας ὁμφῆς τούτους δεξάμενος.  
*caesar words as-if from divine voice them having-received*  
 διὰ τινος οὖν ἀποσταλέντος παρ' αὐτοῦ τὸν ἡγεμόνα  
*through some(-one) then sent by him the leader*  
 τῶν Νεμίτζων κάτωθεν ἐπιμελῶς ἀνεζήτει· ὁ δὲ ἄνωθεν  
*of-the Nemitzoi from-below carefully sought he and from-above*  
 προκύψας πολλά τε εἰπὼν καὶ ἀκούσας συντίθεται  
*having-leaned-out many(-things) both having-said and having-heard agrees*  
 ταχὺ προδοῦναι τὴν πόλιν. ἦκεν οὖν τὴν ἀγγελίαν ταύτην  
*quickly to-betray the city came then the news this*  
 κομίζων ὁ στρατιώτης. ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν  
*bringing the soldier having-heard and the(-men) about —*  
 Ἀλέξιον τὸ παρ' ἐλπίδας περιχαρεῖς γενόμενοι μάλα  
*Alexios the(-thing) beyond hopes overjoyed having-become very*  
 προθύμως ἐπιβαίνειν τοῖς ἵπποις ἡτοιμάζοντο.  
*eagerly to-mount the horses prepared*

XXX • THE ENTRY INTO THE CITY

*Melissenos' envoys still demand the chrysobull, and Manganes still delays, so that Melissenos will not seize the throne; the Komnenoi send the envoys off, saying the city is theirs. George Palaiologos goes to the Nemitzoi leader Gilpraktos and climbs the tower. At dawn on Holy Thursday in April of the year 6589, the army enters through the Charsios gate and scatters, plundering houses, churches, and sanctuaries though killing no one, and the natives join the barbarians.*

Ἄμα δὲ τούτοις καὶ οἱ τοῦ Μελισσηνοῦ πρέσβεις σφοδρῶς  
*together and with-these also the — of-Melissenos envoys vehemently*  
 ἐπέκειντο ἀπαιτοῦντες τὸν ὑπεσχημένον χρυσόβουλλον  
*pressed demanding the promised chrysobull*

λόγον. καὶ ὁ Μαγγάνης εὐθὺς μετεκαλείτο κομίσων αὐτόν.  
*word and — Manganes at-once was-summoned about-to-bring it*  
 ὁ δὲ τὸν μὲν χρυσόβουλλον λόγον γεγραμμένον ἔχειν  
*he and the indeed chrysobull word written to-have*  
 ἔλεγε, τὸ δέ γε χρησιμεῖον σκεύος πρὸς τὰς βασιλικὰς  
*said the and at-least serving vessel for the imperial*  
 ὑπογραφὰς σὺν τῇ γραφίδι ἀπολωλεκέναι δυσχυρίζετο  
*signatures with the pen to-have-lost insisted*  
 κρυφίνους ὦν ἀνὴρ καὶ δεινὸς τὸ μέλλον ῥᾶστα προῖδεῖν  
*secretive being man and clever the future most-easily to-foresee*  
 καὶ ἐκ μὲν τοῦ παρεληλυθότος θηρᾶσαί τι συνοῖσον,  
*and from indeed the past to-hunt something about-to-be-useful*  
 τὸ δέ γε ἐνεστὸς ἀκριβῶς διαγνῶναι καὶ πρὸς ὅπερ  
*the and at-least present exactly to-discern and to whatever*  
 ἂν βούλοιο εὐφυῶς μετενεγκεῖν ἐπισκιάσαι τε πράγματα,  
*— he-might-wish cleverly to-turn to-overshadow and affairs*  
 εἰ μόνον θελήσει. ἀνεβάλλετο γὰρ τὴν τοῦ χρυσοβούλλου  
*if only he-will-wish he-put-off for the of-the chrysobull*  
 γραφὴν ὁ Μαγγάνης μετεώρους τὰς ἐλπίδας διδοὺς τῷ  
*writing — Manganes in-suspense the hopes giving —*  
 Μελισσηνῷ. ἐδεδίει γάρ, μὴ τοῦ χρυσοβούλλου τάχιον ἢ  
*to-Melissenos he-feared for lest the chrysobull sooner than*  
 προσῆκε καταπεμφθέντος αὐτῷ, ὃς τὴν τοῦ καίσαρος  
*was-fitting having-been-sent to-him which the of-the caesar*  
 ἀξίαν τούτῳ κατεχαρίζετο, τὸν καίσαρα μὲν ἀποπέμψαιτο,  
*dignity to-him granted the caesar(-ship) indeed he-might-reject*  
 τῆς δὲ βασιλείας ὅλος ἐξέχοιτο, καθάπερ καὶ πρὸς  
*of-the and empire wholly might-bold-fast as also to*  
 τοὺς Κομνηνοὺς διαμεμνηνκῶς ἦν, καὶ σπουδάσειέ τι  
*the Komnenoi having-reported he-was and might-attempt something*  
 θρασύτερον. καὶ τοῦτο ἦν ἡ τέχνη καὶ τὸ μαγγάνημα  
*bolder and this was the art and the trickery*



τῷ Μαγγάνῃ περὶ τὴν ἀναβολὴν τοῦ χρυσοβούλλου λόγου  
 — for-Manganes about the postponement of-the chrysobull word  
 τοῦ καίσαρος. τούτων οὕτω τελουμένων καὶ τοῦ καιροῦ  
 of-the caesar these thus being-done and the time  
 κατεπείγοντος τὴν πρὸς τὴν πόλιν εἴσοδον, ὑποτοπάζοντες  
 pressing the into the city entry suspecting  
 οἱ πρέσβεις τὸ δρᾶμα σφοδρότερον ἐνέκειντο ἐξαιτούμενοι  
 the envoys the drama more-vehemently pressed demanding  
 τὸν χρυσόβουλλον λόγον. οἱ δὲ Κομνηνοὶ φασὶ πρὸς  
 the chrysobull word the and Komnenoi say to  
 αὐτοὺς “ἐπεὶ ἐν χερσὶν ἤδη τὴν πόλιν ἔχοντες ἄπιμεν  
 them since in hands already the city having we-go  
 ἐφ’ ᾧ κατασχεῖν αὐτὴν θεοῦ ἐπαρήγοντος, ἀπελθόντες  
 for which to-seize it God helping having-gone-away  
 ἀπαγγέilate ταῦτα τῷ δεσπότῃ καὶ κυρίῳ ὑμῶν”  
 report these(-things) to-the master and lord your  
 καὶ τοῦτ’ ἐπειπόντες ὥς “εἴ γε κατ’ ἐλπίδας ἡμῖν  
 and this having-added that if at-least according-to hopes for-us  
 ἀπαντήσῃ τὰ πράγματα σοῦ πρὸς ἡμᾶς παραγενομένου,  
 shall-turn-out the affairs you to us having-come  
 πάντα κατὰ ῥοὺν ἀκολουθήσειε καὶ κατὰ τὸ ἡμῖν  
 all down stream would-follow and according-to the to-us  
 καὶ σοὶ βουλευτόν”. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν πρὸς τοὺς  
 and to-you wished but these(-things) indeed to the  
 πρέσβεις· τὸν μέντοι Γεώργιον τὸν Παλαιολόγον πρὸς τὸν  
 envoys — however George the Palaiologos to the  
 ἡγεμόνα τῶν Νεμίτζων Γιλπράκτον ἐξέπεμψαν ἀπόπειραν  
 leader of-the Nemitzoi Gilpraktos they-sent-out trial  
 ποιήσασθαι τῆς γνώμης Γιλπράκτου, καὶ εἰ διαγνοίῃ  
 to-make of-the mind of-Gilpraktos and if he-should-discern  
 προθυμούμενον δέξασθαι κατὰ τὴν ὑπόσχεσιν τοὺς  
 (him)-being-eager to-receive according-to the promise the

Κομνηνούς, τὸ δοθὲν αὐτῷ σύνθημα ποιῆσαι, ὅπερ αὐτοὶ  
*Komnenoi the given to-him signal to-make which they*  
 μὲν θεασάμενοι ἐπισπεύσουσι τὴν εἰσέλευσιν, αὐτὸς δὲ εἰς  
*indeed having-beheld would-hasten the entrance he and into*  
 τὸν πύργον ἀνελθὼν θάττον αὐτοῖς τὰς πύλας ὑπανοίξει.  
*the tower having-gone-up more-quickly for-them the gates would-open*  
 ὁ δὲ μάλα προθύμως τὴν πρὸς τὸν Γιλπράκτον ὁδοιπορίαν  
*he and very eagerly the to — Gilpraktos journey*  
 ἀνεδέξατο πρόθυμος ὢν ἀνὴρ ἐς πολεμικὰς πράξεις  
*took-on eager being man for warlike deeds*  
 καὶ πόλεων ἐκπορθήσεις, καὶ τοῦτ' αὐτὸ τειχεσιπλήτης  
*and of-cities sackings and this itself wall-stormer*  
 αὐτόχρομα εἶπες ἄν, ὃ περὶ Ἄρεως Ὅμηρος. οἱ  
*outright you-would-have-said — which about Ares Homer the*  
 δὲ Κομνηνοὶ ὀπλισάμενοι καὶ τὸ ὀπλιτικὸν ἅπαν ἐμπείρως  
*and Komnenoi having-armed and the armed(-body) all skillfully*  
 πάνυ καταστησάμενοι βραδεὶ ποδὶ στείχοντες ἱλαδὸν πρὸς  
*very having-set with-slow foot walking in-squadrons to*  
 τὴν πόλιν ἀπήεσαν. ἐσπέρας οὖν πελάσας τῷ τείχει ὁ  
*the city went in-the-evening then having-approached the wall —*  
 Παλαιολόγος Γεώργιος καὶ σύνθημα ἀπὸ τοῦ Γιλπράκτου  
*Palaiologos George and signal from — Gilpraktos*  
 λαβὼν ἄνεισιν ἐπὶ τὸν πύργον μετὰ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν.  
*having-received goes-up onto the tower with those about him*  
 οἱ δέ γε ἀμφὶ τὸν Ἀλέξιον τέως μὲν ὀλίγον τι  
*those and at-least about — Alexios for-a-while indeed little somewhat*  
 πρὸ τῶν τειχῶν γεγονότες χάρακά τε βάλλονται καὶ  
*before the walls having-come palisade both throw and*  
 στρατοπεδεύουσι λαμπρῶς. καὶ βραχὺ τι μέρος ἐπ' αὐτοῦ  
*encamp splendidly and short some part on it*  
 τῆς νυκτὸς αὐλισάμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν αὐτοὶ τὸ μεσαίτατον  
*of-the night having-bivouacked for-the rest they the very-middle*

εἶχον τῆς φάλαγγος ἅμα τοῖς τῶν ἱππέων ἐπιλέκτοις  
*held of-the phalanx together-with the of-the horsemen picked(-men)*  
 καὶ τῇ κρείττονι στρατιᾷ τό τε ψιλὸν διατάξαντες βάδην  
*and the better army the both light(-troops) having-arranged at-a-walk*  
 τε προΐόντες κατ' αὐτὸ τὸ περίορθρον πρὸ τῶν τειχῶν  
*and advancing at itself the dawn before the walls*  
 ἀθρόον καθίστανται. καὶ πολέμου σχῆμα διατυπώσαντες  
*in-a-mass take-position and of-war appearance having-represented*  
 ἐσιδηροφόρου ξύμπαντες, ἵνα τοὺς ἐντὸς καταπλήξαιεν.  
*bore-iron all that those inside they-might-strike-with-terror*  
 σύνθημα δὲ ἄνωθεν δόντος αὐτοῖς τοῦ Παλαιολόγου καὶ  
*signal and from-above having-given to-them — Palaiologos and*  
 τὰς πύλας ἀνοίξαντος συμμύγδην εἰσήεσαν, οὐ σὺν εὐταξίᾳ  
*the gates having-opened pell-mell they-entered not with good-order*  
 στρατιωτικῇ, ἀλλ' ὥς ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος, ἀσπίδας καὶ τόξα καὶ  
*soldierly but as it-happened each shields and bows and*  
 δόρατα φέροντες. ἡ δὲ ἡμέρα πέμπτη ἦν ἡ μεγάλη, καθ'  
*spears bearing the and day Thursday was the great on*  
 ἦν τὸ μυστικὸν πάσχα θύομεν ἅμα καὶ ἐστιώμεθα,  
*which the mystical Pascha we-sacrifice at-the-same-time and feast*  
 ἐπινεμήσεως τετάρτης ἔτους ςφπθ' μηνὸς Ἀπριλλίου. καὶ  
*of-indiction fourth of-year 6589 of-month April and*  
 οὕτως ἅπαν τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐκ ξενικῆς τε καὶ ἐγχωρίου  
*thus all the camp of foreign both and native*  
 δυνάμεως ἐκ τ' αὐτοχθόνων καὶ τῶν παρακειμένων  
*force from both natives and the bordering*  
 χωρῶν συνεληλυθὸς τὴν πόλιν ἐκ πολλοῦ παντοίοις  
*lands having-come-together the city from long by-all-kinds-of*  
 εὐθηνοῦσαν εἶδεσιν ἐξ ἡπείρου τε καὶ θαλάσσης συνεχῶς  
*abounding goods from land both and sea continually*  
 ἀρδομένην γινώσκοντες ἐν βραχεὶ χρόνῳ εἰσεληλύθασιν  
*being-watered knowing in short time entered*

διὰ τῆς Χαρσίου πύλης ἀπανταχοῦ σκεδασθέντες περί  
*through the of-Charsios gate everywhere having-scattered about*  
 τε τὰς λεωφόρους περί τε τὰς τριόδους καὶ ἀμφόδους  
*both the highways about and the crossroads and lanes*  
 μὴ οἰκιῶν, μὴ ἐκκλησιῶν, μηδὲ αὐτῶν τῶν ἱερῶν ἀδύτων  
*not houses not churches not-even very the holy sanctuaries*  
 τὸ παράπαν φειδόμενοι, ἀλλὰ λείαν πολλὴν ἐκεῖθεν  
*the at-all sparing but booty much from-there*  
 ἐπισυνάγοντες, τοῦ μέντοι ἀποκτείνειν μόνου ἀφιστάμενοι,  
*gathering from-the however to-kill alone abstaining*  
 τὰ δ' ἄλλα πάντα ἰταμῶς πάντη καὶ ἀναισχύντως  
*the(-things) and other all recklessly wholly and shamelessly*  
 ποιοῦντες. τὸ δὲ δὴ χεῖρον, ὅτι οὐδὲ οἱ αὐτόχθονες  
*doing the and indeed worse that not-even the natives*  
 τῶν τοιούτων ἀφίσταντο πράξεων, ἀλλ' οἷον ἐκλαθόμενοι  
*from-the such deeds stood-aside but as-if having-forgotten*  
 ἑαυτῶν καὶ τὰ σφῶν ἦθη ἐπὶ τὸ χεῖρον ἀμεύσαντες  
*themselves and the own characters to the worse having-changed*  
 ἀνευθριάστως καὶ αὐτοί, ἅπερ οἱ βάρβαροι, ἔπραττον.  
*unblushingly also themselves what the barbarians did*

*Botaneiates, besieged from west and east, would rather yield to Melissenos and sends one of his servants, with a spatharios, to bring him over by the fleet. George Palaiologos, crossing by boat, meets the spatharios, disarms himself to board, then wins the rowers, binds the spatharios, and turns the fleet to acclaim Alexios. Meeting his own father, Nikephoros Palaiologos, he is called a fool. Nikephoros asks the emperor for the Varangians, but Botaneiates sends him to negotiate.*

Ταῦτα δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς Νικηφόρος ὁρῶν καὶ ὡς τὰ  
*these(-things) and the emperor Nikephoros seeing and how the(-things)*  
 κατ' αὐτὸν ἐν στενῷ κομιδῇ κατήντηκεν, ἀπὸ τε  
*concerning him in strait altogether had-come from both*  
 τῆς δύσεως πολιορκουμένης τῆς πόλεως ἀπὸ τε τῆς  
*the west being-besieged the city from and the*  
 ἑω Νικηφόρου τοῦ Μελισσηνοῦ περὶ τὴν Δάμαλιν ἤδη  
*east Nikephoros the Melissenos near — Damalis already*  
 αὐλιζομένου, μὴ ἔχων ὅ τι καὶ δράσειε, τῷ Μελισσηνῷ  
*bivouacking not having what — also he-might-do — to-Melissenos*  
 προτεθύμητο τῶν πρωτείων μᾶλλον παραχωρήσαι.  
*had-been-eager the first-place rather to-yield*  
 κατασχεθείσης δὲ τῆς πόλεως ἤδη παρὰ τῶν Κομνηνῶν  
*having-been-seized and the city already by the Komnenoi*  
 μετακαλεσάμενός τινα τῶν πιστοτέρων θεραπόντων αὐτοῦ  
*having-summoned one of-the more-faithful servants his*  
 παρεκελεύετο διὰ τοῦ στόλου τὸν Μελισσηνὸν εἰσάγειν εἰς  
*he-ordered through the fleet — Melissenos to-bring-in into*  
 τὰ βασιλεια, ᾧτινι συνέιπετο καὶ σπαθάριος τις ἀνὴρ  
*the palace with-whom followed also spatharios a-certain man*  
 μαχμώτατος. πρὸ δὲ τοῦ φθάσαι εἰς ἔργον τὸν λόγον  
*most-warlike before and the to-have-come into deed the word*  
 ἢ μὲν πόλις ἐάλω, ὃ δὲ Παλαιολόγος ἓνα τῶν ὑπ'  
*the indeed city was-taken — and Palaiologos one of-the(-men) under*

αὐτὸν ἀναλαβόμενος πεζῇ κάτεισιν ὡς πρὸς θάλασσαν  
 him having-taken on-foot goes-down as to sea  
 πορευόμενος. περιτυχὼν δέ τινι ἀκατίῳ εἵσεισιν εὐθύς καὶ  
 going having-met and some boat enters at-once and  
 τοῖς ἐρέταις παρεκελεύετο, ὅπου ὁ στόλος κατὰ τὸ  
 the rowers ordered where the fleet according-to the  
 εἰθισμένον προσώρμιστο, ἀπευθῆναι τὸ σκάφος. ἐγγίζων δὲ  
 custom had-anchored to-steer the boat approaching and  
 ἤδη πρὸς τὴν περαίαν ὁρᾷ τὸν παρὰ τοῦ Βοτανειάτου  
 already to the opposite-shore sees the(-man) by — Botaneiates  
 ἀποσταλέντα ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν Μελισσηνὸν διαπεραιῶσαι τὸν  
 sent for which — Melissenos to-carry-across the  
 στόλον εὐτρεπίζοντα καὶ τὸν σπαθάριον ἐντὸς μιᾶς τῶν  
 fleet preparing and the spatharios within one of-the  
 πολεμικῶν νηῶν. γνωρίσας οὖν αὐτὸν πόρρωθεν, πάλαι  
 war ships having-recognized then him from-afar of-old  
 συνήθη τοῦτον ἔχων, παραπλεύσας καὶ προσειπὼν αὐτῷ  
 familiar him having having-sailed-beside and having-addressed him  
 τὰ συνήθη ἐπυνθάνετο, ὅθεν καὶ ὅπη πορεύεται, καὶ  
 the usual(-greetings) inquired whence and whither he-goes and  
 μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἀναλαβέσθαι αὐτὸν ἡξίου. ὁ δὲ σπαθάριος  
 with himself to-take him asked the but spatharios  
 ξιφήρη τοῦτον ὁρῶν καὶ ἀσπίδα κατέχοντα, δειλιάσας  
 sword-bearing him seeing and shield holding having-been-afraid  
 φησὶ πρὸς αὐτόν “εἰ μὴ σε οὕτω καθωπλισμένον ἐώρων,  
 says to him if not you thus fully-armed I-saw  
 περιχαρῶς ἂν ἐδεξάμην”. ὁ δὲ μάλα προθύμως καὶ  
 gladly — I-would-have-received(-you) the and very eagerly both  
 τὴν ἀσπίδα καὶ τὸν ἀκινάκην καὶ τὴν κόρυθα ἀποθέσθαι  
 the shield and the short-sword and the helmet to-lay-aside  
 κατετίθετο, εἰ μόνον θελήσει τοῦτον ἀναλαβέσθαι. ὡς  
 agreed if only he-should-wish him to-take-up when

δὲ καταθέμενον αὐτὸν τὰ ὄπλα ὁ σπαθάριος ἐθεάσατο,  
*and having-laid-down him the arms the spatharios beheld*  
 παρεκεχωρήκει τῆνικαῦτα αὐτῷ τῆς εἰς τὸ ἴδιον πλοῖον  
*had-granted then to-him the into the own vessel*  
 εἰσελεύσεως καὶ περιπλακεῖς κατησπάζετο μάλα περιχαρῶς.  
*entrance and having-embraced kissed(-him) very gladly*  
 ὁ δὲ Παλαιολόγος ὀμβριμοεργὸς ὢν ἀνὴρ οὐδὲ πρὸς  
*— but Palaiologos doer-of-mighty-deeds being man not-even for*  
 βραχὺ περιμείνας ἔργου ἤπτετο. καὶ ὥς πρὸς τὴν  
*short(-while) having-waited of-deed took-hold and as-if to the*  
 πρῶραν ἀλλόμενος τοὺς ἐρέτας ἐπυνθάνετο “τί” λέγων  
*prow leaping the rowers he-asked what saying*  
 “ποιεῖτε καὶ ὅπη πορεύεσθε κατὰ τῆς σφῶν κεφαλῆς  
*are-you-doing and whither are-you-going against the your head*  
 κακὰ μέγιστα ἐπενεγκεῖν πραγματευόμενοι; ἢ πόλις,  
*evils greatest to-bring busying-yourselfs the city*  
 ὥς ὁρᾶτε, ἐάλω. ὃ ποτε μέγας δομέστικος νῦν  
*as you-see has-been-taken the once grand domestic now*  
 βασιλεὺς ἀνηγόρευται· καὶ τοὺς ὀπλοφόρους ὁρᾶτε καὶ  
*emperor has-been-proclaimed and the armed(-men) you-see and*  
 τῆς εὐφημίας ἀκούετε· καὶ οὐκέτι χώραν ἕτερος ἐν  
*the acclamation you-bear and no-longer place another in*  
 τοῖς βασιλείοις ἔξει. καλὸς μὲν οὖν ὁ Βοτανειάτης,  
*the palace will-have good indeed then — Botaneiates*  
 ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ Κομνηνοὶ πολλῷ κρείττονες. πολλὴ ἡ τοῦ  
*but also the Komnenoi by-much better great the —*  
 Βοτανειάτου στρατιά, ἀλλὰ πολλαπλάσιος ἢ ἡμετέρα.  
*of-Botaneiates army but many-times-greater the ours*  
 οὐ χρὴ τοιγαροῦν τὴν σφῶν αὐτῶν ζωὴν τὰς τε  
*not is-needful accordingly the your own life the both*  
 γυναικας καὶ τοὺς παῖδας προδοῦναι, ἀλλὰ δεῖ τὴν  
*wives and the children to-betray but it-is-needful the*

πόλιν περιθρήσαντας καὶ τὸ ὀπλιτικὸν ἅπαν ἐντὸς αὐτῆς  
*city having-surveyed and the armed(-body) all within it*  
 θεασαμένους τὰς τε σημαίας καὶ τὴν εὐφημίαν λαμπρὰν  
*having-beheld the both standards and the acclamation splendid*  
 γινομένην ἀκούοντας τὸν τέ ποτε μέγαν δομέστικον νῦν  
*becoming bearing the both once grand domestic now*  
 βασιλέα τοῖς βασιλείοις πελάζοντα καὶ τὴν αὐτοκράτορα  
*emperor to-the palace approaching and the autocratic*  
 ἀρχὴν ἤδη περιζωννύμενον πρύμναν τε κρούσασθαι καὶ  
*rule already putting-on stern both to-back-water and*  
 ἑτεραλκέα τὴν νίκην ποιησαμένους αὐτῷ προσελθεῖν.” οἱ  
*other-sided the victory having-made to-him to-go-over they*  
 δὲ τηνικαῦτα τοῖς τούτου λόγοις ὑπέιξαντες πάντες τῆς  
*and then by-the his words having-yielded all of-the*  
 αὐτοῦ γνώμης γεγόνασι. τοῦ δὲ σπαθαρίου δυσχεραίνοντος  
*his mind have-become the but spatharios being-displeased*  
 ἠπειλήσεν ὁ ξιφηφόρος οὗτος Γεώργιος ὁ Παλαιολόγος  
*threatened the sword-bearing this George the Palaiologos*  
 αὐτοῦ που ἐπὶ τοῦ καταστρώματος τῆς νεῶς δεσμήσας  
*there somewhere on the deck of-the ship having-bound*  
 καταβαλεῖν ἢ κατὰ τοῦ βυθοῦ ρίψαι. εὐθὺς οὖν τῆς  
*to-throw-down or down the depth to-cast at-once then the*  
 εὐφημίας ὁ Παλαιολόγος ἐξῆρχε καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἐρέται.  
*acclamation — Palaiologos began and with him the rowers*  
 τὸν δὲ σπαθάριον δυσχεραίνοντα καὶ μὴ βουλόμενον κατὰ  
*the but spatharios being-displeased and not wishing on*  
 τοῦ καταστρώματος δεσμήσας κατέθηκε. παραπλεύσας  
*the deck having-bound he-laid-down having-sailed-along*  
 δὲ μικρὸν ἀναλαμβάνεται τὸν τε ἀκινάκην καὶ τὴν  
*and a-little takes-up the both short-sword and the*  
 ἀσπίδα καὶ οὕτω προσορμίζει, ὅπου ὁ στόλος, καὶ  
*shield and thus anchors where the fleet and*



πάνδημον ἐποιεῖτο ἤδη τὴν εὐφημίαν. ἐντυχὼν δὲ καὶ  
*universal made already the acclamation having-met and also*  
 τῷ ἀποσταλέντι παρὰ τοῦ Βοτανειάτου ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν  
*the(-man) sent by — Botaneiates for which the*  
 στόλον ἀναλαβέσθαι καὶ διαπερᾶσαι τὸν Μελισσηνόν, εὐθὺς  
*fleet to-take-up and to-carry-across — Melissenos at-once*  
 κατέσχευεν αὐτὸν καὶ λῦσαι τὰ πρυμνήσια παρεκελεύετο  
*he-seized him and to-loose the stern-cables ordered*  
 τοῖς ναυτικοῖς. ἀποπλεύσας οὖν ἐκεῖθεν συνάμα τῷ στόλῳ  
*the sailors having-sailed-off then from-there together-with the fleet*  
 καταλαμβάνει τὴν ἀκρόπολιν τὴν εὐφημίαν λαμπρὰν  
*reaches the acropolis the acclamation splendid*  
 ποιούμενος. κακείσε τοῖς ἐρέταις παύσασθαι τῆς εἰρεσίας  
*making and-there to-the rowers to-cease from-the rowing*  
 διεκελεύετο καὶ ἀτρεμοῦντας ἐστάναι ἐφ' ᾧ τοὺς ἐκ  
*he-ordered and keeping-still to-stand for which those from*  
 τῆς ἐώας πειρωμένους διαπερᾶν ἀπείργειν. μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ  
*the east trying to-cross to-keep-off after a-little and*  
 πλοῖον θεασάμενος πρὸς τὸ μέγα παλάτιον καταῖρον, τοῖς  
*vessel having-beheld to the great palace putting-in to-the*  
 τοῦ ἰδίου πλοίου ἐρέταις κελεύσας σφοδρὰν τὴν εἰρεσίαν  
*of-the own vessel rowers having-ordered vigorous the rowing*  
 ποιήσασθαι φθάνει τοῦτο. καὶ ὡς τὸν ἴδιον ἐθεάσατο ἐν  
*to-make overtakes it and when the own he-beheld in*  
 αὐτῷ πατέρα, ἀναστὰς εὐθὺς τὴν προσήκουσαν γονεῦσι  
*it father having-stood-up at-once the fitting to-parents*  
 προσκύνησιν αὐτῷ ἀπεδίδου. ὁ δ' οὐ περιχαρῶς αὐτὸν  
*obeisance to-him rendered he and not gladly him*  
 ἐθεάσατο οὔτε μὴν γλυκερὸν φάος ὠνόμασε, καθάπερ ποτὲ  
*beheld nor indeed sweet light named(-him) as once*  
 ὁ Ἰθακήσιος Ὀδυσσεὺς τὸν Τηλέμαχον θεασάμενος. ἐκεῖ  
*the Ithacan Odysseus — Telemachos having-beheld there*

γὰρ συμπόσιον καὶ μνηστήρες καὶ ἄμλλα καὶ νευρὰ καὶ  
*for feast and suitors and contest and bowstring and*  
 τόξον, καὶ ἄθλον τῷ νικήσαντι ἢ σώφρων ἔκειτο  
*bow and prize for-the(-man) having-won the prudent lay*  
 Πηνελόπη, καὶ ὁ Τηλέμαχος οὐκ ἐχθρός, ἀλλ' ὡς υἱὸς  
*Penelope and — Telemachos not enemy but as son*  
 πατρὶ ἐπαρήγων εἰσῆι· ἐνταῦθα δὲ μάχη καὶ πόλεμος,  
*to-father helping came-in here and battle and war*  
 καὶ ἀντικαθιστάμενοι πρὸς ἀλλήλους κατὰ γνώμην ἦσαν  
*and set-against toward each-other in mind were*  
 ἄμφω. καὶ ἡ θατέρου ἄτερον οὐκ ἐλάνθανε σχέσις, κὰν εἰς  
*both and the of-the-one the-other not escaped disposition even-if into*  
 ἔργον οὐπω τὰ τῆς γνώμης ἀπέβαινε. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ  
*deed not-yet the(-things) of-the mind turned-out thence surely also*  
 μωρὸν αὐτὸν καλέσας ἐπυνθάνετο λέγων “τί ὧδε ποιήσων  
*fool him having-called he-inquired saying what here about-to-do*  
 ἦκεις;” ὁ δὲ φησιν “ἐπεὶ σὺ ὁ ἐμοῦ πυνθανόμενος  
*have-you-come he and says since you the(-one) me questioning*  
 εἶ, οὐδέν.” καὶ ὃς πρὸς αὐτόν “ἀνέχου μικρὸν καὶ εἴ μου  
*are nothing and he to him wait a-little and if me*  
 ὁ βασιλεὺς ὑπακούσει, γνώσῃ μετ' οὐ πολὺ”. φθάσας  
*the emperor will-obey you-will-know after not long having-arrived*  
 οὖν ὁ ῥήθεις Νικηφόρος ὁ Παλαιολόγος εἰς τὰ ἀνάκτορα,  
*then the said Nikephoros the Palaiologos into the palace*  
 ἐπεὶ ἐσκεδασμένους ἑώρα τοὺς ξύμπαντας καὶ περὶ τὴν  
*since scattered he-saw the all and about the*  
 συλλογὴν τῶν χρημάτων ἡσυχολημένους, εὐκαταγωνίστους  
*collecting of-the money busied easy-to-overcome*  
 αὐτοὺς οἰόμενος ἡτέϊτο τὸν Βοτανειάτην δοθῆναί οἱ  
*them thinking he-asked — Botaneiates to-be-given to-him*  
 τοὺς ἀπὸ τῆς Θούλης νήσου βαρβάρους, ὥστε δι'  
*the from — Thule island barbarians so-that through*

αὐτῶν ἐξωθήσαι τῆς πόλεως τοὺς Κομνηνοὺς. ὁ δέ  
 them to-drive-out from-the city the Komnenoi — but  
 γε Βοτανειάτης ἅπαξ τὰ περὶ αὐτὸν ἀπεγνωκὼς  
 at-least Botaneiates once the(-things) concerning himself having-despaired  
 ἐσχηματίζετο μὴ θέλειν ἐμφύλιον γενέσθαι πόλεμον· “ἀλλ’ εἴ  
 pretended not to-wish civil to-happen war but if  
 γέ μοι πείθῃ, Νικηφόρε,” φησὶν “ἐπεὶ εἴσω τῆς πόλεως  
 at-least me you-obey Nikephoros he-says since inside the city  
 γεγόνασιν οἱ Κομνηνοί, ἄπελθε πρὸς αὐτοὺς πρεσβεύων  
 have-come the Komnenoi go-away to them negotiating  
 τὰ πρὸς εἰρήνην”. ὁ δὲ δυσανασχετῶν ὅμως ἀπήει.  
 the(-things) toward peace he and being-displeased nevertheless went-away

XXXII • BOTANEIATES ABDICATES

*Nikephoros Palaiologos brings the emperor's offer to adopt Alexios and leave him the rule, keeping only the title; the caesar replies that the time for such offers has passed. Borilos draws up the Varangians and the men of the Choma between the Forum of Constantine and the Milion. The patriarch, a holy and prophetic man, advises the emperor to abdicate rather than defile the city with Christian blood, and Botaneiates goes to Hagia Sophia, Borilos mockingly stripping his pearl-sewn robe.*

Ὡς δὲ εἰσελθόντες οἱ Κομνηνοὶ τεθαρρηκότες ἤδη  
 when and having-entered the Komnenoi having-taken-courage already  
 ἐκαρτέρουν περὶ τὸ πεδῖον τοῦ μεγαλομάρτυρος Γεωργίου  
 waited about the plain of-the great-martyr George  
 τοῦ καλουμένου Συκεώτου βουλευόμενοι εἰ χρὴ  
 the called Sykeotes deliberating if it-is-needful  
 πρῶτον ἀπελθεῖν εἰς τὰς σφῶν μητέρας καὶ τὴν συνήθη  
 first to-go-away to the their mothers and the customary  
 προσκύνησιν κατὰ τὸ εἰθισμένον αὐταῖς ἀπονεῖμαι, εἴθ’  
 obeisance according-to the custom to-them to-render then

οὕτω πρὸς τὰ βασιλεία χωρῆσαι, μαθὼν ὁ καῖσαρ  
*thus to the palace to-proceed having-learned the caesar*  
 ἀποστείλας τινὰ τῶν αὐτοῦ θεραπόντων ἠπειλήσατο τῆς  
*having-sent one of-the his servants threatened(-them) for-the*  
 βραδυτῆτος τούτους πολλὰ καταμεμψάμενος. εὐθὺς οὖν  
*slowness them much having-reproached at-once then*  
 ἀμφὶ τὸν οἶκον τοῦ Ἰβηρίτζη γενομένων καταλαμβάνει  
*about the house — of-Iberitzes them-having-come reaches(-them)*  
 Νικηφόρος ὁ Παλαιολόγος λέγων “ὁ βασιλεὺς ὑμῖν  
*Nikephoros the Palaiologos saying the emperor to-you*  
 τάδε μηνύει· γέρων μὲν ἐγὼ ἤδη καὶ μόνος μῆθ’ υἱὸν  
*this announces old indeed I already and alone neither son*  
 κεκτημένος μῆτ’ ἀδελφὸν μῆτε τινὰ τῶν γνησίων, καὶ  
*having nor brother nor any of-the kin and*  
 εἰ βούλει,” πρὸς τὸν ἀρτιφανῆ βασιλέα τὸν Ἀλέξιον  
*if you-wish to the newly-appeared emperor — Alexios*  
 ἀποτείνων τὸν λόγον “σὺ γενοῦ μοι θετὸς υἱός. κἀγὼ οὐκ  
*directing the word you become to-me adopted son and-I not*  
 ἀφελουμαί τι ὧν ἐκάστῳ τῶν συστρατευομένων σοι  
*will-take-away anything of-what to-each of-the fellow-campaigners with-you*  
 πεφιλοτίμησαι οὐδέ τινός σοι ἐξουσίας ἐπικοινωνήσω  
*you-have-bestowed nor any to-you power I-will-share*  
 βασιλικῆς, ἀλλὰ μόνον ἔσομαι ψιλοῦ τοῦ τῆς βασιλείας  
*imperial but only I-shall-be bare the of-the empire*  
 μετέχων ὀνόματος καὶ τῆς εὐφημίας καὶ τῶν ἐρυθρῶν  
*sharing name and the acclamation and the red*  
 πεδίων, ἔτι δὲ καὶ τοῦ διαναπαύεσθαι εἰς τὰ ἀνάκτορα.  
*sandals further and also the to-rest in the palace*  
 σοὶ δὲ ἡ τῶν τῆς βασιλείας πραγμάτων μελήσει  
*to-you and the of-the of-the empire affairs will-be-the-care*  
 πάντως διοίκησις.” πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Κομνηνοὶ ῥήματά  
*wholly management to these(-things) the Komnenoi words*

τινα συγκαταθέσεως ἐμφαντικὰ ἐνέφαινον· ἅπερ ἐνωτισθεὶς  
*some of-assent indicative showed which having-heard*  
 ὁ καῖσαρ φθάνει τάχος πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἐπαπειλούμενος  
*the caesar arrives quickly to them threatening*  
 καὶ πρὸς τὰ βασιλεία κατεπείγων. ὥς δὲ δεξιόθεν  
*and to the palace urging when and from-the-right*  
 τῆς αὐλίδος εἰσῆι, ἐξελθόντες οἱ Κομνηνοὶ συναντῶσι  
*of-the court he-came-in having-gone-out the Komnenoi meet*  
 πεζεύοντι αὐτῷ· ὁ δὲ πολλὰ τούτους ἐμέμφετο. ἀτενίσας  
*on-foot him he and much them reproached having-looked*  
 δ' ἐν τῷ εἰσιέναι καὶ τὸν Παλαιολόγον Νικηφόρον  
*and in the entering also — Palaiologos Nikephoros*  
 θεασάμενος ἀπὸ τῆς λαϊᾶς αὐθις εἰσερχόμενον “τί πρὸς  
*having-beheld from the left again coming-in what to*  
 τὰ ἐνταῦθα;” φησὶ “καὶ τί βουλόμενος ἦκεις,  
*the(-things) here he-says and what wishing have-you-come*  
 συμπένθερε;” ὁ δὲ “τελέσων μὲν, ὥς ἔοικεν, οὐδέν, τὰς  
*fellow-father-in-law he and about-to-accomplish indeed as it-seems nothing the*  
 δὲ αὐτὰς ταῖς πρῶην καὶ αὐθις ἤκω τοῖς Κομνηνοῖς  
*and same(-messages) with-the earlier(-ones) also again I-come to-the Komnenoi*  
 κομίσων παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἀγγελίας. διενίστατο  
*about-to-bring from the autocrat messages insisted*  
 γὰρ ὁ βασιλεὺς φυλάξαι τὰ ὑπεσχημένα καὶ ὥς νιῶ  
*for the emperor to-keep the(-things) promised and as son*  
 μὲν χρῆσασθαι τῷ Ἀλεξίῳ ἐφ' ᾧ τὴν αὐτοκράτορα  
*indeed to-treat — Alexios for which the autocratic*  
 ἀρχὴν αὐτὸν ἀναδήσασθαι καὶ τὰ τῆς βασιλείας  
*rule him to-put-on and the(-things) of-the empire*  
 κατὰ τὸ αὐτῷ διοικεῖν βουλευτόν, ἐκείνον δὲ μόνου τοῦ  
*according-to the to-him to-manage wished him and alone of-the*  
 τῆς βασιλείας μετέχειν ὀνόματος καὶ τῶν ἐρυθρῶν πεδῖλων  
*of-the empire to-share name and of-the red sandals*

καὶ τῆς κοινῆς ἀλουργίδος καὶ τοῦ περὶ τὰ βασιλεια  
*and of-the common purple and of-the in the palace*  
 διαναπαύεσθαι γέροντά τε ἤδη ὄντα καὶ ῥαστώνης  
*to-rest old both already being and of-ease*  
 δεόμενον.” εὐθὺς δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν δριμύ ἐνατενίσας καὶ τὰς  
*needing at-once and to him sharply having-gazed and the*  
 ὀφρῦς ἐπισυνάξας αὐτῷ φησιν “ἀπελθὼν ἀπάγγειλον  
*brows having-drawn-together to-him says having-gone-away report*  
 τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὡς ταῦτα ἦσαν ἂν συμφορώτατα πρὸ τοῦ  
*to-the emperor that these(-things) were — most-expedient before the*  
 τὴν πόλιν ἀλῶναι· τὸ δ’ ἐντεῦθεν χώραν ὅλως οὐκ ἔχει  
*the city to-be-taken the and thereupon place at-all not has*  
 τὰ τῆς πρεσβείας. γέρων δὲ ἤδη ὦν ὑπέξίστασο  
*the(-things) of-the embassy old and already being stand-aside*  
 τοῦ θρόνου καὶ τῆς σαυτοῦ φρόντισον σωτηρίας.” ἀλλὰ  
*from-the throne and of-the your-own take-thought safety but*  
 ταῦτα μὲν ὁ καῖσαρ· ὁ δέ γε Βορίλος τὴν τούτων  
*these(-things) indeed the caesar — but at-least Borilos the their*  
 μεμαθηκῶς εἰσέλευσιν καὶ ὡς ὁ ὑπ’ αὐτοὺς στρατὸς  
*having-learned entry and how the under them army*  
 ἀπανταχοῦ σκεδασθεῖς περὶ τὴν λείαν ἐνασχολεῖται καὶ τῆς  
*everywhere having-scattered about the booty is-occupied and in-the*  
 τῶν λαφύρων συλλογῆς ὅλος γεγένηται (οὔτοι δὲ μετὰ  
*of-the spoils collecting wholly has-become they and with*  
 τῶν ἐξ αἵματος καὶ ἐξ ἀγχιστείας προσηκόντων αὐτοῖς  
*those from blood and from affinity related to-them*  
 καὶ μετρίων ὀθνείων κατελείφθησαν), ἀντικαταστήσαναι  
*and few strangers had-been-left to-stand-against*  
 διέγνω τούτοις λίαν εὐχειρώτοις οὔσι διὰ τὸν τοῦ  
*resolved them very easy-to-handle being because-of the of-the*  
 στρατοῦ σκεδασμόν. τοίνυν καὶ συναγαγὼν τοὺς ἐπὶ τῶν  
*army scattering therefore and having-gathered those on the*

ὤμων τὰ ξίφη κραδαίνοντας ἅπαντας, καὶ ὅποσοι ἐκ τοῦ  
*shoulders the swords brandishing all and as-many-as from —*  
 Χώματος ὥρμητο, ἀπὸ τοῦ Κωνσταντινίου φόρου μέχρι  
*Choma had-come from — of-Constantine forum as-far-as*  
 καὶ τοῦ λεγομένου Μιλίου καὶ ἄνωθεν μετ' εὐταξίας ὅτι  
*even the so-called Milion and beyond with order as*  
 πολλῆς στοιχηδὸν αὐτοὺς συνέταξεν· οἱ δὲ συνησπικότες  
*much in-ranks them drew-up they and having-locked-shields*  
 ἴσταντο πρὸς μάχην παρεσκευασμένοι καὶ ἀτρεμοῦντες  
*stood for battle prepared and keeping-still*  
 τέως. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ τηλικαῦτα πατριάρχης χρηματίζων  
*for-the-time since and the then patriarch serving*  
 ἱεροπρεπῆς τῷ ὄντι ἀκτήμων καὶ πᾶν εἶδος ἀσκήσεως,  
*priestly in-the reality without-possession and every form of-asceticism*  
 ἥπερ οἱ ἐν ἐρημίαις καὶ ὄρεσιν ἐνδιαιτώμενοι τῶν πάλαι  
*as those in deserts and mountains living of-the of-old*  
 πατέρων, διεληλυθὼς κατηξίωτο προορατικοῦ καὶ  
*fathers having-gone-through had-been-deemed-worthy of-foresight and*  
 θείου χαρίσματος πολλά τε πολλάκις προειπὼν καὶ  
*divine gift many(-things) both often having-foretold and*  
 μηδέποτε διαψευσάμενος καὶ κανὼν καὶ τύπος ἀρετῆς  
*never having-been-false and rule and model of-virtue*  
 τοῖς μετ' αὐτὸν χρηματίσας οὐδὲ τὰ τῷ Βοτανειάτῃ  
*to-those after him having-been not-even the(-things) — to-Botaneiates*  
 συμπεσόντα παντάπασι ἀγνοήσας ἐφαίνετο. ἀλλ' εἴτε ἐκ  
*having-befallen altogether not-knowing appeared but whether from*  
 θείας ἐπιπνοίας εἴτε καὶ τοῦ καίσαρος ὑποθεμένου (ἐλέγετο  
*divine inspiration or also the caesar having-suggested it-was-said*  
 γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο) καὶ πάλαι φιλίως πρὸς αὐτὸν διακειμένου  
*for also this also long-ago friendly toward him being-disposed*  
 διὰ τὸ ὕψος τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀρετῆς, ξυμβούλευε τῷ βασιλεῖ  
*because-of the height of-the his virtue advised the emperor*

ὑπεκστῆναι τοῦ βασιλείου θρόνου “μὴ χώρει” λέγων  
*to-stand-down from-the imperial throne not go be-saying*  
 “πρὸς ἐμφυλίους πολέμους μὴτ’ ἀντίβαινε θεοῦ προστάξει.  
*to civil wars nor oppose God’s command*  
 αἵμασι Χριστιανῶν μὴ θέλε μανθῆναι τὴν πόλιν, ἀλλ’  
*with-bloods of-Christians not wish to-be-defiled the city but*  
 εἴξας θεοῦ βουλήσει ὑπέκστηθι τοῦ μέσου.” πείθεται  
*having-yielded of-God to-will withdraw from-the midst is-persuaded*  
 τοῖς τοῦ ἀρχιερέως λόγοις ὁ βασιλεὺς. δεδιὼς δὲ τὸ  
*by-the of-the high-priest words the emperor fearing and the*  
 τοῦ στρατοῦ ἀτάσθαλον περιζώννυται καὶ κάτεισιν ὡς  
*of-the army recklessness girds-himself and goes-down as*  
 πρὸς τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ μεγάλην ἐκκλησίαν ἀπονενευκώς.  
*to the — of-God great church having-turned-aside*  
 πλήρης δὲ συγχύσεως ὢν λέληθεν ἡμφιεσμένος ἔτι τὴν  
*full and of-confusion being he-did-not-notice having-put-on still the*  
 βασιλεῦσι πρέπουσαν στολὴν. ὁ δὲ Βορίλος ἐπιστραφεὶς  
*for-emperors fitting robe — and Borilos having-turned*  
 καὶ ἀψάμενος τῶν περὶ τὸν βραχίονα κεκολλημένων  
*and having-touched the about the arm fastened*  
 διὰ μαργάρων πέπλων παραλύνει τηνικαῦτα τῆς ἐσθήτος  
*with pearls robes strips then of-the garment*  
 φάμενος μετὰ τινος μυκτῆρος καὶ σεσηρότος ἥθους ὡς  
*saying with some sneer and grinning character that*  
 “τοιούτου ἡμῖν ἐπ’ ἀληθείας προσήκει νῦν”. ὁ δὲ εἰς  
*such(-a-thing) us in truth befits now he and into*  
 τὸν μέγαν τοῦ θεοῦ νεῶν τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ σοφίας εἰσελθὼν  
*the great — of-God temple of-the — of-God wisdom having-entered*  
 ἐγκαρτερῶν τέως ἦν ἐν αὐτῷ.  
*remaining for-the-time was in it*



# BOOK III

## XXXIII · THE MONK BOTANEIATES; MARIA AND HER SON

*The Komnenoi take the palace and send Michael, later logothete, to take Botaneiates to the Peribleptos, where he is tonsured; he says only the loss of meat troubles him. The empress Maria stays in the palace with her son Constantine, fearing for him. Anna, raised with her, defends her against rumor and describes the child's beauty. Alexios leaves his fifteen-year-old wife and her family in the lower palace and goes up to the Boukoleon, named for a stone lion seizing an ox.*

Οἱ δὲ Κομνηνοὶ τὰ βασιλεία καταλαβόντες παραχρῆμα  
*the and Komnenoi the palace having-seized immediately*  
 τὸν ἐπ' ἀνειψιᾷ γαμβρὸν αὐτῶν Μιχαήλ, ὃς ἐν ὑστέροις  
*the upon niece in-law their Michael who in later*  
 καιροῖς λογοθέτης τῶν σεκρέτων ἐχρημάτισε, πέμπουσι  
*times logothete of-the secreta served send*  
 πρὸς αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ ἀπελθὼν μετὰ τοῦ τηνικαῦτα ἐπάρχου  
*to him he and having-gone-away with the then eparch*  
 (ὁ Ῥαδηνὸς δὲ οὗτος ἦν) εἰσαγαγὼν τὸν βασιλέα εἰς  
*— Radenos and this was having-brought-in the emperor into*  
 ἀκάτιόν τι μικρὸν ἀπέρχεται μετ' αὐτοῦ εἰς τὴν τῆς  
*boat some small goes-away with him to the of-the*  
 Περιβλέπτου περιώνυμον μονήν· εἶτα τὸ μοναδικὸν αὐτῷ  
*Peribleptos famous monastery then the monastic to-him*  
 ἄμφω προτρέπονται ἀμφιάσασθαι σχῆμα. τοῦ δὲ ἐς νέωτα  
*both urge to-put-on habit he and for tomorrow*  
 τοῦτο ὑπερτιθεμένου οὗτοι δεδιότες ἔτι ἐν συγχύσει καὶ  
*this postponing they fearing still in confusion and*  
 ἀταξία τῶν πραγμάτων ὄντων, μή τι ἀπὸ τοῦ μέρους  
*disorder the affairs being lest something from the part*  
 τῶν δούλων ἐκείνων καὶ τῶν ἐκ τοῦ Χώματος αἰθῆς  
*of-the slaves those and of-those from — Choma again*

νεωτερισθῇ, κατηπειγμένως τὴν τῶν τριχῶν ἀποκοπὴν  
*should-be-stirred-up urgently the of-the hairs cutting-off*  
 αὐτῷ συνεβούλευον. καὶ πείθεται τούτοις καὶ τοῦ  
*to-him advised and he-is-persuaded by-them and of-the*  
 ἀγγελικοῦ τηνικαῦτα ἀξιούται σχήματος. οἷα τὰ τῆς  
*angelic then is-deemed-worthy habit such the(-ways) of-the*  
 τύχης· ὕψου μὲν αἶρει τὸν ἀνθρώπινον βίον, ὅτε ἐπιμειδιᾷ  
*fortune on-high indeed she-raises the human life when to-smile*  
 αὐτῷ θελήσειε, καὶ διάδημα βασιλικὸν αὐτῷ περιτίθῃσι  
*on-it she-wishes and diadem imperial on-it puts*  
 καὶ περιπορφύρει τὰ πέδιλα· ἐπὰν δὲ τὰς ὀφρῦς τούτοις  
*and makes-purple the sandals when and the brows at-them*  
 ἐπισυνάξῃ, ἀντὶ τῆς πορφυρίδος καὶ τῶν στεμμάτων τὰ  
*she-draws-together instead-of the purple and the crowns the*  
 μέλανα ῥάκη καταμφιέννυσιν. ὅπερ δὴ καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ  
*black rags clothes-in which indeed also to-the emperor*  
 Βοτανειάτῃ ξυμβέβηκεν. ἐρωτηθεὶς δὲ παρὰ τοῦ τῶν  
*Botaneiates has-happened having-been-asked and by someone of-the*  
 συνήθων, εἰ εὐφόρως τὴν μεταβολὴν φέρει, φησὶν “ἡ  
*familiar(-friends) if easily the change he-bears he-says the*  
 τοῦ κρέως με μόνον ἀποχὴ ἀνιᾶ, τῶν δ' ἄλλων ὀλίγη  
*of-the meat me only abstinence grieves of-the and other(-things) little*  
 μοι ἢ φροντίς”. ἡ μέντοι βασιλὶς Μαρία συνάμα τῷ  
*to-me the care the however empress Maria together with-the*  
 υἱῷ Κωνσταντίνῳ, ὃν ἐκ τοῦ προβεβασιλευκότος Μιχαὴλ  
*son Constantine whom from the having-reigned-before Michael*  
 ἔσχε τοῦ Δούκα, ἔτι τοῖς βασιλείοις προσέμενε δεδοικυῖα  
*she-had the Doukas still in-the palace stayed fearing*  
 περὶ ξανθῷ Μενελάῳ κατὰ τὴν ποίησιν πρόφασιν  
*for fair-haired Menelaos according-to the poetry pretext*  
 ἀδιάβλητον τῆς καρτερίας τὴν συγγένειαν ἔχουσα, καὶ  
*irreproachable of-the endurance the kinship having even-if*

τινες ὑπὸ φθόνου παρακεκινημένοι ἄλλα τινὰ περὶ  
*some by envy having-been-moved other some(-things) about*  
 αὐτῆς ὑπετόπαζον. προεφθάκει γὰρ τὸν μὲν γαμβρόν,  
*her suspected she-had-already for the(-one) indeed son-in-law*  
 τὸν δὲ θετὸν υἱὸν εἰσποιήσασθαι. ταῦτα δὲ ἀνέπεισεν  
*the(-other) and adopted son to-adopt these(-things) and persuaded*  
 αὐτὴν οἰκονομῆσαι οὐκ αἰτία τις κατὰ τοὺς πολλοὺς  
*her to-manage not cause some according-to the many*  
 ἐπίπονος οὐδὲ τὸ τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐκείνων ἐπαγωγὸν καὶ  
*blameworthy nor the of-the men those attractiveness and*  
 εὐπρόσιτον, ἀλλὰ τὸ ἐπ' ἀλλοτρίας εἶναι, μὴ συγγενῇ, μὴ  
*accessibility but the on foreign(-soil) to-be not kinsman not*  
 συνήθῃ, μηδένα τὸ παράπαν ὁμόχθονα κεκτημένην. οὐκ  
*familiar none the at-all fellow-countryman having not*  
 ἤθελεν οὖν ἀσυντάκτως ἐκεῖθεν ἐκστῆναι δεδοικυῖα, μὴ τι  
*she-wished then without-arrangement from-there to-withdraw fearing lest some*  
 κακὸν συμβαίῃ τῷ παιδί, ἃν ἐκεῖθεν ἐξέλθῃ πρὸ τοῦ  
*evil should-befall to-the child if from-there he-should-go-out before the*  
 ἐχέγγυόν τι ἀσφαλείας λαβεῖν, ὅποια ἐν ταῖς μεταπτώσεσι  
*pledge some of-safety to-receive such-as in the overturns*  
 τῶν βασιλέων συμβαίνειν εἴωθεν. ἦν γὰρ τὸ παιδίον καὶ  
*of-the emperors to-happen is-wont was for the child also*  
 ἄλλως ὠραῖον καὶ ἔτι νέον, οὐπω τὸν ἕβδομον χρόνον  
*otherwise handsome and still young not-yet the seventh year*  
 ὑπερελάσαν, καὶ (οὐ νέμεσις, εἰ τοὺς ἐμοὺς ἐπαινοῖν  
*having-passed and not indignation if the my(-kin) I-praise*  
 ὑπὸ τῆς τῶν πραγμάτων ἀναγκαζομένη φύσεως) ἡδὺ μὲν  
*by the of-the affairs being-compelled nature sweet indeed*  
 οὐκ ἐν λόγοις μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν παντοίαις κινήσεσι  
*not in words only but also in all-kinds-of movements*  
 καὶ περιστροφαῖς παιγνίων ἀπαράμιλλον, ὥς οἱ  
*and turnings of-games matchless as the(-people)*

τότε παρόντες ὕστερον ἔλεγον, ξανθὸν καὶ λευκὸν ὥσπερ  
*then present later said fair and white like*  
 γάλα, ἐρυθήματος μεστόν, ὅπου δέοι, καὶ ὁποῖον τὰ τῶν  
*milk of-redness full where it-needed and like the of-the*  
 καλύκων ἄρτι ἔξαστράπτοντα ῥόδα· οἱ δὲ ὀφθαλμοὶ οὐ  
*buds just flashing roses the and eyes not*  
 λευκοί, ἀλλ' ἱέρακος ἐοικότες καὶ λάμπουντες ὑπὸ ταῖς  
*white but hawk's like and shining under the*  
 ὀφρύσιν ὥσπερ ἐν χρυσῇ σφενδόνη· κἀντεῦθεν ποικίλαις  
*brows as in golden setting and-thence with-varied*  
 τέρψεσι τέρπον τοὺς ὀρώντας οὐράνιόν τε καὶ οὐκ  
*delights delighting those seeing heavenly both and not*  
 ἐπίγειον κάλλος δοκοῦν καὶ τὸ ὅλον, εἶπεν ἄν τις  
*earthly beauty seeming and the whole would-have-said — someone*  
 ἰδών, ὁποῖον τὸν Ἑρωτα γράφουσιν. αὕτη ἡ ἀληθὴς  
*having-seen such-as — Eros they-paint this the true*  
 αἰτία τῆς εἰς τὰ βασίλεια τῆς βασιλίδος ἐγκαρτερίας.  
*cause of-the in the palace of-the empress endurance*  
 ἐγὼ γὰρ καὶ ἄλλως φύσει τὸ λογοποιεῖν καὶ καινὰ  
*I for also otherwise by-nature the to-tell-stories and new*  
 τινα ἀναπλάττειν ἀποστρέφομαι εἰδυῖα τοῦτο σύνηθες  
*some(-things) to-fabricate turn-away-from knowing this customary*  
 εἶναι τοῖς πολλοῖς, καὶ μᾶλλον ὀπηνίκα ὑπὸ φθόνου καὶ  
*to-be for-the many and more when by envy and*  
 χαιρεκακίας ἀλίσκουντο, καὶ οὐ ταχὺ ταῖς διαβολαῖς  
*malice they-are-seized and not quickly with-the slanders*  
 συμφέρομαι τῶν πολλῶν· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλοθεν τὴν ἐν τοῖς  
*agree of-the many but also from-elsewhere the in the*  
 τοιούτοις ἀσφάλειαν ἔσχον ἐκ παιδαρίου συνανατραφέϊσα  
*such(-things) assurance I-had from childhood reared-together*  
 τῇ βασιλίδι καὶ οὐπω τὸν ὀγδοὸν ὑπερελάσασα χρόνον.  
*with-the empress and not-yet the eighth having-passed year*

πολὺ δὲ τὸ περὶ ἐμὲ φίλτρον ἔχουσα τῶν ἀπορρήτων  
*much and the toward me affection having of-the secrets*  
 πάντων κεκοινώνηκε. καὶ πολλῶν μὲν καὶ ἄλλων περὶ  
*all she-shared and many indeed also others about*  
 τούτων λεγόντων ἀκήκοα καὶ πρὸς ἄλλους διαφερομένων,  
*these speaking I-have-heard and with others disagreeing*  
 τῶν μὲν οὕτως, τῶν δὲ οὕτως ἐκλαμβανομένων τὰ  
*some indeed thus others and thus taking the(-things)*  
 τότε πραχθέντα, ἐκάστου πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν τῆς ψυχῆς  
*then done each according-to the own of-the soul*  
 κατάστασιν καὶ ὥς πρὸς αὐτὴν εὐνοίας ἢ μίσους εἶχε,  
*condition and as toward her goodwill or hatred he-had*  
 καὶ οὐ πάντας τῆς αὐτῆς ἐώρων γνώμης· ἠκηκόειν δὲ  
*and not all of-the same I-saw mind I-had-heard and*  
 πολλάκις καὶ αὐτῆς διηγουμένης, ὅποσα ξυμβέβηκεν αὐτῇ  
*often also herself narrating as-much-as had-happened to-her*  
 καὶ εἰς οἶον φόβον καὶ μᾶλλον περὶ τοῦ παιδὸς  
*and into what-kind-of fear and more about the child*  
 ἐμπεπτῶκει, ὁπνίκα ὁ βασιλεὺς Νικηφόρος τὴν βασιλείαν  
*she-had-fallen when the emperor Nikephoros the empire*  
 ἀπετίθετο. καὶ κατὰ γε ἐμὲ κριτὴν καὶ τοὺς πολλοὺς  
*laid-down and according-to at-least me judge and the many*  
 τῶν ἀρίστων καὶ ἀληθείας ἐπιμελουμένων ὁ τοῦ παιδὸς  
*of-the best and of-truth caring the of-the child*  
 πόθος αὐτὴν ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις πρὸς ὀλίγον τῷ τότε  
*longing her in the palace for little at-the then(-time)*  
 κατέσχηκεν. ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν περὶ τῆς βασιλίδος Μαρίας  
*has-held but the(-things) indeed about the empress Maria*  
 τοσαῦτα· ὁ δὲ γε τέως τῶν σκήπτρων δραξάμενος  
*so-much the and at-least then the scepters having-grasped*  
 Ἀλέξιος ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ εἴσω τῶν βασιλείων γενόμενος  
*Alexios the my father inside the palace having-come*

τὴν μὲν ἰδίαν σύνευνον πεντεκαδέκατον ἔτος ἄγουσαν  
*the indeed own wife fifteenth year leading*  
 σὺν ταῖς ἀδελφαῖς καὶ τῇ μητρὶ καὶ καίσαρι τῷ πρὸς  
*with the sisters and the mother and caesar the on*  
 πατρὸς αὐτῆς πάππῳ ἐν τῷ κάτω καταλελοίπει παλατίῳ.  
*father's(-side) her grandfather in the lower had-left palace*  
 οὕτω γὰρ ἔφθασε καλεῖσθαι ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ τόπου θέσεως  
*thus for it-had-come to-be-called from the of-the place position*  
 τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν λαχόν. αὐτὸς δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἀδελφῶν  
*the name having-obtained he and with the brothers*  
 καὶ τῆς μητρὸς καὶ τῶν ἐξ ἀγχιστείας προσηκόντων  
*and the mother and the by affinity related*  
 αὐτῷ γαμβρῶν εἰς τὸ ὑπερκείμενον παλάτιον ἄνεισιν,  
*to-him sons-in-law to the upper palace goes-up*  
 ὃ καὶ Βουκολέων ἐπωνομάζεται ἐξ αἰτίας τοιαύτης. καὶ  
*which also Boukoleon is-named from cause such and*  
 γὰρ ἀγχοῦ τῶν τούτου τειχῶν λιμὴν δι' ἐγχορήγου καὶ  
*for near the its walls harbor of native-stone and*  
 μαρμάρων πάλαι τῶν χρόνων ὠκοδόμητο, ὅπου ὁ λίθινος  
*marbles in-the-old the times had-been-built where the stone*  
 λέων ζωργεῖ τὸν βούν. ἔχεται γὰρ τοῦ κέρως τοῦ βοῦς  
*lion seizes the ox it-clings for to-the horn of-the ox*  
 καὶ ἐξαυχενίσας αὐτὸν ἐμφύεται πως τῷ λαιμῷ.  
*and having-pulled-back-the-neck it fastens somehow on-the throat*  
 ἐξ οὗ δὴ καὶ Βουκολέων ὁ τόπος ὅλος ὠνόμασται  
*from which indeed also Boukoleon the place whole has-been-named*  
 τά τε ἐν ἡπείρῳ οἰκοδομήματα καὶ αὐτὸς δὴ ὁ λιμήν.  
*the both on land buildings and itself indeed the harbor*

*Rumor says Alexios will marry the empress Maria. When George Palaiologos has his fleet acclaim the emperor, the Komnenoi's men try to keep Irene's name out of it, and he retorts that he fought for Irene. The caesar John wins over the patriarch Kosmas and suggests Maria ask a written guarantee for herself and her son; he had once persuaded Botaneiates to marry her rather than Eudokia, and Anna praises her beauty. Kosmas crowns Alexios alone. The Komnenoi's mother, favoring the monk Eustratios Garidas, tries to ease Kosmas out, but he swears to crown Irene first, and does so seven days after Alexios' proclamation.*

Πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν, ὡς ἄνωθεν εἴρηται, τὴν τῆς βασιλίδος  
 many indeed then as above has-been-said the of-the empress  
 περὶ τὰ βασιλεία καρτερίαν ὑποπτεύοντες ὑπετονθόρυζον,  
 at the palace endurance suspecting muttered  
 ὡς εἰς κῆδος ταύτην ἀγαγέσθαι μέλλει ὁ νῦν  
 that into marriage her to-take is-about the(-one) now  
 τῆς βασιλείας ἐπιδραξάμενος. οἱ δὲ Δουκαὶ οὐδὲν μὲν  
 the empire having-grasped the but Doukai nothing indeed  
 τι τοιοῦτον ἐνενοοῦν (οὐ γὰρ συνεφέροντο ταῖς  
 at-all such thought not for they-were-carried-along with-the  
 τυχούσαις ἐννοίαις), ἀλλὰ τὴν τῆς μητρὸς τῶν Κομνηνῶν  
 chance notions but the of-the mother of-the Komnenoi  
 ἀπροφάσιστον κατ' αὐτῶν μῆνιν ἐκ μακροῦ γινώσκοντες  
 unconcealed against them wrath from long knowing  
 περιδεεῖς ἦσαν ὑποπτεύοντες αὐτήν, ὡς καὶ γὰρ πολλάκις  
 very-fearful were suspecting her as I-too often  
 διηγουμένων ἀκήκοα. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ὁ Παλαιολόγος Γεώργιος  
 (them)-narrating have-heard since and also — Palaiologos George  
 μετὰ τοῦ στόλου φθάσας τῆς εὐφημίας ἐξήρχεν, οἱ  
 with the fleet having-arrived the acclamation began the(-men)  
 περὶ τοὺς Κομνηνοὺς προκύπτοντες ἄνωθεν κατεσιγάζον,  
 around the Komnenoi leaning-out from-above silenced(-them)

μὴ τὴν Εἰρήνην τῷ Ἀλεξίῳ καὶ τῇ εὐφημία συνάψαντας  
*not — Irene — with-Alexios also-in the acclamation having-joined*  
 κοινῶς εὐφημεῖν. ὁ δ' ἐμβριμησάμενος κάτωθεν αὐτοῖς  
*in-common to-acclaim he and having-snorted from-below to-them*  
 φησιν “οὐ δι' ὑμᾶς τὸν τοσοῦτον ἀγῶνα ἀνεδυσάμην  
*says not because-of you the so-great contest took-up*  
 αὐτός, ἀλλὰ δι' ἣν φατε Εἰρήνην”. ἅμα δὲ  
*myself but because-of whom you-say Irene at-the-same-time and*  
 καὶ τοῖς ναυτικοῖς παρεκελεύετο Εἰρήνην σὺν τῷ Ἀλεξίῳ  
*also to-the sailors he-ordered Irene with — Alexios*  
 ἀνευφημεῖν. ταῦτα ταῖς μὲν ψυχαῖς τῶν Δουκῶν πολὺν  
*to-acclaim these(-things) into-the indeed souls of-the Doukai much*  
 ἐνέβαλε θόρυβον, τοῖς δέ γε μωμοσκόποις λοιδορίας  
*cast tumult to-the and at-least fault-finders of-abuse*  
 ὕλη κατὰ τῆς βασιλίδος Μαρίας ἐγένετο. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς  
*matter against the empress Maria became the and emperor*  
 Ἀλέξιος μὲν ἐν νῷ τοιοῦτόν τι βαλλόμενος (καὶ πῶς  
*Alexios not-even in mind such something putting and how*  
 γάρ;), ἀλλὰ τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἡγεμονίαν παραλαβὼν,  
*for but the of-the Romans dominion having-taken-over*  
 ἀνὴρ ἐν πᾶσι δραστήριος, εὐθὺς τῶν ὅλων πραγμάτων  
*man in all(-things) active at-once of-the whole affairs*  
 γίνεται καί, ὥς ἂν εἴπῃ τις, ὥς ἀπὸ κέντρου τῶν  
*becomes and as — might-say someone as from center of-the*  
 ἀπάντων κατάρχεται. ἀνίσχοντος γὰρ ἡλίου εἰς τὰ βασίλεια  
*all begins rising for sun into the palace*  
 εἰσελθὼν, πρὶν ἢ τὸν ἀπὸ τῆς στάσεως κοινίσσαλον  
*having-entered before than the from the revolt dust*  
 ἀποτινάξασθαι καὶ τὸ σῶμα διαναπαῦσαι, εὐθὺς τῆς τῶν  
*to-shake-off and the body to-rest at-once of-the of-the*  
 στρατιωτικῶν ὅλος ἐγεγόνει φροντίδος. καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν  
*military(-things) wholly had-become care and the brother*



Ἰσαάκιον ὡς πατέρα σεβόμενος κοινωνὸν εἶχεν ἐν πᾶσιν,  
*Isaac as father revering partner had in all(-things)*  
 ἅμα καὶ τὴν μητέρα, ἐν ταῖς τῶν κοινῶν διοικήσεσιν  
*at-once also the mother in the of-the common(-affairs) administrations*  
 ὑπερείδοντας, κἂν τὸ μεγαλόνουν αὐτοῦ καὶ δραστήριον οὐ  
*supporting even-if the high-mindedness his and activity not*  
 πρὸς μίαν βασιλείας διοίκησιν, ἀλλὰ πολλαῖς καὶ διαφόροις  
*to one of-empire administration but to-many and different*  
 ἐξήρκει. αὐτὸς δὲ πρὸς τὸ κατεπεῖγον ἀπονενευκῶς ἦν τὸ  
*sufficed he and to the urgent(-matter) inclined was the*  
 τῆς ἡμέρας ἐπίλοιπον καὶ τὴν ὅλην νύκτα ἐς φροντίδα  
*of-the day remainder and the whole night in care*  
 καταναλώσας τοῦ στρατιωτικοῦ πλήθους σκεδασθέντος εἰς  
*having-spent of-the military multitude having-scattered into*  
 τὸ Βυζάντιον ἅμα καὶ ἀτάκτοις ὁρμαῖς κεχρημένον, ὅπως  
*— Byzantium at-once also disorderly impulses using how*  
 μὲν αὐτοὺς θορύβου ἄτερ τῆς ἀτάκτου ἀνακόψῃ ὁρμῆς,  
*indeed them uproar without from-the disorderly he-might-check impulse*  
 ἀφροντιστίαν δὲ τῷ κοινῷ τοῦ λοιποῦ περιποιήσεται.  
*freedom-from-care and to-the common(-body) for-the rest he-might-secure*  
 ἐδεδίδει γὰρ καὶ ἄλλως τὸ ἱταμόν τῶν στρατιωτῶν, καὶ  
*he-feared for also otherwise the recklessness of-the soldiers and*  
 μᾶλλον ὅσῳ περ ἐκ διαφόρων συνείλεκτο, μὴ καὶ  
*more by-as-much-as from different(-peoples) it-had-been-gathered lest also*  
 κατ' αὐτοῦ χεῖρον διανοήσαιτο. ὁ δὲ καῖσαρ Ἰωάννης  
*against him worse they-should-plan the but caesar John*  
 ὁ Δούκας βουλόμενος τάχιον τὴν βασιλίδαν Μαρίαν  
*the Doukas wishing more-quickly the empress Maria*  
 ἀποσκευάσασθαι καὶ τῶν βασιλείων ἀπελάσαι ὑποψίας  
*to-get-rid-of and from-the palace to-drive suspicion*  
 τε τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀπαλλάξαι ψευδοὺς ἔθην μὲν  
*and the many to-free false on-the-one-side indeed*

τὸν πατριάρχην Κοσμᾶν παντοίως ὑπεποιεῖτο ἀξιῶν  
*the patriarch Kosmas in-every-way won-over asking*  
 τὰ ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν φρονεῖν καὶ τοῖς λόγοις τῆς τῶν  
*the(-things) for them to-favor and to-the words of-the of-the*  
 Κομνηνῶν μητρὸς μηδαμῶς ὑπέειπεν, ἐκείθεν δὲ τῇ  
*Komnenoi mother in-no-way to-yeild on-the-other-side and to-the*  
 βασιλίδι Μαρίας νουνεχῶς ὑπετίθετο ἔγγραφόν τι τοῦ  
*empress Maria sensibly he-suggested written something of-the*  
 αὐτοκράτορος ἐξαιτησαμένην αὐτῆς τε χάριν καὶ τῆς τοῦ  
*autocrat having-requested her-own both for-the-sake and of-the of-the*  
 παιδὸς ἀσφαλείας οὕτως ἐκείθεν ὑποχωρῆσαι Πάτροκλον  
*child safety thus from-there to-withdraw Patroklos*  
 πρόφασιν ταύτ' ἐσχηκώς. ἔφθασε γὰρ ἀντιλαβεῖσθαι  
*pretext these(-things) having he-had-already for to-champion*  
 ταύτης, ὅπνῃκα ὁ βασιλεὺς Μιχαὴλ ὁ Δούκας τῆς  
*her when the emperor Michael the Doukas from-the*  
 βασιλείας ἐξέστη, καὶ τῷ μετ' αὐτὸν βεβασιλευκότι  
*empire stood-down and to-the after him having-reigned*  
 Νικηφόρῳ τῷ Βοτανειάτῃ συμβουλευσάσθαι συναφθῆναι  
*Nikephoros the Botaneiates to-advise to-be-joined*  
 ταύτῃ πρὸς γάμου κοινωνίαν, ὅτι ἐξ ἀλλοδαπῆς ἐστὶ καὶ  
*to-her for of-marriage partnership that from foreign(-land) she-is and*  
 συγγενῶν ὄχλος οὐ προσῆν αὐτῇ, δι' ὧν ὁ βασιλεὺς  
*of-kinsmen crowd not was-with her through whom the emperor*  
 ὀχλοῖτο, περὶ τε τοῦ γένους καὶ τῆς τοῦ σώματος  
*might-be-troubled about both the family and the of-the body*  
 ὥρας ἀπαγγέλλων πολλὰ καὶ πολλάκις ἐπαινῶν αὐτήν.  
*bloom reporting many(-things) and often praising her*  
 καὶ γὰρ ἦν εὐμήκης μὲν τὴν ἡλικίαν καθαπερεῖ  
*and for she-was tall indeed in-the stature like*  
 κυπάριττος, λευκὴ δὲ τὸ σῶμα ὥσει χιῶν, πρόσωπον  
*cypress white and in-the body as snow face*

κύκλον μὲν οὐκ ἀπαρτίζον, τὸ δὲ χρώμα δι' ὅλου ἄνθος  
*circle indeed not completing the and color through whole flower*  
 ἡρινὸν ἢ ῥόδον ἀντικρυς. τὰς δὲ τῶν ὀμμάτων αὐγὰς  
*of-spring or rose outright the and of-the eyes rays*  
 τίς ἀνθρώπων ἐξείποι; ὄφρ' ὕπερανεστηκυῖα καὶ πυρσὴ,  
*who of-men could-express brow raised-high and golden-red*  
 βλέμμα χαροπόν. ζωγράφου μὲν οὖν χεὶρ τὰ τῶν  
*gaze bright of-painter indeed then hand the(-things) of-the*  
 ἀνθέων πολλάκις ἐμιμήσατο χρώματα, ὅποσα ὥραι φέρειν  
*flowers often imitated colors as-many-as seasons to-bring*  
 εἰώθασι, τὸ δὲ τῆς βασιλίδος κάλλος καὶ ἡ ἐπιλάμπουσα  
*are-wont the and of-the empress beauty and the shining-upon*  
 αὐτῇ χάρις καὶ τὸ τῶν ἡθῶν ἐπαγωγόν τε καὶ εὖχαρι  
*her grace and the of-the manners attractiveness both and charm*  
 ὑπὲρ λόγον καὶ τέχνην ἐφαίνετο· οὐκ Ἀπελλῆς, οὐ Φειδίας  
*beyond word and art appeared not Apelles not Pheidias*  
 οὐδέ τις τῶν ἀγαλματοποιῶν τοιοῦτόν ποτε παρήγαγεν  
*nor any of-the sculptors such ever produced*  
 ἄγαλμα. καὶ ἡ μὲν τῆς Γοργοῦς κεφαλὴ λίθους ἐξ  
*statue and the indeed of-the Gorgon head stones from*  
 ἀνθρώπων τοὺς ὁρῶντας ἐποίει, ὡς λέγεται, τὴν δὲ  
*men those seeing made as is-said her and*  
 ἰδὼν ἂν τις βαδίζουσιν ἢ αἴφνης ὑπαντιάσας ἐκεχίνοι  
*having-seen — anyone walking or suddenly having-met would-gape*  
 τε καὶ ἐπὶ ταυτοῦ σχήματος, ἐφ' ᾧ ἔτυχεν ὦν, ἴστατο  
*both and on the-same posture in which he-happened being would-stand*  
 ἐννεός, ὡς ἀφηρηθῆναι τηλικαῦτα δοκεῖν καὶ ψυχὴν καὶ  
*speechless as to-have-been-deprived then to-seem both soul and*  
 διάνοιαν. ἀναλογίαν γὰρ τοιαύτην μελῶν καὶ μερῶν, τοῦ  
*mind proportion for such of-limbs and parts of-the*  
 ὅλου πρὸς τὰ μέρη καὶ τούτων πρὸς τὸ ὅλον, οὐδεὶς  
*whole to the parts and of-these to the whole no-one*

οὐδέπω τοιαύτην ἐν ἀνθρώπου σώματι ἐθεάσατο· ἄγαλμα  
*ever-yet such in man's body beheld statue*  
 ἔμψυχον καὶ ἀνθρώποις φιλοκάλοις ἐράσμιον. Ἴμερος  
*living and for-men beauty-loving lovely Desire*  
 γὰρ ἄντικρυς ἦν σωματωθεὶς οἷον εἰς τόνδε τὸν  
*for outright she-was embodied as-it-were into this the*  
 περίγειον κόσμον. τούτοις οὖν ὁ καῖσαρ συγχρησάμενος  
*earthly world these then the caesar having-used*  
 τότε τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως καταμαλάττει καὶ χειροῦται  
*then the of-the emperor softens and subdues*  
 ψυχὴν, καὶ πολλοὶ αὐτῷ συνεβούλευον τὴν βασιλῖδα  
*soul even-if many him advised the empress*  
 ἀγαγέσθαι Εὐδοκίαν, περὶ ἧς ὑπετονθόρυζόν τινες, ὡς τῆς  
*to-take Eudokia about whom muttered some that of-the*  
 βασιλείας καὶ αἰθῖς ἰμερομένη τὸν Βοτανειάτην, ὅπηνίκα  
*empire also again longing — Botaneiates when*  
 τὴν Δάμαλιν κατέλαβεν ἐπειγόμενος εἰς τὴν βασιλείον  
*— Damalis he-reached hastening into the imperial*  
 ἀναχθῆναι περιωπὴν, διὰ γραμμάτων ἐσφετερίζετο· οἱ  
*to-be-raised eminence through letters she-tried-to-win others*  
 δέ, ὅτι οὐ χάριν ἑαυτῆς, ἀλλὰ τῆς ἰδίας θυγατρὸς  
*and that not for-the-sake of-herself but of-the own daughter*  
 Ζωῆς τῆς πορφυρογεννήτου· καὶ τάχα διηνύκει ἂν  
*Zoe the born-in-the-purple and perhaps would-have-accomplished —*  
 τὸ σπουδαζόμενον, εἰ μὴ τις τῶν θεραπόντων τῆς  
*the(-thing) striven-for if not one of-the servants from-the*  
 ὁρμῆς ταύτην ἀνέκοιψε, Λέων ἐκτομίας ὁ Κυδωνιάτης,  
*impulse her had-checked Leo eunuch the Kydoniates*  
 πολλὰ καὶ καίρια πρὸς αὐτὴν εἰρηκώς, ἃ κατὰ  
*many(-things) and timely(-things) to her having-said which in*  
 μέρος ἀπαγγέλλειν ἡμῖν οὐ θέμις φύσει τὸ διαβάλλειν  
*detail to-report for-us not is-right by-nature the to-slander*

ἀποστρεφόμενοις, τοῖς δὲ τῶν τοιούτων λογοποιοῖς  
 turning-from for-the and of-the such(-things) story-tellers  
 πάντως καὶ περὶ τούτων μελήσει. ὁ μέντοι καῖσαρ  
 surely also about these will-be-the-care the however caesar  
 Ἰωάννης παντοῶς αὐτὸν μετελθὼν πέρας δέδωκε τῇ  
 John in-every-way him having-pursued end gave to-the  
 βουλῇ πείσας συναφθῆναι τῇ βασιλίδι Μαρία, καθὼς  
 plan having-persuaded to-be-joined to-the empress Maria as  
 ὁ λόγος σαφέστερον φθάσας ἐδήλωσε, κἀντεῦθεν  
 the account more-clearly having-anticipated showed and-thence  
 παρρησίαν πολλὴν ἐσχέκει πρὸς αὐτήν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔν τισιν  
 frankness much he-had toward her since and in some  
 ἡμέραις ταύτ' ἐτελείτο, μὴ βουλομένων τῶν Κομνηνῶν  
 days these(-things) were-being-done not wishing the Komnenoi  
 ἀθρόον τῶν βασιλείων αὐτὴν ἀπελάσαι, ἅτε πολλῶν  
 suddenly from-the palace her to-drive as many  
 αὐτῆς εὐεργετημάτων τυχόντων παρ' ὅλον τὸν τῆς  
 her benefits having-received throughout whole the of-the  
 βασιλείας αὐτῆς χρόνον, οὐχ ἥττον δὲ καὶ δι' ἣν πρὸς  
 reign her time not less and also because-of which toward  
 αὐτὴν ἔσχον συνήθειαν τῇ προφάσει τῆς ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων  
 her they-had intimacy by-the occasion of-the from both  
 τῶν μερῶν ξυμπεσούσης συγγενείας, πολλοὶ ἐκ πολλῶν  
 the sides having-befallen kinship many from many  
 συνείροντο λόγοι νοημάτων διαφόρων ἐξαγγελτικοί, τῶν  
 were-strung-together words of-notions different announcing some  
 μὲν ἄλλως ἐκλαμβανομένων τὰ πραττόμενα, τῶν δὲ  
 indeed otherwise taking the(-things) being-done others and  
 ἑτέρως, ὡς ἕκαστος εὐνοίας ἢ μίσους εἶχε τὰ πρὸς  
 differently as each of-goodwill or hatred had the(-things) toward  
 αὐτὴν τῶν εἰωθότων ἐκ προαιρέσεως καὶ μὴ ὡς  
 her of-the(-men) accustomed from preference and not as

ἔχουσι κρίνειν τὰ πράγματα. καὶ δὴ στέφεται τέως  
*they-are to-judge the affairs and indeed is-crowned for-the-time*  
 ὁ Ἀλέξιος μόνος παρὰ τῆς δεξιᾶς τοῦ ἀρχιερέως Κοσμᾶ.  
*— Alexios alone by the right-hand of-the high-priest Kosmas*  
 καὶ γὰρ τῷ τετάρτῳ ἔτει τῆς βασιλείας Μιχαὴλ τοῦ  
*and for in-the fourth year of-the reign of-Michael the*  
 Δούκα τοῦ υἱοῦ Κωνσταντίνου αὐτοκράτορος τελευτήσαντος  
*Doukas the son of-Constantine autocrat having-died*  
 τοῦ ἱερωτάτου πατριάρχου Ἰωάννου τοῦ Ξιφιλίνου μηνὸς  
*the most-holy patriarch John the Xiphilinos of-month*  
 Αὐγούστου δευτέραν ἄγοντος ἐπιμεμήσεως τρισκαιδεκάτης  
*August second counting of-indiction thirteenth*  
 χειροτονεῖται τηνικαῦτα οὗτος, ἀνὴρ ἱεροπρεπῆς καὶ πλήρης  
*is-ordained then this man priestly and full*  
 ἀγιωσύνης. τοὺς Δούκας δὲ τὸ μήπω τὴν βασιλίδι τῆς  
*of-holiness the Doukai and the not-yet the empress of-the*  
 βασιλικῆς ταινίας ἀξιοθῆναι ἐπὶ πλέον ἐξεδεϊμάτου·  
*imperial fillet to-be-deemed-worthy for more frightened(-them)*  
 ἐνίσταντο δὲ ὅμως καὶ τὴν βασιλίδι Εἰρήνην τοῦ  
*they-insisted and nevertheless also the empress Irene of-the*  
 στέφους ἀξιοθῆναι. ἔτυχε δέ τις μοναχὸς Εὐστράτιος  
*crown to-be-deemed-worthy happened and a-certain monk Eustratios*  
 τὴν κλήσιν, Γαριδᾶς τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν, τὰς οἰκῆσεις ἀγχοῦ  
*by-the name Garidas by-the surname the dwellings near*  
 τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ μεγάλης ἐκκλησίας ποιούμενος καὶ ἀρετὴν  
*the — of-God great church making and virtue*  
 δῆθεν ὑποκρινόμενος· οὗτος θαμὰ πρὸς τὴν μητέρα τῶν  
*supposedly feigning he often to the mother of-the*  
 Κομνηνῶν πάλαι παραγινόμενος περὶ βασιλείας προὔλεγεν.  
*Komnenoi formerly coming about empire foretold*  
 ἡ δὲ καὶ ἄλλως φιλομόναχος οὖσα, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς τοιοῦτοις  
*she and also otherwise monk-loving being but also by-the such*

ὑποσαινομένη λόγοις τὴν εἰς αὐτὸν πίστιν ὅσημέραι ἐπὶ  
*being-flattered words the toward him trust daily for*  
 πλέον αὐξάνουσιν ἐδείκνυ κἀντεῦθεν τῷ ἀρχιερατικῷ τῆς  
*more increasing showed and-thence on-the archiepiscopal of-the*  
 μεγαλοπόλεως θρόνῳ ἐγκαθιδρῦσαι τοῦτον προτεθύμητο.  
*great-city throne to-install him had-been-eager*  
 καὶ τὸ ἀπλοῦν καὶ ἄπραγμον τοῦ τηνικαῦτα ἀρχιερέως  
*and the simplicity and unworldliness of-the then high-priest*  
 προφασιζομένη ἔπειθέ τινας λόγους παραιτήσεως ἐν  
*pretexting persuaded some(-men) words of-resignation in*  
 σχήματι συμβουλῆς πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀνακινεῖν ὡς δῆθεν διὰ  
*form of-advice to him to-raise as supposedly because-of*  
 τὸ αὐτῷ συμφέρον τοῦτο συμβουλευόντας. ἀλλὰ τὸν ἱερὸν  
*the to-him advantage this advising but the holy*  
 ἐκεῖνον ἄνδρα ἢ σκῆψις αὕτη οὐ διελάνθανε· καὶ τέλος  
*that man the pretext this not escaped and finally*  
 τὴν ἰδίαν ἐπομοσάμενος κλησὶν φησι πρὸς αὐτοὺς “νῇ  
*the own having-sworn-by name he-says to them by*  
 τὸν Κοσμᾶν, εἰ μὴ διὰ τῶν ἐμῶν χειρῶν ἢ Εἰρήνῃ  
*— Kosmas if not through the my hands — Irene*  
 τοῦ στέφους ἀξιοθῇ, τοῦ ἀρχιερατικοῦ θρόνου οὐκ  
*of-the crown be-deemed-worthy from-the archiepiscopal throne not*  
 ἀποστήσομαι”. οἱ δὲ ἐπαναστρέψαντες ἀπαγγέλλουσι  
*I-will-stand-down they and having-retained report*  
 τῇ δεσποίνῃ τὰ μηνυθέντα· ἔφθασαν γὰρ ἤδη  
*to-the mistress the(-things) announced had-come for already*  
 οὕτω ταύτην καλεῖν ἅπαντες τοῦ φιλομήτορος βασιλέως  
*thus her to-call all the mother-loving emperor*  
 τοῦτο βουλομένου. ἐβδομαία τοίνυν μετὰ τὴν Ἀλεξίου  
*this wishing on-the-seventh-day therefore after the of-Alexios*

ἀνάρρησιν καὶ ἡ αὐτοῦ ὁμεινέτις Εἰρήνη διὰ τοῦ  
*proclamation also the his wife Irene through the*  
 πατριάρχου Κοσμᾶ ἀξιούται τοῦ στέφους.  
*patriarch Kosmas is-deemed-worthy of-the crown*

## XXXV · PORTRAITS OF ALEXIOS, IRENE, AND ISAAC

*Anna describes her parents as beyond any painter or sculptor. Alexios is not tall but broad, his fierce eyes like lightning, his presence and speech overwhelming. Irene, not yet fifteen, granddaughter of the caesar through his son Andronikos, is slender and straight, her face moonlike but not perfectly round, her cheeks rose-colored, her blue eyes both lovely and fearsome; were Athena to appear she would look so. Isaac resembles his brother, paler and with a thinner beard; both prefer war to hunting, and Isaac, reckless in charges, was twice captured by the Hagarenes.*

Αἱ μὲν οὖν μορφαὶ τοῖν βασιλείων ἀμφοῖν Ἀλεξίῳ  
*the indeed then forms of-the-two emperors both to-Alexios*  
 τε καὶ Εἰρήνῃ ἀμήχανοι καὶ εἰς ἅπαν ἀμίμητοι, καὶ  
*both and to-Irene extraordinary and for all inimitable and*  
 οὔτε γραφεὺς γράψειεν ἂν πρὸς ἀρχετυπίαν τοῦ κάλλους  
*neither painter could-paint — toward archetype of-the beauty*  
 ὁρῶν οὔτε λιθοξόος ἄψυχον οὐσίαν οὔτω ρύθμισειεν, ἀλλὰ  
*looking nor stone-carver soulless substance thus could-shape but*  
 καὶ ὁ τοῦ Πολυκλείτου κανὼν ἐκεῖνος ὁ πολυθρύλλητος  
*even the — of-Polykleitos canon that the much-talked-of*  
 εἰς ἀτεχνίαν ἀντικρὺς ἤρχετο, εἴ τις ἂν πρὸς τὰ τῆς  
*into artlessness outright would-come if anyone — at the of-the*  
 φύσεως ἀγάλματα ταῦτα, λέγω δὴ τοὺς ἀρτιστεφεῖς  
*nature statues these I-mean indeed the newly-crowned*  
 αὐτοκράτορας, καὶ πρὸς τὰ τοῦ Πολυκλείτου ἐκεῖνον  
*autocrats and at the — of-Polykleitos that*



σπουδάσματα ἀποβλέπειν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ Ἀλέξιος οὐ  
*efforts should-look — indeed for Alexios not*  
 πάνυ μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς ἐπήρτο ἐπὶ πολὺ, εἰς εὖρος  
*very indeed from the earth rose to much in breadth*  
 δὲ συμμέτρως πως ἡϋρύνετο. καὶ ἰστάμενος μὲν οὐ  
*but proportionately somehow was-broadened and standing indeed not*  
 τοσοῦτον θάμβος ἐδίδου τοῖς θεωμένοις, εἰ δ' ἐπὶ τοῦ  
*so-much wonder gave to-those beholding if but on the*  
 βασιλείου καθίσειν οὗτος θρόνου καὶ γοργωπὸν σέλας  
*imperial should-sit he throne and fierce-eyed flash*  
 ἀφήσει τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν, πρηστήρ ἐδόκει καὶ ἄμαχον  
*should-send-forth of-the eyes firestorm he-seemed and irresistible*  
 αὐγὴν ἀποστέλλειν καὶ τοῦ προσώπου καὶ τῆς ὅλης  
*radiance to-send-forth both of-the face and of-the whole*  
 διοργανώσεως. μέλαινα μὲν γὰρ ἡ ὀφρὺς ἐκατέρωθεν  
*frame black indeed for the brow on-either-side*  
 ἐκυρτοῦτο· τῇ δὲ ὀφθαλμὸς ὑπεκάθητο βλοσυρὸν ἄμα  
*was-arched under-it and eye sat stern at-once*  
 καὶ ἥμερον ἐνορῶν, ὥς ἀπὸ τε τῆς βολῆς τῶν ὀμμάτων  
*and gentle looking so-that from both the glance of-the eyes*  
 καὶ τῆς στιλπνότητος τοῦ μετώπου καὶ τῶν παρεῖων τῆς  
*and the brightness of-the forehead and of-the cheeks the*  
 σεμνότητος καὶ τοῦ ἐπιτρέχοντος αὐταῖς ἐρεύθους ὁμοῦ καὶ  
*dignity and the running-over them blush together also*  
 δεδοικέναι τε καὶ θαρρεῖν. τῶν τε ὤμων ἡ εὐρύτης καὶ  
*to-fear both and to-take-courage of-the both shoulders the breadth and*  
 τῶν βραχιόνων τὸ στερρὸν καὶ τῶν στέρνων ἡ προβολὴ  
*of-the arms the firmness and of-the chest the projection*  
 ἡρωϊκὰ πάντα καὶ ὅλως εἰς θάμβος καὶ τέρψιν τοὺς  
*heroic all and wholly to wonder and delight the*  
 πολλοὺς ἐκκαλούμενα. τὸ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς καὶ ὥραν  
*many calling-forth the for same of-the man both bloom*

εἶχε καὶ χάριν καὶ βάρος καὶ ὄγκον ἀπρόσιτον. εἰ δὲ  
*had and grace and weight and majesty unapproachable if and*  
 καὶ εἰς ὁμίλιαν ἦλθεν ἐκείνος καὶ τὴν γλῶτταν ἐκίνησεν,  
*also into converse came he and the tongue moved*  
 εἶδες                    ἂν αὐτόχρομα τὴν πυρίπνουν ἐπικαθημένην  
*you-would-have-seen — actually the fire-breathing sitting-upon*  
 τοῖς χείλεσιν ἐκείνου ῥητορικὴν. τῷ γὰρ κατακλυσμῷ τῶν  
*the lips his rhetoric by-the for flood of-the*  
 ἐπιχειρημάτων πᾶσαν καὶ ἀκοὴν καὶ ψυχὴν κατεσύρετο  
*arguments every both ear and soul he-swept-away*  
 καὶ ἀμύθητος ἦν καὶ ἄμαχος καὶ τὴν γλῶτταν ὁμοῦ  
*and unspeakable he-was and irresistible both in-the tongue together*  
 καὶ τὴν χεῖρα, τὴν μὲν πρὸς δόρατος ἄφεσιν, τὴν  
*and in-the hand the(-one) indeed for of-spear throwing the(-other)*  
 δὲ πρὸς ἀκήρατα θέλγητρα. ἡ δὲ γε βασιλὶς Εἰρήνη  
*and for pure charms the and at-least empress Irene*  
 καὶ μήτηρ ἐμὴ μεῖράξ τε ἦν τὸ τηνικάδε καὶ οὐδέπω  
*and mother my girl both was at-the that-time and not-yet*  
 τὸν πεντεκαίδεκατον παραδεδραμῆκει χρόνον. θυγάτριον  
*the fifteenth had-passed year little-daughter*  
 δὲ ἦν Ἀνδρονίκου τοῦ πρωτοτόκου υἱοῦ τοῦ καίσαρος,  
*and was of-Andronikos the first-born son of-the caesar*  
 τὸ γένος περίβλεπτος, εἰς Ἀνδρονίκους ἐκείνους καὶ  
*in-the family conspicuous to Andronikoi those and*  
 Κωνσταντίνους τοὺς Δούκας ἀναφέρουσα τὴν τοῦ γένους  
*Constantines the Doukai carrying-back the of-the family*  
 σειράν. ἀνίστατο μὲν γὰρ καθάπερ τι ἔρνος ὄρθιον  
*line she-rose indeed for like some sapling straight*  
 καὶ αἰεθαλὲς συμμέτρως καὶ πλατυνομένη καὶ στενουμένη  
*and evergreen proportionately both broadening and narrowing*  
 καταλλήλως ἐκασταχοῦ τῶν μελῶν καὶ μερῶν. καὶ  
*correspondingly everywhere of-the limbs and parts and*

ἐπέραστος μὲν ἰδεῖν, ἐπέραστος δὲ ἀκοῦσαι καὶ ὄψεώς τε  
 lovely indeed to-see lovely and to-bear and of-sight both  
 καὶ ἀκοῆς ἀκόρεστον ὡς ὄντως ἄκουσμά τε καὶ θέαμα.  
 and of-hearing insatiable as truly bearing both and sight  
 αὐτὸ μὲν γὰρ τὸ πρόσωπον σελήνης μὲν ἀπέστειλε  
 itself indeed for the face of-moon indeed shone  
 φέγγος, οὐ μὴν εἰς κύκλον ἀκριβῇ διαπέπλαστο κατὰ  
 light not however into circle exact had-been-molded according-to  
 τὰς Ἀσσυρίους γυναῖκας οὐδ' ἄλλως ἐξεμηκύνετο κατὰ  
 the Assyrian women nor otherwise was-elongated according-to  
 τὰς Σκυθίδας, ἀλλ' ὑπεχαλᾶτο μικρόν πως τῆς  
 the Scythian(-women) but was-relaxed slightly somehow from-the  
 ἀκριβείας τοῦ κύκλου. ἀνεπέπτατο δὲ αὐτῆς ὁ λειμὼν  
 exactness of-the circle had-spread-open and her the meadow  
 ἀπὸ τῶν παρειῶν καὶ τὴν ρόδωνιαν καὶ τοῖς πόρρω  
 from the cheeks and the rose-bed even to-those far-off  
 προὔβαλλετο. ὄμμα δὲ χαροπὸν καὶ σὺν ἡδονῇ φοβερὸν  
 it-put-forth eye and bright and with pleasure fearsome  
 ἐνητένιζεν, ὡς τῶν ὁρώντων τὰ ὄμματα τῇ μὲν  
 gazed so-that of-those seeing the eyes by-the indeed  
 ἡδονῇ καὶ τῷ κάλλει ἔλκειν πρὸς ἑαυτήν, τῷ δὲ φόβῳ  
 pleasure and by-the beauty to-draw to herself by-the and fear  
 μύειν καταναγκάζειν οὐκ ἔχόντων ὅπως ἀποβλέψωνται ἢ  
 to-close to-compel not having how they-might-look-away or  
 ὅπως ἂν ἀποκρύψωνται. καὶ εἰ μὲν τις ἦν Ἀθηνᾶ τοῖς  
 how — they-might-hide and if indeed some was Athena by-the  
 πρῶν ἐφευρημένη ποιηταῖς τε καὶ συγγραφεύσιν, οὐκ  
 earlier invented poets both and writers not  
 οἶδα ἔγωγε· μῦθον δὲ ταύτην ἀκούω περιφερόμενον καὶ  
 I-know I-at-least myth but her I-hear carried-about and  
 περισυρόμενον· τὴν δὲ βασιλῖδα ταύτην Ἀθηνᾶν εἴ τις  
 dragged-about the but empress this Athena if someone

εἶπεν ἐν τοῖς τότε χρόνοις φανείσαν τῷ ἀνθρωπίνῳ  
*had-called in the then times having-appeared to-the human*  
 βίῳ ἢ καταρραγεῖσαν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ μετὰ τινος οὐρανίας  
*life or having-burst-down from heaven with some heavenly*  
 αἴγλης καὶ ἀπροσίτου μαρμαρυγῆς, οὐκ ἂν ἐξήμαρτε  
*radiance and unapproachable gleam not — be-would-have-missed*  
 τοῦ εἰκότος. καὶ τὸ θαυμασιώτερον, ὅπερ οὐκ ἂν ἐν ἄλλῃ  
*the likely and the more-marvelous which not — in other*  
 τῶν γυναικῶν εἴρεθείη, τοὺς μὲν ἱταμοὺς τῶν ἀνδρῶν  
*of-the women would-be-found the indeed reckless of-the men*  
 συνέστελλε, τοῖς δ' ὑπὸ φόβου συνεσταλμένοις θαρρεῖν  
*she-checked to-those and by fear checked to-take-courage*  
 ἐνεδίδου ἐκ μόνης ὄψεως. τὰ δὲ χεῖλη ἐμεμύκει μὲν  
*she-gave from only sight the and lips had-closed indeed*  
 τὰ πολλὰ καὶ ἐδείκνυσι σιγῶσαν, ἔμπνουν ὡς ἀληθῶς  
*the most(-part) and showed silent living as truly*  
 ἄγαλμα καλλονῆς καὶ στήλην ἔμβιον εὐρυθμίας· ἡνιόχει  
*statue of-beauty and pillar alive of-harmony guided*  
 δὲ τὰ πολλὰ ἢ χεῖρ τῷ λόγῳ σὺν εὐρυθμίᾳ μέχρι τοῦ  
*and the most(-part) the hand to-the speech with harmony as-far-as the*  
 καρποῦ παραδεικνύσα τὸ μετακάρπιον, καὶ εἶπες ἂν  
*wrist displaying the metacarpus and you-would-have-said —*  
 ἐλέφαντα ἐκτετορεῦσθαι παρὰ τεχνίτου τινὸς εἰς δακτύλων  
*ivory to-have-been-carved by craftsman some into of-fingers*  
 καὶ χειρῶν διάθεσιν. ἢ μέντοι ἱρίς τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν  
*and hands arrangement the however iris of-the eyes*  
 θάλατταν ἐμίμειτο γαληνιώσαν ἐν βαθυκύμονι διαθέσει τὸ  
*sea imitated calm in deep-waved disposition the*  
 κυανοῦν ἐξανγάζουσα· ἀντέστλινε δὲ καὶ τὸ λευκὸν τῶν  
*dark-blue shining-forth shone-back and also the white of-the*  
 ὀμμάτων κύκλῳ τῆς ἱρίδος, καὶ χάριν ἀπέλαμπον ἄμαχον  
*eyes in-circle of-the iris and grace flashed irresistible*

καὶ ἡδονὴν ἄφατον ἐνεδίδουν ταῖς ὄψεσι. τοιοῦτοι μὲν  
*and pleasure unspeakable gave to-the eyes such indeed*  
 τὴν ιδέαν Εἰρήνην τε καὶ Ἀλέξιος. ὁ μέντοι θεῖος ἐμὸς  
*in-the form Irene both and Alexios the however uncle my*  
 Ἰσαάκιος τὴν μὲν ἡλικίαν ἑώκει τὰδελφῷ οὐδὲ κατὰ τὰ  
*Isaac in-the indeed stature resembled the-brother nor in the*  
 ἄλλα πολὺ ἀπεώκει. ὕψωχρος μὲν οὖν ἦν αὐτὸς τὴν  
*other(-things) much differed pale indeed then was he in-the*  
 ὄψιν καὶ τὴν ὑπὴν οὐ πάνυ δασύς, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ  
*appearance and in-the beard not very thick but also about*  
 τὰς γνάθους ψιλοτέραν εἶχε τῆς τὰδελφοῦ. ἄμφω δὲ  
*the jaws barer had than-that of-the-brother both and*  
 τὰδελφῷ κυνηγεσίῳ μὲν πολλάκις ἀπένευον, ὅπηνίκα οὐ  
*the-two-brothers to-hunts indeed often turned when not*  
 πολλή τις αὐτοῖς ἐπέρρει πραγμάτων φροντίς, πολεμικοῖς  
*much some for-them flowed of-affairs care in-warlike*  
 δὲ μᾶλλον ἢ κυνηγετικοῖς ἔχαιρον πράγμασιν. ἐν δὲ ταῖς  
*but more than in-hunting rejoiced affairs in and the*  
 ἐμβολαῖς τῶν πολέμων, οὐδ' ὅπηνίκα τῶν ταγμάτων  
*charges of-the wars not-even when of-the divisions*  
 αὐτὸς κατήρχε, προέτρεχε τις αὐτοῦ, ἀλλ' ἅμα τε τὴν  
*he led ran-ahead anyone of-him but at-once both the*  
 παράταξιν ἐωράκει τῶν πολεμίων ἐκείνος καὶ πάντων  
*battle-line he-saw of-the enemy he and all*  
 καταφρονήσας τῶν ἄλλων ἐς μέσους ἐνέπιπτε καθάπερ τις  
*having-despised the others into the-middle fell like some*  
 κεραυνὸς ὀξέως διακόπτων τὰς φάλαγγας. καὶ τοῦτου  
*thunderbolt sharply cutting-through the phalanxes and-from this*  
 ἐάλω καὶ ἅπαξ καὶ δις κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν συμμίζας  
*he-was-captured both once and twice in — Asia having-engaged*

Ἀγαρηνοῖς. καὶ τοῦτο μόνον οὐμός θεῖος εἶχε ψόγου ἄξιον  
*with-Hagarenes and this only my uncle had of-blame worthy*  
 ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις, ὅτι πρὸς συμβολὰς ἀκατάσχετος ἦν.  
*in the wars that toward engagements unrestrainable he-was*

## XXXVI • NEW TITLES

*Alexios creates the title of sebastokrator for Isaac, ranking him above the caesar Melissenos, and crowns them with lesser diadems than his own. Taronites becomes protosebastos and panhypersebastos, Adrian protosebastos, and Nikephoros grand drungarios. Anna admires her father as an innovator of titles. Kosmas resigns and Eustratios Garidas succeeds. Maria, by chrysobull, keeps her son Constantine as co-emperor in red shoes and withdraws with Isaac to the Mangana.*

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν Μελισσηνὸν Νικηφόρον τῆς τοῦ καίσαρος  
*since and — Melissenos Nikephoros of-the of-the caesar*  
 κατὰ τὴν ὑπόσχεσιν ἔδει ἀξίας μετεिल्χέται καὶ  
*according-to the promise it-was-needful dignity to-have-received and*  
 τὸν Ἰσαάκιον δέ, πρῶτον τῶν ἀδελφῶν κατὰ χρόνον ὄντα,  
*— Isaac too first of-the brothers in time being*  
 μείζονι ἐχρῆν τιμηθῆναι ἀξιώματι, ἕτερον δὲ ἀξίωμα  
*with-greater it-was-needful to-be-honored dignity other and dignity*  
 πλὴν τοῦ καίσαρος οὐκ ἦν, νέον ὀνοματοποιήσας ὁ βασιλεὺς  
*except the caesar not was new having-coined the emperor*  
 Ἀλέξιος ἀπὸ τε τοῦ σεβαστοῦ καὶ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος  
*Alexios from both the Sebastos and the autocrat*  
 σύνθετον ὄνομα τὸ τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος τὰδελφῶ  
*compound name the of-the sebastokrator to-the-brother*  
 ἐφηρμόσατο οἷονεὶ δεύτερον βασιλέα πεποιηκώς, τὸν  
*fitted as-it-were second emperor having-made the*  
 καίσαρα τούτου ὑποβιβάσας καὶ τρίτον ἐν ταῖς εὐφημίαις  
*caesar below-him having-lowered and third in the acclamations*

ἀριθμησάμενος μετὰ τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος εὐφημίαν. οὐ  
*having-counted after the of-the autocrat acclamation not*  
 μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ στέμμασιν ἐν ταῖς πανδήμοις ἡμέραις  
*however but also with-crowns on the public days*  
 αὐτοὺς στεφανοῦσθαι προσέταττε τὸν τε σεβαστοκράτορα  
*them to-be-crowned he-ordered the both Sebastokrator*  
 καὶ τὸν καίσαρα κατὰ πολὺ διαφέρουσι τῇ πολυτελείᾳ  
*and the caesar by much differing in-the costliness*  
 τοῦ διαδήματος, ᾧ αὐτὸς ἐστεφάνωτο. τὸ μὲν  
*of-the diadem with-which he was-crowned the indeed*  
 γὰρ βασιλικὸν διάδημα καθάπερ ἡμισφαίριον εὐγυρον  
*for imperial diadem like hemisphere well-rounded*  
 τὴν κεφαλὴν διαδεῖ πανταχόθεν μαργάροις καὶ λίθοις  
*the head binds-round on-all-sides with-pearls and stones*  
 κοσμούμενον, τοῖς μὲν ἐγκεκίμενοις, τοῖς δὲ καὶ ἐξηρητημένοις·  
*adorned some indeed set-in others and also hanging*  
 ἑκατέρωθεν γὰρ τῶν κροτάφων ὄρμαθοί τινες ἀπαιωροῦνται  
*on-either-side for of-the temples strings some hang-down*  
 διὰ μαργάρων καὶ λίθων καὶ τὰς παρειὰς ἐπιξέουσι. καὶ  
*through pearls and stones and the cheeks graze and*  
 ἐστὶ τοῦτο ἐξηρημένον τι χρῆμα τοῖς βασιλεῦσι στολῆς·  
*it-is this special some thing for-the emperors of-dress*  
 οἱ δὲ τῶν σεβαστοκρατόρων καὶ τῶν καيسάρων στέφανοι  
*the and of-the Sebastokrators and of-the caesars crowns*  
 σποράδην ἔστιν ὅπου τῶν μαργάρων καὶ λίθων μετέχοντες  
*sparsely it-is where of-the pearls and stones sharing*  
 ἄνευ τοῦ ἐπισφαιρώματος. κατ' ἐκεῖνο δὲ καιροῦ τετίμηται  
*without the dome at that and of-time was-honored*  
 καὶ ὁ Ταρωνεΐτης καὶ γαμβρὸς ἐπ' ἀδελφῇ τοῦ βασιλέως  
*also — Taronites also in-law for sister of-the emperor*  
 πρωτοσέβαστος τε καὶ πρωτοβεστιάριος, μετ' οὐ πολὺ  
*protosebastos both and protovestiaros after not long*

δὲ καὶ πανυπερσέβαστος ἀναδείκνυται καὶ ξύνθωκος τῷ  
*and also panhypersebastos is-appointed and seat-fellow to-the*  
 καίσαρι γίνεται. πρὸς δὲ καὶ Ἀδριανὸς ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ  
*caesar becomes besides and also Adrian the brother his*  
 πρωτοσέβαστος ἀξιοῦται περιφανέστατος· καὶ Νικηφόρος  
*protosebastos is-deemed-worthy most-illustrious and Nikephoros*  
 ὁ ὕστατος ἀδελφὸς μέγας τε δρουγγάριος τοῦ στόλου  
*the last brother grand both drungarios of-the fleet*  
 προὔβηλτο καὶ εἰς τὴν τῶν σεβαστῶν καὶ οὗτος ἀνήχθη  
*was-appointed and to the of-the Sebastoi also he was-raised*  
 βαθμίδα. τούτων δὲ τῶν ἀξιωματῶν τὴν καινοτομίαν ὁ  
*rank of-these and the dignities the innovation the*  
 ἐμὸς πατὴρ προσεξεύρατο τὰ μὲν συνθείς, καθάπερ  
*my father invented-besides some indeed having-compounded as*  
 ἄνωθεν εἴρηται, τοῖς δὲ καὶ παραχρησάμενος. τὸ μὲν γὰρ  
*above has-been-said others and also having-misused the indeed for*  
 πανυπερσέβαστος καὶ σεβαστοκράτωρ καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα  
*panhypersebastos and Sebastokrator and as-many-as such*  
 συντέθεικε, τῇ δὲ τοῦ σεβαστοῦ ἀξία παραχρησάμενος  
*he-has-compounded the and of-the Sebastos dignity having-misused*  
 φαίνεται. σεβαστοὶ γὰρ οἱ βασιλεῖς ἀνέκαθεν ἐπιθετικῶς  
*he-appears Sebastoi for the emperors from-of-old by-epithet*  
 ὠνομάζοντο, καὶ ἦν ἐξιδιαιζόντως εἰς βασιλέας λεγόμενον τὸ  
*were-named and was peculiarly to emperors said the*  
 τοῦ σεβαστοῦ ὄνομα· αὐτὸς δὲ εἰς τὸ κοινότερον πρῶτον  
*of-the Sebastos name he and to the more-common first*  
 κατήνεγκε τὴν τοιαύτην ἀξίαν. εἰ γὰρ τις εἰς ἐπιστήμην  
*brought-down the such dignity if for someone to science*  
 καὶ τινα ὑπερτάτην φιλοσοφίαν ἀνάγοι τὴν βασιλείαν ὥσπερ  
*and some highest philosophy should-raise the empire as*  
 τέχνην οὐσαν τεχνῶν καὶ ἐπιστήμην ἐπιστημῶν, θαυμάσαιτο  
*art being of-arts and science of-sciences would-admire*



ἄν καὶ τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα οἶόν τινα ἐπιστήμονά τε  
 — also the my father as-it-were a-certain scientist both  
 καὶ ἀρχιτέκτονα τὰ ὑπὸ τὴν βασιλείαν καινοτομοῦντα  
 and master-builder the(-things) under the empire innovating  
 καὶ πράγματα καὶ ὀνόματα· πλὴν ὅσον οἱ μὲν  
 both affairs and names except as-far-as the(-ones) indeed  
 τῶν λογικῶν ἐπιστημῶν προστάται διὰ σαφήνειαν τὰ  
 of-the logical sciences leaders because-of clarity the  
 τοιαῦτα τῶν ὀνομάτων ἐφεύραντο, ὁ δ' ἐπιστημονάρχης  
 such of-the names invented the but master-of-science  
 οὗτος τῆς βασιλείας Ἀλέξιος πρὸς τὸ ξυμφέρον ἅπαντα  
 this of-the empire Alexios for the advantage all  
 τῇ βασιλείᾳ διακονόμετο ξενίζων πολλάκις καὶ περὶ τὴν  
 for-the empire managed innovating often both about the  
 τάξιν τῶν πραγμάτων καὶ περὶ τὴν κλήσιν τῶν ὀνομάτων.  
 order of-the affairs and about the naming of-the names  
 ὁ μὲντοι ἱεροπρεπῆς ἐκεῖνος ἀνὴρ καὶ πατριάρχης Κοσμάς,  
 the however priestly that man and patriarch Kosmas  
 οὗ καὶ πρότερον διεμνημονεύσαμεν, μεθ' ἡμέρας τινὰς  
 of-whom also before we-made-mention after days some  
 κατὰ τὴν μνήμην τοῦ ἱεράρχου Ἰωάννου τοῦ θεολόγου  
 at the memorial of-the hierarch John the theologian  
 τὴν ἱεροτελεστίαν τελέσας ἐν τῷ κατὰ τὸ Ἑβδομον  
 the sacred-rite having-performed in the at — Hebdomon  
 ἐπ' ὀνόματι τοῦ ἤδη ῥηθέντος σηκῷ, τὸν ἀρχιερατικὸν  
 in name of-the already said shrine the archiepiscopal  
 θρόνον διαπρέψας ἔτη πέντε καὶ μῆνας ἑννέα, παραιτεῖται  
 throne having-adorned years five and months nine resigns  
 τὴν ἀρχιερωσύνην καὶ ἄπεισιν εἰς τὴν τοῦ Καλλίου  
 the high-priesthood and goes-away to the — of-Kallias  
 μονήν. ἐγχειρίζεται δὲ τοὺς τῆς ἀρχιερωσύνης οἶακας  
 monastery is-entrusted-with and the of-the high-priesthood helms

μετ' αὐτὸν ὁ προρρηθεὶς ἐκτομίας Εὐστράτιος ὁ Γαριδάς.  
*after him the aforesaid eunuch Eustratios the Garidas*  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ τῆς βασιλίδος Μαρίας υἱὸς Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ  
*since and the of-the empress Maria son Constantine the*  
 πορφυρογέννητος μετὰ τὴν παράλυσιν τῆς βασιλείας τοῦ  
*born-in-the-purple after the dissolution of-the reign of-the*  
 πατρὸς αὐτοῦ Μιχαὴλ τοῦ Δούκα τὰ ἐρυθρὰ μὲν ἐκὼν  
*father his Michael the Doukas the red indeed willingly*  
 ἀπεδύσατο πέδιλα, τὰ δὲ κοινὰ καὶ μέλανα ὑπέδύσατο,  
*took-off sandals the(-ones) and common and black put-on*  
 Νικηφόρος ὁ Βοτανειάτης ὁ μετὰ τὸν Δούκαν καὶ  
*Nikephoros the Botaneiates the(-one) after — Doukas and*  
 πατέρα τοῦ Κωνσταντίνου τῶν σκήπτρων ἐπειλημμένος τὰ  
*father — of-Constantine the scepters having-taken-hold the*  
 μὲν μέλανα ἐκείνον ἀποβαλεῖν διωρίσατο, ἐκ ποικίλων δὲ  
*indeed black him to-throw-off ordered from varied and*  
 σηρικῶν ὑφασμάτων ὑποδήματα προσέταττε περιδεῖσθαι  
*silken fabrics shoes he-ordered to-bind-on*  
 ὥσπερ τὸν νεανίσκον ἐπαισχυνόμενος καὶ τοῦ κάλλους  
*as-if the young-man being-ashamed-before and the beauty*  
 ὁμοῦ καὶ τοῦ γένους ἀγάμενος. τὸ μὲν γὰρ κόκκινον  
*together and the family admiring the indeed for scarlet*  
 διόλου ἀπαστράπτειν αὐτῷ τῶν πεδίων οἶον ἐφθόνει,  
*throughout to-gleam for-him of-the sandals as-it-were he-begrudged*  
 τὸ δὲ τινὰς τόπους ἐκ τῶν ὑφασμάτων ἀνθεῖν τὸ κόκκινον  
*the but some places from the fabrics to-bloom the scarlet*  
 ὑπέδιδου. μετὰ δὲ τὴν τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Ἀλεξίου ἀνάρρησιν  
*be-allowed after and the — of-Komnenos Alexios proclamation*  
 ἡ βασιλὶς Μαρία καὶ μήτηρ ἐκείνου ταῖς ὑποθημοσύναις  
*the empress Maria and mother his by-the suggestions*  
 πεισθεῖσα τοῦ καίσαρος ἔγγραφον πίστιν ἡτήσατο δι'  
*persuaded of-the caesar written pledge asked through*

ἐρυθρῶν βεβαιωθησομένην γραμμάτων καὶ σφραγίδος  
 red to-be-confirmed letters and seal  
 χρυσῆς παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, ὥστε μὴ μόνον ἀσινῆς  
 golden from the autocrat so-that not only unharmed  
 σὺν τῷ υἱῷ διατηρηθῆναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ συμβασιλεύειν αὐτῷ  
 with the son to-be-preserved but also to-co-reign with-him  
 κάκεινον τά τε ἐρυθρὰ ὑποδιδυσκόμενον καὶ στεφηφοροῦντα  
 him-too the both red(-shoes) putting-on and wearing-a-crown  
 καὶ ὡς βασιλέα σὺν αὐτῷ ἀναγορευόμενον. καὶ οὐκ  
 and as emperor with him being-proclaimed and not  
 ἡστόχησε τῆς αἰτήσεως, ἀλλὰ λαμβάνει χρυσόβουλλον  
 she-failed of-the request but receives chrysobull  
 λόγον βεβαιοῦντα τὰ αὐτῆς θελήματα ἅπαντα. τηνικαῦτα  
 word confirming the her wishes all then  
 καὶ ἃ ὑπεδιδύσκετο ἐκ σηρικῶν ὑφασμάτων περιελόντες  
 also what he-wore from silken fabrics having-taken-off  
 τῶν διόλου ἐρυθρῶν ὑποδημάτων τούτῳ μεταδιδόασι  
 of-the throughout red shoes to-him they-give-a-share  
 καὶ ταῖς δωρεαῖς καὶ χρυσοβούλλοις λόγοις δεύτερος  
 also-in the donations and chrysobull words second  
 τοῦ λοιποῦ συνυπογράφων ἦν διὰ κινναβάρους τῷ  
 for-the rest co-signing he-was with cinnabar with-the  
 βασιλεῖ Ἀλεξίῳ καὶ ταῖς προπομπαῖς μετὰ τῆς βασιλικῆς  
 emperor Alexios also-in the processions with the imperial  
 τιάρας συνεπόμενος. ὡς δέ τινες ἔφασαν, καὶ πρὸ τῆς  
 tiara following as and some said also before the  
 ἀποστασίας τὰς περὶ τούτου συνθήκας εἶχεν ἡ βασιλὶς, ἵν'  
 revolt the about this agreements had the empress that  
 οὕτω τὰ κατὰ τὸν υἱὸν αὐτῆς γίνοιτο. οὕτω γοῦν  
 thus the(-things) concerning the son her might-be thus at-any-rate  
 τῶν βασιλείων ἐκεῖνη ἐξέρχεται μετὰ προπομπῆς ἀξίας  
 from-the palace she goes-out with escort worthy

ἐν τοῖς κατὰ τὴν μονὴν τοῦ μεγάλου μάρτυρος Γεωργίου  
*in the at the monastery of-the great martyr George*  
 παρὰ τοῦ ἀποβεβιωκότος Κωνσταντίνου βασιλέως τοῦ  
*by the having-died Constantine emperor the*  
 Μονομάχου οἰκοδομηθεῖσιν οἰκήμασι κατασκηνώσουσα  
*Monomachos built dwellings about-to-take-up-quarters*  
 (Μάγγανα ταῦτα ἡ κοινὴ εἰσέτι κυκλήσκει διάλεκτος)  
*Mangana these the common still calls dialect*  
 Ἰσαακίου συνεφεπομένου ταύτῃ τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος.  
*Isaac following her the Sebastokrator*

## XXXVII • PENANCE

*Alexios grieves over the plunder of the city at his entry, holding himself responsible. With his mother's agreement he confesses before the patriarch and synod, who impose penances on him and on his kin who joined the revolt. Their wives share them. For forty days he wears sackcloth under the purple and sleeps on the ground with a stone for a pillow, and only then takes up affairs of state with clean hands.*

Τὰ μὲν οὖν κατὰ τὴν βασιλίδαν Μαρίαν οὕτω  
*the(-things) indeed then concerning the empress Maria thus*  
 παρὰ τῶν Κομνηνῶν ᾤκονόμητο· ὁ δέ γε αὐτοκράτωρ  
*by the Komnenoi had-been-arranged the but at-least autocrat*  
 παιδείας ἐκ νηπίου τυχὼν ἀγαθῆς καὶ πρὸς τὰς  
*of-education from infancy having-had good and to the*  
 νουθεσίας τῆς μητρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἀπευθύνων τὸν τοῦ θεοῦ  
*admonitions of-the mother himself directing the — of-God*  
 φόβον ἐνστερνισάμενος καὶ ἐγκάρδιον ἔχων ἐδάκνυτο  
*fear having-embraced and in-heart having was-stung*  
 ἀνιώνμενος ἐπὶ τῇ τῆς πόλεως προνομῇ, ἣν κατὰ τὴν  
*grieving at the of-the city plundering which at the*

εἰσέλευσιν αὐτοῦ πάντες πανδημεὶ ἐπεπόνθεισαν. τὸ μὲν  
*entry his all in-a-body had-suffered the indeed*  
 γὰρ ἄπταιστον ἴσως καὶ εἰς ἀπόνοιαν ἄγει τὸν  
*for unstumbling(-state) perhaps even to madness leads the(-man)*  
 μηδ' ὅπωςτιοῦν προσκεκρουκότα τοῖς πράγμασιν· ὁ  
*not-even in-any-way having-stumbled in-the affairs the(-man)*  
 δέ γε ἔξαμαρτῶν, εἴπερ ἐστὶ τῶν εὐλαβεστέρων καὶ  
*but at-least having-erred if-indeed he-is of-the more-pious and*  
 τῶν νοῦν ἐχόντων, αὐτίκα μάλα τὸν τοῦ θεοῦ φόβον  
*of-those sense having at-once very the — of-God fear*  
 βάλλεται κατὰ ψυχὴν καὶ ὅλως κατακλονεῖται καὶ δέδοικε,  
*casts in soul and wholly is-shaken and fears*  
 καὶ μᾶλλον εἴ γε πραγμάτων μεγάλων ἐπιδραξάμενος  
*and more if at-least affairs great having-grasped*  
 εἴη καὶ εἰς ὑπερηφάνους ἀνέλθοι περιωπᾶς. δέος γὰρ  
*he-be and to haughty he-should-go-up eminences dread for*  
 αὐτὸν ὑποθράττει, μή πως ἀμαθία καὶ θράσει καὶ  
*him troubles lest somehow in-ignorance and boldness and*  
 ὕβρει πορευόμενος τὸν τε θυμὸν τοῦ θεοῦ εἰς ἑαυτὸν  
*insolence walking the both anger — of-God upon himself*  
 ἐκκαλέσεται καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐκκυλισθεὶς ἀποπεσεῖται,  
*he-should-call-out and from-the rule having-been-rolled-out he-will-fall-off*  
 ὦν τέως ἐγκρατῆς γέγονεν. οἶα καὶ τῷ Σαοῦλ  
*of-which(-things) hitherto master he-has-become as also — to-Saul*  
 συμβεβήκει ποτέ· καὶ γὰρ ὁ θεὸς διὰ τὸ τοῦ  
*had-happened once and for — God because-of the of-the*  
 βασιλέως ἀτάσθαλον διαρρήσων διέρρηξε τὴν βασιλείαν  
*king recklessness rending rent the kingdom*  
 αὐτοῦ. τούτοις ἀλύων τοῖς λογισμοῖς ὁ Ἀλέξιος καὶ  
*his with-these being-distraught the reasonings — Alexios and*  
 παθαινόμενος τὴν ψυχὴν, μή που καὶ θεοῦ ἄντικρυς  
*suffering in-the soul lest perhaps also of-God outright*

μήνιμα γένοιτο, — τὸ γὰρ εἰς ὅλην τὴν πόλιν γεγονὸς  
*wrath it-might-be the for to whole the city having-happened*  
 κακὸν παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὅπόσος τὸ  
*evil by each of-the soldiers as-much the(-time)*  
 τηνικαῦτα συρφετὸς ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ἐπέρρευσεν,  
*then rabble throughout all the city had-flowed-in*  
 ἴδιον ἐλογίζετο, καὶ ὥς αὐτὸς ὢν ἐκεῖνος ὁ τὰ  
*own he-reckoned and as himself being that the(-one) the*  
 πάνδεινα ἐκεῖνα κακὰ ἐργασάμενος κατετιτρώσκετό τε  
*most-dreadful those evils having-done was-wounded both*  
 καὶ ἐξεφλέγετο βασιλείαν καὶ κράτος καὶ ἀλουργίδα  
*and was-inflamed empire and sovereignty and purple*  
 καὶ διάδημα λιθοκόλλητον καὶ ἐσθῆτα χρυσὴν τε καὶ  
*and diadem stone-set and garment golden both and*  
 περιμάργαρον οὐδέν, ὥς γε τὸ εἶκός, λογιζόμενος  
*pearl-studded nothing as at-least the likely reckoning*  
 πρὸς τὴν τότε κατασχούσαν ἀπεριήγητον συμφορὰν  
*toward the then having-seized indescribable misfortune*  
 τὴν βασιλίδαν τῶν πόλεων· τὰ γὰρ περιστοιχίσαντα  
*the queen of-the cities the(-things) for having-surrounded*  
 ταύτην δεινὰ κατ' ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ οὐδεὶς ἂν καὶ θέλων  
*her dreadful at that of-time no-one — even wishing*  
 διηγῆσασθαι δυνήσεται· καὶ γὰρ καὶ αὐτὰ ἱερὰ καὶ  
*to-narrate will-be-able and for also themselves holy(-places) and*  
 τεμένη καὶ τὰ κοινὰ καὶ τὰ ἴδια ἀπανταχόθεν  
*precincts and the public(-things) and the private(-things) from-everywhere*  
 ὑπὸ πάντων καθηρπάζοντο, τὰ δὲ ὦτα τῶν ἀπάντων  
*by all were-plundered the and ears of-the all*  
 κατακεκρότητο ταῖς ῥιπτουμέναις ἀπανταχοῦ βοαῖς καὶ  
*were-deafened with-the being-burled everywhere shouts and*  
 φωναῖς· εἶπεν ἂν τις ἰδὼν σεισμόν εἶναι τὸ  
*cries would-have-said — someone having-seen earthquake to-be the(-thing)*

γινόμενον — ταῦτα εἰς νοῦν βαλλόμενος ὁ Ἀλέξιος  
*happening these(-things) into mind casting — Alexios*  
 ἡνιᾶτό τε τὴν ψυχὴν καὶ κατεσπαράττετο καὶ οὐκ εἶχεν  
*was-grieved both in-the soul and was-torn and not be-had*  
 ὅ τι τῷ πλήθει τῆς λύπης χρήσαιτο. ἦν γὰρ ὁ ἀνὴρ  
*what — with-the abundance of-the grief be-might-do was for the man*  
 εἰς αἴσθησιν ἐλθεῖν τοῦ κακῶς πεπραγμένου παντάπασιν  
*to perception to-come of-the badly done altogether*  
 ὀξύτατος. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν τὰ προγεγονότα, ἐφ' οἷς  
*most-sharp and these(-things) indeed the(-things) having-happened-before in which*  
 ἡ πόλις πονήρως ἔπραξεν, ἥδει μὲν ὥς ἐτέρων χεῖρες  
*the city badly fared he-knew indeed that of-others hands*  
 καὶ γινώμαι διενηργήκασιν, ἀλλὰ συνήδει καὶ τοῦτό γε  
*and minds have-wrought but he-was-conscious also this at-least*  
 ἀκριβέστατα, ὅτι τὰς ὑποθέσεις καὶ τὰς ἀρχὰς τοῦ πάθους  
*most-exactly that the grounds and the beginnings of-the suffering*  
 αὐτὸς δέδωκεν· αὐτῷ δὲ πάλιν τῆς ἀποστασίας αἵτιοι  
*he has-given to-him and again of-the revolt causes*  
 οἱ ἤδη ρηθέντες δοῦλοι γεγόνασιν. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὥς ἑαυτῷ  
*the already said slaves have-become but even so to-himself*  
 τὴν ἅπασαν προσάπτων αἰτίαν θεραπεῦσαι τὸ τραῦμα καὶ  
*the all attaching blame to-heal the wound both*  
 ἐπεζήτη καὶ ἤθελεν· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν καὶ μετὰ τὴν τοιαύτην  
*sought and wished thus for — also after the such*  
 θεραπείαν καὶ τὸν τουτωνὶ καθαρμὸν ἐπιχειροίη τοῖς  
*healing and the of-these purification be-might-take-in-hand the*  
 τῆς βασιλείας πράγμασι καὶ τὰ κατὰ τε τὸν  
*of-the empire affairs and the(-things) concerning both the*  
 στρατὸν κατὰ τε τοὺς πολέμους καλῶς διυθύνει καὶ  
*army concerning and the wars well be-might-direct and*  
 διεξάγει. προσέρχεται τοίνυν τῇ μητρὶ, ἀνακοινοῦται  
*might-carry-through be-approaches therefore the mother communicates*

τὸ ἐπαινετὸν πάθος ἐκεῖνο, θεραπείας τρόπον ἀναζητεῖ  
*the praiseworthy suffering that of-healing way seeks*  
 καὶ ἀπαλλαγῆς τῶν ὑποκνιζόντων αὐτοῦ τὴν συνείδησιν.  
*and of-release from-the gnawing his the conscience*  
 ἡ δὲ ἀσπάζεται τὸν υἱὸν καὶ ἀσμένως δέχεται τὰ  
*she and embraces the son and gladly receives the(-things)*  
 λεχθέντα. μετακαλοῦνται τοίνυν τούτου συνδόξαντος τὸν τε  
*said they-summon therefore this having-been-agreed the both*  
 πατριάρχην Κοσμᾶν (οὐπω γὰρ τότε τὸν θρόνον παρήτητο)  
*patriarch Kosmas not-yet for then the throne he-bad-resigned*  
 καὶ τινὰς λογάδας τῶν τῆς ἱερᾶς συνόδου καὶ τοῦ  
*and some picked-men of-those of-the holy synod and of-the*  
 μοναδικοῦ συντάγματος. πρόσεισι τούτοις ὁ βασιλεὺς ὡς  
*monastic order approaches them the emperor as*  
 ὑπόδικος, ὡς κατάκριτος, ὡς εὐτελής ἢ καὶ τις ἄλλος τῶν  
*defendant as condemned as lowly or even some other of-the*  
 ὑπ' ἐξουσίαν τεταγμένων καὶ τὴν ψήφον ὅσον οὐδέπω  
*under authority ranked and the vote as-much-as not-yet*  
 καταδοκούντων, ἣν κατ' ἐκείνου ψηφιεῖται τὸ δικαστήριον.  
*awaiting which against him will-vote the court*  
 ἐξαγγέλλει πάντα, μὴ προσβολήν, μὴ συγκατάθεσιν, μὴ  
*he-declares all not suggestion not consent not*  
 πράξιν μηδὲ αἰτίαν τῶν πεπραγμένων παραδραμών, ἀλλὰ  
*deed nor cause of-the deeds having-passed-over but*  
 πάντα μετὰ φόβου καὶ πίστεως ἐξαγορευσάμενος καὶ τὴν  
*all with fear and faith having-confessed and the*  
 θεραπείαν ἐξ ἐκείνων θερμῶς ἐξαιτεῖ ἐπιτιμίοις ἐαυτὸν  
*healing from them warmly asks to-penances himself*  
 καθυποβάλλων. οἱ δὲ οὐκ αὐτὸν μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς ἐκ  
*submitting they and not him alone but also those from*  
 ταυτοῦ αἵματος προσήκοντας καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἀποστασίαν  
*the-same blood related and to the revolt*



συναραμένους τοῖς αὐτοῖς ἐπιτιμίαις καθυποβάλλουσι  
*having-helped to-the same penances submit*  
 νηστεῖαν καὶ χαμευνίαν καὶ τὰ τούτοις ἐφεπόμενα  
*fasting and sleeping-on-the-ground and the(-things) on-these following*  
 πρὸς τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ ἐξιλέωσιν ἐπιτάξαντες. δεξάμενοι δὲ τὰ  
*toward the of-the divine propitiation having-ordered having-received and the*  
 ἐπιτίμια προθύμως ἐφύλαττον. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ αἱ σφῶν αὐτῶν  
*penances eagerly they-kept but not-even the their own*  
 γυναῖκες ἔξω τῶν ἐπιτιμιῶν ἐστάναι ἠνεύχοντο (πῶς γάρ,  
*wives outside of-the penances to-stand endured how for*  
 φίλανδροι οὐσαι;), αὐτόμολοι δὲ τὸν τῆς μετανοίας ζυγὸν  
*husband-loving being voluntarily and the of-the repentance yoke*  
 ἀναδέχονται. καὶ ἦν ἰδεῖν τὰ βασιλεῖα τότε δακρῶν καὶ  
*take-up and it-was to-see the palace then of-tears and*  
 πένθους ἀνάμεστα, πένθους οὐκ ἐπιψόγου οὐδ' ἀσθένειαν  
*of-mourning full of-mourning not blameworthy nor weakness*  
 ψυχῶν κατηγοροῦντος, ἀλλ' ἐπαινετοῦ καὶ χαρᾶς προξένου  
*of-souls accusing but praiseworthy and of-joy procuring*  
 τῆς κρείττονος καὶ μηδέποτε λυομένης. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ,  
*of-the better and never being-dissolved the and autocrat*  
 ὁποῖος ἐκεῖνος τὴν εὐσέβειαν, πλέον τι ποιῶν ἐντὸς  
*such-a-man he in-the piety more something doing inside*  
 τῆς βασιλικῆς ἀλουργίδος σάκκον περιεβέβλητο ἐν χρῶ  
*the imperial purple sackcloth had-put-on in skin*  
 ψαύοντα τῆς σαρκὸς ἐπὶ τεσσαράκοντα νυχθημέροις. ἐν  
*touching the flesh for forty nights-and-days in*  
 δὲ ταῖς νυξὶ χαμεύνῃς ἔκειτο ἐπὶ πέτρας μόνον ἀνέχων  
*and the nights on-the-ground he-lay on stone only holding-up*  
 τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ πενθῶν ὡς εἰκός. εἰθ' οὕτως τῶν τῆς  
*the head and mourning as (is)-likely then thus the of-the*  
 βασιλείας πραγμάτων ἀγναῖς ἅπτεται χερσίν.  
*empire affairs with-pure takes-bold hands*

*Wishing his mother to govern, though she longs for the monastic life, Alexios keeps the plan from her, and when he leaves to face Robert he entrusts her with the civil administration by a chrysobull. It praises her care and gives the force of his own decisions to hers, written or unwritten, sealed with the Transfiguration and the Dormition, over appointments, salaries, donations, and remissions, and it frees her and her officials from any future audit.*

Οἰακοστρόφον δὲ μᾶλλον ἑαυτοῦ τὴν μητέρα ἱμερόμενος  
 helmsman and rather than-himself the mother longing  
 εἶναι τὴν βουλὴν ὑποβρύχιον τέως εἶχε δεδιώς, μὴ τοῦ  
 to-be the plan submerged hitherto kept fearing lest the  
 τοιούτου γνωσθέντος αὐτῇ λογισμοῦ καὶ τῶν βασιλείων  
 such having-become-known to-her reasoning also from-the palace  
 ἐξέλθοι, πρὸς ὑψηλότερον βίον γινώσκων αὐτὴν  
 she-should-go-out to higher life knowing her  
 ἀποβλέπουσαν. ἐν πᾶσι μὲν οὖν τοῖς προσπίπτουσι  
 looking in all(-things) indeed then the(-things) befalling  
 βουλῆς αὐτῆς ἄτερ μηδὲ τὸ τυχόν ἦν ἐνεργῶν, ἀλλὰ  
 counsel her without not-even the chance(-thing) he-was doing but  
 κοινωνὸν εἶχε τῶν βουλευμάτων ὁμοῦ καὶ συλλήπτορα  
 partner he-had of-the plans together and helper  
 καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν ὑφέρπων αὐτῇ καὶ κοινοποιούμενος  
 and by little creeping-in to-her and sharing  
 τὴν τῶν πραγμάτων διοίκησιν καὶ πού καὶ φανερώς  
 the of-the affairs administration and somewhere also openly  
 ἐνδεικνύμενος, ὥς ἄτερ τῆς ἐκείνης φρενὸς καὶ γνώμης  
 showing that without the her mind and judgment  
 ἀπολείται τῆς βασιλείας τὰ πράγματα. οὕτως εἶχε καὶ  
 will-perish of-the empire the affairs thus he-was and  
 ξυνεδέσκει πλέον ἑαυτῷ τὴν μητέρα καὶ τοῦ κατὰ  
 bound more to-himself the mother and from-the according-to

σκοπὸν ἀπέιργε καὶ ἀπεκώλυνε. ἡ μὲν γὰρ πρὸς σταθμὸν  
 aim kept-away and hindered(-her) she indeed for to station  
 ἀπέβλεπεν ἔσχατον καὶ μονὰς διανοεῖτο, ἐν αἷς τὸν  
 looked last and monasteries considered in which the  
 ἐπίλοιπον χρόνον μετ' ἔμφρονος λογισμοῦ ἐλκύσει  
 remaining time with sensible reasoning she-would-draw-out  
 τοῦ βίου. καὶ ταῦτ' ἐνενόει καὶ ἑαυτῇ διὰ παντὸς  
 of-the life and these(-things) she-thought and for-herself through all(-time)  
 ἐπηύχετο τεύξασθαι. ἀλλ' εἰ καὶ τοιαῦτα κατὰ νοῦν  
 prayed to-attain but if even such(-things) in mind  
 συνδιεσκοπεῖτο καὶ ὅλως πρὸς ὑψηλότερον ἐνητένιζε βίον,  
 she-considered and wholly toward higher gazed life  
 ἀλλ' ἦν καὶ φιλόπαις, εἴπερ τις ἄλλη γυνή, καί πως  
 but she-was also son-loving if-ever any other woman and somehow  
 ἡβούλετο συνδιενεγκεῖν μετὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ τὸ τῆς βασιλείας  
 wished to-endure-together with the son the of-the empire  
 κλυδώνιον καὶ οὐριοδρομοῦσαν τὴν ναῦν ἢ καὶ πανταχόθεν  
 surge and running-before-the-wind the ship or also from-everywhere  
 βαλλομένην τοῖς κύμασιν ὥς ἄριστα οἰακοστροφεῖν καὶ  
 being-struck by-the waves as best to-steer and  
 μάλιστα τοῦ παιδὸς ἄρτι ἐπὶ τὴν πρύμναν καθίσαντος  
 most the child just on the stern having-sat  
 καὶ τῶν οἰάκων ἐφαιψαμένου καὶ μήπω πρῶην θαλάττη  
 and the helms having-grasped and not-yet earlier with-sea  
 καὶ κύμασι καὶ ἀνέμοις ὠμίληκός τις τοιούτοις. ταῦτα  
 and waves and winds having-been-familiar such these(-things)  
 δὲ λέγουσα τὴν τῆς βασιλείας αἰνίττομαι πολυμερῇ καὶ  
 and saying the of-the empire I-hint-at manifold and  
 πολυτάρακτον ὄχλησιν. τὸ τοίνυν μητρῶον πάθος κατεῖχεν  
 tumultuous trouble the therefore maternal feeling held  
 αὐτήν, καὶ συνδιεκυβέρνηα τῷ υἱῷ καὶ βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰς  
 her and she-helped-steer with-the son and emperor and the

ἡνίας ἔστιν ὅπου καὶ μόνῃ παραλαβοῦσα ἀπροσπταίστως  
*reins it-is where also alone having-taken without-stumbling*  
 τε καὶ ἀναμαρτήτως τὸ ἄρμα τοῦ κράτους ἤλυνεν· ἦν  
*both and without-error the chariot of-the sovereignty she-drove she-was*  
 γὰρ καὶ φρενίρης ἄλλως καὶ βασιλείος γνώμη αὐτόχρομα  
*for both sbrewd otherwise and imperial mind outright*  
 καὶ θρόνων κατόρθωσις· ἀνθείλκε δὲ ταύτην ἐκ θατέρου  
*and of-thrones success drew-back and her on the-other(-side)*  
 καὶ ὁ πόθος ὁ πρὸς θεόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὸν Αὐγούστον  
*also the longing the toward God since and in the August*  
 μῆνα ἐπινεμήσεως τῆς αὐτῆς ἔτι τρεχούσης ἢ τοῦ  
*month indiction the same still running the —*  
 Ῥομπέρτου διαπεραίωσις τοῦτον ἐξελθεῖν κατηνάγκαζεν, εἰς  
*of-Robert crossing him to-go-out compelled to*  
 φῶς ἤδη καὶ ἔργον τὸ τῆς ψυχῆς ἐννόημα ἐξάγων τὴν  
*light already and deed the of-the soul thought bringing-out the*  
 αὐτοκράτορα διοίκησιν τῇ μητρὶ καὶ μόνῃ ἀπεκληρώσατο  
*autocratic administration to-the mother and alone he-allotted*  
 καὶ διὰ χρυσοβούλλου λόγου τὰ βεβουλευμένα εἰς  
*and through chrysobull word the(-things) planned into*  
 προὔπτον πᾶσι κατέστησεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν ἱστορίαν  
*the-open to-all set since and the(-one) history*  
 συγγράφοντα οὐ παχυμερῶς τὰς τῶν ἀγαθῶν ἀνδρῶν  
*writing not roughly the of-the good men*  
 πράξεις καὶ τὰ θεσπίσματα παραπέμπειν χρή, ἀλλὰ  
*deeds and the decrees to-pass-over is-needful but*  
 τὰς μὲν καταλεπτύνειν, ὡς ἐνόν, τὰ δ' ἐκείνους  
*the indeed to-describe-in-detail as being-possible the(-things) and by-them*  
 δεδογμένα ἐκτίθεσθαι, εἰμι καὶ αὕτῃ τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον  
*resolved to-set-out I-go also myself this the way*  
 τὰ τοῦ ῥηθέντος χρυσοβούλλου ἐκθησομένη τὰς τοῦ  
*the(-things) of-the said chrysobull about-to-set-out the of-the*

γραφέως μόνον κομψείας περιελούσα. ἔχει δὲ οὕτως  
scribe only refinements having-removed it-is and thus  
 “οὐδὲν ἰσοστάσιον μητρὸς συμπαθοῦς καὶ φιλόπαιδος οὔτε  
nothing equal-in-weight to-mother sympathetic and son-loving nor  
 ταύτης ἰσχυρότερον φυλακτήριον, κἂν κίνδυνος προορᾶται,  
than-her stronger safeguard whether danger is-foreseen  
 κἂν ἄλλο τι τῶν ἀπευκταίων ἐλπίζοιτο. εἰ γὰρ  
or other something of-the abominable(-things) be-expected if for  
 βουλευέσεται αὕτη, πάγιον ἔσται τὸ βούλευμα, εἰ ἐπεύξεται,  
shall-counsel she firm will-be the counsel if she-shall-pray  
 στήριγμα ἔσονται αἱ εὐχαὶ καὶ φύλακες ἀκαταγώνιστοι.  
support will-be the prayers and guards unconquerable  
 τοιαύτη γοῦν καὶ τῇ βασιλείᾳ μου ἐφάνη ἐξ αὐτῆς  
such at-any-rate also to-the majesty my appeared from very  
 τῆς ἀτελοῦς ἡλικίας πρακτικῶς ἢ ἡγιασμένη μήτηρ αὐτῆς  
the unripe age in-practice the sanctified mother its  
 καὶ δέσποινα τὰ πάντα μοι γεγονυῖα καὶ τροφὸς καὶ  
and mistress the all to-me having-become both nurse and  
 ἀναγωγός. καὶ γὰρ τῷ συγκλητικῷ καταλόγῳ αὐτῆς  
guide and for in-the senatorial roll her  
 συνούσης μητρὸς πόθος προέδραμε καὶ υἱοῦ πίστις ἀκεραία  
being-with(-it) of-mother longing ran-ahead and of-son faith pure  
 συνετηρήθη. μία ψυχὴ ἐν διηρημένοις σώμασι διεγνωσθη  
was-preserved one soul in divided bodies was-recognized  
 καὶ χάριτι Χριστοῦ καλῶς διετηρήθη μέχρι τοῦ νῦν. οὐ  
and by-grace of-Christ well was-preserved until the now not  
 τὸ ἐμὸν ἢ τὸ σόν, τὸ ψυχρὸν τοῦτο ῥῆμα, ἐρρήθη, καὶ  
the mine or the yours the cold this word was-spoken and  
 τὸ δὴ μεῖζον, ὅτι αἱ αὐτῆς εὐχαὶ τὸν πάντα χρόνον  
the indeed greater that the her prayers the all time  
 πληθυνόμεναι εἰς τὰ ὦτα κυρίου εἰσέδυσαν καὶ εἰς τὸδε  
being-multiplied into the ears of-(the)-Lord entered and to this

τὸ ὕψος τῆς βασιλείας ἡμᾶς ἀνήγαγον. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ καὶ  
*the height of-the empire us raised but since also*  
 μετὰ τὸ ἐπιλαβέσθαι τῶν τῆς βασιλείας σκήπτρων οὐκ  
*after the to-have-taken-hold of-the of-the empire scepters not*  
 ἔφερε μὴ συμπονουμένη ἐπίσης τῇ βασιλείᾳ μου καὶ  
*she-bore not laboring-with equally with-the majesty my and*  
 τοῦ συμφέροντος αὐτῇ ἀντεχομένη καὶ τοῦ κοινοῦ,  
*the advantage to-it holding-to and the common(-good)*  
 ἐτοιμαζομένη δὲ ἤδη ἡ βασιλεία μου σὺν θεῷ πρὸς  
*preparing and already the majesty my with God for*  
 τὴν κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν τῆς Ῥωμανίας ἐξέλυσιν διὰ  
*the against the enemies — of-Romania going-out in*  
 φροντίδος μὲν πολλῆς ποιεῖται καὶ τὴν τοῦ στρατιωτικοῦ  
*care indeed much makes also the of-the military*  
 συλλογὴν τε καὶ διευθέτησιν, οὐκ ἐλάχιστον δὲ ταύτῃ  
*gathering both and arrangement not least and by-it*  
 νενόμισται καὶ ἡ περὶ τῆς τῶν σεκρετικῶν τε καὶ  
*has-been-considered also the about the of-the secretarial both and*  
 πολιτικῶν πραγμάτων διοικήσεως φροντίς. εὗρε γοῦν  
*civil affairs administration care it-found at-any-rate*  
 ἀριστοκρατίας οἷον ἀνεπιβούλευτον ὀχύρωμα, ὥς ἂν τῇ  
*of-best-government as-it-were unassailable bulwark that — to-the*  
 ἡγιασμένη καὶ πανεντιμοτάτῃ μητρὶ αὐτῆς ἀνατεθῇ ἡ τῶν  
*sanctified and all-most-honored mother its be-entrusted the of-the*  
 ἀπάντων διοικήσεις. διορίζεται οὖν ἡ βασιλεία μου καθαρῶς  
*all administration ordains then the majesty my clearly*  
 διὰ τοῦ παρόντος χρυσοβούλλου, ἵνα δι' ἣν ἔχει  
*through the present chrysobull that because-of which she-has*  
 πολυπειρίαν περὶ τὰ βιωτικὰ πράγματα, εἰ καὶ τέλεον  
*great-experience about the worldly affairs if even wholly*  
 τούτων καταπεφρόνηκεν, ἅπερ ἂν ἐγγράφως διορίσῃται,  
*these she-has-despised whatever — in-writing she-may-ordain*

κὰν παρὰ τοῦ προεστῶτος τῶν σεκρέτων ἀναφέρονται  
*whether by the president of-the secreta they-be-referred*  
 ἢ τῶν ὑπ' αὐτὸν σεκρετικῶν ἢ τῶν ἄλλων πάντων,  
*or of-the under him secretarial(-officials) or of-the others all*  
 ὧν αἱ ὑπομνήσεις ἢ αἰτήσεις ἢ κρίσεις ἐτοιμασθήσονται  
*of-which the memoranda or requests or judgments will-be-prepared*  
 ἐπὶ συμπαθείαις δημοσιακαῖς ὀφλημάτων, τὸ κύρος ἔξουσι  
*for remissions public of-debts the validity will-have*  
 μόνιμον ὡς παρὰ τοῦ γαληνίου κράτους τῆς βασιλείας  
*permanent as by the serene sovereignty of-the majesty*  
 μου οἰκονομούμενα καὶ ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ στόματος αὐτῆς  
*my managed and from very the mouth its*  
 τὰ γραφέντα ἀποστοματιζόμενα. οἶαι γὰρ ἂν λύσεις  
*the(-things) written dictated what-kind for — decisions*  
 παρ' αὐτῆς ἀποφανθήσονται ἢ καὶ προστάξεις ἔγγραφοι ἢ  
*by her shall-be-declared or also orders written or*  
 ἄγραφοι, κὰν εὐλογοὶ κὰν ἀνεύλογοι, σφραγίδα φέρουσαι  
*unwritten whether reasonable or unreasonable seal bearing*  
 αὐτῆς τὴν μεταμόρφωσιν καὶ τὴν κοίμησιν, ὡς αὐτῆς τῆς  
*her the transfiguration and the dormition as of-very the*  
 βασιλείας μου λογισθήσονται. τῷ δὲ μηνὶ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν  
*majesty my will-be-reckoned by-the and month of-the for the*  
 ἡμέραν διοικούντος τὰ σέκρετα, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐπὶ προβολῶν  
*day administering the secreta but also for promotions*  
 καὶ διαδοχῶν τῶν σεκρέτων καὶ τῶν θεμάτων καὶ ἐπὶ τοῖς  
*and successions of-the secreta and of-the themes and for the*  
 ἀξιώμασι καὶ ὀφφικίοις καὶ δωρεαῖς ἀκινήτων βασιλικῶς  
*dignities and offices and donations of-immovables imperially*  
 ἡ ἁγία μήτηρ αὐτῆς ἔξει ἄδειαν ὃ δόξει ταύτῃ  
*the holy mother its will-have license what may-seem-good to-her*  
 ποιεῖν. ἀλλὰ καὶ εἴ τινες προβληθήσονται εἰς τὰ σέκρετα  
*to-do but also if some shall-be-promoted to the secreta*

ἥ καὶ εἰς θέματα καὶ διαδεχθήσονται, τιμηθήσονται δὲ καὶ  
*or also to themes and shall-succeed shall-be-honored and both*  
 ἐν μεγίστοις ἀξιώμασι καὶ μέσοις καὶ ἐλαχίστοις, ἔσονται  
*in greatest dignities and middle and least they-shall-be*  
 εἰς τὸ ἐξῆς ἀμετακίνητοι καὶ ἀμετάπτωτοι. ἀλλὰ καὶ  
*for the future unchangeable and irreversible but also*  
 αὐξήσεις ρογῶν καὶ προσθήκας δόσεων καὶ συμπαθείας τῶν  
*increases of-stipends and additions of-gifts and remissions of-the*  
 λεγομένων συνηθειῶν καὶ σχιδευμὸς καὶ ἀποσχιδευμὸς  
*so-called customary-dues and reductions and cancellations*  
 προστάζει αὕτη ἀνενδοιάστως καί, περιεκτικῶς εἰπεῖν, οὐδὲν  
*shall-order she without-hesitation and comprehensively to-say nothing*  
 ἀσυντελὲς λογισθήσεται, ὅπερ αὐτὴ κελεύσει ἐγγράφως τε  
*ineffective will-be-reckoned which she shall-command in-writing both*  
 καὶ ἀγράφως. τὰ γὰρ ῥήματα ταύτης καὶ τὰ προστάγματα  
*and without-writing the for words her and the commands*  
 ὡς τῆς βασιλείας μου λογισθήσονται καὶ οὐδὲν τούτων  
*as of-the majesty my will-be-reckoned and none of-these*  
 ἀθετηθήσεται, ἀλλὰ κύρια καὶ μόνιμα ἔσονται εἰς τοὺς  
*will-be-set-aside but valid and permanent will-be for the*  
 ἐξῆς χρόνους. καὶ οὔτε εὐθύνην οὔτε ἡντιναοῦν ἀνάκρισιν  
*following times and neither audit nor any-whatever inquiry*  
 ὑποπτεύσει νῦν ἢ εἰς τὸ μετέπειτα παρ' οὐτινοοσούν τῶν  
*she-shall-suspect now or in the hereafter from anyone-whatever of-the*  
 ἀπάντων οὔτε τις τῶν ἐξυπηρετουμένων αὐτῇ ἢ αὐτὸς  
*all nor any of-those serving her or himself*  
 ὁ κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν λογοθέτης τῶν σεκρέτων, καὶ  
*the for the day logothete of-the secreta whether*  
 εὐλογα καὶ παράλογα τὰ πραχθησόμενα δόξη. τὸ  
*reasonable or unreasonable the(-things) about-to-be-done seem the*



γὰρ παντελῶς ἀλογοπράγητον ἔξουσιν ἐς αἰί, ὅποια ἂν  
 for altogether unaccountable they-will-have for always whatever —  
 καὶ εἴη τῷ παρόντι χρυσοβούλλῳ λόγῳ στηριζόμενα.”  
 also may-be by-the present chrysobull word established

XXXIX · ANNA DALASSENE

*Alexios takes the wars upon himself and leaves his mother the civil government: he has the form of empire, she the empire itself. Anna defends this: her grandmother could govern any empire, experienced, quick to see what was needful, a persuasive speaker who neither rambled nor broke off. She reached the throne past her prime, her judgment at its height. Alexios relied on her as a teacher of the art of ruling.*

Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν τὰ τοῦ χρυσοβούλλου· θαυμάσειε δ’  
 but these(-things) indeed the(-things) of-the chrysobull would-admire and  
 ἂν τις ἐν τούτοις τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα καὶ αὐτοκράτορα τῆς  
 — someone in these the my father and autocrat for-the  
 εἰς τὴν μητέρα τιμῆς καὶ ὅπως αὐτῇ παρακεχωρήκει τῶν  
 toward the mother honor and how to-her he-had-ceded of-the  
 ἀπάντων, αὐτὸς τῆς βασιλικῆς ἡνίας οἶον ὑπεξιστάμενος  
 all(-things) he of-the imperial rein as-it-were stepping-aside  
 καὶ τρόπον τινὰ ἐποχουμένη τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ἄρματος  
 and in-way a-certain riding the imperial chariot  
 αὐτῇ παραθέων καὶ ψιλοῦ μόνου τοῦ τῆς βασιλείας  
 beside-her running-beside and bare alone the of-the empire  
 μετέχων ὀνόματος. καίτοι κατὰ τὴν ἡλικίαν τὸν μείρακα  
 sharing name although in the age the youth  
 ἤδη παρήλλαττε, καθ’ ὃν μάλιστα καιρὸν ἐπιφύεται τοῖς  
 already he-had-passed at which most time grows on-the  
 τοιούτοις ἦθεσιν ὁ τῆς φιλαρχίας ἔρως. τοὺς μὲν γὰρ  
 such characters the of-the love-of-power desire the indeed for

πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους πολέμους καὶ ὅσα τῶν ἄθλων  
 against the barbarians wars and as-much-as of-the labors  
 καὶ τῶν ἀγώνων ὑπῆν αὐτὸς ἀνεζώσατο, πᾶσαν δὲ  
 and of-the contests was-present he girded-on all and  
 τῶν πραγμάτων διοίκησιν καὶ πολιτικὰς ἀρχὰς καὶ τοὺς  
 of-the affairs administration and civil offices and the  
 περὶ τῶν εἰσφορῶν λόγους καὶ τῶν ὑπὲρ τῆς βασιλείας  
 about the revenues accounts and of-the for the empire  
 ἀναλωμάτων τῇ μητρὶ κατεπίστευσε. καὶ ἴσως μὲν ἂν  
 expenditures to-the mother be-entrusted and perhaps indeed —  
 τις ἐνταῦθα γενόμενος καταμέμψοιτο τὴν οἰκονομίαν ὡς  
 someone here having-come might-blame the management as  
 γυναικωνίτιδι καταπιστεύσαντος τοῦμοῦ πατρὸς τὴν τῆς  
 to-women's-quarters having-entrusted my father the of-the  
 βασιλείας διοίκησιν· ἀλλ' εἰ τὸ φρόνημα τῆς γυναικὸς  
 empire administration but if the spirit of-the woman  
 ἠπίστατο καὶ ὅση τις ἦν τὴν ἀρετὴν καὶ τὸν νοῦν  
 be-knew and how-great she was in-the virtue and the mind  
 καὶ ὅπως εἶχε δραστηριότητος, ἀφέμενος μέμψεως πρὸς  
 and how she-was of-energy having-dropped blame to  
 θαῦμα τὴν μέμψιν μετέβαλλε. τοσαύτη γὰρ ἢ ἐμὴ μάμμη  
 wonder the blame would-change so-great for the my grandmother  
 περὶ τὰ πράγματα δεξιωτάτη καὶ τάξαι καὶ καταστήσασθαι  
 about the affairs most-dexterous and to-order and to-set-up  
 πολιτείαν εὐμήχανος, ὥστε μὴ μόνον τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχὴν  
 polity ingenious so-that not only the of-(the)-Romans rule  
 διοικεῖν δύνασθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν ὅπουδήποτε  
 to-administer to-be-able but also every the anywhere  
 βασιλείαν, ὅπόσῃ ἥλιος ἐφορᾷ. πολὺπειρός τε γὰρ ἦν  
 empire as-much-as sun over-looks of-great-experience both for she-was  
 καὶ πολλῶν πραγμάτων ἐγίνωσκε φύσεις, καὶ ὅπως ἄρχεται  
 and of-many affairs knew natures and how it-begins

καὶ εἰς ὃ καταντήσκειν ἕκαστον ἐξηπίστατο, καὶ τίνα  
*and to what it-would-end each she-knew-well and which*  
 μὲν τίνων εἰσὶν ἀναιρετικά, τίνα δὲ μᾶλλον ἐπιρρώννυσιν  
*indeed of-which are destructive which and rather strengthen*  
 ἕτερα, ὁξύτατη τε τὸ δέον καταμαθεῖν καὶ μετὰ ἀσφαλείας  
*others most-sharp both the needful to-discern and with security*  
 καταπραῖσαι δεινῇ. καὶ οὐκ ἦν μὲν τὴν γνώμην τοιαύτη,  
*to-accomplish clever and not she-was indeed in-the mind such*  
 γλωτταν δὲ εἶχεν ἀπάδουσαν πρὸς τὴν γνώμην· ἀλλ' ἦν  
*tongue but had discordant with the mind but she-was*  
 αὐτόχρομα ῥήτωρ πιθανωτάτη, καὶ οὔτε λάλος καὶ εἰς  
*very orator most-persuasive and neither talkative and to*  
 μῆκος τοὺς λόγους ἐκτείνουσα, οὔτε ταχέως ἀπελίσπανεν  
*length the words extending nor quickly failed*  
 αὐτῇ τὸ πνεῦμα τοῦ λόγου, ἀλλ' ἐπικαίρως ἀρξαμένη εἰς  
*her the breath of-the speech but timely having-begun on*  
 τὰ καιριώτατα πάλιν κατέληγε. καὶ ὁ μὲν βασιλεῖος  
*the most-timely(-points) again ended and the indeed imperial*  
 θρόνος αὐτὴν παρηκμακυῖαν κατέλιφεν, ὅτε καὶ μᾶλλον  
*throne her past-her-prime seized when also more*  
 τὸ φρονοῦν ἤκμαζε καὶ ἡ σύνεσις ἐπήνθει καὶ ἡ περὶ  
*the thinking was-at-its-height and the understanding bloomed and the about*  
 τὰ πράγματα ἐπιστήμη συνήκμαζεν, ἐξ ὧν οἰκονομίαι  
*the affairs knowledge was-at-its-height-with(-it) from which managements*  
 καὶ διοικήσεις τὸ κράτος ἔχουσιν. ἔχει δὲ ἡ τοιαύτη ὡς τὸ  
*and administrations the sovereignty have is-able and the such as the*  
 εἰκὸς ἡλικία οὐ μόνον τι λέξαι τῶν νέων σοφώτερον,  
*likely age not only something to-say than-the young wiser*  
 ὡς ἡ τραγωδία φησὶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ συμφορώτερον πράξαι.  
*as the tragedy says but also more-expediently to-act*  
 ὁ δὲ κατόπιν χρόνος καὶ ὁπότεν ἐκεῖνη ταῖς νεωτέραις  
*the and earlier time and when she with-the younger*

συνεξητάζετο γυναῖξί, θαῦμα ἄντικρυς ἦν πολὺν ἐν νεαρά  
*was-reckoned-with women marvel outright she-was gray in youthful*  
 ἡλικία ἐπιδεικνυμένη φρόνημα. καὶ παρέιχεν ἐξ αὐτῆς  
*age displaying mind and offered from very*  
 ὄψεως τῷ βουλομένῳ καταθρεῖν τὴν ἐνοῦσαν αὐτῇ  
*sight to-the(-one) wishing to-observe the being-in her*  
 ἀρετὴν ὁμοῦ καὶ ἐμβρίθειαν. ἀλλ', ὅπερ ἔλεγον, ὁ ἐμὸς  
*virtue together and gravity but as I-was-saying the my*  
 πατὴρ τῆς βασιλείας ἐπιδραξάμενος τοὺς μὲν ἀγῶνας καὶ  
*father of-the empire having-grasped the indeed contests and*  
 τοὺς ἰδρώτας ἐαυτῷ τεταμίευκε θεωρὸν τῶν ἀγώνων τὴν  
*the sweats for-himself had-reserved spectator of-the contests the*  
 μητέρα ποιοῦμενος, ἐκείνην δὲ δεσπότην καταστησάμενος  
*mother making her and mistress having-set*  
 τὸ παρ' ἐκείνης κελευόμενον καθάπερ δούλος ἔλεγε τε  
*the(-thing) by her commanded as slave said both*  
 καὶ ἔπραττεν. ἔστεργεν οὖν αὐτὴν ὁ βασιλεὺς ὑπερφυῶς  
*and did loved then her the emperor extraordinarily*  
 καὶ τῶν αὐτῆς βουλευμάτων ἐξήρτητο (τοσοῦτον ἦν  
*and on-the her counsels hung so-much he-was*  
 φιλομήτωρ) καὶ τὴν δεξιὰν ἐδίδου τῆς ἐκείνης γλώττης  
*mother-loving and the right-hand gave of-the her tongue*  
 ὑπηρετῶν καὶ τὴν ἀκοὴν τῶν ἐκείνης φωνῶν εἰς ἀκρόασιν  
*as-servant and the ear of-the her words for hearing*  
 καὶ εἰς ἅπαντα ταύτῃ ὁ βασιλεὺς συγκατένευεν ἢ ἀνένευεν,  
*and in all with-her the emperor nodded-assent or refused*  
 ἐφ' οἷς ἄρα ἐκείνη κατανεύσειεν ἢ ἀνανεύσειε. καὶ ἦν τὸ  
*in what after-all she might-nod-assent or refuse and was the*  
 πρᾶγμα ὅλως τοιοῦτον. ἐκεῖνος μὲν γὰρ σχῆμα βασιλείας  
*matter wholly such he indeed for form of-empire*  
 εἶχεν, ἡ δὲ τὴν βασιλείαν αὐτήν· καὶ ἡ μὲν ἐθεσμοθέτει,  
*had she and the empire itself and she indeed legislated*

διῶκει τὸ πᾶν, ἐπρυτάνευεν, ὁ δὲ τὰς διοικήσεις ἐκείνης  
*administered the all presided he and the administrations her*  
 καὶ τὰς ἐγγράφους καὶ τὰς ἀγράφους, τὰς μὲν χειρί,  
*both the written and the unwritten some indeed by-hand*  
 τὰς δὲ φωναῖς ἐπεσφράγιζε, καὶ ὡς οὕτω γε φάναι,  
*others and by-words sealed and as so at-least to-say*  
 ὄργανον ἦν αὐτῇ βασιλείας, οὐ βασιλεύς. ἠρέσκετο γὰρ  
*instrument he-was for-her of-empire not emperor he-was-pleased for*  
 ἐφ' ἅπασι, οἷς ἡ μήτηρ διαγνοίη καὶ διορίσειε, καὶ  
*at all which the mother might-discern and might-ordain and*  
 οὐχ ὡς μητρὶ μόνον καταπειθέστατος ἦν, ἀλλὰ γὰρ  
*not as to-mother only most-obedient he-was but for*  
 ὡς ἐξάρχῳ βασιλικῆς ἐπιστήμης ταύτῃ προσεῖχε τὸν  
*as to-leader of-imperial science to-her he-applied the*  
 νοῦν. ᾔδει γὰρ ἀκριβῶς τὸ ταύτης ἐφ' ἅπασι ἐπὶ τὸ  
*mind he-knew for exactly the her in all(-things) to the*  
 κράτιστον συγκεχωρηκὸς καὶ ὅτι διαφερόντως πάντας τοὺς  
*best having-attained and that exceedingly all the*  
 κατ' ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ γεγονότας ἀνθρώπους εἰς φρόνησίν τε  
*in that of-time having-been men in prudence both*  
 καὶ σύνεσιν πραγμάτων ὑπερελάνει.  
*and understanding of-affairs she-surpasses*

*Anna Dalassene reforms the women's quarters of the palace, corrupted since Monomachos, setting hours for hymns and meals. She is chaste, generous to the poor, honors monks, and is grave without harshness. She prays at night and hears petitions at dawn with her secretary Gregory Genesios. She worships at Saint Thekla's church, built by her brother-in-law Isaac Komnenos: returning from routing the Sauromatai, he was caught by a storm on Thekla's day, and an oak he had stepped away from was uprooted.*

Τοιαῦτα τὰ τῆς Ἀλεξίου βασιλείας προοίμια. οὐ γάρ  
 such the of-the of-Alexios reign preludes not for  
 τις αὐτοκράτορα τοῦτον εἰκότως τό γε νῦν ὀνομάσειε  
 anyone autocrat him fittingly the at-least now would-name  
 τῆς αὐτοκράτορος περιωπῆς ἅπαξ ἀποκληρωθείσης παρ'  
 the autocratic eminence once having-been-allotted by  
 αὐτοῦ τῇ μητρὶ. ἄλλος μὲν οὖν νόμοις ἐγκωμιαστικοῖς  
 him to-the mother another indeed then to-laws encomiastic  
 ὑπέικων πατρίδα τῆς θαυμασίας ἐκείνης μητρὸς ἐπαινείτω  
 yielding fatherland of-the wonderful that mother let-him-praise  
 καὶ γένος πρὸς Ἀδριανούς ἐκείνους τοὺς Δαλασσηνοὺς  
 and family to Adrians those the Dalassenoi  
 ἀναφερόμενον καὶ Χάρωνας καὶ τῷ πελάγει τῶν κατ'  
 carried-back and Charons and on-the sea of-the about  
 ἐκείνους προτερημάτων ἐπαφίετω τὸν λόγον· ἐμοὶ δὲ  
 them excellences let-him-let-loose the account to-me and  
 ἱστορίαν ξυγγραφούσῃ οὐκ ἐκ γένους καὶ αἵματος προσήκει  
 history writing not from family and blood it-is-fitting  
 ταύτην χαρακτηρίζειν, ἀλλ' ἐκ τρόπου καὶ ἀρετῆς καὶ  
 her to-characterize but from character and virtue and  
 τούτων, ὅποσον ὁ τῆς ἱστορίας ὑποτίθεται λόγος. ἵνα  
 these as-much-as the of-the history proposes account that

γὰρ πρὸς ἐκείνην ἐπαναδραμοῦμαι καὶ αὖθις, ἀξίωμα μὲν  
*for to her I-may-run-back and again dignity indeed*  
 οὖν μέγιστον αὐτὴ οὐ γυναικῶν μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀρρένων  
*then greatest she not of-women only but also of-men*  
 καθίστατο καὶ κόσμος τῆς ἀνθρωπίνης φύσεως, τὴν δὲ  
*was and ornament of-the human nature the and*  
 περὶ τὰ βασιλεία γυναικωνῆτιν παντάπασι διεφθορυῖαν,  
*about the palace women's-quarters altogether having-been-corrupted*  
 ἐξ ὅτου ὁ Μονομάχος ἐκεῖνος τὸ τῆς βασιλείας ἀνεδήσατο  
*from when — Monomachos that the of-the empire bound-on*  
 κράτος, καὶ εἰς ἔρωτας ἀλόγους ἀποκλίνας καὶ μέχρι  
*sovereignty and to loves irrational having-inclined and as-far-as*  
 τῆς βασιλείας τοῦμοῦ πατρὸς ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον ἀλλοιώσασα  
*the reign of-my father to the better having-altered*  
 εἰς κόσμον ἐπαινούμενον μετήνεγκε. καὶ ἦν ἰδεῖν τὰ  
*to order praised she-transferred and it-was to-see the*  
 βασιλεία τηρικαῦτα τάξεως ἐπαινουμένης μετεिल्χότα· καὶ  
*palace then of-order praised having-partaken and*  
 γὰρ ὅρους τε τῶν θείων ὕμνων ἔταξε καὶ καιροὺς  
*for limits both of-the divine hymns she-ordered and times*  
 ἀρίστου τε καὶ ἀρχαιρεσίας ἐπήξατο στάθμη καὶ κανὼν  
*of-lunch both and elections fixed rule and canon*  
 τοῖς πᾶσιν αὐτὴ γεγυνῖα, ὥς τὰ βασιλεία μᾶλλον  
*to-the all she having-become so-that the palace rather*  
 ἱερὰ φροντιστήρια εἶναι δοκεῖν. τοιαύτη τις ἦν ἡ  
*holy monasteries to-be to-seem such a-certain was the*  
 ὑπερφυῆς ὄντως καὶ ἱερὰ ἐκείνη γυνή. σωφροσύνη μὲν  
*extraordinary truly and holy that woman by-temperance indeed*  
 γὰρ τοσοῦτον ὑπερῆρε καὶ τὰς πάλαι ὑμνουμένης, περὶ  
*for so-much she-surpassed even the of-old celebrated(-women) about*  
 ὧν ὁ πολὺς λόγος, ὅπόσον ἀστέρας ἥλιος· τὸν δὲ περὶ  
*whom the much talk as-much-as stars sun the and toward*

τοὺς πένητας οἶκτον αὐτῆς καὶ τὴν δαιψιλῇ πρὸς τοὺς  
*the poor pity her and the abundant toward the*  
 δεομένους χεῖρα τίς παραστήσειε λόγος; κοινὸν μὲν ἦν  
*needy hand what could-represent word common indeed was*  
 ἡ αὐτῆς ἐστία καταγώγιον τοῖς ἐξ αἵματος πενομένοις,  
*the her hearth lodging to-those from blood being-poor*  
 κοινὸν δὲ καὶ ξένοις οὐχ ἦττον. ἱερέας δὲ καὶ μοναχοὺς  
*common and also to-strangers not less priests and also monks*  
 διαφερόντως ἐτίμα καὶ συνδειπνοῦντας εἶχε καὶ οὐδενὶ  
*especially she-honored and dining-with(-her) had and to-no-one*  
 ἄτερ μοναχῶν τὴν αὐτῆς τράπεζαν θεάσασθαι ἐνῆν.  
*without monks the her table to-behold it-was-possible*  
 ἡ δὲ ἔξωθεν ἐπιφανομένη τοῦ ἥθους κατάστασις καὶ  
*the and outwardly appearing of-the character state both*  
 ἀγγέλοις αἰδέσιμος καὶ αὐτοῖς δὲ τοῖς δαίμοσι φοβερά,  
*to-angels venerable and themselves and to-the demons fearsome*  
 ἀνθρώποις δὲ μὴ ἐχέφροσιν, ἀλλὰ περὶ ἡδονὰς ἐπτοημένοις  
*to-men and not sensible but about pleasures excited*  
 ἀνύποιστος καὶ ἐκ μόνου τοῦ βλέμματος, τοῖς δ'  
*unbearable even from only the glance to-those and*  
 αὖ γε σωφροσύνης ἐπιμελουμένοις ἱλαρά τε καὶ  
*again at-least temperance caring cheerful both and*  
 προσηνής. μέτρα γὰρ ἔγνω κατηφείας καὶ σεμνότητος,  
*gentle measures for she-knew of-gravity and dignity*  
 ὥς μήτε τὸ κατηφές ἄγριόν πως καὶ θηριῶδες δοκεῖν  
*so-that neither the gravity savage somehow and beastly to-seem*  
 μήτε τὸ ἀπαλὸν κεχαλασμένον τε καὶ ἀκόλαστον, καὶ  
*nor the softness relaxed both and licentious and*  
 ὅρον, οἶμαι, τοῦτ' εἶναι κοσμιότητος, κραθέντος τοῦ  
*limit I-think this to-be of-decorum having-been-blended the*  
 φιλανθρώπου τῷ τῆς ψυχῆς ἀναστήματι. τὸ δὲ ἥθος  
*humane with-the of-the soul elevation the and character*



αὐτῇ ὑποκαθήμενον πρὸς ἐνθυμήσεις αἰὲν καινότερας  
*in-her underlying toward deliberations always newer*  
 ἀνελιττούση τὰς γνώμας, οὐ φθαρτικὰς τοῦ κοινοῦ, ὥς  
*turning-over the minds not destructive of-the common(-good) as*  
 τινες ὑπετονθόρουζον, ἀλλὰ σωστικὰς καὶ διεφθορυῖαν ἤδη  
*some muttered but saving and corrupted already*  
 τὴν βασιλείαν εἰς ὁλοκληρίαν ἐπαναγούσας τά τε τοῦ  
*the empire to wholeness bringing-back the and of-the*  
 κοινοῦ εἰς τὸ μηδὲν ἤδη ἐληλακότα ἐπανορθούσας,  
*common(-good) to the nothing already having-been-driven restoring*  
 ὥς δύναμις. πλὴν εἰ καὶ τῇ τῶν κοινῶν διοικήσει  
*as power(-allowed) however if even with-the of-the common(-affairs) administration*  
 ἐνησχολεῖτο, τῆς μοναχοῖς προσηκούσης διαγωγῆς οὐδαμῶς  
*she-was-occupied the to-monks befitting conduct in-no-way*  
 καταπεφρονήκει, ἀλλὰ τὸ πλεῖον μὲν τῆς νυκτὸς τοὺς  
*she-had-despised but the most indeed of-the night the*  
 ἱεροὺς ἀπεπλήρου ὕμνους προσευχῇ τε συντόνῳ καὶ  
*holy she-fulfilled hymns with-prayer both intense and*  
 ἀγρυπνία συντετηκυῖα, περὶ δὲ τὸ ὄρθριον, ἔστι δ' ὅτε  
*with-vigil wasted about and the dawn it-is and when*  
 καὶ δευτέρας ἀλεκτοροφωνίας, ταῖς τοῦ κοινοῦ προσέκειτο  
*also of-(the)-second cockcrow to-the of-the common she-applied-herself*  
 διοικήσεσι περὶ τε ἀρχαιρεσιῶν σκοποῦσα καὶ τὰς τῶν  
*administrations about both elections considering and the of-the*  
 δεομένων αἰτήσεις ἐπιλύουσα ὑπογραμματεύοντος αὐτῇ  
*needy requests resolving writing-under-dictation for-her*  
 Γρηγορίου τοῦ Γενεσίου. ταῦτα εἴ τις ἠβούλετο ρήτωρ  
*Gregory the Genesios these(-things) if someone wished orator*  
 εἰς ἐγκωμίου λόγον ἀγαγεῖν, τίνας ἂν οὐκ ἀπεκρύψατο  
*into of-encomium speech to-bring whom — not would-be-have-eclipsed*  
 τῶν πάλαι περιβοήτων ἐπ' ἀρετῇ καὶ κατ' ἀμφότερα τὰ  
*of-the of-old renowned for virtue and in both the*

γένῃ φανέντας περιφανεῖς τοῖς ἐπιχειρήμασι καὶ τοῖς  
*sexes having-appeared illustrious with-the arguments and the*  
 ἐνθυμήμασι καὶ ταῖς πρὸς ἄλλους συγκρίσεσιν ἐξογκῶν  
*entbymemes and the to others comparisons magnifying*  
 εἰς μέγα τὴν ἐπαινουμένην, ὥσπερ νόμος ἐστὶ τοῖς  
*to great(-height) the praised(-woman) as law is for-those*  
 ἐγκωμιάζουσιν; ἀλλὰ τὰ τῆς ἱστορίας οὐχ οὕτως  
*eulogizing but the(-things) of-the history not thus*  
 ἄδειαν δίδωσι τῷ ξυγγράφοντι. διόπερ εἰ περὶ ταύτης  
*license gives to-the(-one) writing wherefore if about this*  
 τῆς βασιλίδος λέγοντες τὰ μεγάλα μικροπρεπέστερον  
*the empress saying the great(-things) more-meanly*  
 εἵπωμεν, μηδεὶς ὑπὸ μέμψιν ἀγέτω τὸν λόγον, ὅσοι  
*we-say no-one under blame let-bring the account as-many-as*  
 τὴν ἐκείνης ἴσασι ἀρετὴν καὶ τὸν ὄγκον τοῦ ἀξιώματος  
*the her know virtue and the weight of-the dignity*  
 καὶ τὸ ἀγχίνου ἐν ᾗπασιν καὶ τὸ ἀκροφυέστατον τοῦ  
*and the quick-wit in all(-things) and the most-lofty of-the*  
 φρονήματος. ἡμεῖς δὲ ὅθεν περὶ αὐτῆς λέγοντες μικρόν  
*spirit we and whence about her speaking a-little*  
 τι ἐξετραπόμεθα, πάλιν ἐπανακάμψωμεν. ἐκείνη τοίνυν  
*somewhat we-digressed again let-us-return she therefore*  
 τὴν βασιλείαν, ὡς ἔφημεν, διθύνουσα οὐδὲ τὴν πᾶσαν  
*the empire as we-said directing not-even the whole*  
 ἡμέραν ταῖς κοσμικαῖς φροντίσιν ἀφώριστο, ἀλλὰ τὰς  
*day to-the worldly cares had-assigned but the*  
 ἐκ τύπου λειτουργίας εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν τέμενος τῆς μάρτυρος  
*from rule services in the holy precinct of-the martyr*  
 Θεκλῆς ἀπεπλήρου, ὅπερ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ Ἰσαάκιος ὁ  
*Thekla she-fulfilled which the autocrat Isaac the*  
 Κομνηνὸς καὶ ἀνδράδελφος αὐτῆς ἐξ αἰτίας τοιαύτης  
*Komnenos and husband's-brother her from cause such*

ἐδείματο. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ᾧς πάλαι εἶχον οἱ τῶν Δακῶν  
*built since for which long-ago had the of-the Dacians*  
 ἀρχηγέται μετὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων σπονδὰς τηρεῖν εἰσέτι οὐκ  
*leaders with the Romans treaties to-keep still not*  
 ἤθελον, ἀλλὰ παρασπονδήσαντες διέλυσαν, τούτου δὲ δήλου  
*they-wished but having-broken-the-truce dissolved this and known*  
 τοῖς Σαυρομάταις γεγονότος, οἱ πρὸς τῶν πάλαι Μυσοῖ  
*to-the Sauromatai having-become who by those of-old Mysians*  
 προσηγορεύοντο, οὐδὲ αὐτοὶ τοῖς ἰδίους ὁρίοις ἐμμένοντες  
*were-called not-even themselves in-the own boundaries remaining*  
 ἤθελον ἡσυχάζειν, νεμόμενοι πρότερον ὅποσα ὁ Ἰστρος  
*wished to-keep-quiet occupying earlier as-much-as the Ister*  
 πρὸς τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων διορίζει ἡγεμονίαν, ἀλλ' ἀθρόον  
*toward the of-the Romans divides dominion but suddenly*  
 ἀπαναστάντες πρὸς τὴν ἡμεδαπὴν γῆν μετακίσθησαν. αἰτία  
*having-risen-up to the our land were-transplanted cause*  
 δὲ τῆς τούτων μετοικίσεως ἡ τῶν Γετῶν κατ' αὐτῶν  
*and of-the their migration the of-the Getai against them*  
 ἄσπονδος ἔχθρα ὁμορούντων μὲν ἐκείνοις, τούτους δὲ  
*implacable enmity bordering indeed on-them them and*  
 ληστευόντων. διὰ ταῦτα καιρὸν ἐπιτηροῦντες, ἐπεὶ τὸν  
*plundering because-of these(-things) occasion watching when the*  
 Ἰστρον ἀποκρυσταλλωθέντα εἶδον, ὥσπερ ἡπέιρω τούτῳ  
*Ister frozen-over they-saw as land it*  
 χρησάμενοι ἐκεῖθεν πρὸς ἡμᾶς μετανίστανται ὅλον ἔθνος  
*having-used from-there to us they-migrate whole nation*  
 τοῖς ἡμετέροις ἐπιφορτισθὲν ὁρίοις καὶ δεινῶς ἐλήζοντο  
*on-the our having-been-loaded boundaries and terribly plundered*  
 τὰς παρακειμένας πόλεις καὶ χώρας. τοῦτ' ἐνωτισθεῖς ὁ  
*the neighboring cities and lands this having-beard the*  
 βασιλεὺς Ἰσαάκιος δέον ἔκρινε τὴν Τριάδιτζαν καταλαβεῖν.  
*emperor Isaac needful judged — Triaditza to-reach*

ἐπεὶ τοὺς ἐώους βαρβάρους τῶν ἐπιχειρημάτων φθίαςας  
*since the eastern barbarians from-the attempts having-been-first*  
 ἀνείρξε, καὶ τοῦτο δὴ ἀπραγμονέστατον αὐτῷ ἐγεγόνει  
*he-checked and this indeed most-trouble-free to-him had-become*  
 τὸ τμήμα. καὶ δὴ τὸ ὀπλιτικὸν ἅπαν συλλεξάμενος  
*the section and indeed the armed(-body) all having-gathered*  
 τῆς πρὸς τὰ ἐκείσε φερούσης ὁδοῦ ἤψατο ἀπελάσαι  
*the toward the(-places) there leading road took to-drive-away*  
 βουλόμενος τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ὄρων αὐτοῦς. καταστήσας  
*wishing from-the Roman boundaries them having-set*  
 δὲ τὸ ὀπλιτικὸν ἅπαν ἐν εὐταξίᾳ στρατηγὸς κατ' αὐτῶν  
*and the armed(-body) all in good-order general against them*  
 ἵεται. οἱ δὲ τοῦτον θεασάμενοι εὐθὺς διαιρεθέντες  
*hurls-himself they and him having-beheld at-once having-been-divided*  
 διαφόρου γνώμης γεγόνασιν. ὁ δὲ οὐ πάνυ πιστεύειν  
*of-different mind have-become he and not very to-trust*  
 αὐτοῖς ἔχων ἐπὶ τὸ καρτερώτατον καὶ δυσμαχώτερον  
*them being-able at the strongest and harder-to-fight*  
 μέρος αὐτῶν σὺν καρτερᾷ τῇ φάλαγγι ἵεται καὶ δὴ  
*part their with strong the phalanx hurls-himself and indeed*  
 πλησιάσας αὐτοῖς ἐαυτῷ τε καὶ τῷ στρατοπέδῳ  
*having-approached them with-himself both and with-the army*  
 κατέπληξε. πρὸς μὲν γὰρ τὸν οἶα δὴ κεραυνοφόρον  
*terrified(-them) to indeed for him as indeed thunderbolt-bearing*  
 ἀντωπεῖν οὐκ ἐτόλμων, τοῦ δὲ στρατοπέδου τὸν ἀρραγῇ  
*to-look-in-the-face not they-dared of-the and army the unbroken*  
 συνασπισμὸν βλέποντες αὐτοὶ διελύοντο. ὑποχωρήσαντες  
*shield-locking seeing they were-dissolved having-withdrawn*  
 οὖν πρὸς μικρὸν πόλεμον ἐς τρίτην αὐτῷ ἐπαγγεिलाίμενοι  
*then for a-little war for third(-day) to-him having-announced*  
 τὰς σκηναὺς αὐθήμερον ἀφέντες φυγαδεῖα ἐχρήσαντο. ὁ  
*the tents the-same-day having-left in-flight they-used he*

δὲ καταλαβόν, ἔνθα οὗτοι ηὐλίζοντο, καὶ τὰς τε σκηναὶς  
*and having-reached where they were-bivouacking and the both tents*  
 αὐτῶν κατασκάψας καὶ τὴν εὐρημένην λείαν ἀπαγαγὼν  
*their having-razed and the found booty having-carried-off*  
 τροπαιοφόρος ἐπάνεισι. γενομένου δὲ περὶ τοὺς τοῦ  
*trophy-bearing returns having-been and about the —*  
 Λοβιτζοῦ πρόποδας, ῥαγδαῖος ὄμβρος αὐτὸν καταλαμβάνει  
*of-Lobitzos foothills violent rain him overtakes*  
 καὶ νιφετὸς ἔξωρος εἰκοστὴν πρὸς τῇ τετάρτῃ τοῦ  
*and snowfall out-of-season twentieth to the fourth of-the*  
 Σεπτεμβρίου ἄγοντος, ἐν ᾗ ἡ τῆς μεγαλομάρτυρος  
*September leading on which the of-the great-martyr*  
 Θέκλῃς μνήμη τελεῖται. πλημμύρας οὖν γενομένης τῶν  
*Thekla memorial is-celebrated flood then having-happened of-the*  
 ποταμίων ῥευμάτων καὶ ὑπερχειλήσαντος τοῦ ὕδατος  
*river streams and having-overflowed the water*  
 θάλασσαν ἦν ὁρᾶν ἅπαν τὸ πεδίον ἐκεῖνο, ἐν ᾧ ἡ  
*sea it-was to-see all the plain that in which the*  
 τε βασιλικὴ σκηνὴ καὶ τὸ ὀπλιτικὸν ἅπαν κατεσκήνου.  
*both imperial tent and the armed(-body) all was-encamped*  
 ἐντεῦθεν τὰ πρὸς χρεῖαν ἅπαντα ἠφανίσθησαν τοῖς  
*thereupon the(-things) for need all vanished by-the*  
 ποταμίοις ῥεύμασι παρασυρέντα, οἱ ἄνθρωποι δὲ καὶ  
*river streams swept-away the men and and*  
 τὰ κτήνη ὑπὸ τοῦ κρύους ἐπήγνυντο. ἐμυκᾶτο δὲ καὶ  
*the cattle by the frost were-frozen bellowed and also*  
 βροντῶν οὐρανός, ἀστραπαὶ δὲ συνεχεῖς, χρονικὴν μὴ  
*thundering heaven lightnings and continuous of-time not*  
 ἔχουσαι τὸ παράπαν διάστασιν, τὸ περίγειον ἐκεῖνο ἅπαν  
*having the at-all interval the earthly that all*  
 ἐμπρῆσαι οἶον ἡπείλουν. ταῦτα ὁρῶν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐν  
*to-burn as-it-were threatened these(-things) seeing the emperor in*

ἀμηχανία ἦν· ἀναστολῆς δὲ μετρίας γενομένης πλείστους  
*helplessness was respite and moderate having-happened very-many*  
 τε ἀποβαλὼν ταῖς δύναις τῶν ποταμίων συσχεθέντας  
*and having-lost in-the whirlpools of-the river seized*  
 ῥευμάτων ἐκεῖθεν μετὰ τῶν λογάδων ἔξεισι καὶ ὑπὸ φηγόν  
*streams from-there with the picked-men goes-out and under oak*  
 τινα μετ' αὐτῶν ἀπελθὼν ἵστατο. ἤχου δὲ μεγίστου  
*a-certain with them having-gone stood of-noise and very-great*  
 καὶ βοῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ δρυὸς οἷον ἐξερχομένου αἰσθόμενος καὶ  
*and shout from the oak as-if coming-out having-perceived and*  
 σφοδροτέρων ἀνέμων τηνικαῦτα πνεόντων πτοηθεῖς,  
*more-violent winds then blowing having-been-alarmed*  
 μὴ τῇ τούτων βία ὁ δρυς κατενεχθῇ, τοσοῦτον διάστημα  
*lest by-the of-these force the oak be-brought-down so-much distance*  
 ἀποστάς, ὅπόσον ὁ δρυς, εἰ κατενεχθείη, μὴ φθάσῃ  
*having-stood-off as-much-as the oak if it-were-brought-down not might-reach*  
 πατάξαι αὐτόν, ἐννεὸς ἵστατο. ὁ δ' εὐθὺς ὥσπερ ἐκ  
*to-strike him speechless stood it and at-once as from*  
 συνθήματος ρίζῃθεν ἀνασπασθεὶς εἰς γῆν ὥρῳα κείμενος.  
*signal from-the-roots torn-up on earth was-seen lying*  
 ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς θαυμάζων εἰστήκει τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ περὶ  
*the and emperor marveling stood the — of-God about*  
 αὐτὸν κηδεμονίαν· λογοποιουμένην δὲ ἀποστασίαν περὶ  
*him care being-fabricated and revolt about*  
 τὴν ἑω μαθὼν εἴσεισι εἰς τὰ βασιλεια. καὶ τηνικαῦτα  
*the east having-learned enters into the palace and then*  
 ἐπὶ τῷ ὀνόματι τῆς μεγαλομάρτυρος Θεκλῆς ναὸν  
*in the name of-the great-martyr Thekla temple*  
 περικαλλῇ ἐδείματο μεγαλοπρεπῶς μὲν κατεσκευασμένον  
*most-beautiful built magnificently indeed constructed*  
 καὶ ἱκανῇ δαπάνῃ, χειρὸς δὲ τὸ ποικίλον ἔχοντα,  
*and with-considerable expense of-hand and the variety having*

σωστρά τε θύσας ἐν αὐτῷ Χριστιανοῖς προσήκοντα  
*thank-offerings and having-sacrificed in it for-Christians fitting*  
 τοὺς θεῖους ὕμνους διὰ παντὸς ἐν αὐτῷ ἀπεπλήρου.  
*the divine hymns through all(-time) in it be-fulfilled*  
 οὕτως τὸ ἤδη ῥηθὲν ἱερὸν τέμενος ἐπ' ὀνόματι τῆς  
*thus the already said holy precinct in name of-the*  
 μεγαλομάρτυρος Θεκλῆς ἀνωκοδόμητο, ἐν ᾧ τὰς ἐντεύξεις,  
*great-martyr Thekla had-been-built in which the prayers*  
 ὡς ὁ λόγος φθάσας ἐδήλωσεν, ἡ βασιλὶς καὶ μήτηρ  
*as the account having-anticipated showed the empress and mother*  
 τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Ἀλεξίου συνεχεῖς ἐπεποίητο. ἦν καὶ γὰρ  
*of-the autocrat Alexios continual had-made whom I-too*  
 βραχὺν τινα τεθέαμαι χρόνον καὶ τεθαύμακα· καὶ ὅτι  
*short some have-beheld time and have-admired and that*  
 μὴ κόμπος τὰ ἤδη ῥηθέντα, ἴσασιν ἅπαντες καὶ  
*not boast the(-things) already said know all and*  
 ὁμολογήσαιεν, εἴ γε βούλουτο, ὅπόσοι ἄτερ πάθους τὴν  
*would-confess if at-least they-should-wish as-many-as without passion the*  
 ἀλήθειαν ἐκκαλύπτειν ἐθέλουσιν. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἐγκωμιάζειν  
*truth to-reveal wish if indeed for to-eulogize*  
 προειλόμην, ἀλλὰ μὴ ἱστορίαν ποιεῖν, ἐπὶ πλέον ἂν  
*I-had-chosen but not history to-make for more —*  
 ἐπαφήκα τὸν λόγον τοῖς περὶ τούτων διηγήμασι,  
*I-would-have-let-loose the account on-the about these narratives*  
 καθάπερ φθάσασα ἐδήλωσα· νῦν δὲ ἐπανακτέον  
*as having-anticipated I-showed now and it-must-be-brought-back*  
 αὐθις αὐτὸν πρὸς τὸ προκείμενον.  
*again it to the subject*

*The empire is gasping: Turks plunder the east, and in the west Robert, with the false Michael as pretext, arms a great fleet. Alexios has three hundred feeble soldiers, a few foreign barbarians who carry the sword on the right shoulder, and an empty treasury. He writes to the commanders of the east, Dabatenos and Bourtzes among them, to leave garrisons and bring new levies. He sends George Palaiologos to Dyrrachion to remove Monomachatos without a fight and to leave the battlements' timbers unnailed, and he writes to the coastal cities and islanders to be watchful.*

Ἀσπαίρουσαν δὲ οἷον κατανοῶν τὴν βασιλείαν ὁ  
 gasping and as-it-were perceiving the empire the  
 βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος (καὶ γὰρ τὰ μὲν πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα  
 emperor Alexios and for the(-lands) indeed toward rising  
 ἥλιον οἱ Τοῦρκοι δεινῶς ἐλήζοντο, τὰ δὲ κατὰ τὴν  
 sun the Turks terribly plundered the(-lands) and in the  
 ἐσπέραν λίαν εἶχε κακῶς τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου πάντα κάλων  
 west very fared badly — Robert every rope  
 κινουῦντος ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν προσεληλυθότα αὐτῷ ψευδώνυμον  
 moving for which the having-come to-him false-named  
 Μιχαὴλ εἰς τὰ βασιλεια εἰσάξαι· ὅπερ ἐμοὶ σκῆψις μᾶλλον  
 Michael into the palace to-bring-in which to-me pretext rather  
 δοκεῖ καὶ φιλαρχίας ἔρωσ ἀναφλέγων αὐτὸν καὶ ἡρεμεῖν  
 seems and of-love-of-power desire inflaming him and to-be-quiet  
 τὸ παράπαν μὴ συγχωρῶν· ἔνθεν τοι καὶ Πάτροκλον  
 the at-all not allowing thence surely also Patroklos  
 πρόφασιν τὸν Μιχαὴλ εὐρηκῶς τὸν τέως ὑποτυφόμενον  
 pretext — Michael having-found the hitherto smoldering  
 τῆς φιλαρχίας σπινθήρα εἰς πυρσὸν ἀνῆψε μέγαν καὶ  
 of-the love-of-power spark into torch he-kindled great and  
 δεινῶς κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς ὠπλίζετο δρόμωνάς  
 terribly against the of-(the)-Romans rule armed dromons



τε καὶ διήρεις ἐτοιμάζων καὶ τριήρεις καὶ σέρμωνας καὶ  
*both and biremes preparing and triremes and sermons and*  
 φορταγωγούς ἐτέρας παμπληθεῖς ναῦς ἐκ τῶν παραλίων  
*transports other very-numerous ships from the coastal*  
 εὐτρεπίζων χωρῶν κακ τῆς ἡπείρου δὲ δυνάμεις πολλὰς  
*making-ready lands and-from the mainland too forces many*  
 συλλέγων ἐς τὸ προκείμενον αὐτῷ συνεπαρηγοῦσας) ἐν  
*gathering for the purpose for-him helping in*  
 ἀμηχανία ὁ γενναῖος ἐκείνος μεῖραξ γενόμενος καὶ μὴ ἔχων  
*helplessness the noble that youth having-become and not having*  
 ὁποτέρωσε νεύσειεν, ἐκάστου τῶν πολεμίων πρὸς ἑαυτὸν  
*which-way he-should-turn each of-the enemies toward himself*  
 τὴν μάχην οἶον προαρπάζοντος, ἡνιάτο καὶ ἥσχαλλε  
*the battle as-it-were snatching-first was-grieved and was-distressed*  
 μήτε στρατιὰν ἀξιώμαχον τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας  
*neither army worthy-in-battle the of-the Romans empire*  
 ἐχούσης (οὐ πλείους γὰρ τῶν τριακοσίων στρατιωτῶν  
*having not more for than-the three-hundred soldiers*  
 ἦσαν καὶ τούτων ἐκ τοῦ Χώματος, ἀναλκίδων πάντῃ καὶ  
*there-were and these from — Choma feeble wholly and*  
 ἀπειροπολέμων, καὶ ξενικῶν τινων εὐαριθμῆτων βαρβάρων  
*inexperienced-in-war and foreign some easily-counted barbarians*  
 τῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ δεξιοῦ εἰωθότων κραδαίνειν ὦμον τὸ ξίφος)  
*those on the right accustomed to-brandish shoulder the sword*  
 μήτε σωρῶν χρημάτων τοῖς περὶ τὰ βασιλεῖα ταμείοις  
*nor heaps of-money in-the about the palace treasuries*  
 ἐναποκειμένων, δι' ὧν ξυμμαχίας τινὰς ἐξ ἄλλοδαπῶν  
*being-stored through which alliances some from foreign(-lands)*  
 μετακαλέσειτο. λίαν γὰρ ἀτέχνως περὶ τε τὰ πολεμικὰ καὶ  
*he-might-summon very for unskillfully about both the warlike and*  
 στρατιωτικὰ διατεθέντες οἱ πρὸ αὐτοῦ βεβασιλευκότες  
*military(-things) having-been-disposed the(-men) before him having-reigned*

ἐν στενῷ κομιδῇ τὰ Ῥωμαίων συνήλασαν πράγματα. ἐγὼ  
 into strait altogether the of-(the)-Romans drove affairs I  
 γοῦν καὶ στρατιωτῶν αὐτῶν καὶ πρεσβυτέρων ἀνδρῶν  
 at-any-rate both from-soldiers themselves and from-older men  
 ἐνίων ἀκήκοα, ὡς οὐδεμία τῶν πόλεων ἀπ' αἰῶνος ἐς  
 some have-heard that none of-the cities from age to  
 τοσοῦτον ἀθλιότητος κατήχθη. εἶχεν οὖν τῷ αὐτοκράτορι  
 so-great of-wretchedness was-brought were then for-the autocrat  
 δυσκόλως τὰ πράγματα μεριζομένῳ φροντίσι παντοδαπαῖς.  
 in-difficulty the affairs being-divided by-cares of-every-kind  
 ὁ δὲ γενναῖος ὢν καὶ ἄτρεστος καὶ περὶ τὰ πολεμικὰ ἔργα  
 he and noble being and fearless and about the warlike deeds  
 ἐμπειρίαν πολλὴν κεκτημένος ἐβούλετο ἐκ πολλοῦ κλύδωνος  
 experience much having-acquired wished from great surge  
 εἰς ἀλύπους ἀκτὰς τὴν βασιλείαν αὖθις ἐγκαθορμίσαι τῶν  
 to painless shores the empire again to-bring-into-harbor the  
 ἐπανισταμένων ἐχθρῶν εἰς ἀφρὸν θεοῦ ἀρωγῇ διαλυομένων  
 rising-up enemies into foam of-God by-help being-dissolved  
 κυμάτων δίκην, ὅπνῃκα ταῖς πέτραις προσαρράξουσιν. δέον  
 waves like when on-the rocks they-shall-dash needful  
 οὖν ἔγνω πάντας τοὺς κατὰ τὴν ἀνατολὴν τοπάρχας  
 then he-decided all the throughout the east toparchs  
 ταχὺ μετακαλέσασθαι, ὅποσοι φρούριά τε καὶ πόλεις  
 quickly to-summon as-many-as forts both and cities  
 κατέχοντες γενναίως τοῖς Τούρκοις ἀντικαθίσταντο. εὐθὺς  
 holding nobly the Turks withstood at-once  
 οὖν πρὸς ἅπαντας διαφόρους σχεδιάζει γραφάς, πρὸς  
 then to all different improvises letters to  
 τε τὸν Δαβατηνὸν τοποτηρητὴν τηλικαῦτα τῆς κατὰ  
 both — Dabatenos lieutenant then of-the in  
 Πόντον Ἡρακλείας καὶ Παφλαγονίας χρηματίζοντα καὶ τὸν  
 Pontos Herakleia and Paphlagonia serving and —

Βούρτζην τοπάρχην ὄντα Καππαδοκίας καὶ Χώματος καὶ  
*Bourtzes toparch being of-Cappadocia and Choma and*  
 τοὺς λοιποὺς λογάδας, δηλώσας μὲν καὶ ὅποσα αὐτῷ  
*the remaining picked-men having-shown indeed also as-much-as to-him*  
 ζυμπεσόντα θεοῦ προνοία εἰς τὴν αὐτοκράτορος περιωπὴν  
*having-befallen by-God's providence to the of-autocrat eminence*  
 ἀνεβίβασεν ἐξ ὑπογίου κινδύνου παραδόξως σωθέντα,  
*had-raised from imminent danger unexpectedly saved*  
 παρακελευόμενος δὲ τῶν σφετέρων χωρῶν πρόνοιαν ἱκανὴν  
*urging and of-the own lands provision sufficient*  
 ποιησαμένους κατασφαλίσασθαι αὐτὰς καὶ ἀποχρῶντας  
*having-made to-secure them and sufficient*  
 πρὸς τοῦτο στρατιώτας καταλιπεῖν, μετὰ δὲ τῶν ἐπιλοίπων  
*for this soldiers to-leave with and the remaining*  
 εἰς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου παραγίνεσθαι συνεπαγομένους καὶ  
*to the of-Constantine(-city) to-come bringing-along also*  
 νεολέκτους ἀκμῆτας, ὅπόσους δύναιντο. εἶτα δεῖν  
*new-levied fresh as-many-as they-could then to-be-needful*  
 ἔγνω καὶ τὰ κατὰ τὸν Ῥομπέρτον, ὡς ἐνόν,  
*he-decided also the(-things) concerning — Robert as being-possible*  
 προκατασφαλίσασθαι καὶ τοὺς προσρυσόμενους ἐκείνῳ  
*to-secure-beforehand and the flowing-to him*  
 ἀρχηγούς τε καὶ κόμητας ἀπείρξαι τοῦ ἐγχειρήματος.  
*leaders both and counts to-hold-back from-the undertaking*  
 ἐπεὶ δ' ὁ πρὸ τοῦ τὴν πόλιν αὐτὸν κατασχεῖν πρὸς  
*since and the(-man) before the the city him to-seize to*  
 τὸν Μονομαχάτον ἀποσταλεῖς, δι' οὗ εἰς βοήθειαν  
*— Monomachatos sent through whom to help*  
 αὐτὸν μετεκαλεῖτο χρήματά τε ἐπεζήτηι ἀποσταληναί  
*him he-summoned money and he-sought to-be-sent*  
 οἱ, γράμματα μόνον κομίζων ἦκεν αὐτῷ προφάσεις  
*to-him letters only bringing came to-him pretexts*

δηλοῦντα, καθάπερ φθάσαντες ἱστορήσαμεν, δι' ᾧς  
*showing as having-anticipated we-related because-of which*  
 δῆθεν ἔτι τοῦ Βοτανειάτου τῆς βασιλείας ἐγκρατοῦς ὄντος  
*supposedly still — Botaneiates of-the empire master being*  
 βοηθεῖν οὐκ ἠδύνατο, ταῦτα ἀναγνοὺς καὶ πτοηθείς,  
*to-help not he-could these(-things) having-read and having-been-alarmed*  
 μὴ μαθὼν τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλείας τοῦ Βοτανειάτου  
*lest having-learned the from the empire — of-Botaneiates*  
 ἔκπτωσι προσρυῇ τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ, ἀθύμως εἶχε  
*fall be-might-flow-over — to-Robert despondently he-was*  
 παντάπασι. τοιγαροῦν μετακαλεσάμενος τὸν σύγγαμβρον  
*altogether accordingly having-summoned the fellow-son-in-law*  
 αὐτοῦ Γεώργιον τὸν Παλαιολόγον πρὸς τὸ Δυρράχιον  
*his George the Palaiologos to — Dyrrachion*  
 ἐξαπέστειλε (πόλιν δὲ τοῦτο Ἰλλυρικὴν) παρακαλεσάμενος  
*he-sent-off city and this Illyrian having-exhorted*  
 πάσῃ μηχανῇ χρῆσασθαι, ὥστε ἀμαχητὶ ἐκεῖθεν ἐξεῶσαι  
*with-every device to-use so-that without-battle from-there to-thrust-out*  
 τὸν Μονομαχάτον, ἐπεὶ μὴ ἀποχρῶσαν εἶχε δύναμιν,  
*— Monomachatos since not sufficient he-had force*  
 δι' ἧς τοῦτον ἄκοντα ἐκεῖθεν ἀπελάσει, πρὸς δὲ τὰς  
*through which him unwilling from-there he-will-drive-out to and the*  
 τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου μηχανὰς ἀντιμηχανᾶσθαι, ὡς δύναμις.  
*— of-Robert devices to-counter-contrive as power(-allowed)*  
 παρεκελεύσατο δὲ καὶ τὰς ἐπάλξεις καινοπρεπέστερον  
*he-ordered and also the battlements more-newly*  
 κατασκευάσαι ἀνήλωτα τὰ πλείω τῶν ξύλων ἐάσαντα, ἵν'  
*to-construct unnailed the most of-the timbers having-left that*  
 εἴ ποῦ διὰ κλιμάκων συμβαίῃ τοὺς Λατίνους ἀνελθεῖν,  
*if somewhere by ladders it-should-happen the Latins to-go-up*  
 ἅμα τῷ τῶν ξύλων ἐπιβῆναι περιτρέπωνται ταῦτα  
*at-once with-the the timbers to-step-on they-should-be-overturned these*

καὶ σὺν τούτοις καταπίπτωσιν εἰς τοῦδαφος. ναὶ μὴν  
*and with them they-should-fall-down to the-ground yes indeed*  
 ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς ἡγεμόσι τῶν παραλίων πόλεων καὶ αὐτοῖς  
*but also to-the leaders of-the coastal cities and themselves*  
 δὴ τοῖς νησιώταις πολλὰ διὰ γραφῶν παρηγγυᾶτο  
*indeed to-the islanders much through letters he-exhorted*  
 μὴ ἀναπεπτωκέναι μηδὲ καταρραθυμεῖν ὅλως, ἀλλ'  
*not to-have-grown-careless nor to-be-slack at-all but*  
 ἐγρηγορέναι καὶ νήφειν διὰ παντὸς περιφραττομένους  
*to-be-awake and to-be-sober through all(-time) fencing-themselves*  
 καὶ τὸν Ῥομπέρτον караδοκοῦντας, μὴ ἐξ ἐφόδου πασῶν  
*and — Robert awaiting lest from attack all*  
 τῶν παραλίων πόλεων ἐγκρατὴς γενόμενος καὶ αὐτῶν  
*the coastal cities master having-become and themselves*  
 δὴ τῶν νήσων πράγματα ἐς ὕστερον τῇ βασιλείᾳ  
*indeed the islands troubles to later to-the empire*  
 Ῥωμαίων παρέξει.  
*of-(the)-Romans he-will-cause*

XLII • THE LETTER TO HENRY

*Alexios sets Hermanos of Lombardy, the pope, Archbishop Hervé of Capua, and the Celtic princes against Robert with gifts and promises. To King Henry he sends Choïrosphaktes with a letter praising his pledge against Robert, reporting the money and silk sent and the rest promised once Henry swears, proposing a marriage alliance, and listing gifts of relics, a sardonix cup, and balsam.*

Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν οὕτω παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως περὶ τὸ  
*these(-things) indeed then thus by the emperor about —*  
 Ἰλλυρικὸν ὠκονόμητο, καὶ καλῶς τὰ τέως κατὰ  
*Illyricum had-been-arranged and well the(-things) hitherto in*

πρόσωπον καὶ ἐν ποσὶ κείμενα τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ κατοχυρώσας  
*face and at feet lying — to-Robert having-secured*  
 ὥπτο· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τῶν κατὰ νώτων ἐκείνῳ προσισταμένων  
*he-was-seen but not-even of-those at back to-him standing-against*  
 κατερραθυμηκῶς ἦν. γράμματα τοίνυν πρῶτον μὲν  
*having-been-negligent he-was letters therefore first indeed*  
 πρὸς τὸν ἀρχηγὸν Λογγιβαρδίας Ἑρμάνον ἐκθέμενος, εἶτα  
*to the leader of-Lombardy Hermanos having-set-out then*  
 καὶ πρὸς τὸν πάπαν Ῥώμης, πρὸς δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὸν  
*also to the pope of-Rome besides and also to the*  
 ἀρχιεπίσκοπον Καπύης Ἑρβιον, πρὸς τοὺς πρίγκιπας,  
*archbishop of-Capua Hervé to the princes*  
 ἔτι γε μὴν καὶ πρὸς ἅπαντας τοὺς ἀρχηγούς τῶν  
*further at-least indeed also to all the leaders of-the*  
 Κελτικῶν χωρῶν δώροις τε μετρίοις τούτους δεξιωσάμενος  
*Celtic lands with-gifts both moderate them having-greeted*  
 καὶ ὑποσχέσει πολλῶν δωρεῶν καὶ ἀξιομάτων πρὸς τὴν  
*and with-promises of-many donations and dignities to the*  
 κατὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἔχθραν ἡρέθιζεν· ὧν οἱ μὲν  
*against — Robert enmity he-provoked of-whom some indeed*  
 τῆς πρὸς τὸν Ῥομπέρτον φιλίας ἤδη ἀπέστησαν, οἱ  
*from-the to — Robert friendship already stood-aside others*  
 δὲ ὑπισχνοῦντο, εἰ πλείονα λάβοιεν. ὑπὲρ πάντας δὲ  
*and promised if more they-should-receive above all and*  
 τούτους τὸν ῥήγα Ἀλαμανίας γινώσκων δυνάμενον πᾶν  
*these the king of-Alamania knowing able everything*  
 ὃ τι καὶ βούλοιτο κατὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου καταπράξασθαι  
*what — also he-might-wish against — Robert to-accomplish*  
 ἅπαξ καὶ δις γράμματα πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐκπέμψας καὶ διὰ  
*once and twice letters to him having-sent and through*  
 μειλιχίων λόγων καὶ παντοίων ὑποσχέσεων ὑποποισάμενος,  
*gentle words and all-kinds-of promises having-won-over*

ἐπεὶ καταπειθῇ τοῦτον ἐγνώκει καὶ τῷ αὐτοῦ ὑπείξει  
*since persuaded him he-had-recognized and to-the his to-yield*  
 θελήματι ὑπισχνούμενον, μεθ' ἑτέρων αὐθις γραμμάτων  
*will promising with other again letters*  
 τὸν Χοιροσφάκτην ἐξέπεμψε τάδ' ὑπαγορευόντων “τὰ  
 — *Choirosphaktes he-sent-out these dictating the(-things)*  
 κατὰ τὴν σὴν μεγαλοδύναμον ἐξουσίαν καλῶς ἔχειν καὶ  
*concerning the your mighty authority well to-be and*  
 προκόπτειν ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον εὐχῆς ἐστὶν ἔργον τῇ βασιλείᾳ  
*to-advance to the better of-prayer is work for-the majesty*  
 μου, πανευγενέστατε καὶ τῷ ὄντι Χριστιανικώτατε  
*my most-noble and in-the reality most-Christian*  
 ἄδελφε. καὶ πῶς γὰρ οὐκ ἐξέσται τῇ τοῦ κράτους  
*brother and how for not will-it-be-permitted to-the of-the sovereignty*  
 ἡμῶν θεοσεβείᾳ ἐπεύχεσθαί σοι τὰ κρείττω τε καὶ  
*our piety to-pray for-you the better(-things) both and*  
 λυσιτελέστερα τὴν ἐν σοὶ καταμαθούσῃ θεοσεβείαν; ἡ  
*more-profitable the in you having-learned piety the*  
 γὰρ πρὸς τὴν ἡμετέραν βασιλείαν ἀδελφικὴ σου αὕτη  
*for toward the our majesty brotherly your this*  
 ροπή καὶ διάθεσις καὶ ὁ κατὰ τοῦ κακομηχάνου  
*inclination and disposition and the against the evil-scheming*  
 ἀνδρὸς συμφωνηθεὶς ἀναδεχθῆναί σοι κάματος, ἵνα τὸν  
*man agreed to-be-undertaken by-you labor that the*  
 παλαμναῖον καὶ ἀλιτῆριον καὶ τοῦ θεοῦ πολέμιον καὶ τῶν  
*murderous and sinful and — of-God enemy and of-the*  
 Χριστιανῶν ἀξίως μετέλθῃς τῆς κακοφροσύνης αὐτοῦ  
*Christians worthily you-should-punish of-the wickedness his*  
 πολλήν σοι τὴν ἀγαθοθέλειαν τῆς ψυχῆς διαδείκνυσι,  
*much in-you the good-will of-the soul shows*  
 καὶ τὸ ἔργον τοῦτο φανερὰν τὴν πληροφορίαν παρίστησι  
*and the deed this manifest the assurance presents*

τοῦ κατὰ θεόν σου φρονήματος. τὰ δὲ κατὰ  
*of-the according-to God your mind the(-things) and concerning*  
 τὴν ἡμετέραν βασιλείαν τᾶλλα μὲν ἔχει καλῶς, οὐκ ἐν  
*the our majesty the-rest indeed is well not in*  
 ἐλαχίστοις δὲ ἀστατεῖ καὶ ταραττεται τοῖς κατὰ τὸν  
*least(-things) but is-unstable and is-troubled by-the(-things) concerning —*  
 Ῥομπέρτον κυμαινόμενα. ἀλλ' εἴ τι δεῖ πιστεῦειν θεῷ  
*Robert surging but if at-all it-is-needful to-trust God*  
 καὶ τοῖς ἐκείνου δικαίοις κρίμασι, ταχεῖα ἢ καταστροφὴ  
*and the his just judgments swift the overthrow*  
 τοῦ ἀδικωτάτου τούτου ἀνθρώπου παρέσεται. οὐδὲ γὰρ  
*of-the most-unjust this man will-be-present not for*  
 ἀνέξεται πάντως θεὸς ῥάβδον ἀμαρτωλῶν κατὰ τῆς  
*will-endure surely God rod of-sinners on the*  
 κληρονομίας αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον ἐπαφίεσθαι. τὰ μέντοι  
*inheritance his for so-long to-be-let-loose the(-things) however*  
 παρὰ τοῦ κράτους ἡμῶν συμφωνηθέντα ἀποσταλῆναι  
*by the sovereignty our agreed to-be-sent*  
 τῇ μεγαλοδυνάμει σου ἐξουσίᾳ, αἱ ἑκατὸν τεσσαράκοντα  
*to-the mighty your authority the hundred forty*  
 τέσσαρες χιλιάδες τῶν νομισμάτων καὶ τὰ ἑκατὸν βλαττία,  
*four thousands of-the coins and the hundred silk-cloths*  
 ἀπεστάλησαν νῦν διὰ τοῦ πρωτοπροέδρου Κωνσταντίνου  
*were-sent now through the protoproedros Constantine*  
 καὶ κατεπάνω τῶν ἀξιωματῶν κατὰ τὴν ἀρεσκείαν τοῦ  
*and katepano of-the dignities according-to the pleasure of-the*  
 πιστοτάτου καὶ εὐγενεστάτου σου κόμητος τοῦ Βουλχάρδου.  
*most-faithful and most-noble your count — Bulchard*  
 καὶ τὸ ῥηθὲν ποσὸν τῶν ἀποσταλόντων ἀπεπληρώθη  
*and the said amount of-the(-things) sent was-fulfilled*  
 διὰ τε εἰργασμένου ἀργύρου καὶ Ῥωμανάτου παλαιᾶς  
*through both worked silver and Romanatus of-old*



ποιότητος. καὶ τελειούμενου τοῦ ὄρκου παρὰ τῆς εὐγενείας  
*quality and being-performed the oath by the nobility*  
 σου σταλήσονται σοι καὶ αἱ ὑπόλοιποι διακόσιοι δεκαῆξ  
*your will-be-sent to-you also the remaining two-hundred sixteen*  
 χιλιάδες τῶν νομισμάτων καὶ ἡ ρόγα τῶν δοθέντων  
*thousands of-the coins and the stipend of-the given*  
 εἴκοσιν ἀξιωματῶν διὰ τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῇ σῇ ἐξουσίᾳ  
*twenty dignities through the most-faithful to-the your authority*  
 Βαγελάρδου, ὅπηνίκα εἰς Λογγιβαρδίαν κατέλθης. ὅπως  
*Bagelardos when into Lombardy you-come-down how*  
 μέντοι ὀφείλει τελεσθῆναι ὁ ὄρκος, προεδηλώθη πάντως  
*however must be-performed the oath was-shown-before surely*  
 τῇ εὐγενείᾳ σου, ἀπαγγελεῖ δ' ἔτι σαφέστερον καὶ ὁ  
*to-the nobility your will-report and still more-clearly also the*  
 πρωτοπρόεδρος Κωνσταντῖνος καὶ κατεπάνω, ὥς καὶ παρὰ  
*protoproedros Constantine and katepano as also by*  
 τοῦ κράτους ἡμῶν ἐνταλθεῖς ἕκαστον τῶν κεφαλαίων,  
*the sovereignty our instructed each of-the articles*  
 ἅπερ μέλλουσι ζητηθῆναι καὶ διὰ τοῦ γενησομένου  
*which are-about to-be-sought and through the about-to-be*  
 παρὰ σοῦ ὄρκου βεβαιωθῆναι. ὅπηνίκα γὰρ ἡ συμφωνία  
*by you oath to-be-confirmed when for the agreement*  
 ἀναμεταξὺ τῆς βασιλείας μου καὶ τῶν παρὰ τῆς εὐγενείας  
*between the majesty my and the by the nobility*  
 σου ἀποσταλέντων πρέσβων ἐγένετο, διεμνημονεύθησάν  
*your sent envoys was-made were-mentioned*  
 τина τῶν ἀναγκαιοτέρων κεφάλαια· ὅτι δὲ περὶ τούτων  
*some of-the more-necessary articles because and about these*  
 μὴ ἔχειν πρόσταξιν εἶπον οἱ τῆς εὐγενείας σου  
*not to-have instruction said the(-men) of-the nobility your*  
 ἄνθρωποι, κατὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἡ βασιλεία μου τὸν ὄρκον  
*men according-to this also the majesty my the oath*

αὐτοῖς ἀνήρτησε. τοῖνυν καὶ τελεσθήτω ὁ ὄρκος παρὰ  
*to-them suspended therefore also let-be-performed the oath by*  
 τῆς εὐγενείας σου, ὡς ὁ πιστός σου Ἀλβέρτης ἐνωμότως  
*the nobility your as the faithful your Albert on-oath*  
 τῇ βασιλείᾳ μου ἐβεβαίωσε, καὶ ὡς τὸ ἡμέτερον  
*to-the majesty my confirmed and as the our*  
 κράτος κατὰ προσθήκην ἀναγκαιοτέραν αὐτοῦ ζητεῖ.  
*sovereignty by addition more-necessary of-it seeks*  
 ἡ δὲ βραδυτῆς τοῦ πιστοτάτου καὶ εὐγενεστάτου σου  
*the and slowness of-the most-faithful and most-noble your*  
 κόμητος τοῦ Βουλχάρδου γέγονε διὰ τὸ τὴν βασιλείαν  
*count — Bulchard has-come because-of the the majesty*  
 μου βούλεσθαι τὸν φίλτατόν μοι ἀνεψιόν, τὸν υἱὸν  
*my to-wish the dearest to-me nephew the son*  
 τοῦ πανευτυχεστάτου σεβαστοκράτορος καὶ περιποθήτου  
*of-the most-fortunate Sebastokrator and much-beloved*  
 αὐταδέλφου τῆς βασιλείας μου, θαεθῆναι παρ' αὐτοῦ,  
*own-brother of-the majesty my to-be-beheld by him*  
 ὡς ἂν ἐλθὼν ἀπαγγείλῃ σοι τὴν ἐν ἡλικίας ἀπαλῶ  
*that — having-come he-may-report to-you the in of-age tender*  
 καταστάματι βεβηκυῖαν σύνεσιν τοῦ παιδός· τὰ γὰρ  
*state advanced understanding of-the child the(-things) for*  
 ἔξω καὶ σωματικὰ δευτέρου τίθεται λόγου ἢ βασιλεία  
*outward and bodily of-second places account the majesty*  
 μου, εἰ καὶ ἐν τούτοις πολὺ ἔχει τὸ περιούσιον. ὡς γὰρ  
*my if even in these much it-has the surplus how for*  
 τῇ μεγαλοπόλει ἐνδημήσας ἐθεάσατο τὸ παιδίον καὶ  
*in-the great-city having-stayed he-beheld the child and*  
 ὅσα εἰκὸς ὠμίλησεν, ἀπαγγελεῖ σοι ὁ πρέσβυς σου.  
*as-much-as (is)-fitting conversed will-report to-you the envoy your*  
 καὶ ἐπεὶ παιδίον μὲν οὐπω ὁ θεὸς τῇ βασιλείᾳ μου  
*and since child indeed not-yet — God to-the majesty my*

ἐχαρίσατο, τόπον δέ μοι γνησίου παιδὸς ὁ φίλτατος  
*has-granted place and to-me of-true child the dearest*  
 οὗτος ἐπέχει ἀδελφιδοῦς, θεοῦ εὐδοκοῦντος οὐδέν ἐστι  
*this holds nephew God being-pleased nothing is*  
 τὸ κωλῦον ἐνωθῆναι ἡμᾶς δι' αἵματος συγγενικοῦ  
*the(-thing) hindering to-be-united us through blood kindred*  
 καὶ φίλα μὲν ἀλλήλοις φρονεῖν ὡς Χριστιανούς,  
*and friendly(-things) indeed to-each-other to-think as Christians*  
 οἰκειοῦσθαι δὲ καὶ τὰ ἀλλήλων ὡς συγγενεῖς, ἵν'  
*to-make-our-own and also the(-things) of-each-other as kinsmen that*  
 ἐντεῦθεν δι' ἀλλήλων ἕκαστος δυναμούμενοι φοβεροὶ  
*thence through each-other each being-strengthened fearsome*  
 τοῖς ἐναντίοις ὦμεν καὶ ἀήττητοι μετὰ θεοῦ. τῇ  
*to-the opponents we-may-be and unconquered with God to-the*  
 μέντοι εὐγενεΐα σου νῦν ἀπεστάλησαν δεξιωμάτων ἕνεκεν  
*however nobility your now were-sent of-greetings for-the-sake*  
 ἐγκόλπιον χρυσοῦν μετὰ μαργαριταρίων, θήκη διάχρυσος  
*pectoral golden with pearls case gold-shot*  
 ἔχουσα ἔνδον τμήματα διαφόρων ἀγίων, ὧν ἕκαστον  
*having inside fragments of-various saints of-which each*  
 διὰ τοῦ ἐφ' ἐκάστῳ αὐτῶν ἐντεθέντος χαρτίου γνωρίζεται,  
*through the on each of-them placed paper is-made-known*  
 καυκίον σαρδονύχιον καὶ ἐμπότης κρύος, ἀστροπέλεκυν  
*cup of-sardonyx and drinking-cup crystal thunderbolt*  
 δεδεμένον μετὰ χρυσαφίου καὶ ὀποβάλαμον. μακρύναι  
*bound with gold and balsam may-lengthen*  
 ὁ θεὸς τὴν ζωὴν σου, πλατύναι τὰ τῆς ἐξουσίας σου  
*— God the life your may-broaden the of-the authority your*  
 ὅρια καὶ θείῃ σοι πάντας τοὺς ἀντιπίπτοντας εἰς  
*boundaries and may-be-make for-you all the opposing into*  
 ὀνειδισμόν καὶ εἰς καταπάτημα. εἰρήνῃ εἴη τῇ ἐξουσίᾳ  
*reproach and into trampling peace may-be to-the authority*

σου καὶ γαλήνης ἥλιος ἐπιλάμβου πάση τῇ ὑπηκόῳ σου  
 your and of-calm sun may-shine-upon all the subject(-land) your  
 καὶ γένοιτό σοι ἅπαντες εἰς ἀφανισμόν οἱ ἐχθροὶ τῆς  
 and may-become for-you all into destruction the enemies the  
 ἄνωθεν κραταιᾶς ἰσχύος κατὰ πάντων σοι χαριζομένης  
 from-above mighty strength against all to-you granting  
 τὸ ἄμαχον τοσοῦτον τὸ ἀληθινὸν αὐτοῦ ὄνομα ἀγαπῶντι  
 the invincibility so-much the true his name loving  
 καὶ κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἐκείνου τὴν χεῖρα ὀπλίζοντι.”  
 and against the enemies his the hand arming

#### XLIII · PEACE WITH THE TURKS

*The Turks of Solyma, the sultan at Nikaia, raid Bithynia as far as the Bosphoros. Alexios sends hastily gathered men by boat to land at night and strike, then to hold the small towns and attack at dawn. As the Turks fall back he grows bolder and has his foot soldiers fight on horseback, and they drive the Turks out beyond Nikomedeia. With Robert coming as well, and with no money or forces, he wins the sultan over with gifts and makes peace, fixing the Drakon river as the boundary.*

Οὕτω μὲν οὖν τὰ κατὰ τὴν ἐσπέραν οἰκονομήσας  
 thus indeed then the(-things) concerning the west having-managed  
 αὐτὸς πρὸς τὸ κατεπεῖγον καὶ ὑπόγυον τὸν κίνδυνον  
 he to the urgent and imminent the danger  
 ἀπειλοῦν ἡτοιμάζετο ἐγκαρτερῶν ἔτι τῇ βασιλίδι τῶν  
 threatening prepared remaining still in-the queen of-the  
 πόλεων, σκοπῶν ὅπως διὰ παντοίας μεθόδου τοῖς εἰς  
 cities considering how through every method to-the into  
 προῦπτον ἐπικεκμηνοῖς ἐχθροῖς ἀντικατασταίη. καὶ ἐπεί,  
 open-view pressing enemies he-might-stand-against and since  
 ὥς ὁ λόγος φθάσας ἐδήλωσε, τοὺς μὲν ἀθεωτάτους  
 as the account having-anticipated showed the indeed most-godless

Τούρκους περὶ τὴν Προποντίδα ἑώρα ἐνδιατρίβοντας, τοῦ  
*Turks about the Propontis he-saw lingering —*  
 Σολυμᾶ τῆς ἑώας ἀπάσης ἐξουσιάζοντος καὶ περὶ τὴν  
*Solyma of-the east all having-authority and about —*  
 Νίκαιαν ἀνλιζομένου (οὗ καὶ τὸ σουλτανίκιον ἦν, ὅπερ  
*Nikaia bivouacking where also the sultanikion was which*  
 ἂν ἡμεῖς βασίλειον ὀνομάσαιμεν) καὶ προνομεῖς συνεχῶς  
*— we palace would-name and foragers continually*  
 ἀποστέλλοντος καὶ ληζομένου ἅπαντα τά τε περὶ τὴν  
*sending and plundering all the(-things) both about —*  
 Βιθυνίαν διακείμενα καὶ Θυνίαν, καὶ μέχρι αὐτῆς Βοσπόρου  
*Bithynia lying and Thynia and as-far-as itself Bosporos*  
 τῆς νῦν καλουμένης Δαμάλεως ἱππηλασίας καὶ ἐπιδρομὰς  
*the now called Damalis horse-raids and incursions*  
 ποιουμένους καὶ λείαν πολλὴν ἀφαιρουμένους καὶ μονονοῦ  
*making and booty much carrying-off and all-but*  
 ὑπεράλλεσθαι καὶ αὐτῆς ἐπιχειροῦντας τῆς θαλάσσης· οὗς  
*to-leap-over also itself attempting the sea whom*  
 οἱ Βυζάντιοι ὁρῶντες ἀφόβως πάντῃ ἐνδιατρίβοντας ἐν τοῖς  
*the Byzantines seeing fearlessly wholly lingering in the*  
 περὶ τὰς ἀκτὰς διακειμένοις πολιχνίοις καὶ ἱεροῖς τεμένεσι  
*about the shores lying small-towns and holy precincts*  
 μὴ τινος ἐκεῖθεν αὐτοὺς ἀπελαύνοντος ἔντρομοι διὰ παντὸς  
*not anyone from-there them driving-out trembling through all(-time)*  
 ὄντες διηποροῦντο ὅ τι δεῖ διαπράξασθαι· ταῦτα  
*being were-at-a-loss what — it-is-needful to-do these(-things)*  
 ὁρῶν ὁ βασιλεὺς, πολλοῖς κυμαινόμενος λογισμοῖς καὶ  
*seeing the emperor by-many tossed reasonings and*  
 πολλὰς λαμβάνων μεταβολὰς καὶ τροπὰς τοῦ κρατήσαντος  
*many taking changes and turns of-the having-prevailed*  
 γίνεται λογισμοῦ καί, ὥς ἐνόν, ἔργου εἶχετο. ἀφ'  
*becomes reasoning and as being-possible of-deed took-bold from*

ὧν οὖν ἐξ ὑπογούου συνειλοχὼς ἦν Ῥωμαίων ἀνδρῶν  
*what then from short-notice having-gathered he-was of-Roman men*  
 καί τινων τῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ Χώματος ὠρμημένων δεκάρχας  
*and some of-those from — Choma having-come decurions*  
 προχειρισάμενος καὶ ἐν ἀκατίοις ἐνθέμενος τοὺς μὲν  
*having-appointed and in boats having-put the indeed*  
 ψιλοὺς τόξα καὶ ἀσπίδα φέροντας μόνον, τοὺς δὲ καὶ  
*light(-armed) bows and shield carrying only the(-others) and also*  
 ἄλλως θωρήξασθαι εἰδότας κόρυσίν τε καὶ ἀσπίσιν καὶ  
*otherwise to-arm knowing(-how) with-helmets both and shields and*  
 δόρυσι νυξὶ περὶ τὰς ἀκτὰς καὶ τοὺς αἰγιαλοὺς ἐρχομένους  
*spears by-nights about the shores and the beaches going*  
 λάθρᾳ ἐξάλλεσθαι τε καὶ τοῖς ἀθέοις εἰσπίπτειν ἐκέλευεν,  
*secretly to-leap-out both and on-the godless to-fall he-ordered*  
 εἴ γε κατανοοῖεν μὴ πολλαπλοὺς τῆς αὐτῶν ποσότητος  
*if at-least they-should-perceive not many-fold of-the their quantity*  
 ἐκείνους εἶναι, καὶ εὐθὺς παλινოსτεῖν ἕκαστος ὅθεν ἐξῆι.  
*them to-be and at-once to-return each whence he-went-out*  
 ἀπειροπολέμους δὲ πάντα γινώσκων αὐτοὺς ἐπέσκηπτεν  
*inexperienced-in-war and wholly knowing them he-enjoined*  
 ἀσποφῆτὶ τὴν εἰρεσίαν τοῖς ἐρέταις παραγγέλλειν ποιεῖσθαι  
*noiselessly the rowing to-the rowers to-order to-make*  
 φυλαττομένους ἅμα καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐν ταῖς ῥωχμαῖς  
*guarding-themselves at-the-same-time also from the in the clefts*  
 τῶν πετρῶν λοχώντων βαρβάρων. τούτων γοῦν ἐπὶ  
*of-the rocks ambushing barbarians these at-any-rate for*  
 τισιν ἡμέραις οὕτω τελουμένων κατ' ὀλίγον τῶν περὶ τὴν  
*some days thus being-done by little from-the about the*  
 θάλατταν χωρίων ἀνωτέρω ἐχώρουν οἱ βάρβαροι. ὅπερ ὁ  
*sea places further-up went the barbarians which the*  
 αὐτοκράτωρ μεμαθηκὼς τοῖς ἀποσταλείσιν παρεκελεύετο  
*autocrat having-learned to-those sent ordered*

καταλαβείν, ἅπερ ἐκείνοι πρόην κατεῖχον πολίχνια καὶ  
*to-occupy what they earlier held small-towns and*  
οἰκοδομήματα, καὶ εἴσω τούτων διανυκτερεύειν· περὶ δὲ  
*buildings and inside them to-pass-the-night about and*  
τὰς ἡλιακὰς αὐγὰς, ὅπηνίκα χορταγωγίας χάριν ἢ τινος  
*the of-the-sun rays when of-foraging for-the-sake or of-some*  
ἐτέρας χρείας τοῖς ὑπεναντίοις ξυμβαίνει ἐξιέναι, ἀθρόον  
*other need to-the opponents it-happens to-go-out suddenly*  
αὐτοῖς ἐπιτίθεσθαι, καὶ εἴ τι κατ' αὐτῶν δυνηθεῖεν,  
*them to-attack and if anything against them they-could*  
ἀρκεῖσθαι τούτῳ, κἂν μικρὸν ᾗ, καὶ μὴ πλεῖον ζητοῦντας  
*to-be-content with-this even-if small it-be and not more seeking*  
παρακινδυνεύειν καὶ θάρσος τοῖς ἐχθροῖς ἐντεῦθεν διδόναι,  
*to-run-risks and boldness to-the enemies thence to-give*  
ἀλλ' εὐθὺς ὑποστρέφειν καὶ εἴσω τῶν φρουρίων γίνεσθαι.  
*but at-once to-return and inside the forts to-be*  
οὐ πολὺ τὸ ἐν μέσῳ, καὶ πορρωτέρω αὖθις οἱ  
*not much the(-time) in between and farther again the*  
βάρβαροι ἐγίνοντο, ὥστε ἀποθαρρῆσαι τὸν αὐτοκράτορα  
*barbarians became so-that to-take-courage the autocrat*  
τοῖς τέως πεζοῖς καὶ ἰππάσασθαι κελεῦσαι καὶ δόρυ κινεῖν  
*to-the hitherto foot-soldiers also to-ride to-order and spear to-move*  
καὶ πολλοὺς διαύλους ἰππασίας κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων ποιεῖν  
*and many double-courses of-riding against the opponents to-make*  
οὐκέτι ἐν νυκτὶ οὐδὲ λάθρᾳ ἐπίπτουσιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμέρας  
*no-longer by night nor secretly falling-on but also day*  
ἄρτι αὐγαζούσης. καὶ οἱ τέως δεκάρχαι πεντηκοντάρχαι  
*just dawning and the hitherto decurions captains-of-fifty*  
γεγόνασιν καὶ οἱ πεζῇ καὶ νυκτὸς μετὰ δέους πολλοῦ  
*have-become and the(-men) on-foot and by-night with fear much*  
τοῖς ἐναντίοις μαχόμενοι ἐωθινοὶ αὐτοῖς ἐπετίθεντο καὶ  
*with-the opponents fighting at-dawn on-them attacked and*

ἡλίου ἐς μεσουράνημα φθάνοντος μετὰ θάρσους λαμπροῦς  
*sun to mid-heaven reaching with boldness brilliant*  
 ξυνίστων πολέμους. οὕτως οὖν τοῖς μὲν εἰς τοῦπίσω  
*engaged battles thus then for-those indeed to the-rear*  
 προὔχῳρει τὰ πράγματα, τῇ δὲ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ  
*went the affairs to-the and of-(the)-Romans rule*  
 ἀναλάμπειν κατὰ μικρὸν τὸν ὑποτυφόμενον τῆς ἐξουσίας  
*to-blaze-up by little the smoldering of-the power*  
 σπινθήρα ξυνέβαινε. οὐ γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς Βοσπόρου μόνον  
*spark it-happened not for from the Bosphoros only*  
 καὶ τῶν τῇ θαλάττῃ παρακειμένων χωρίων ὁ Κομνηνὸς  
*and of-the to-the sea lying-near places — Komnenos*  
 αὐτοὺς πόρρω που μάλα ἀπήλασεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν  
*them far somewhere very drove but also from-the(-places)*  
 περὶ τὴν Βιθυνίαν καὶ Θυνίαν ἅπασαν καὶ τῶν τῆς  
*about — Bithynia and Thynia all and from-the of-the(-city)*  
 Νικομήδους ὁρίων ἐκδιώξας τὰ περὶ εἰρήνης  
*of-Nikomedes boundaries having-driven-out the(-things) about peace*  
 ἀνέπεισε τὸν σουλτάνον μάλα θερμῶς ἐξαίτεῖσθαι. ὥς  
*he-persuaded the sultan very warmly to-request when*  
 δὲ τὴν ἀκατάσχετον τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ὁρμὴν ἐκ πολλῶν  
*and the unrestrainable — of-Robert impulse from many(-reports)*  
 ἐβεβαιούτο καὶ ὥς ἀπειροπληθεῖς συναγροχῶς δυνάμεις  
*he-was-assured-of and that countless-numbered having-gathered forces*  
 ἤδη πρὸς τὴν ἡῖονα τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας ἐγγίξειν ἐπείγεται,  
*already to the shore — of-Lombardy to-approach hastens*  
 ἄσμενος τὸν περὶ εἰρήνης δέχεται λόγον. εἰ γὰρ μηδὲ τὸν  
*gladly the about peace receives word if for not-even —*  
 Ἡρακλέα πρὸς δύο μάχεσθαι ἐνῆν, ὥς ὁ παροιμιώδης  
*Herakles against two to-fight was-possible as the proverbial*  
 αἰνίττεται λόγος, πολλῶ μᾶλλον νέον ἀρχηγὸν νεωστὶ  
*hints word much more young leader recently*



διεφθορίας ἤδη ἐπιδραξάμενον ἀρχῆς, κατὰ μικρὸν μὲν  
*ruined already having-grasped rule by little indeed*  
 πρὸ πολλοῦ φθινούσης, εἰς τοῦσχατον δὲ ἤδη ἐληλακυίας,  
*before long waning to the-utmost and already having-come*  
 μὴ δυνάμεις, μὴ χρήματα κεκτημένον· προπέποτο γὰρ  
*not forces not money having had-been-drunk-away for*  
 ἅπαντα ἐν μηδενὶ χρησίμῳ καταναλωθέντα. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ  
*all on nothing useful spent thence surely also*  
 τοὺς Τούρκους διὰ παντοίας μεθόδου τῆς τε Δαμάλεως  
*the Turks through every method — both from-Damalis*  
 καὶ τῶν περὶ αὐτὴν παραλίων τόπων ἐκδιώξας, ἅμα  
*and from-the about it coastal places having-driven-out at-once*  
 δὲ καὶ δώροις δεξιωσάμενος ἐξεβίασατο εἰς εἰρηνικὰς  
*and also with-gifts having-greeted compelled to peaceful*  
 ἀπονεῦσαι σπονδὰς καὶ ὄρον αὐτοῖς τὸν καλούμενον  
*to-incline treaties and boundary to-them the called*  
 Δράκοντα ποταμὸν δεδωκὼς μὴ ὑπερβαίνειν ὅλως αὐτοῦ  
*Drakon river having-given not to-cross at-all it*  
 μήτε ποτὲ πρὸς τὰ ὅρια Βιθυνῶν ἐξορμᾶν ἔπεισεν.  
*nor ever to the boundaries of-(the)-Bithynians to-set-out persuaded*

*Palaiologos reports from Dyrrachion that Monomachatos, who had sent Alexios' messenger back without the money he asked for, has fled in fear to Bodin and Michaelas; a chrysobull of safety brings him back to the palace. Robert leaves Roger in charge, builds towers on his ships, joins Bohemond at Avlona, and divides his army between sea and land. Off Cape Glossa a storm wrecks his fleet; the towers collapse, many drown, and the survivors bury the dead amid the stench. Undaunted, Robert rests at Glabinitza and encamps on the Illyrian plain inside the ruined walls of Epidamnos, emptied by Pyrrhos' war on Rome and rebuilt by Amphion and Zethos as Dyrrachion.*

Οὕτω μὲν οὖν τὰ περὶ τὴν ἑὼ κατήνναστο·  
 thus indeed then the(-things) about the east had-been-lulled  
 καταλαβὼν δὲ τὸ Δυρράχιον ὁ Παλαιολόγος ταχυδρόμον  
 having-reached and — Dyrrachion — Palaiologos courier  
 ἀποστείλας τὰ περὶ τοῦ Μονομαχάτου ἐδήλου, ὅτι περ  
 having-sent the(-things) about — Monomachatos made-known that  
 τὴν ἐκείνου ἄφιξιν μεμαθηκῶς σπουδαίως πρὸς τε τὸν  
 the his arrival having-learned hastily to both —  
 Βυδίνον καὶ τὸν Μιχαηλᾶν προσεληλύθει. ἐδεδείκει γὰρ  
 Bodin and — Michaelas he-had-gone he-feared for  
 διὰ τὸ μὴ ὑπακοῦσαι, ἀλλὰ κενὸν ἀποπέμψαι, ὃν  
 because-of the not to-have-obeyed but empty to-have-sent-back whom  
 πρὸ τοῦ τὴν μελετωμένην ἀποστασίαν εἰς φῶς ἀγαγεῖν ὁ  
 before the the being-planned revolt into light to-bring the  
 βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐπεπόμφει γραμματοκομιστὴν  
 emperor Alexios to him had-sent letter-carrier  
 χρήματα δι' αὐτοῦ αἰτούμενος, κἂν ὁ βασιλεὺς μηδὲν  
 money through him asking even-if the emperor nothing  
 κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐναντίον διανοεῖτο, εἰ μὴ τὴν τῆς ἀρχῆς  
 against him hostile intended if not the of-the office

παράλυσιν διὰ τὴν ἤδη ῥηθείσαν αἰτίαν. διαγνοὺς  
*removal because-of the already said cause having-learned*  
 δὲ τὰ κατὰ τὸν Μονομαχάτον ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ  
*and the(-things) concerning — Monomachatos the autocrat*  
 χρυσόβουλλον λόγον πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐξαποστέλλει πᾶσαν  
*chrysobull word to him sends all*  
 ἀφροντισίαν αὐτῷ παρέχων· ὃν ἐν χερσὶν ἐκείνος λαβὼν  
*freedom-from-care to-him furnishing which in hands he having-taken*  
 παλινδρομεῖ πρὸς τὰ βασίλεια. ὁ δὲ Ῥομπέρτος εἰς  
*runs-back to the palace — but Robert to*  
 Ὑδροῦντα παραγενόμενος καὶ τὴν ἅπασαν αὐτοῦ ἐξουσίαν  
*Hydrous having-come and the whole his authority*  
 καὶ αὐτῆς δὴ τῆς Λογγιβαρδίας τῷ υἱῷ αὐτοῦ Ῥογέρῃ  
*and itself indeed — of-Lombardy to-the son his Roger*  
 ἀναθέμενος ἐκεῖθεν ἐξελθὼν τὸν λιμένα τοῦ Βρεντησιού  
*having-entrusted from-there having-gone-out the harbor — of-Brentesion*  
 κατέλαβε καὶ ἐκεῖσε τὴν τοῦ Παλαιολόγου εἰς τὸ Δυρράχιον  
*reached and-there the — of-Palaiologos to — Dyrrachion*  
 ἔλυσιν μεμαθηκώς, παραχρῆμα ἐν τοῖς μείζοσι τῶν  
*coming having-learned immediately on the larger of-the*  
 πλοίων πύργους δειμάμενος διὰ ξύλων, διὰ βύρσης τούτους  
*vessels towers having-built of timbers with hide them*  
 περιέστειλε καὶ πάντα τὰ πρὸς τειχομαχίαν ἐπιτήδεια  
*covered and all the(-things) for wall-fighting suitable*  
 ἐν ταῖς ναυσὶ σπουδαίως εἰσαγαγὼν εἰς τε τοὺς δρόμοντας  
*in the ships hastily having-brought-in into and the dromons*  
 ἵππους τε καὶ ἐνόπλους ἱππέας εἰσελάσας καὶ πάντοθεν  
*horses both and armed horsemen having-driven and from-all-sides*  
 τὰ πρὸς πόλεμον ὀξέως μάλα ἐξαρτύσας διαπερᾶν  
*the(-things) for war swiftly very having-fitted-out to-cross*  
 ἠπείγετο. ἐσκόπει γάρ, ὅπηνίκα τὸ Δυρράχιον καταλάβῃ,  
*hastened he-intended for when — Dyrrachion he-should-reach*

περιζῶσαι τοῦτο διὰ τῶν ἐλεπόλεων ἀπό τε θαλάττης  
*to-gird it through the siege-engines from both sea*  
 καὶ ἡπείρου, ἕν' ἅμα μὲν καταπλήξῃ τοὺς ἐντός, ἅμα δὲ  
*and land that at-once indeed he-might-terrify those inside at-once and*  
 καὶ πανταχόθεν περιστοιχίσας αὐτοὺς ἐξ ἐφόδου τὴν πόλιν  
*also from-everywhere having-surrounded them from assault the city*  
 αἰρήσεται. θόρυβος τοίνυν ἐντεῦθεν τοὺς τε νησιώτας καὶ  
*he-would-take uproar therefore thence the both islanders and*  
 τοὺς περὶ τὴν ἡϊόνα τοῦ Δυρραχίου ταῦτα μεμαθηκότας  
*those about the shore — of-Dyrrachion these(-things) having-learned*  
 κατέσχε πολὺς. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ γνώμην αὐτῷ τὰ πάντα  
*held great when and according-to mind for-him the all(-things)*  
 ἤδη τετέλεσται, λύσας τὰ πρυμνήσια τοὺς τε  
*already had-been-accomplished having-loosed the stern-cables the both*  
 δρόμοντας καὶ τὰς τριήρεις νῆας καὶ μονήρεις κατὰ τὴν  
*dromons and the trireme ships and monoremes according-to the*  
 τῶν ναυτικῶν ἐμπειρίαν εἰς πολέμου σχῆμα διατυπώσας  
*of-the seamen experience into of-war formation having-shaped*  
 σὺν εὐταξίᾳ τοῦ πλοῦς ἀπεπειράτο. οὐρίου δὲ τυχὼν  
*with good-order of-the sailing he-attempted favorable and having-met*  
 πνεύματος τὴν κατὰ τὸν Αὐλῶνα περαιάν κατέλαβε καὶ  
*wind the at — Avlona opposite-shore he-reached and*  
 τὴν ἡϊόνα παραπλέων ἀπῆλθε μέχρι Βοθρεντοῦ. κἀκεῖσε  
*the shore sailing-along went-off as-far-as Bothrentos and-there*  
 ἐνωθεὶς μετὰ τοῦ Βαϊμόντου προφθάσαντος περᾶσαι  
*having-united with — Bobemond having-been-first to-cross*  
 καὶ τὸν Αὐλῶνα ἐξ ἐφόδου κατασχεῖν διχῇ τὸ ἅπαν  
*and — Avlona from assault to-take in-two the whole*  
 διελὼν στράτευμα τὸ μὲν αὐτὸς κατεῖχε διὰ  
*having-divided army the(-part) indeed he held through*  
 θαλάττης τὸν ἀπόπλουν ὡς πρὸς τὸ Δυρράχιον ἐθέλων  
*sea the voyage as to — Dyrrachion wishing*

ποιήσασθαι, τοῦ δὲ τὸν Βαῖμουῦντον ἄρχειν ἐπέτρεψε  
*to-make of-the(-other) and — Bohemond to-command be-entrusted*  
 διὰ ξηρᾶς μέλλοντα πρὸς τὸ Δυρράχιον ὁδεῦσαι. καὶ  
*through dry-land about to — Dyrrachion to-travel and*  
 δὴ τὴν Κορυφῶν διελθὼν καὶ πρὸς τὸ Δυρράχιον  
*indeed — Korypho having-passed and to — Dyrrachion*  
 ἀποκλίνας κατὰ τι ἀκρωτήριον Γλῶσσαν καλούμενον  
*having-turned at some promontory Glossa called*  
 μεγίστῳ κλύδωνι αἴφνης περιπεπτώκει. νιφετὸς γὰρ  
*greatest storm suddenly bad-fallen-into snowfall for*  
 πολὺς καὶ ἄνεμοι τῶν ὄρων κινηθέντες τὴν θάλασσαν  
*great and winds from-the mountains set-in-motion the sea*  
 σφοδρῶς συνετάραττον. κἀντεῦθεν ἠγεীরτό τε τὰ κύματα  
*violently churned and-thence were-raised both the waves*  
 καὶ ἐπωρύετο αἱ τε κῶπαι τῶν προσκώπων καθιέντων  
*and howled the both oars of-the rowers dipping*  
 ἐθραύοντο τὰ θ' ἱστία διαβιβρώσκοντες ἦσαν οἱ ἄνεμοι,  
*were-broken the both sails devouring were the winds*  
 αἱ δὲ κεραῖαι συνθλώμεναι κατὰ τοῦ καταστρώματος  
*the and yards being-crushed onto the deck*  
 ἔπιπτον καὶ αὐτανδρα ἤδη τὰ σκάφη κατεποντίζετο,  
*fell and with-all-hands already the vessels were-sunk*  
 κἀν θέρους ὥρα ἦν τοῦ ἡλίου τὸν καρκίνον ἤδη  
*even-if of-summer season it-was the sun the Crab already*  
 παρελθόντος καὶ πρὸς τὸν λέοντα ἐπείγομένου, ὅποτε καὶ  
*having-passed and to the Lion hastening when also*  
 τὴν τοῦ κυνὸς ἐπιτολὴν εἶναί φασιν. ἐταράττοντο οὖν  
*the of-the Dog rising to-be they-say were-troubled then*  
 ἅπαντες ἐξαπορούμενοι καὶ οὐκ εἶχον ὅ τι καὶ δράσαιεν  
*all being-at-a-loss and not they-had what — also they-might-do*  
 πολέμοις τοιούτοις ἀντικαθίστασθαι μὴ δυνάμενοι. θροῦς  
*against-enemies such to-withstand not being-able clamor*

δὲ ἐπήρτο πολὺς, ὥμωζον, ἐποτνιώντο, ἔθεοκλύτουν  
*and arose great they-wailed they-lamented they-called-on-the-gods*  
 θεὸν σωτήρα ἐπικαλούμενοι καὶ τὴν ἥπειρον θεάσασθαι  
*God savior invoking and the land to-behold*  
 ἐπήνυχοντο. ὁ δὲ κλύδων τέως οὐκ ἐνεδίδου μηνίνοντος  
*they-prayed the and storm meanwhile not gave-way being-wrathful*  
 ὥσπερ τοῦ θεοῦ πρὸς τὸ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἀκάθεκτον καὶ  
*as-if — God at the — of-Robert unrestrainable and*  
 ὑπέρογκον φρύαγμα καὶ τὸ τέλος ἐκ πρώτης ἀφετηρίας  
*overweening insolence and the end from first starting-line*  
 οὐκ εὐτυχὲς παραδεικνύοντος ἤδη. τὰ μὲν οὖν τῶν πλοίων  
*not fortunate showing already some indeed then of-the vessels*  
 σὺν αὐτοῖς πλωτῆρσι κατεποντίσθη, τὰ δὲ ταῖς ἀκταῖς  
*with themselves sailors were-sunk others and on-the shores*  
 προσαραχθέντα συνεθλάσθη. τῶν δὲ περιστελλουσῶν τοὺς  
*having-been-dashed were-crushed the and covering the*  
 πύργους βυρσῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ὕετοῦ χαλαρωτέρων γεγονυῖων  
*towers hides by the rain looser having-become*  
 οἱ τε ἦλοι τῶν οἰκείων τόπων ἐξέστησαν καὶ τὸ  
*the both nails from-the own places stood-out and —*  
 ἐντεῦθεν αἱ βύρσαι βάρος εἰληφυῖαι τοὺς ξυλίνους ἐκείνους  
*thereupon the hides weight having-taken the wooden those*  
 πύργους ταχὺ περιέτρεψαν καὶ καταρραγέντες τὰς ναῦς  
*towers quickly overturned and having-crashed-down the ships*  
 κατέδυσαν. τὸ δέ γε σκάφος, ἐν ᾧ ὁ Ῥομπέρτος  
*sank the but at-least vessel in which — Robert*  
 ἐνήν, ἡμίθραυστον γεγονὸς μόγις διεσώθη· ἐσώθησαν δὲ  
*was half-broken having-become scarcely was-saved were-saved and*  
 καὶ τινες τῶν ὀλκάδων σὺν τοῖς πλωτῆρσι παραδόξως.  
*also some of-the merchant-ships with the sailors unexpectedly*  
 πολλοὺς μὲν ἢ θάλαττα ἀποπτύσασα οὐκ ὀλίγα δὲ  
*many indeed the sea having-spat-out not few and*

βαλάντια καὶ ἄλλα τινά, ἐξ ὧν τὸ ναυτικὸν τοῦ  
*purses and other some(-things) from which the fleet —*  
 Ῥομπέρτου συνεπεφέρετο, περὶ τὴν ψάμμον κατέστρωσε.  
*of-Robert was-carried-along about the sand strewn*  
 τοὺς μέντοι νεκροὺς οἱ σωθέντες περιστέλλοντες ἔθαπτον  
*the however dead those saved laying-out buried*  
 κἀντεύθεν πολλῆς τῆς ἐκ τούτων δυσωδίας ἐπίμπλαντο.  
*and-thence with-much the from them stench they-were-filled*  
 οὐ γὰρ ἐνῆν αὐτοῖς τοσοῦτους ῥαδίως ἐνσοριάσαι. τῶν  
*not for it-was-possible for-them so-many easily to-coffin the*  
 οὖν ἐδωδύμων πάντων ἀφανισθέντων τάχα ἂν καὶ ὑπὸ  
*then foodstuffs all having-vanished perhaps — also by*  
 λιμοῦ διεφθάρησαν οἱ τέως σωθέντες, εἰ μὴ τὰ λήϊα  
*famine would-have-perished the(-men) hitherto saved if not the crops*  
 πάντα καὶ οἱ ἀγροὶ καὶ οἱ κῆποι τοῖς καρποῖς ἔβριθον.  
*all and the fields and the gardens with-the fruits were-laden*  
 συνετὰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα ἦσαν πᾶσι τοῖς φρονοῦσιν  
*intelligible indeed then these(-things) were to-all those thinking*  
 ὀρθῶς, τὸν δὲ Ῥομπέρτον οὐδὲν τῶν γεγονότων  
*rightly — but Robert nothing of-the(-things) having-happened*  
 ἐφόβει ἀκαταπτόητον ὄντα καὶ ἐς τοσοῦτον, οἶμαι, τὴν  
*frightened undaunted being and to so-much I-think the*  
 ζωὴν ἑαυτῷ διαρκέσαι ἐπευχόμενον, ἐφ' ὅσον πρὸς  
*life to-himself to-suffice praying for as-much-as against*  
 οὓς ἐθέλει μάχεσθαι δύναιτο ἄν. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ τοῦ  
*whom he-wishes to-fight he-could — thence surely also from-the*  
 προκειμένου σκοποῦ τῶν γεγονότων οὐδὲν ἀπεῖρξεν  
*lying-before aim of-the(-things) having-happened nothing held-back*  
 αὐτόν, ἀλλὰ μετὰ τῶν σωθέντων (ἦσαν γὰρ τινες οἱ  
*him but with those saved there-were for some who*  
 θεοῦ ἀμάχῳ δυνάμει τοῦ κινδύνου ῥυσθέντες) ἐβδόμην  
*by-God's invincible power from-the danger delivered seventh*

ἡμέραν εἰς τὴν Γλαβινίτζαν ἐγκαρτερήσας, ἐφ' ᾧ αὐτὸν  
*day at — Glabinitza having-stayed for which himself*  
 ἀνακτήσασθαι, διαναπαῦσαι δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἐκ τοῦ κλύδωνος  
*to-recover to-rest and also those from the storm*  
 τῆς θαλάττης διασωθέντας, φθάσαι δὲ καὶ τοὺς εἰς τὸ  
*of-the sea saved to-have-arrived and also those at —*  
 Βρεντήσιον καταλειφθέντας καὶ μὴν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλοθεν  
*Brentesian left-behind and indeed also those from-elsewhere*  
 προσδοκωμένους διὰ στόλου καταλαβεῖν τοὺς τε πρὸ  
*expected through fleet to-reach those both before*  
 μικροῦ φθάσαντας διὰ τῆς ἡπείρου διαπεραιωθῆναι ἰππέας  
*a-little having-been-first through the mainland to-be-carried-across horsemen*  
 ἐνόπλους καὶ πεζοὺς καὶ τὸ ψιλὸν τῆς αὐτοῦ δυνάμεως,  
*armed and foot-soldiers and the light(-armed) of-the his force*  
 ἅπαντας συναγροχῶς διὰ τε τῆς ξηρᾶς καὶ θαλάσσης  
*all having-gathered through both the dry-land and sea*  
 τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν πεδῖον κατέλαβε μετὰ πασῶν τῶν αὐτοῦ  
*the Illyrian plain reached with all the his*  
 δυνάμεων. συνὴν δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ ταῦτά μοι διηγούμενος  
*forces was-with and him also the these(-things) to-me narrating*  
 Λατῖνος, ὡς ἔλεγε, πρέσβυς τοῦ ἐπισκόπου Βάρεως πρὸς  
*Latin as he-said envoy of-the bishop of-Bari to*  
 τὸν Ῥομπέρτον ἀποσταλὲς, καὶ ὡς διεβεβαιούτο, σὺν τῷ  
*— Robert sent and as he-affirmed with —*  
 Ῥομπέρτῳ τὴν τοιαύτην διέτριβε πεδιάδα. καὶ δὴ ἐντὸς  
*Robert the such spent plain and indeed within*  
 τῶν ἐρειπωθέντων τειχῶν τῆς πάλαι καλουμένης πόλεως  
*the ruined walls of-the formerly called city*  
 Ἐπιδάμνου καλύβας ἐπήγνυντο ἱλαδὸν τὰς δυνάμεις  
*of-Epidamnos buts they-fixed by-squadrons the forces*  
 κατατιθέμενοι. ἐν ᾗ βασιλεὺς ποτε Ἑπειρώτης Πύρρος  
*placing in which king once Epirote Pyrrhos*



Ταραντίνους ἐνωθεὶς Ῥωμαίους ἐν Ἀπουληΐᾳ καρτερὸν  
*with-Tarentines having-united against-(the)-Romans in Apulia strong*  
 τὸν πόλεμον συνεστήσατο· καὶ ἀνδροκτασίας ἐντεῦθεν  
*the war set-up and slaughter thence*  
 πολλῆς γεγρονίας, ὥς ἅπαντας ἄρδην ξίφους παρανάλωμα  
*much having-happened so-that all utterly of-sword waste-matter*  
 γεγονέναι, ἄοικος πάντῃ καταλέλειπται. ἐν ὑστέροις δὲ  
*to-have-become uninhabited wholly it-has-been-left in later and*  
 χρόνοις, ὥς Ἑλληνές φασι καὶ αὐτὰ δὴ τὰ ἐν τῇ πόλει  
*times as Hellenes say and themselves indeed the in the city*  
 γλυπτὰ γράμματα μαρτυροῦσιν, ὑπ' Ἀμφίονος καὶ Ζήθου  
*carved letters bear-witness by Amphion and Zethos*  
 ἀνοικοδομηθεῖσα εἰς ὃ νῦν ὁράται σχῆμα αὐτίκα καὶ τὴν  
*having-been-rebuilt into which now is-seen form at-once also the*  
 κλῆσιν μεταμέβασα Δυρράχιον προσηγόρευται. τοσαῦτα  
*name having-changed Dyrrachion has-been-called so-much*  
 μὲν οὖν προσιστορεῖσθω καὶ περὶ ταύτης τῆς πόλεως· καὶ  
*indeed then let-be-related-besides also about this the city and*  
 ἡμῶν τὰ τοῦ τρίτου λόγου ἐνταυθοῖ συμπεπεράνθω,  
*for-us the(-things) of-the third book here let-be-concluded*  
 τὰ δ' ἐφεξῆς ὁ μετὰ τοῦτον εὐθὺς ἱστορήσειεν.  
*the(-things) and following the(-book) after this at-once may-relate*

BOOK IV

XLV · THE SIEGE OF DYRRACHION BEGINS

*By 17 June Robert is encamped with a huge army, his fleet surrounding Dyrrachion. Palaiologos fortifies the walls, keeps watch day and night, and warns Alexios; the defenders, seeing a huge hide-covered siege-tower, grasp that Robert wants the empire. Robert claims to come for his kinsman Michael, but when he parades the monk, the defenders jeer that they do not know him, and some sally against the Latins. Some call the monk Michael's cupbearer, others Michael himself; Anna judges it all a pretext of Robert's greed.*

Ἡ μὲν οὖν ἡπειρος τὸν Ῥομπέρτον εἶχεν ἤδη ἐν  
*the indeed then mainland — Robert had already in*  
 αὐτῇ αὐλιζόμενον ἑπτὰ καὶ δεκάτην ἄγοντος τοῦ Ἰουνίου  
*it bivouacking seven and tenth keeping the June*  
 μηνὸς τῆς τετάρτης ἐπινεμήσεως μεθ' ἱππέων καὶ πεζῶν  
*month of-the fourth indiction with horsemen and foot-soldiers*  
 δυνάμεων ἀριθμὸν ὑπερβαινουσῶν καὶ φοβερῶν ἰδεῖν ἀπὸ  
*forces number exceeding and fearsome to-see from*  
 τε τοῦ σχήματος ἀπὸ τε τῆς στρατηγικῆς καταστάσεως·  
*both the formation from and the military disposition*  
 ἤδη γὰρ ἀπανταχόθεν αὐθις συνήθροιστο στράτευμα· ἐν δὲ  
*already for from-everywhere again had-been-gathered army in and*  
 τῇ θαλάττῃ παντοῖον εἶδος πλοίων μεθ' ἑτέρων στρατιωτῶν  
*the sea every kind of-vessels with other soldiers*  
 ἐμπειρίαν πολλὴν τοῦ διὰ θαλάσσης πολέμου ἔχοντων τὸ  
*experience much of-the by sea war having the*  
 ναυτικὸν αὐτοῦ διεπλώζετο. περιστοιχισθέντες οὖν οἱ  
*fleet his sailed-about having-been-surrounded then the(-men)*  
 τοῦ Δυρραχίου ἐντὸς ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους, θαλάττης  
*— of-Dyrrachion inside from each side of-sea*

φημὶ καὶ ἡπείρου, καὶ ἀπειροπληθεῖς τὰς τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου  
*I-mean and of-land and countless the — of-Robert*  
 ὁρῶντες δυνάμεις καὶ πάντα λόγον ὑπερβαινούσας μεγίστω  
*seeing forces and all reckoning exceeding with-greatest*  
 δέει συνείχοντο. ὁ δέ γε Παλαιολόγος Γεώργιος γενναῖος  
*fear were-held — and at-least Palaiologos George noble*  
 ὢν ἀνὴρ καὶ στρατηγικὴν πᾶσαν ἐξησκημένος, μυρίους δὲ  
*being man and generalship all having-practiced countless and*  
 πολέμους ἀγωνισάμενος περὶ τὴν ἑω καὶ νικητὴς ἀναδειχθεὶς  
*wars having-fought about the east and victor having-been-shown*  
 ἀκατάπληκτος ὢν τὴν πόλιν κατωχύρου τὰς τε ἐπάλξεις  
*undaunted being the city fortified the both battlements*  
 κατασκευάζων κατὰ τὰς ὑποθημοσύνας τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος  
*constructing according-to the suggestions of-the autocrat*  
 καὶ λιθοβόλους τὰ τείχη καταπυκνῶν μηχανήμασι τοὺς  
*and with-stone-throwing the walls packing devices the*  
 τε ἀναπεπτωκότας τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀνακτῶμενος καὶ  
*both despondent of-the soldiers recovering and*  
 σκοποὺς δι' ὅλου καταστήσας τοῦ τείχους καὶ αὐτὸς δὴ  
*lookouts through whole having-set the wall and himself indeed*  
 περιπολεύων διὰ πάσης νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας ἐπαγρυπνεῖν  
*going-round through all night and day to-keep-watch*  
 τοὺς φυλάσσοντας παρεκελεύετο. τηνικαῦτα δὲ καὶ  
*the guards he-ordered then and also*  
 διὰ γραμμάτων τὴν τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἔφοδον ἐδήλου  
*through letters the — of-Robert attack made-known*  
 τῷ αὐτοκράτορι καὶ ὅτι τὴν πόλιν πολιορκήσων τὸ  
*to-the autocrat and that the city about-to-besiege —*  
 Δυρράχιον παρεγένετο. οἱ δὲ ἐντὸς ὁρῶντες τὰς ἑξωθεν  
*Dyrrachion he-had-come those and inside seeing the outside*  
 ἐλεπόλεις καὶ τὸν κατασκευασθέντα ὑπερμεγέθη μύσωνα  
*siege-engines and the constructed huge wooden-tower*

ὑπερανεστηκότα καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν τοῦ Δυρραχίου τειχῶν  
*towering even over-themselves the — of-Dyrrachion walls*  
 βύρσαις τε πανταχόθεν περιπεφραγμένον καὶ τὰ λιθοβόλα  
*with-hides both on-all-sides fenced and the stone-throwing*  
 μηχανήματα κατὰ κορυφὴν τούτου ἰστάμενα τήν τε  
*devices on top of-it standing the both*  
 πᾶσαν περιβολὴν τῶν τειχῶν ἔξωθεν τοῦ στρατοπέδου  
*whole circuit of-the walls outside by-the camp*  
 περιζωσθεῖσαν καὶ τοὺς ἀπανταχόθεν συρρέοντας συμμάχους  
*girded and the from-everywhere flowing-together allies*  
 πρὸς τὸν Ῥομπέρτον καὶ τὰς παρακειμένας πόλεις ἐξ  
*to — Robert and the neighboring cities from*  
 ἐπιδρομῆς πορθουμένας καὶ τὰς καλύβας καθ' ἑκάστην  
*raid being-sacked and the huts by each(-day)*  
 πολλαπλασιαζόμενας δέει συνείχοντο διαγινώσκοντες  
*multiplying with-fear were-held recognizing*  
 ἤδη τὸν σκοπὸν τοῦ δουκὸς Ῥομπέρτου, ὡς οὐκ ἐπὶ τῷ  
*already the aim of-the duke Robert that not for the*  
 πόλεις καὶ χώρας δηώσασθαι καὶ λείαν πολλὴν ἐκεῖθεν  
*cities and lands to-ravage and booty much from-there*  
 συγκομισάμενος αὖθις εἰς Ἀπουληϊάν ἐπαναστρέψαι, ὡς  
*having-gathered again to Apulia to-return as*  
 ἀπανταχοῦ διεκηρυκεύετο, τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν πεδίου κατέλαβεν,  
*everywhere was-proclaimed the Illyrian plain he-had-reached*  
 ἀλλὰ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῆς Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας ἡμιρόμενος τὸ  
*but of-the rule of-the of-(the)-Romans empire longing —*  
 Δυρράχιον, ὃ φασιν, ἐκ πρώτης ἀφετηρίας πολιορκῆσαι  
*Dyrrachion as they-say from first starting-line to-besiege*  
 ἡπέιγετο. κелеύει τοίνυν ὁ Παλαιολόγος ἄνωθεν πυθέσθαι,  
*be-hastened orders therefore — Palaiologos from-above to-ask*  
 ὅτου χάριν παραγέγονεν. ὁ δέ φησιν “ὥστε τὸν τῆς  
*for-what sake he-had-come he and says so-that the from-the*

βασιλείας ἐξωσθέντα Μιχαὴλ τὸν ἐμὸν κηδεστὴν εἰς  
*empire thrust-out Michael the my relative-by-marriage to*  
 τὴν ἰδίαν τιμὴν αὐθις ἀποκαταστήσαι καὶ τὰς εἰς αὐτὸν  
*the own honor again to-restore and the against him*  
 γεγονυίας ὕβρεις ἐπέξελθεῖν καὶ τὸ ὅλον ἐκδικῆσαι αὐτόν”.  
*having-happened insults to-avenge and the whole to-vindicate him*  
 οἱ δέ φασι πρὸς αὐτὸν ὡς “εἰ τὸν Μιχαὴλ θεασάμενοι  
*they and say to him that if — Michael having-beheld*  
 γνωρίσομεν, προσκυνήσομέν τε εὐθὺς αὐτὸν καὶ τὴν πόλιν  
*we-recognize we-will-do-obeisance both at-once to-him and the city*  
 παραδῶμεν”. ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ Ῥομπέρτος προστάσσει  
*we-will-hand-over these(-things) having-heard — Robert orders*  
 εὐθὺς τὸν Μιχαὴλ λαμπρῶς ἀμφιασθέντα ὑποδειχθῆναι τοῖς  
*at-once — Michael splendidly having-been-dressed to-be-shown to-the*  
 τῆς πόλεως οἰκίτορσιν. ἀπαγαγόντες δὲ τὸν τοιοῦτον μετὰ  
*of-the city inhabitants having-led-off and the such(-man) with*  
 λαμπρᾶς προπομπῆς παντοίοις ὀργάνοις μουσικοῖς καὶ  
*splendid escort with-all-kinds-of instruments musical and*  
 κυμβάλοις κατακτυπούμενον ὑποδεικνύουσιν. ἅμα δὲ τῷ  
*cymbals being-sounded-around they-show at-once and with-the*  
 τοῦτον θεάσασθαι ἄνωθεν μυρίαῖς ὕβρεσιν ἔπλυνον μὴ  
*him to-behold from-above with-countless insults they-washed(-him) not*  
 ἐπιγινώσκειν αὐτὸν ὅλως δισχυρίζόμενοι. ὁ δὲ Ῥομπέρτος  
*to-recognize him at-all insisting — but Robert*  
 παρ’ οὐδὲν ταῦτα θέμενος τοῦ προκειμένου ἔργου  
*at nothing these(-things) having-reckoned of-the lying-before work*  
 εἶχετο. ἐν ὅσῳ δὲ ταῦτα οἱ τε ἐντὸς καὶ ἐκτὸς πρὸς  
*held-to in as-long-as and these(-things) the both inside and outside to*  
 ἀλλήλους ἔλεγον, ἄφνω τῆς πόλεως ἐκπηδήσαντές τινες  
*each-other were-saying suddenly from-the city having-leapt-out some*  
 μετὰ τῶν Λατίνων συναιροῦσι πόλεμον καὶ μερικῶς αὐτοὺς  
*with the Latins engage battle and partly them*

καταβλάψαντες αὐθις εἰσῆλθον εἰς τὸ Δυρράχιον. περὶ δέ  
*having-harmed again went-in into — Dyrrachion about and*  
γε τοῦ συνεφεπομένου μοναχοῦ τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ διαφόρου  
*at-least the following monk — to-Robert of-different*  
γνώμης ἦσαν οἱ πλείους. οἱ μὲν διεκήρυττον τὸν οἰνοχόον  
*mind were the most some indeed proclaimed the cupbearer*  
λέγοντες εἶναι Μιχαὴλ βασιλέως τοῦ Δούκα, οἱ δὲ αὐτὸν  
*saying to-be of-Michael emperor the Doukas others and him*  
ἐκεῖνον διεβεβαιοῦντο τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Μιχαὴλ τὸν τοῦ  
*that-one affirmed the autocrat Michael the of-the*  
βαρβάρου συμπένθερον, δι' ὃν καὶ τὸν πολὺν ἀνείλετο  
*barbarian fellow-father-in-law because-of whom also the great he-took-up*  
πόλεμον, ὥς φασιν· ἔνιοι δὲ διενίσταντο ἀκριβῶς εἰδέναι,  
*war as they-say some and insisted exactly to-know*  
ὅτι σκῆψις ἦν τὸ ὅλον τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου. οὐ γὰρ αὐτόμολος  
*that pretext was the whole — of-Robert not for deserter*  
εἰς αὐτὸν ἐκεῖνος ἐληλύθει, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἀπὸ ἐσχάτης πενίας  
*to him he had-come but since from extreme poverty*  
καὶ τύχης ἀφανοῦς διὰ δραστηριότητα φύσεως καὶ  
*and fortune obscure because-of energy of-nature and*  
φρονήματος ὄγκον πασῶν τῶν κατὰ τὴν Λογγιβαρδίαν  
*of-spirit weight of-all the in — Lombardy*  
πόλεων καὶ χωρῶν καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς Ἀπουληΐας ἐγκρατῆς  
*cities and lands and itself — of-Apulia master*  
γεγονῶς κύριον ἑαυτὸν κατέστησεν, ὥς ὁ λόγος ἄνωθεν  
*having-become lord himself he-set-up as the account above*  
φθάσας ἱστόρησε, μετ' οὐ πολὺ εἰς ἔφεσιν πλειόνων  
*having-anticipated related after not long into desire of-more*  
ἐλθόν, ὅποια ταῖς ἀκορέστοις ἐγγίνεσθαι εἴωθε ψυχαῖς,  
*having-come such-as in-the insatiable to-arise is-wont souls*  
τῶν κατὰ τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν διακειμένων πόλεων δεῖν  
*of-the in the Illyricum lying cities to-be-needful*

ἔγνω ἀποπειρᾶσθαι καὶ οὕτως, εἰ εὖοδα αὐτῷ τὰ  
*he-decided to-make-trial and thus if prosperous for-him the*  
 πράγματα γένοιτο, τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν ἐπεκτείνεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ  
*affairs should-become to-the further to-extend and for*  
 πᾶς φιλοχρήματος, ἐπειδὴν ἀρχῆς δράξοιτο, γαγγραίνης  
*every money-lover when of-rule he-grasps from-gangrene*  
 κατ' οὐδὲν διενήνοχεν, ἥτις, ἐπειδὴν σώματος ἐπιλάβοιτο,  
*in nothing differs which when of-body it-takes-hold*  
 οὐδαμῶς ἵσταται, μέχρις ἂν τὸ ὅλον διαπορευομένη  
*in-no-way stops until — the whole going-through*  
 λυμήνηται.  
*it-may-ravage*

XLVI • THE VENETIANS

*Alexios, fearing Robert's numbers, asks the sultan for Turks and promises the Venetians rewards whether they win or lose. Their fleet anchors at Pallia, binds its ships into a sea-harbor with towers on the masts, and when Bohemond demands their acclamation, mocks his beard. In the battle they hole Bohemond's ship with a spiked block of timber, forcing him onto another, drive his fleet back to Robert's camp, and with Palaiologos' sortie inflict heavy losses. Alexios rewards them.*

Ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ πάντα διὰ γραμμάτων τοῦ  
*the and autocrat all through letters —*  
 Παλαιολόγου ἀναδιδαχθεὶς καὶ ὅτι κατὰ τὸν Ἰούνιον  
*of-Palaiologos having-been-informed and that in the June*  
 μῆνα διαπεράσας (ὡς ὁ λόγος φθάσας ἐδήλωσε) καὶ  
*month having-crossed as the account having-anticipated showed and*  
 τοσοῦτῳ κλύδωνι καὶ ναυαγίῳ κατασχεθεὶς καὶ οἶα  
*by-so-great storm and shipwreck having-been-held and into-such*  
 θεομηνίᾳ περιπεσὼν οὐχ ὑπεστάλη, ἀλλὰ τὸν Ἀυλῶνα  
*divine-wrath having-fallen not he-sbrank but — Avlona*

μετὰ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ συνελθόντων ἐξ ἐφόδου κατέσχε  
*with those with him having-come-together from assault seized*  
 καὶ ὅπως αὖθις ἀπανταχόθεν ἀπειροπληθεῖς δυνάμεις  
*and how again from-everywhere countless forces*  
 ἐς αὐτὸν συρρέουσι νιφάσιν ἐοικυῖαι χειμερίῃσι καὶ οἱ  
*to him flow-together to-snowfalls like wintry and the*  
 κουφότεροι τὸν ψευδώνυμον ἐπ' ἀληθείας Μιχαὴλ εἶναι  
*more-frivolous the false-named in truth Michael to-be*  
 τὸν βασιλέα πιστεύοντες προσέρχονται τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ,  
*the emperor believing come-over — to-Robert*  
 ἐδεδίει πρὸς τὸ τῆς ὑποθέσεως ἀποβλέπων μέγεθος καὶ  
*he-feared to the of-the undertaking looking magnitude and*  
 τὰς ὑπ' αὐτὸν δυνάμεις μὴδὲ τὸ πολλοστὸν τῶν  
*the under him forces not-even the smallest-part of-the(-forces)*  
 τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου σφζούσας κατανοῶν δέον ἔκρινεν ἐκ  
*— of-Robert saving perceiving needful he-judged from*  
 τῆς ἐώας Τούρκους μετακαλέσασθαι καὶ τηνικαῦτα περὶ  
*the east Turks to-summon and then about*  
 τούτου δημοῖ τῷ σουλτάνῳ. ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς Βενετικούς  
*this makes-known to-the sultan but also the Venetians*  
 προσκαλεῖται δι' ὑποσχέσεων καὶ δώρων (ἀφ' ὧν, ὥς  
*he-summons through promises and gifts from whom as*  
 φασι, καὶ τὸ βένετον χρώμα ἐν ταῖς ἵππικαῖς ἀμίλλαις  
*they-say also the blue color in the equestrian contests*  
 Ῥωμαίοις ἐξέυρηται) τὰ μὲν ἐπαγγειλάμενος, τὰ  
*for-(the)-Romans has-been-invented some(-things) indeed having-promised others*  
 δὲ καὶ προτείνων ἤδη, εἰ μόνον θελήσαιεν τὸ ναυτικὸν  
*and also offering already if only they-should-wish the fleet*  
 ἀπάσης τῆς χώρας αὐτῶν ἐξοπλίσαι καὶ τάχιον εἰς τὸ  
*of-all the land their to-arm and more-quickly to —*  
 Δυρράχιον καταλαβεῖν, ἐφ' ᾧ τοῦτο μὲν φυλάξαι, μετὰ  
*Dyrrachion to-reach on which this indeed to-guard with*



δὲ τοῦ στόλου τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου καρτερὸν συστήσασθαι  
*and the fleet — of-Robert strong to-set-up*  
 πόλεμον. καὶ εἰ κατὰ τὰ διαμηνυθέντα αὐτοῖς  
*battle and if according-to the(-things) announced to-them*  
 ποιήσαιεν, εἴτε θεοῦ ἐπαρήγοντος τὴν νικῶσαν σχοῖεν,  
*they-should-do whether God helping the victory they-should-have*  
 εἴτε (ὅποια συμβαίνειν εἴωθεν) ἡττηθεῖεν, ἐκείνα  
*or such-as to-happen is-wont they-should-be-defeated those*  
 αὐτὰ λήψονται κατὰ τὰ ὑπεσχημένα, ὥσπερ  
*same(-things) they-will-receive according-to the(-things) promised as*  
 εἰ κατὰ κράτος ἐνίκησαν. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅποσα τῶν  
*if by force they-had-conquered but also as-many-as of-the*  
 θελημάτων αὐτῶν μὴ ἐπισφαλῇ τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων  
*wishes their not hazardous to-the of-the Romans*  
 ἀρχῇ εἶεν, ἀποπληρωθήσονται διὰ χρυσοβούλλων  
*rule should-be will-be-fulfilled through chrysobull*  
 λόγων ἐμπεδωθέντα. οἱ δὲ τούτων ἀκούσαντες πάντα  
*words confirmed they and these(-things) having-beard all*  
 ὅσαπερ ᾔθελον αἰθῖς διὰ πρέσβων ἐξαιτησάμενοι τὰς  
*as-much-as they-wished again through envoys having-requested the*  
 ὑποσχέσεις βεβαίως λαμβάνουσι. τηνικαῦτα τοίνυν στόλον  
*promises firm receive then therefore fleet*  
 εὐτρεπίσαντες διὰ παντοίου εἵδους πλοίων τὸν πρὸς  
*having-prepared through every kind of-vessels the to*  
 Δυρράχιον ἀπόπλουν ἐποιοῦντο σὺν εὐταξίᾳ πολλῇ καὶ  
*Dyrrachion voyage made with order much and*  
 πελάγους κελεύθους διανηξάμενοι κατέλαβον τὸ ἐπ' ὀνόματι  
*of-sea paths having-swum-through reached the in name*  
 τῆς ὑπεραμώμου θεοτόκου πάλαι ἀνοικοδομηθὲν τέμενος εἰς  
*of-the immaculate Mother-of-God of-old built precinct at*  
 τόπον Παλλία καλούμενον ἀπέχοντα τῆς παρεμβολῆς τοῦ  
*place Pallia called distant from-the camp —*

Ῥομπέρτου ἔξωθεν τοῦ Δυρραχίου κειμένης ὥσεί σταδίου  
*of-Robert outside — of-Dyrrachion lying about stades*  
 ὀκτωκαίδεκα. θεασάμενοι δὲ τὸ ναυτικὸν τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου  
*eighteen having-beheld and the fleet — of-Robert*  
 ἐκείθεν τῆς πόλεως Δυρραχίου παντοίῳ εἶδει πολεμικῶν  
*on-that-side of-the city Dyrrachion with-every kind of-warlike*  
 ὀργάνων περιπεφραγμένον ἀπεδειλίασαν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον.  
*engines fenced-about they-shrank-in-fear at the battle*  
 μεμαθηκὼς δὲ τὴν τούτων ἔλευσιν ὁ Ῥομπέρτος πέμπει  
*having-learned and the their arrival — Robert sends*  
 τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Βαϊμούντον πρὸς αὐτοὺς μετὰ στόλου  
*the son his Bohemond to them with fleet*  
 μηνύων εὐφημῆσαι τὸν βασιλέα Μιχαὴλ καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν  
*announcing to-acclaim the emperor Michael and himself —*  
 Ῥομπέρτον. οἱ δὲ ἐς νέωτα τὴν εὐφημίαν ἀνήρτων.  
*Robert they and for tomorrow the acclamation suspended*  
 ἐσπέρας δὲ καταλαβούσης, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐνῆν αὐτοῖς ταῖς  
*evening and having-come since not it-was-possible for-them to-the*  
 ἀκταῖς προσπελάσαι, νηνεμίας οὔσης συναρτήσαντες τὰ  
*shores to-approach calm being having-joined the*  
 μείζονα τῶν πλοίων καλωδίους τε δεσμήσαντες καὶ τὸν  
*larger of-the vessels with-ropes both having-bound and the*  
 λεγόμενον πελαγολιμένα συναρτίσαντες πύργους τε ξυλίνους  
*so-called sea-harbor having-fitted-together towers and wooden*  
 ἐν τοῖς ἱστοῖς αὐτῶν οἰκοδομήσαντες διὰ καλωδίων  
*on the masts their having-built through ropes*  
 ἀνήγαγον ἐν αὐτοῖς τὰ ἐκάστω αὐτῶν συνεφεπόμενα  
*they-raised onto them the to-each of-them following*  
 μικρὰ ἀκάτια. ἐντὸς δὲ τῶν τοιούτων ἄνδρας ἐνόπλους  
*small boats inside and of-the such men armed*  
 εἰσαγαγόντες ξύλα τε παχύτατα εἰς μέρη διατεμόντες οὐκ  
*having-brought-in timbers and thickest into parts having-cut not*

εἰς πλείον πήχεος ἐνὸς σιδηρέους ἡλούς ὀξεῖς ἐμπήξαντες  
*to more than-cubit one iron nails sharp having-fixed*  
 ἐν αὐτοῖς τὴν τοῦ Φραγγικοῦ στόλου ἐξεδέχοντο ἔλευσιν.  
*in them the of-the Frankish fleet awaited arrival*  
 ἡμέρας δὲ ἤδη ἀναζούσης καταλαμβάνει ὁ Βαῖμουντος  
*day and already dawning arrives — Bobemond*  
 τὴν εὐφημίαν ἐξαιτούμενος. τῶν δὲ εἰς τὸν πώγωνα αὐτοῦ  
*the acclamation demanding they and at the beard his*  
 ἐφύβρισάντων τοῦτο ὁ Βαῖμουντος μὴ ἐνεγκὼν αὐτὸς  
*having-mocked this — Bobemond not having-borne he*  
 πρῶτος κατ' αὐτῶν ἐξορμήσας τοῖς μεγίστοις τῶν αὐτῶν  
*first against them having-charged to-the largest of-the their*  
 πλοίων προσεπέλασεν, εἴτα καὶ ὁ λοιπὸς στόλος. καρτεροῦ  
*vessels came-close then also the remaining fleet strong*  
 δὲ πολέμου συρραγέντος, ἐπεὶ ὁ Βαῖμουντος καρτερώτερον  
*and battle having-broken-out since — Bobemond more-strongly*  
 αὐτοῖς ἀπεμάχετο, ἐν τῶν εἰρημένων ξύλων ἄνωθεν  
*them fought one of-the said timbers from-above*  
 ῥίψαντες εὐθὺς διέτρησαν τὴν ναῦν, ἐν ᾗ ὁ Βαῖμουντος  
*having-thrown at-once pierced the ship in which — Bobemond*  
 ἐτύγχανεν ὢν. ὥς δὲ ἀναρροιβδήσαντος τοῦ ὕδατος  
*happened being when and having-gushed-in the water*  
 καταποντίζεσθαι ἔμελλον, οἱ μὲν ἐξερχόμενοι τῆς νεώς,  
*to-be-sunk they-were-about some indeed going-out of-the ship*  
 ἐξ οὐπερ ἔφευγον, εἰς τοῦτ' αὐτὸ ἐνέπιπτον καὶ ἐβυθίζοντο,  
*from what they-fled into this same fell and were-drowned*  
 οἱ δὲ μετὰ τῶν Βενετῶν μαχόμενοι ἀνηρέθησαν· ἐκεῖνος  
*others and with the Venetians fighting were-killed he*  
 δὲ εἰς κίνδυνον ἤδη ἐληλακὼς εἰς ἐν τῶν αὐτοῦ πλοίων  
*and into danger already having-come into one of-the his vessels*  
 εἰσπηδήσας εἵσεισιν. ἐπὶ πλέον δὲ θαρρήσαντες οἱ Βενετικοὶ  
*having-leapt enters for more and having-taken-courage the Venetians*

καὶ τὴν κατ' αὐτῶν μάχην θαρραλεώτερον συνάψαντες καὶ  
*and the against them battle more-boldly having-joined and*  
 τελείως κατατροπωσάμενοι τούτους ἐδίωξαν ἄχρι τῆς τοῦ  
*completely having-routed them pursued as-far-as the —*  
 Ῥομπέρτου σκηνῆς. ἅμα δὲ τῷ τῇ χέρσῳ πελάσαι  
*of-Robert tent at-once and with-the to-the land to-approach*  
 εἰσπηδήσαντες ἄλλον πόλεμον μετὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου  
*having-leapt-in another battle with — Robert*  
 συνάπτουσι. τούτους θεασάμενος ὁ Παλαιολόγος ἐξελθὼν  
*join them having-beheld — Palaiologos having-gone-out*  
 καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπὸ τοῦ κάστρου Δυρραχίου μαχόμενος ἦν μετ'  
*also himself from the fortress of-Dyrrachion fighting was with*  
 αὐτῶν. καρτεροῦ γοῦν γεγονότος πολέμου καὶ μέχρι  
*them strong at-any-rate having-become battle and as-far-as*  
 τῆς τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου παρεμβολῆς φθάσαντος ἐκεῖθεν ταύτης  
*the — of-Robert camp having-reached from-there this*  
 πολλοὶ ἐδιώχθησαν, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ παρανάλωμα ξιφῶν  
*many were-pursued many and also waste-matter of-swords*  
 γεγόνασιν. οἱ δὲ Βενέτικοι λείαν πολλὴν ἀφελόμενοι εἰς τὰ  
*have-become the and Venetians booty much having-carried-off into the*  
 ἴδια πλοῖα παλινοστήσαντες εἰσήεσαν, ὁ δὲ Παλαιολόγος εἰς  
*own vessels having-turned went-in — and Palaiologos into*  
 τὸ κάστρον αὐθις εἴσεισιν. ἡμέρας γοῦν τινὰς οἱ Βενέτικοι  
*the fortress again enters days at-any-rate some the Venetians*  
 διαναπανυσάμενοι ἀποστέλλουσι πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα πρέσβεις  
*having-rested send to the emperor envoys*  
 διαμηνύοντες τὰ γεγονότα. ὁ δὲ φιλοφρονησάμενος  
*reporting the(-things) having-happened he and having-received-kindly*  
 αὐτούς, ὡς εἰκός, καὶ μυρίων εὐεργεσιῶν ἀξιῶσας  
*them as (is)-likely and of-countless benefits having-deemed-worthy*

ἀπέλυσεν ἀποστείλας μετ' αὐτῶν χρήματα ἱκανὰ πρὸς  
 released(-them) having-sent with them money considerable to  
 τε τὸν δοῦκα Βενετίας καὶ τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτὸν ἄρχοντας.  
 both the duke of-Venice and the under him rulers

XLVII • FAMINE AND THE DAMMED RIVER

*In spring the Venetian fleet and the Roman fleet under Maurix defeat Robert at sea, and he hauls his ships ashore; his tributaries grow slow to pay. Cut off by sea and land, his army suffers famine and disease: ten thousand men die in three months, and up to five hundred counts and picked horsemen. When the Glykys runs dry and strands his ships, he dams it with stakes and trees until the water rises enough to float them back to the sea.*

Ὁ δὲ Ῥομπέρτος μαχιμώτατος ὢν δεῖν ἔγνω μὴ  
 — and Robert most-warlike being to-be-needful decided not  
 ἀφίστασθαι τοῦ πολέμου, ἀλλὰ καρτερώς μάχεσθαι.  
 to-stand-off from-the war but strongly to-fight  
 χειμῶνος δὲ ὄντος οὐκ ἐνῆν αὐτῷ τὰ πλοῖα εἰς  
 winter and being not it-was-possible for-him the vessels into  
 τὴν θάλασσαν καθελκύσαι· ἀπεῖργε δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἀπὸ  
 the sea to-drag-down kept-off and also those from  
 Λογγιβαρδίας ἐρχομένους καὶ τοὺς τὰ πρὸς χρεῖαν  
 Lombardy coming and those the(-things) for need  
 αὐτῷ ἐκείθεν κομίζοντας ὃ τε Ῥωμαϊκὸς καὶ ὁ τῶν  
 to-him from-there bringing the both Roman and the of-the  
 Βενετῶν στόλος τὸν ἀναμεταξὺ πορθμὸν ἐπιμελῶς  
 Venetians fleet the in-between strait carefully  
 τηροῦντες. ὥς δὲ τὸ ἔαρ ἤδη παρῆν καὶ ὁ θαλάττιος  
 guarding when and the spring already was-present and the sea  
 κλύδων ἐπέπαυτο, πρῶτον μὲν οἱ Βενέτικοι λύσαντες τὰ  
 surge had-ceased first indeed the Venetians having-loosed the

πρυμνήσια κατὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἐξώρμησαν· ἐχομένως  
*stern-cables against — Robert set-out closely*  
 δὲ τούτοις ὁ Μαύριξ μετὰ τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ ἀπέπλευσε  
*and on-them — Maurix with the Roman sailed*  
 στόλου. καὶ συναίρεται πόλεμος ἐντεῦθεν βαρύτατος καὶ  
*fleet and is-joined battle thence most-severe and*  
 οἱ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου τὰ νῶτα διδόασιν. εἶτα δεῖν  
*the(-men) — of-Robert the backs give then to-be-needful*  
 ἔγνω ὁ Ῥομπέρτος ἅπαντα τὸν αὐτοῦ στόλον ἐλκύσαι εἰς  
*decided — Robert all the his fleet to-drag onto*  
 τὴν χέρσον. οἱ δὲ νησιῶται καὶ τὰ παρὰ θάλατταν τῆς  
*the land the and islanders and the by sea of-the*  
 ἡπείρου πολίχνια καὶ ὅποσοι ἄλλοι φόρους παρείχον τῷ  
*mainland small-towns and as-many-as others tributes paid —*  
 Ῥομπέρτῳ, τεθαρρηκότες διὰ τὰ συμπεσόντα αὐτῷ  
*to-Robert having-taken-courage because-of the(-things) having-befallen to-him*  
 οὐχ ἐτοίμως τὰ ἐπιτεθέντα βάρη ἐδίδουν τὴν αὐτοῦ κατὰ  
*not readily the imposed burdens gave the his at*  
 θάλατταν μαθόντες ἦτταν. δεῖν οὖν ἔγνω πλείονι  
*sea having-learned defeat to-be-needful then he-decided with-greater*  
 περιεργίᾳ πολέμου χρήσασθαι καὶ διὰ τε θαλάττης καὶ  
*elaboration of-war to-use and through both sea and*  
 ἡπείρου αὐθις μάχεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἐνῆν τὰ  
*land again to-fight since and not it-was-possible the(-things)*  
 κατὰ γνώμην εἰς ἔργον προάγειν, δεδιὼς τὸ ναυάγιον  
*according-to plan into deed to-bring fearing the shipwreck*  
 ἀνέμων μεγάλων τηνικαῦτα πνεόντων ἐγκαρτερήσας ἐπὶ  
*winds great then blowing having-waited for*  
 δυσὶ μηνσὶ περὶ τὸν λιμένα τῆς Ἱερικῶν ἡντρεπίζετο  
*two months about the harbor — of-Hiericho made-ready*  
 βουλόμενος ἀπὸ τε τῆς θαλάττης καὶ ἡπείρου μάχεσθαι  
*wishing from both the sea and land to-fight*

καὶ τὰ τῆς μάχης ἐξήρτυεν. ὁ δὲ στόλος ὃ τε  
*and the(-things) of-the battle prepared the but fleet the both*  
 Βενέτικος καὶ ὁ Ῥωμαϊκὸς ὡς ἐνὸν τὸν πορθμὸν  
*Venetian and the Roman as being-possible the strait*  
 ἐτήρει, καὶ ὀπηνίκα μικρὸν ἢ θάλασσα τοῖς βουλομένοις  
*guarded and when a-little the sea to-those wishing*  
 πλεῖν νῶτα ὑπέιχε, τοὺς ἐκεῖθεν πρὸς τὸν Ῥομπέρτον  
*to-sail backs offered those from-there to — Robert*  
 ἐπιχειροῦντας διαπερᾶν ἀπείργεν. ὡς δὲ οὐδ' ἀπὸ τῆς  
*attempting to-cross kept-off when and not-even from the*  
 ἡπείρου ῥαδίως ἐνῆν τὰ πρὸς χρεῖαν κομίζεσθαι  
*mainland easily it-was-possible the(-things) for need to-be-brought*  
 περὶ τὸν Γλυκὺν ποταμὸν αὐλιζομένοις αὐτοῖς τῶν ἐκ  
*about the Glykys river bivouacking them those from*  
 τοῦ Δυρραχίου ἀπειργόντων τοὺς χορταγωγίας χάριν  
*— Dyrrachion keeping-off those of-foraging for-the-sake*  
 ἢ συγκομιδῆς ἐτέρας ἐξιόντας. τῆς τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου  
*or of-gathering other going-out from-the — of-Robert*  
 ταφρείας, λιμῶττειν ἐντεῦθεν τούτοις συνέβαινεν· ἀλλὰ  
*trench to-starve thence to-them it-happened but*  
 καὶ τὸ ἄηθες τοῦ τόπου μεγάλως αὐτοὺς ἐλυμαίνετο.  
*also the unaccustomedness of-the place greatly them ravaged*  
 διὰ παραδρομῆς τοῖνυν μηνῶν τριῶν, ὡς λέγεται, φθορὰ  
*through passing therefore of-months three as is-said destruction*  
 γέγονεν ἀνδρῶν εἰς χιλιάδας δέκα συμποσομένων. ἡ δὲ  
*occurred of-men to thousands ten amounting the and*  
 νόσος αὕτη καὶ τὰς μετὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἵππικὰς δυνάμεις  
*disease this also the with — Robert cavalry forces*  
 καταλαβοῦσα πολλοὺς διέφθειρεν. ἀπὸ μὲν γὰρ τῶν  
*having-seized many destroyed from indeed for the*  
 ἱππέων κόμητες καὶ λογάδες ἀλκιμώτατοι ἄνδρες μέχρι  
*horsemen counts and picked-men bravest men up-to*

τῶν πεντακοσίων νόσου καὶ λιμοῦ παρανάλωμα γεγόνασι,  
*the five-hundred of-disease and famine waste-matter have-become*  
 τῆς δὲ χθαμαλωτέρας τύχης ἱππεῖς ἀναρίθμητοι. τῶν δὲ  
*of-the and lower fortune horsemen countless the and*  
 πλοίων αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸν Γλυκὺν ἐνορμισθέντων ποταμόν, ὥς  
*vessels his into the Glykys having-anchored river as*  
 εἴρηται, τούτου ὀλιγωθέντος διὰ τὴν ἀνυδρίαν ἤδη  
*has-been-said this having-dwindled because-of the drought already*  
 μετὰ τὸν χειμῶνα καὶ τὸ ἐπιγεγονὸς ἔαρ τοῦ θέρους  
*after the winter and the having-come spring the summer*  
 θερμότερον ἐπιβάλλοντος καὶ μὴδ' ὅπόσον ταῖς χαράδραις  
*hotter coming-on and not-even as-much-as in-the ravines*  
 εἴωθε καταρρεῖν ὕδωρ ἔχοντος ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ ἦν μὴ  
*is-wont to-flow water having in helplessness he-was not*  
 δυνάμενος αὖθις αὐτὰ εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν ἐλκύσαι. ἀλλ'  
*being-able again them into the sea to-drag but*  
 οἶα μηχανικώτατος ὢν καὶ βαθύνους ἀνὴρ πασσάλους  
*as most-inventive being and deep-minded man stakes*  
 ἐκατέρωθεν ἐκέλευε πῆγνυσθαι τοῦ ποταμοῦ, συνδεδέσθαι  
*on-either-side he-ordered to-be-fixed of-the river to-be-bound-together*  
 δὲ τούτους διὰ λύγων πυκνῶν, εἴτα δένδρα παμμεγέθη  
*and them through withies dense then trees very-large*  
 κόπτοντας ριζόθεν ὀπισθεν αὐτῶν καταστρωννύειν ψάμμον  
*cutting from-the-roots behind them to-lay sand*  
 ἐπιπάττοντας ἄνωθεν, ὥς εἰς ἓνα τὸ ὕδωρ συλλείβεσθαι  
*sprinkling above so-that into one the water to-trickle-together*  
 τόπον ὥσπερ εἰς διώρυχα μίαν τὴν ἐκ τῶν πασσάλων  
*place as-if into channel one the from the stakes*  
 γεγονυῖαν συναθροιζόμενον. καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν ἀναλιμνάζον  
*having-become being-gathered and by little forming-a-pool*  
 τὸ ὕδωρ τὴν κρηπίδα πᾶσαν ἐπλήρου τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ εἰς  
*the water the bed whole filled of-the river and to*



βάθος ἀξιόλογον ἦρχετο, ἕως τὰς ναῦς ἀνεκούφισε καὶ τὰς  
 depth considerable came until the ships it-lifted and the  
 τέως ἐρηρεισμένας νῆας τῇ γῇ ἀνέσχε τε καὶ ἀκρόπλους  
 hitherto grounded ships on-the earth raised both and floating  
 ἐποίησε. καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε εὐπλοίας ἐπιδραξάμενα τὰ  
 made and the from this(-time) of-good-sailing having-grasped the  
 πλοῖα εὐκόλως πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν εἰλκύσθησαν.  
 vessels easily to the sea were-dragged

XLVIII · PALAIOLOGOS BURNS THE TOWER

*Alexios writes to Pakourianos and leaves Constantinople in August, Isaac governing the city. He sets his army in battle order: Opos, Antiochos, and Kabasilas lead the excubitors, the Macedonians, and the Thessalians, Tatikios the Turks of Achrida, Xantas and Kouleon the Manichaeans, and Panoukomites and Oumbertopoulos the vestiaritai and the Frankish units. At Dyrrachion Palaiologos, wounded in the temple, fights on. When Robert brings his tower to the wall, Palaiologos jams its door with a beam, and his men burn it and cut it down.*

Μεμαθηκὼς δὲ τὰ κατὰ τὸν Ῥομπέρτον ὁ  
 having-learned and the(-things) concerning — Robert the  
 αὐτοκράτωρ παραχρῆμα διὰ γραφῆς τῷ Πακουριανῷ  
 autocrat immediately through letter — to-Pakourianos  
 τὴν αὐτοῦ ἀκάθεκτον ὁρμὴν παρίστησι καὶ ὅπως τὸν  
 the his unrestrainable impulse presents and how —  
 Αὐλῶνα κατέλαβε, μὴ πεφροντικῶς ὅλως τῶν ξυμπεσόντων  
 Avlona he-took not having-cared at-all for-the having-befallen  
 αὐτῷ δεινῶν κατ' ἡπειρόν τε καὶ θάλατταν μήτε τῆς  
 him terrors on land both and sea nor of-the  
 ἥττης ἐκείνης, ἣν ἐκ πρώτης, ὃ φασιν, ἀφετηρίας  
 defeat that which from first as they-say starting-line

ἐπεπόνθει, καὶ ὡς χρὴ μὴ μέλλειν, ἀλλὰ θάπτον τὰς  
*be-had-suffered and that it-is-needful not to-delay but more-quickly the*  
 δυνάμεις ἐπισυναγαγόντα ἐνωθῆναί οἱ. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν  
*forces having-gathered to-be-united to-him these(-things) indeed then*  
 πρὸς τὸν Πακουριανόν· αὐτὸς δὲ παραντίκα τῆς  
*to — Pakourianos be and immediately from-the(-city)*  
 Κωνσταντίνου ἔξιειν εἰς μῆνα Αὐγούστον τῆς τετάρτης  
*of-Constantine goes-out in month August of-the fourth*  
 ἐπιμεμήσεως τὸν Ἰσαάκιον εἰς τὴν μεγαλόπολιν καταλιπών,  
*indiction — Isaac in the great-city having-left*  
 ἐφ' ᾧ τὰ κατὰ τὴν πόλιν ἐδράζεσθαι, καὶ εἴ  
*for which the(-things) concerning the city to-be-settled and if*  
 πού τινες λόγοι ἀπάδοντες ἐξ ἐχθρῶν ἐξακούοιτο,  
*somewhere some words discordant from enemies should-be-heard*  
 ὅποια εἶωθεν, αὐτὸν διασκεδάζειν τε καὶ φρουρεῖν  
*such-as is-wont him to-disperse both and to-guard*  
 τὰ βασιλεία καὶ τὴν πόλιν, ἅμα καὶ τὸ τῶν  
*the palace and the city at-the-same-time also the of-the*  
 γυναικῶν φιλοπενθὲς ἀνακτώμενον. τὸ δέ γε  
*women fondness-for-mourning consoling the(-part) and at-least*  
 εἰς τὴν μητέρα ἦκον οὐδεμιᾶς, ὡς οἶμαι, βοηθείας  
*to the mother pertaining of-no as I-think help*  
 ἔδειτο ῥωμαλεωτάτης καθισταμένης ἐκείνης καὶ ἄλλως  
*had-need most-vigorous being she and otherwise*  
 μεταχειρίσασθαι τὰ πράγματα δεξιωτάτης. τοιγαροῦν τὸ  
*to-handle the affairs most-dexterous accordingly the*  
 γράμμα ὃ Πακουριανὸς ἀνελίξας τηνικαῦτα ὑποστράτηγον  
*letter — Pakourianos having-unrolled then lieutenant*  
 προχειρίζεται Νικόλαον τὸν Βρανᾶν, ἄνδρα γενναῖον  
*appoints Nicholas the Branas man noble*  
 καὶ πολλὴν περὶ τὰ πολεμικὰ ἐμπειρίαν ἔχοντα. ὃ δὲ  
*and much about the warlike(-things) experience having be and*

μετὰ τοῦ ὀπλιτικοῦ παντὸς καὶ τῶν τῆς μείζονος  
*with the armed(-body) all and the(-men) of-the greater*  
τύχης τῆς Ὀρεστιάδος σπουδαίως ἔξεισιν ἐνωθῆναι τῷ  
*fortune — from-Orestias hastily goes-out to-be-united with-the*  
βασιλεῖ ἐπειγόμενος. ἐφθακὼς δὲ καὶ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ  
*emperor hastening having-arrived and also the autocrat*  
εὐθὺς εἰς πολέμου σχῆμα τὸ ὀπλικὸν ἅπαν κατέστησεν  
*at-once into of-war formation the armed(-body) all set*  
ἡγεμόνας τῶν λογάδων ἐπιστήσας ἄνδρας γενναιοτάτους,  
*leaders of-the picked-men having-set-over men most-noble*  
παρακελευσάμενος οὕτω τῆς ὁδοιπορίας ἔχεσθαι, οὐπερ ὁ  
*having-ordered thus the journey to-hold where the*  
τόπος αὐτοῖς τοῦτο δίδωσιν, ἵνα τὸ σχῆμα τῆς παρατάξεως  
*place to-them this gives that the formation of-the battle-line*  
διαγνόντες καὶ τὸν ἴδιον ἕκαστος γνωρίσας τόπον ἐν  
*having-discerned and the own each having-known place in*  
τῷ καιρῷ τῆς μάχης ἀσύγχυτοι μένωσι καὶ μὴ  
*the time of-the battle unconfused they-may-remain and not*  
ῥαδίως μεταφέρωντο καὶ ὡς ἔτυχεν. ἐξήρχε μὲν οὖν τοῦ  
*easily be-moved and as it-happened led indeed then the*  
τῶν ἐξκουβιτῶν τάγματος Κωνσταντίνος ὁ Ὡπος, τῶν  
*of-the excubitors division Constantine the Opos of-the*  
Μακεδόνων ὁ Ἀντίοχος, τῶν Θετταλῶν δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος ὁ  
*Macedonians — Antiochos of-the Thessalians and Alexander the*  
Καβάσιλας, ὁ δὲ γε Τατίκιος καὶ μέγας τῷ τότε  
*Kabasilas — and at-least Tatikios also grand at-the then(-time)*  
πριμικήριος τῶν περὶ τὴν Ἀχριδῶν οἰκούντων Τούρκων  
*primikerios of-the about — Acbrido dwelling Turks*  
ἡγεμόνευε, γενναιοτάτος ὢν καὶ ἀκατάπληκτος ἐν μάχαις,  
*led most-noble being and undaunted in battles*  
οὐκ ἐλευθέρως μὲν ὢν τύχης ἐκ προγόνων· καὶ γὰρ ὁ  
*not free indeed being of-fortune from ancestors and for the*

πατήρ αὐτοῦ Σαρακηνὸς ὢν ἐκ προνομῆς περιῆλθε τῷ  
*father his Saracen being from plundering passed to-the*  
 πρὸς πατρός ἐμῷ πάππῳ Ἰωάννῃ τῷ Κομνηνῷ. τῶν  
*on father's(-side) my grandfather John the Komnenos of-the*  
 δέ γε Μανιχαίων πρὸς τοῖς ὀκτακοσίοις εἰς δισχιλίους  
*and at-least Manichaeans besides the eight-hundred to two-thousand*  
 ποσουμένων ἡγεμόνες ἦσαν ὁ Ξαντᾶς καὶ ὁ Κουλέων,  
*amounting leaders were — Xantas and — Kouleon*  
 τῆς αὐτῆς αἰρέσεως καὶ οὗτοι ἄνδρες ἅπαντες οὗτοι  
*of-the same heresy also these men all these*  
 μαχμώτατοι καὶ αἵματος ἀπογεύσασθαι τῶν ἐχθρῶν καιροῦ  
*most-warlike and of-blood to-taste of-the enemies occasion*  
 καλοῦντος ἐτοιμώτατοι καὶ πρὸς γε ἔτι καὶ ἰταμοὶ καὶ  
*calling most-ready and besides at-least still both reckless and*  
 ἀναίσχυντοι. τῶν δέ γε οἰκειότερων αὐτῷ (βεστιαρίτας  
*shameless of-the and at-least more-intimate to-him vestiaritai*  
 ἢ συνήθεια καλεῖ) καὶ τῶν Φραγγικῶν ταγμάτων ὁ  
*the custom calls and of-the Frankish divisions —*  
 Πανουκωμίτης καὶ Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ Οὐμπερτόπουλος ἐκ  
*Panoukomites and Constantine the Oumbertopoulos from*  
 γένους τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν λαχών. οὕτως οὖν τὰ τάγματα  
*family the surname having-obtained thus then the divisions*  
 καταστήσας πανστρατὶ κατὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἐξώρμησε.  
*having-set with-whole-army against — Robert he-set-out*  
 συναντήσας δέ τινι ἐκεῖθεν ἐρχομένῳ περὶ τῶν κατὰ  
*having-met and someone from-there coming about the(-things) at*  
 τὸ Δυρράχιον πυθόμενος σαφέστερον μεμαθήκει, ὅτι ὁ  
*— Dyrrachion having-inquired more-clearly he-had-learned that —*  
 Ῥομπέρτος κινήσας πάντα τὰ πρὸς τειχομαχίαν ἐπιτήδεια  
*Robert having-moved all the for wall-fighting suitable*  
 ὄργανα τοῖς τείχεσι προσεπέλασεν. ὁ δὲ Παλαιολόγος  
*engines to-the walls had-approached — and Palaiologos*

Γεώργιος διὰ πάσης νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας πρὸς τὰς  
*George through all night and day against the*  
 ἔξωθεν ἐλεπόλεις καὶ τὰ μηχανήματα ἀντικαθιστάμενος καὶ  
*outside siege-engines and the devices standing-firm and*  
 ἀπαγορεύσας ἤδη τὰς πύλας ἀναπετάσας καὶ ἐξελθὼν  
*having-grown-weary already the gates having-thrown-open and having-gone-out*  
 μετ' αὐτῶν καρτερὸν συνεστήσατο πόλεμον. καὶ καιρίως  
*with them strong set-up battle and gravely*  
 ἐν διαφόροις τοῦ σώματος τόποις ἐπλήγη καὶ μᾶλλον περὶ  
*in various of-the body places was-struck and more about*  
 τὸν κρόταφον βέλους διελθόντος· ὁ βιαζόμενος ἐξελεῖν  
*the temple arrow having-passed-through which straining to-take-out*  
 καὶ μὴ δυνηθεὶς μετακαλεσάμενός τινα τῶν ἐμπείρων  
*and not having-been-able having-summoned one of-the experienced(-men)*  
 περιεῖλε τὰ ἄκρα, τὸν τε στύρακά φημι καὶ οὐ τὸ βέλος  
*he-removed the ends the both spike I-mean and where the arrow*  
 περύσσεται, τὸ δ' ἐπίλοιπον μέρος τῷ τόπῳ τῆς πληγῆς  
*is-feathered the and remaining part in-the place of-the wound*  
 ἐναπέμεινε. δεσμήσας δὲ τὴν κεφαλὴν, ὡς ὁ καιρὸς  
*remained having-bound and the head as the occasion*  
 ἐνεδίδου, αὐτὸς ἐς μέσους τοὺς ἐναντίους ἑαυτὸν ὠθήσας  
*allowed again into the-midst the opponents himself having-thrust*  
 μαχόμενος μέχρι δείλης ἐσπέρας ἀκλόνητος ἵστατο. ταῦτα  
*fighting until late evening unshaken stood these(-things)*  
 ἀκηκοὺς ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ διαγνοὺς ἀρωγῆς ταχείας  
*having-beard the emperor and having-recognized of-help swift*  
 τοῦτον δεῖσθαι ἐπέτεινε τὴν ὁδοιπορίαν. καταλαβὼν δὲ  
*him to-need extended the journey having-reached and*  
 τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην διὰ πολλῶν τὰ κατὰ τὸν  
*— Thessalonike through many(-reports) the(-things) concerning —*  
 Ῥομπέρτον ἐπὶ πλέον ἐβεβαιούτο. καὶ γὰρ ἔτοιμος ὢν ὁ  
*Robert for more was-confirmed and for ready being —*

Ῥομπέρτος καὶ γενναίους μὲν παρετοιμάσας στρατιώτας,  
*Robert and noble indeed having-prepared soldiers*  
 πολλὴν δὲ καὶ ὕλην κατὰ τὴν πεδιάδα συναθροίσας τοῦ  
*much and also timber in the plain having-gathered —*  
 Δυρραχίου τὴν παρεμβολὴν κατέθετο ὥσῃ τόξου βολὴν  
*of-Dyrrachion the camp placed about of-bow shot*  
 τῶν τειχῶν τούτου ἀπέχουσιν· πολλὰς μέντοι τῶν ὑπ'  
*from-the walls of-it distant many however of-the under*  
 αὐτὸν δυνάμεις καὶ περὶ τὰ ὄρη καὶ τὰ τέμνη καὶ  
*him forces both about the mountains and the valleys and*  
 τοὺς βουνοὺς κατέθετο. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν τοῦ Παλαιολόγου  
*the hills he-placed but also the — of-Palaiologos*  
 ἐπιμέλειαν ἐκ πολλῶν κατεμάνθανεν. ἤδη γὰρ ὁ  
*diligence from many(-reports) he-learned already for —*  
 Παλαιολόγος ἐμπρῆσαι διανοούμενος τὸν ἐτοιμασθέντα παρὰ  
*Palaiologos to-burn planning the prepared by*  
 τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου μύσση καὶ τοῖς τείχεσιν ἐπιθεῖς νάφθη  
*— Robert wooden-tower and on-the walls having-put naphtha*  
 καὶ πίσσαν καὶ ξηρῶν ξύλων σχίδακας καὶ λιθοβόλα ὄργανα  
*and pitch and of-dry wood splinters and stone-throwing engines*  
 τὴν τοῦ πολέμου συμβολὴν ἐκαραδόκει. προσδόκιμον δὲ τὸν  
*the of-the war encounter awaited expected and —*  
 Ῥομπέρτον ἔχων ἐς νέωτα ὃν προφθάσας ἡτοίμασεν ἐντὸς  
*Robert having for tomorrow which having-anticipated he-prepared inside*  
 ξύλινον πύργον κατευθὺ τοῦ ἔξωθεν ἐρχομένου πύργου  
*wooden tower opposite the from-outside coming tower*  
 καταστήσας δι' ὅλης νυκτὸς δοκιμασίαν ἐπεποίητο τοῦ  
*having-set through whole night trial had-made of-the*  
 ἄνωθεν τούτου δοκοῦ, ὃν προβάλλεσθαι ἔμελλον κατὰ  
*on-top of-it beam which to-be-thrust-out they-were-about against*  
 τῶν θυρῶν τοῦ μύσσης τοῦ ἔξωθεν ἐνηνεγμένου, εἰ  
*the doors of-the wooden-tower the from-outside brought if*

ῥᾶστά τε κινοῖτο καὶ ἀντιπρόσωπος ἀντιπίπτων ταῖς  
*most-easily both it-should-be-moved and face-to-face falling-against the*  
 θύραις οὐκ εὐκόλως ἀνοίγνυσθαι ξυγχωρήσειε. διαγνοὺς  
*doors not easily to-be-opened it-would-allow having-discerned*  
 δὲ ὡς εὐπετῶς τὸ ξύλον ὠθεῖται καὶ εὐστοχῇκει τοῦ  
*and that easily the timber is-pushed and had-hit-the-mark of-the*  
 πράγματος, ἀπεθάρρηνεν ἤδη πρὸς τὸν ἐλπιζόμενον  
*matter he-took-courage already for the expected*  
 πόλεμον. τῇ μετ' αὐτὴν δὲ σιδηροφορῆσαι κελεύσαντος  
*war on-the after it and to-bear-iron having-ordered*  
 τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἅπαντας καὶ ἐντὸς τοῦ πύργου πεζοὺς τε  
*— Robert all and inside the tower foot-soldiers both*  
 καὶ ἵππεῖς ὅπλοφόρους ὥσει πεντακοσίους εἰσαγαγόντος,  
*and horsemen armed about five-hundred having-brought-in*  
 ἐπεὶ τῷ τείχει τοῦτον προσπελάσαντες ἤδη τὴν  
*when to-the wall it having-brought-near already the*  
 ἄνωθεν οὖσαν θύραν ἀναπεταννύνειν ἠπείγοντο ὡς γεφύρα  
*on-top being door to-open-out they-hastened as bridge*  
 ταύτῃ χρησόμενοι πρὸς τὴν τοῦ κάστρου εἰσέλευσιν,  
*it about-to-use for the of-the fortress entry*  
 ὁ Παλαιολόγος ἐντὸς τὸ παμμέγεθες ξύλον τηρικαῦτα  
*— Palaiologos inside the very-large timber then*  
 ὠθήσας δι' ὧν φθάσας προκατεσκεύασε μηχανῶν  
*having-pushed through which having-anticipated he-had-prepared devices*  
 καὶ ἀνδρῶν πολλῶν καὶ γενναίων ἄπρακτον τὴν τοῦ  
*and men many and noble ineffective the —*  
 Ῥομπέρτου μηχανὴν ἐποίησε τοῦ δοκοῦ τὸ παράπαν μὴ  
*of-Robert device made the beam the at-all not*  
 συγχωροῦντος ἀνεωχθῆναι τὴν θύραν. εἶτα βάλλων τοὺς  
*allowing to-be-opened the door then shooting the*  
 ἄνωθεν τοῦ πύργου ἱσταμένους Κελτοὺς συνεχῶς οὐκ  
*on-top of-the tower standing Celts continually not*

ἀνίει· οἱ δὲ τὰς βολὰς μὴ φέροντες ἐκρύπτοντο. κελεύει  
*be-relented they and the volleys not bearing bid he-orders*  
 τοῖνυν ἐμπρησθῆναι τὸν πύργον. καὶ οὐπω πᾶν εἶρητο  
*therefore to-be-burned the tower and not-yet all had-been-spoken*  
 ἔπος, καὶ εὐθὺς ἔργον ἢ τοῦ πύργου πυρκαϊὰ ἐγένετο. καὶ  
*word and at-once deed the of-the tower burning became and*  
 οἱ μὲν ἄνωθεν ἐκρημνίζοντο, οἱ δὲ κάτωθεν ἀνοίξαντες  
*those indeed above were-burled-down those and below having-opened*  
 τὴν περιπέζιον τοῦ πύργου θύραν ἔφευγον. τούτους δὲ  
*the ground-level of-the tower door fled them and*  
 φεύγοντας ὁρῶν ὁ Παλαιολόγος τηνικαῦτα γενναίους  
*fleeing seeing — Palaiologos then noble*  
 ἄνδρας ὅπλοφόρους ἐξάγει διὰ τῆς πυλίδος τοῦ κάστρου  
*men armed leads-out through the postern of-the fortress*  
 καὶ ἑτέρους μετὰ ἀξινῶν, ὥς ἂν δι' αὐτῶν ὁ πύργος  
*and others with axes that — through them the tower*  
 ἀφανισθῇ. καὶ οὐδὲ τούτου ἡστόχει, ἀλλὰ τοῦ πύργου  
*might-be-destroyed and not-even in-this he-failed but of-the tower*  
 τὰ μὲν ἄνωθεν ἐμπρήσας, τὰ δὲ κάτωθεν διὰ τινων  
*the indeed upper(-parts) having-burned the and lower(-parts) through some*  
 λαξευτηρίων ὀργάνων ποδοκοπήσας τελείως ἠφάνισεν.  
*stone-cutting tools having-cut-at-the-base completely destroyed(-it)*



*Alexios camps at the Charzanes and then at Saint Nicholas, four stades from Dyrrachion, and summons Palaiologos, who comes only on receiving the imperial ring. The veterans advise against a pitched battle; the younger men, Konstantios, Synadenos, Nampites, and Diogenes' sons, urge it. Robert demands impossible terms, then tells his counts they must choose a single leader; they choose him, and he has them burn the baggage and hole the ships, to fight as men about to die.*

Ἐπεὶ δέ, ὥς ὁ ταῦτα διηγησάμενος ἔλεγεν, ὁ  
 since and as the(-man) these(-things) having-narrated said —  
 Ῥομπέρτος αὖθις ἕτερον κατασκευάζειν μόσυνα ἠπείγετο  
 Robert again another to-construct wooden-tower hastened  
 παρύμοιον τῷ προκατασκευασθέντι καὶ ἐλεπόλεις κατὰ τοῦ  
 very-like the previously-constructed and siege-engines against —  
 Δυρραχίου ἡτοίμαζε, διαγνοὺς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀρωγῆς τοὺς  
 Dyrrachion prepared having-recognized the emperor of-help those  
 ἐν τῷ Δυρραχίῳ ταχείας δεῖσθαι καταστήσας τὰς ἰδίας  
 in — Dyrrachion swift to-need having-set the own  
 δυνάμεις τῆς πρὸς τὸ Δυρράχιον ὁδοῦ εἶχετο. καταλαβὼν  
 forces the to — Dyrrachion road held-to having-reached  
 οὖν ἐκεῖσε καὶ τάφρον ποιήσας καὶ τὰ στρατεύματα  
 then there and trench having-made and the armies  
 καταθεῖς εἰς τὸν λεγόμενον Χαρζάνην ποταμὸν εὐθὺς  
 having-placed at the so-called Charzanes river at-once  
 διὰ τινων ἀποστείλας ἠρώτα τὸν Ῥομπέρτον, ὅτου  
 through some having-sent be-asked — Robert for-what  
 χάριν παρεγένετο καὶ τίς αὐτῷ ὁ σκοπός. ἐκεῖθεν δὲ  
 sake he-had-come and what to-him the aim from-there and  
 ἀπάρας ἔρχεται εἰς τὸ ἐπ' ὀνόματι τοῦ ἐν ἱεράρχαις  
 having-set-out he-comes to the in name of-the among hierarchs  
 μεγίστου Νικολάου ἰδρυμένον τέμενος τέσσαρας σταδίου  
 greatest Nicholas founded precinct four stades

τοῦ Δυρραχίου ἀπέχον καὶ τὴν τοῦ τόπου διεσκοπεῖτο  
 — from-Dyrrachion distant and the of-the place considered  
 θέειν, ὥστε τὸν ἐπικαιρότατον τόπον, ὅπη χρὴ τὰς  
 position so-that the most-advantageous place where it-is-needful the  
 φάλαγγας ἐν καιρῷ μάχης καταστήσασθαι, προκαταλαβεῖν.  
 phalanxes in time of-battle to-set to-seize-beforehand  
 πεντεκαίδεκάτῃ δ' ἦν τῆνικαῦτα τοῦ Ὀκτωβρίου μηνός.  
 fifteenth and it-was then of-the October month  
 αὐτὴν δὲ ἦν ἀπὸ Δαλματίας διήκων πρὸς θάλασσαν  
 ridge and was from Dalmatia stretching to sea  
 ἀποτελευτῶν εἰς ἀκρωτήριόν τι, ὅπερ οἶον χερσόνησός  
 ending at promontory some which as-it-were peninsula  
 ἐστίν, ἐν ᾗ καὶ τὸ ἤδη ῥηθὲν ὠκοδόμηται τέμενος.  
 is in which also the already said has-been-built precinct  
 ἡρέμα δὲ τὸ τοῦ αὐχένος πρηνὲς συμβάλλον τῇ πεδιάδι  
 gently and the of-the ridge slope meeting the plain  
 πρὸς τὸ Δυρράχιον ἀπονενευκὸς ἐξ εὐωνύμου μὲν τὴν  
 toward — Dyrrachion inclining on left indeed the  
 θάλασσαν, δεξιόθεν δὲ ὄρος ὑψηλὸν καὶ ὑπερκεείμενον  
 sea on-the-right and mountain high and overhanging  
 ἔχει. ἐκεῖσε γοῦν τὸ ὀπλιτικὸν ἅπαν συναγαγὼν καὶ  
 it-has there at-any-rate the armed(-body) all having-gathered and  
 τὸν χάρακα πηξάμενος τῆνικαῦτα καὶ τὸν Παλαιολόγον  
 the palisade having-fixed then also — Palaiologos  
 μετεκαλεῖτο Γεώργιον. ὁ δὲ πείραν σχὼν τῶν τοιούτων  
 be-summoned George he and experience having of-the such(-things)  
 ἐκ μακροῦ μὴ συμφέρον τοῦτο λογιζόμενος ἀνένευε τὴν  
 from long not advantageous this reckoning refused the  
 ἐξέλευσιν αὐτὸ τοῦτο πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα δηλώσας. ὡς δ'  
 going-out this-very this to the emperor having-shown when and  
 αὐθις ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπιμελέστερον τοῦτον μετεκαλεῖτο, φησὶν  
 again the emperor more-urgently him summoned he-says

“ἐμοὶ λίαν ὀλέθριον δοκεῖ πολιορκουμένου τοῦ κάστρου  
*to-me very ruinous it-seems being-besieged the fortress*  
 ἐξελθεῖν, καὶ εἰ μὴ τὸν δακτύλιον τῆς χειρὸς τῆς σῆς  
*to-go-out and if not the ring of-the hand of-the your*  
 βασιλείας θεάσομαι, οὐκ ἐξελεύσομαι”. ἀποσταλέντα δὲ  
*majesty I-shall-see not I-shall-go-out sent and*  
 τοῦτον θεασάμενος τηνικαῦτα φοιτᾷ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα  
*it having-seen then he-comes to the emperor*  
 μετὰ πολεμικῶν νηῶν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τοῦτον ἰδὼν  
*with war ships the and emperor him having-seen*  
 τὰ κατὰ τὸν Ῥομπέρτον αὐτοῦ ἐπυνθάνετο. τούτου  
*the(-things) concerning — Robert from-him inquired he*  
 δὲ πάντα αὐτῷ διασαφήσαντος ἡρώτα, εἰ χρὴ τὸν μετ’  
*and all to-him having-made-clear he-asked if it-is-needful the with*  
 αὐτοῦ ἀποθαρρῆσαι πόλεμον. ὁ δὲ πρὸς τοῦτον ἀνένευε  
*him to-dare war he and to this refused*  
 τέως. ἀλλὰ καὶ τινες τῶν περὶ τὰ πολεμικὰ πείραν  
*for-a-while but also some of-those about the warlike(-things) experience*  
 ἐκ μακροῦ χρόνου ἐσχηκότων ἐπιμελῶς τοῦτον ἐκώλυν  
*from long time having-had carefully him hindered*  
 συμβουλευόμενοι καρτερῆσαι καὶ δι’ ἀκροβολισμῶν  
*advising to-bold-out and through skirmishes*  
 σπεῦσαι στενοχωρῆσαι τὸν Ῥομπέρτον μὴ συγχωρουμένων  
*to-basten to-hem-in — Robert not being-allowed*  
 τῶν ὑπ’ αὐτὸν χορταγωγίας χάριν ἢ προνομῆς τῆς  
*those under him of-foraging for-the-sake or of-plundering from-the*  
 ἰδίας παρεμβολῆς ἐξίεναι, τοῦτο δὲ καὶ τῷ Βοδίνῳ καὶ τοῖς  
*own camp to-go-out this and also — to-Bodin and to-the*  
 Δαλμάταις καὶ τοῖς λοιποῖς ἀρχηγοῖς τῶν παρακειμένων  
*Dalmatians and to-the other leaders of-the neighboring*  
 χωρῶν παρακελεύεσθαι ποιεῖν, διαβεβαιούμενοι, ὥς  
*lands to-order to-do affirming that*

τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον ῥαδίως ὁ Ῥομπέρτος ἡττηθήσεται.  
*this the way easily — Robert will-be-defeated*  
 οἱ δὲ πλείονες τῶν νεωτέρων τοῦ στρατοῦ τὸν πόλεμον  
*the and more of-the younger of-the army the battle*  
 προὔτρεποντο καὶ πάντων μᾶλλον Κωνστάντιος ὁ  
*urged and of-all most Konstantios the*  
 πορφυρογέννητος καὶ Νικηφόρος ὁ Συναδηνὸς καὶ ὁ  
*born-in-the-purple and Nikephoros the Synadenos and the*  
 τῶν Βαράγγων ἡγεμὼν Ναμπίτης καὶ αὐτοὶ οἱ τοῦ  
*of-the Varangians leader Nampites and themselves the of-the*  
 προβεβασιλευκότος Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ Διογένους υἱεῖς, ὃ τε  
*having-reigned-before Romanos the Diogenes sons — both*  
 Λέων καὶ ὁ Νικηφόρος. ἅμα δὲ καὶ οἱ πρὸς τὸν  
*Leo and — Nikephoros at-the-same-time and also those to —*  
 Ῥομπέρτον ἀποσταλέντες ἐπανελλυθότες τὰ ἐκείνου πρὸς  
*Robert sent having-come-back the his(-words) to*  
 τὸν βασιλέα ἀπεστομάτιζον ὡς “ἐγὼ μὲν” φησι “κατὰ τῆς  
*the emperor reported-by-mouth that I indeed he-says against the*  
 σῆς βασιλείας οὐδαμῶς ἐξελλήλυθα, ἀλλ’ ἐκδικήσων μᾶλλον  
*your majesty in-no-way have-gone-out but about-to-avenge rather*  
 τὴν γενομένην εἰς τὸν ἐμὸν συμπένθερον ἀδικίαν. εἰ δὲ  
*the having-happened to the my fellow-father-in-law injustice if and*  
 σὺ τὴν μετ’ ἐμοῦ θέλεις εἰρήνην, ἀσπάζομαι τοῦτο καὶ γὰρ  
*you the with me wish peace I-welcome this I-too*  
 μόνον εἰ καὶ αὐτὸς τὰ μετὰ τῶν ἐμῶν δηλωθέντα σοι  
*only if also yourself the(-things) with the my made-known to-you*  
 πρέσβων προθυμηθῆς ἀποπληρῶσαι.” ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀδύνατα  
*envoys you-are-eager to-fulfill since and impossible(-things)*  
 παντάπασιν ἐπεξήτει καὶ ἐπιβλαβῇ τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ  
*altogether he-sought and harmful to-the of-(the)-Romans rule*  
 ὑποσχνούμενος ἅμα, εἰ τεύξεται τῶν παρ’ αὐτοῦ  
*promising at-the-same-time if he-shall-obtain the(-things) from him*

ζητουμένων, καὶ αὐτὴν τὴν Λογγιβαρδίαν ὡς ἀπὸ τοῦ  
*sought also itself — Lombardy as from the*  
 βασιλέως λογίσασθαι καὶ βοηθεῖν, ὅπηνίκα χρεία ἐστί·  
*emperor to-reckon and to-help when need is*  
 τὰ δὲ σκῆψις ἦν, ἵνα δόξῃ, δι' ὧν μὲν  
*these(-things) and pretext were that he-might-seem through what indeed*  
 αἰτεῖται, αὐτὸς τὴν εἰρήνην θέλειν, ἀδύνατα δὲ λέγων  
*he-asks he the peace to-wish impossible(-things) but saying*  
 καὶ μὴ τυγχάνων τῆς μάχης ἀνθέξεται, εἶτα τὴν τῆς μάχης  
*and not obtaining the battle he-will-hold-to then the of-the battle*  
 αἰτίαν τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων προστράψειν. ἀτέλεστα  
*cause on-the emperor of-(the)-Romans might-wipe unattainable(-things)*  
 γοῦν αἰτησάμενος καὶ μὴ τυχὼν πάντας τοὺς  
*at-any-rate having-asked and not having-obtained all the*  
 κόμητας συγκαλεσάμενός φησι πρὸς αὐτοὺς “οὔδατε τὴν  
*counts having-called-together he-says to them you-know the*  
 παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Νικηφόρου τοῦ Βοτανειάτου γεγυῖαν  
*from the emperor Nikephoros the Botaneiates having-happened*  
 ἀδικίαν εἰς τὸν ἐμὸν συμπένθερον καὶ τὴν ἀτιμίαν, ἣν ἡ  
*injustice to the my fellow-father-in-law and the dishonor which the*  
 ἐμὴ θυγάτηρ Ἑλένη ἐπεπόνθει τῆς βασιλείας σὺν αὐτῷ  
*my daughter Helena had-suffered from-the empire with him*  
 ἐξεωθέισα. τοῦτο δὲ μὴ φέροντες εἰς ἐκδίκησιν τούτων  
*thrust-out this and not bearing for vengeance of-these*  
 κατὰ τοῦ Βοτανειάτου τῆς χώρας ἡμῶν ἐξεληλύθειμεν·  
*against — Botaneiates from-the land our we-bad-gone-out*  
 ἐκείνου δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς παραλυθέντος νῦν πρὸς βασιλέα  
*he and from-the rule having-been-removed now against emperor*  
 ἔχομεν νέον καὶ στρατιώτην γενναῖον ὑπὲρ τὸν χρόνον  
*we-have young and soldier noble beyond the age*  
 αὐτοῦ πείραν τῆς στρατιωτικῆς ἐπιστήμης ἐσχηκότα,  
*his experience of-the military science having-bad*

καὶ οὐ χρὴ ὥς ἔτυχε τὸν μετ' αὐτοῦ ἀναδέξασθαι  
*and not it-is-needful as it-happened the with him to-take-up*  
 πόλεμον. ὅπου γὰρ πολυαρχία, ἐκεῖ καὶ σύγχυσις τῆς  
*war where for many-rule there also confusion the*  
 διαφόρου γνώμης τῶν πολλῶν ταύτην εἰσαγούσης. λοιπὸν  
*differing mind of-the many this introducing for-the-rest*  
 χρὴ ἑνός τινος ἡμῶν τοὺς λοιποὺς ἐπακούειν καὶ κεῖνον  
*it-is-needful one some(-one) of-us the rest to-obey and-that-one*  
 μὲν τὴν ἐξ ἀπάντων βουλὴν ἐπιζητεῖν καὶ μὴ τοῖς οἰκείοις  
*indeed the from all counsel to-seek and not on-the own*  
 λογισμοῖς ἀπεριμερίμωως χρᾶσθαι καὶ ὥς ἔτυχε, τοὺς δέ  
*reasonings carelessly to-use and as it-happened the and*  
 γε λοιποὺς τὸ δοκοῦν αὐτοῖς μετ' εὐθύτητος λέγειν  
*at-least rest the(-thing) seeming to-them with frankness to-say*  
 πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐπομένους ἅμα τῇ τοῦ προκριθέντος βουλῇ.  
*to him following together-with the of-the preferred(-man) counsel*  
 καὶ ἰδοὺ ἐγὼ εἰς ἐξ ἀπάντων ἔτοιμος ὢν ὑπέειπεν, ᾧ  
*and behold I one of all ready being to-yield to-whom*  
 ἂν πάντες προκρίνητε". πάντες οὖν τὴν βουλὴν ταύτην  
*— all you-may-prefer all then the counsel this*  
 ἐπαινέσαντες καὶ καλῶς λέγειν τὸν Ῥομπέρτον φάμενοι  
*having-praised and well to-speak — Robert saying*  
 τηρικαῦτα αὐτῷ τῶν πρωτείων παρακεχωρήκασιν ἅπαντες  
*then to-him the first-place have-conceded all*  
 εἰς τοῦτο ὁμογνωμονήσαντες. ὁ δὲ ἀκκιζόμενος οἶον  
*to this having-agreed he and feigning-coyness as-it-were*  
 ἀνεβάλλετο τέως τὴν ἐγχείρησιν· οἱ δὲ μᾶλλον ἐπέκειντο  
*put-off for-a-while the undertaking they and more pressed*  
 τοῦτο αὐτὸ αἰτοῦντες. ὑπέιξας οὖν τῷ φαινομένῳ ταῖς  
*this itself asking having-yielded then in-the appearance to-the*  
 αὐτῶν παρακλήσεις, καὶν τοῦτο ὠδίνων ἐκ μακροῦ,  
*their entreaties even-if this travelling-with from long*

λόγους ἐκ λόγων περιέπλεκε καὶ αἰτίας αἰτίαις συνείρων  
*words from words wove and causes on-causes stringing*  
 εὐφύως, εἰς ὅπερ ἱμείρετο, ἄκων ἐδόκει τοῖς μὴ εἰς  
*cleverly to which he-longed unwilling he-seemed to-those not into*  
 νοῦν βάπτουσιν ἔρχεσθαι. λοιπὸν φησι πρὸς αὐτοὺς  
*mind dipping to-come for-the-rest he-says to them*  
 “ἀκούσατε τῆς ἐμῆς βουλῆς, κόμητες καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τοῦ  
*hear the my counsel counts and the rest of-the*  
 στρατοῦ. ἐπεὶ τὰς σφῶν πατρίδας καταλελοιπότες ἐνταυθοῖ  
*army since the our-own fatherlands having-left here*  
 παρεγενόμεθα, καὶ ἡ προκειμένη μάχη πρὸς ἀνδρικώτερον  
*we-have-come and the lying-before battle against more-manly*  
 βασιλέα ἐστὶ καὶ ἄρτι μὲν τοὺς τῆς βασιλείας οἶακας  
*emperor is and just indeed the of-the empire helms*  
 ἀναδεξάμενον, πολλοὺς δὲ πολέμους ἐπὶ τῶν πρὸ αὐτοῦ  
*having-taken-up many and wars under those before him*  
 βεβασιλευκότων νενικηκότα καὶ μεγίστους ἀποστάτας  
*having-reigned having-won and greatest rebels*  
 δορυαλώτους αὐτοῖς προσειηνοχότα, ὀλοψύχως χρὴ τῆς  
*spear-captured to-them having-brought wholeheartedly it-is-needful the*  
 μάχης ἀνθέξασθαι. καὶ εἰ τὴν νικῶσαν ἡμῖν ἐπιψηφιεῖται  
*battle to-hold-to and if the winning(-vote) to-us shall-vote*  
 θεός, οὐκέτι χρημάτων ἐν χρεῖα ἐσόμεθα. χρὴ τοιγαροῦν  
*God no-longer of-money in need we-shall-be it-is-needful accordingly*  
 τὰς μὲν σκευὰς ἀπάσας ἐμπρῆσαι, τὰς δὲ ὀλκάδας  
*the indeed baggage all to-burn the and merchant-ships*  
 διατρήσαντας κατὰ τοῦ πελάγους ἀφεῖναι καὶ οὕτω τὴν  
*having-boled down-into the sea to-let-go and thus the*  
 μετ’ αὐτοῦ ἀναδέξασθαι μάχην ὡς τηνικαῦτα γεννηθέντας  
*with him to-take-up battle as then having-been-born*  
 καὶ τεθνηξομένους”. ἐπὶ τούτοις κατένευσαν ἅπαντες.  
*and about-to-die to these assented all*

*Alexios plans a night attack on Robert's camp from two sides, but on the night of 18 October Robert crosses the bridge to Saint Theodore's. Amiketes' wing breaks against Nampites' axe-bearers on foot and flees into the sea until Gaita rallies it with a spear. The axe-bearers, too far ahead, are cut down, the survivors burned in Saint Michael's church. Konstantios, Nikephoros Synadenos, Palaiologos' father Nikephoros, Zacharias, and Aspietes fall. Alexios fights off three knights and loses his helmet, then, with the Turks fleeing and Bodin gone home unfought, flees.*

Ἄλλὰ τοιαῦτα μὲν τὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου διανοήματά τε  
 but such indeed the — of-Robert thoughts both  
 καὶ βουλευμάτα· ἄλλα δ' αὖ τὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος  
 and plans others and again the(-plans) of-the autocrat  
 ποικιλώτερά τε καὶ ὀξύτερα. συνέιχον δ' ὅμως οἱ  
 more-varied both and sharper occupied but nevertheless the  
 δημαγωγοὶ ἄμφω τὰ στρατεύματα στρατηγίας καὶ  
 leaders both the armies of-generalsbip and  
 δημαγωγίας περὶ βουλευόμενοι, ὅπως μετ' ἐπιστήμης  
 of-leadership about deliberating how with science  
 δημαγωγῆσαιεν καὶ στρατεύουσιντο. καὶ ὁ μὲν αὐτοκράτωρ  
 they-might-lead and campaign and the indeed autocrat  
 αἴφνης νυκτὸς ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους ἐπεισπεσεῖν τῇ τοῦ  
 suddenly by-night from each side to-fall-upon the —  
 Ῥομπέρτου παρεμβολῇ σκεπτόμενος τὸ μὲν ἔθνικόν  
 of-Robert camp considering the indeed foreign  
 ἅπαν στρατεύμα ἀπὸ τοῦ ὀπισθεν μέρους ἐπέτρεψε  
 whole army from the rear part be-ordered  
 προσβαλεῖν διὰ τῶν ἀλυκῶν διελθόντας καὶ πλείονα τὴν  
 to-attack through the salt-marsbes having-passed and greater the  
 ὁδοιπορίαν ἀναδέξασθαι αὐτοὺς διὰ τὸ ἀνύποπτον  
 journey to-take-on them because-of the unsuspected(-approach)



οὐκ ἀπηνήνατο· αὐτὸς δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν ἔμπροσθεν, ὀπηνίκα  
 not he-refused he and from the front when  
 γνοίη ἐφθακότας τοὺς ἀποσταλέντας, ἡβούλετο  
 he-should-learn having-arrived those sent wished  
 προσβαλεῖν τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ. ὃς κενὰς τὰς σκηναὺς  
 to-attack — Robert who empty the tents  
 καταλιπὼν καὶ νυκτὸς διὰ τῆς γεφύρας διεληλυθὼς  
 having-left and by-night through the bridge having-crossed  
 (ὀγδόῃ δ' ἦν πρὸς τῇ δεκάτῃ τοῦ παριππεύοντος μηνὸς  
 eighth and it-was to the tenth of-the departing month  
 Ὀκτωβρίου ἐπιμεμήσεως πέμπτης) τὸ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν  
 October of-indiction fifth the by the sea  
 ἐπ' ὀνόματι τοῦ μάρτυρος Θεοδώρου πάλαι ἀνοικοδομηθὲν  
 in name of-the martyr Theodore of-old built  
 τέμενος κατέλαβε μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ δι'  
 precinct reached with all the army and through  
 ὅλης νυκτὸς τὸ θεῖον ἐξευμενιζόμενοι τῶν ἀχράντων καὶ  
 whole night the divine propitiating of-the immaculate and  
 θείων μυστηρίων μετελάμβανον. εἶτα τὰς ἰδίας καταστήσας  
 divine mysteries partook then the own having-set  
 φάλαγγας τὴν μέσσην εἶχε τοῦ συντάγματος χώραν, τὸ δέ  
 phalanxes the middle held of-the formation place the and  
 γε πρὸς θάλατταν κέρας τῷ Ἀμικέτῃ ἐπέτρεψε (κόμης  
 at-least toward sea wing — to-Amiketes he-entrusted count  
 δὲ οὗτος τῶν ἐπιφανῶν, γενναῖος καὶ χεῖρα καὶ γνώμην),  
 and this of-the illustrious noble both in-hand and mind  
 θάτερον δὲ τῷ υἱῷ αὐτοῦ Βαϊμόντῳ, τὴν ἐπὶ κλησιν  
 the-other and to-the son his Bobemond the surname  
 Σανίσκῳ. τούτων ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ αἰσθόμενος, δεινὸς ὢν  
 Saniskos these the autocrat having-perceived clever being  
 τὸ συνοῖσιν ἐν ὀξείᾳ εὐρηκέναι ῥοπῇ, μεθαρμοσάμενος  
 the advantageous in sharp to-have-found moment having-adjusted

εαυτὸν πρὸς τὸ      ζυμπεσὸν αὐτοῦ που κατὰ τὸ  
*himself to the(-thing) having-happened there somewhere on the*  
 πρὰνὲς παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν τὰς παρατάξεις κατέστησε  
*slope by the sea the battle-lines set*  
 καὶ διελὼν τὰ στρατεύματα τοὺς μὲν ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς  
*and having-divided the armies the indeed to the tents*  
 τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου ἀπερχομένους βαρβάρους τῆς ὁρμῆς  
*— of-Robert going-off barbarians from-the impulse*  
 οὐκ ἀνέκοψε, τοὺς δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων τὰ ἑτερόκοπα  
*not he-checked the(-ones) and on the shoulders the single-edged*  
 φέροντας ξίφη παρακατασχὼν μετὰ τοῦ σφῶν ἀρχηγοῦ  
*carrying swords having-kept-back with the their leader*  
 τοῦ Ναμπίτου ἀποβάντας τῶν ἵππων ἔμπροσθεν ἐκ  
*— Nampites having-dismounted from-the horses in-front from*  
 μικροῦ διαστήματος προπορεύεσθαι στοιχηδὸν ἐπέτρεψε·  
*small distance to-advance in-ranks he-ordered*  
 τοῦτο δὲ γένος ἀσπιδηφόρον ζύμπαντες. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν  
*this and race shield-bearing all the and rest*  
 τοῦ στρατεύματος εἰς φάλαγγας διελὼν αὐτὸς μὲν  
*of-the army into phalanxes having-divided he indeed*  
 τὸ μεσαίτατον εἶχε τῆς παρατάξεως, δεξιόθεν δὲ καὶ  
*the very-middle held of-the battle-line on-the-right and and*  
 ἐξ εὐωνύμου φαλαγγάρχας τὸν καίσαρα Νικηφόρον τὸν  
*from left phalanx-commanders the caesar Nikephoros the*  
 Μελισσηνὸν ἐπέστησε καὶ τὸν καλούμενον Πακουριανὸν καὶ  
*Melissenos he-set-over and the called Pakourianos and*  
 μέγαν δομέστικον. τὸ δὲ μεσαίτατον αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῶν  
*grand domestic the and very-middle his both and of-the*  
 πεζῇ βαδιζόντων βαρβάρων ἱκανοὺς εἶχε στρατιώτας τῆς  
*on-foot marching barbarians considerable he-had soldiers of-the*  
 τοξείας εἰδήμονας, οὓς κατὰ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου προεκπέμπειν  
*archery skilled whom against — Robert to-send-ahead*

ἠβούλετο ἐπιτρέψας τῷ Ναμπίτῃ, ὅπηνίκα βούλουντο  
*he-wished having-enjoined — to-Nampites when they-should-wish*  
 πρὸς τοὺς Κελτοὺς ἐξιππάσασθαι καὶ αὖθις ὑποστρέφειν,  
*against the Celts to-ride-out and again to-return*  
 χώραν αὐτοῖς ἐξ ἐφόδου διδόναι ἐφ' ἑκάτερα σχιζομένους,  
*room to-them from charge to-give to either-side splitting*  
 εἴτ' αὖθις συνεχίζεσθαι καὶ συνησπικότας πορεύεσθαι.  
*then again to-close-ranks and with-locked-shields to-march*  
 οὕτω γοῦν τὸ ἅπαν διατυπώσας στράτευμα αὐτὸς μὲν  
*thus at-any-rate the whole having-shaped army be indeed*  
 κατὰ μέτωπον ἴετο τῶν Κελτικῶν στρατευμάτων  
*in front hurled-himself of-the Celtic armies*  
 τὴν ἡόνα παραθέων· οἱ δὲ ἀποσταλέντες βάρβαροι τὰς  
*the shore running-along the and sent barbarians the*  
 ἀλυκὰς διεληλυθότες, ἐπεὶ καὶ οἱ ἐντὸς τοῦ Δυρραχίου  
*salt-marshes having-crossed when also those inside — Dyrrachion*  
 τὰς πύλας ἀνεπέτασαν τοῦτο αὐτοῖς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος  
*the gates threw-open this to-them the autocrat*  
 ἐπισκίψαντος, ἐν ταὐτῷ ταῖς Κελτικαῖς σκηναῖς  
*having-enjoined at the-same(-time) on-the Celtic tents*  
 προσέβαλον. κατ' ἀλλήλων δὲ τῶν δημαγωγῶν ἐρχομένων  
*attacked against each-other and the leaders coming*  
 ἀποσπάδας ἀποστέλλων ὁ Ῥομπέρτος ἵππασίας ἐκέλευε  
*detachments sending — Robert ridings ordered*  
 ποιεῖσθαι, εἴ που ἐκεῖθεν ὑποσῦραί τινας δυνηθεῖεν τοῦ  
*to-be-made if somewhere from-there to-draw-off some they-could of-the*  
 Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στρατεύματος. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὁ βασιλεὺς πρὸς  
*Roman army but not-even the emperor toward*  
 τοῦτο ἀνεπεπτώκει· ἔπεμπε δὲ μᾶλλον καὶ συχνοὺς τοὺς  
*this had-been-negligent he-sent and rather also numerous those*  
 ἀντικαταστησομένους αὐτοῖς πελταστάς. ἀκροβολισμοῖς οὖν  
*about-to-oppose them targeteers with-skirmishes then*

μετρίοις ἀμφοτέρων κατ' ἀλλήλων χρησαμένων, ἐπεὶ καὶ  
*moderate both against each-other having-used when also*  
 ὁ Ῥομπέρτος ἡρέμα τούτοις εἶπετο καὶ τὸ μεταίχμιον  
 — Robert gently them followed and the in-between  
 ἤδη ἀπεστενοῦτο διάστημα, τῆς φάλαγγος τοῦ Ἀμικέτου  
*already was-narrowing distance of-the phalanx — of-Amiketes*  
 προεκδραμόντες πεζοὶ καὶ ἵππεις περὶ τὸ ἄκρον τῆς  
*having-run-ahead foot-soldiers and horsemen about the edge of-the*  
 παρατάξεως τῆς τοῦ Ναμπίτου προσέβαλον. γενναϊότερον  
*battle-line of-the — of-Nampites attacked more-nobly*  
 δ' αὐτῶν ἀντικαταστάντων παλινόρσοι γεγόνασιν, ἐπεὶ  
*and them having-stood-against back-turning have-become since*  
 οὐ πάντες λογάδες ἦσαν, καὶ τῇ θαλάσῃ ἑαυτοὺς  
*not all picked-men were and into-the sea themselves*  
 ἐπιρρίψαντες ἄχρι τοῦ τραχήλου ταῖς νηυσὶ τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ  
*having-thrown up-to the neck to-the ships of-the Roman*  
 καὶ Βενετικικοῦ στόλου πελάζοντες ἐκείθεν ἠτοῦντο τὴν  
*and Venetian fleet approaching from-there asked the*  
 σωτηρίαν καὶ παρ' ἐκείνων οὐ προσεδέχοντο. ἡ δέ γε  
*safety and by them not they-were-received — but at-least*  
 Γαῖτα, ὡς λόγος τίς φησιν, ἡ τοῦ Ῥομπέρτου σύνευνος  
*Gaita as story some says the — of-Robert wife*  
 αὐτῷ συστρατευομένη, Παλλὰς ἄλλη κἂν μὴ Ἀθήνη,  
*with-him campaigning Pallas another even-if not Athena*  
 θεασαμένη τοὺς φεύγοντας δριμὺν τούτοις ἐνατενίσασα κατ'  
*having-beheld the fleeing sharply at-them having-gazed against*  
 αὐτῶν μεγίστην ἀφείσα φωνὴν μονονοῦ τὸ Ὀμηρικὸν  
*them very-great having-let-loose voice all-but the Homeric*  
 ἐκεῖνο ἔπος τῇ ἰδίᾳ διαλέκτῳ λέγειν ἑώκει “μέχρι πόσου  
*that word in-the own dialect to-say seemed until how-long*  
 φεύξεσθε; στήτε, ἀνέρες ἔστε”. ὡς δὲ ἔτι φεύγοντας  
*will-you-flee stand men be when and still fleeing*

τούτους ἑώρα, δόρυ μακρὸν ἐναγκαλισαμένη ὅλους ῥυτῆρας  
*them she-saw spear long having-embraced full reins*  
ἐνδοῦσα κατὰ τῶν φευγόντων ἵεται. τοῦτο θεασάμενοι καὶ  
*having-given against the fleeing hurls-herself this having-beheld and*  
ἐαυτῶν γεγονότες αὖθις πρὸς μάχην ἑαυτοὺς ἀνεκαλέσαντο.  
*to-themselves having-come again to battle themselves recalled*  
ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ πελεκυφόροι καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ τούτων ἀρχηγὸς  
*when and the axe-bearers and himself the their leader*  
ὁ Ναμπίτης δι' ἀπειρίαν καὶ θερμότητα ὀξύτερον  
— *Nampites through inexperience and beat more-quickly*  
βεβαδικότες ἱκανὸν τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς παρατάξεως  
*having-marched considerable(-distance) from-the Roman battle-line*  
ἀπέστησαν σπεύδοντες ξυμβαλεῖν ἐν ἴσῳ θυμῷ τοῖς  
*stood-apart hastening to-engage in equal spirit with-the*  
Κελτοῖς (καὶ γὰρ οὐχ ἥττον ἐκείνων περὶ τὰς μάχας  
*Celts and for not less than-them about the battles*  
καὶ οὗτοι ἐκθυμότεροί εἰσι καὶ τῶν Κελτῶν ἐν τούτῳ  
*also these more-spirited are and than-the Celts in this*  
τῷ μέρει μὴ ἀποδέοντες), κεκοπιακότας τούτους ἤδη καὶ  
*the respect not falling-short having-toiled them already and*  
ἀσθμαίνοντας ὁ Ῥομπέρτος θεασάμενος καὶ τοῦτο ἀπὸ τε  
*panting — Robert having-beheld and this from both*  
τῆς ὀξείας κινήσεως τοῦ τε διαστήματος βεβαιωθείς καὶ  
*the swift movement the both distance having-been-assured and*  
τοῦ ἄχθους τῶν ὀπλῶν τινὰς τῶν πεζῶν ἐπέσκηψε κατ'  
*the weight of-the arms some of-the foot-soldiers be-ordered against*  
αὐτῶν εἰσπηδήσαι. οἱ δὲ προκεκμηκότες ἤδη μαλακώτεροι  
*them to-leap they and having-been-exhausted already softer*  
τῶν Κελτῶν ἐφαίνοντο. πίπτει γοῦν τηνικαῦτα τὸ  
*than-the Celts appeared falls at-any-rate then the*  
βάρβαρον ἅπαν, καὶ ὅποσοι τούτων ἐσώθησαν, περὶ τὸ  
*barbarian(-force) all and as-many-as of-them were-saved about the*

τέμενος τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου Μιχαὴλ προσπεφευγότες οἱ  
*precinct of-the commander-in-chief Michael having-fled some*  
 μὲν καὶ ὅπόσοις ἐξεχώρει τὸ τέμενος ἐντός, εἰσῆσαν,  
*indeed also as-many-as made-room-for the precinct inside went*  
 οἱ δὲ ἄνωθεν τοῦ τεμένους ἀνελθόντες εἰστήκεσαν  
*others and on-top of-the precinct having-gone-up stood*  
 τὴν σωτηρίαν, ὡς ᾔφοντο, ἐκεῖθεν πραγματευσόμενοι. οἱ  
*the safety as they-thought from-there about-to-secure the*  
 δὲ Λατῖνοι πῦρ κατ' αὐτῶν ἀφέντες σὺν τῷ τεμένει  
*and Latins fire against them having-let-loose with the precinct*  
 πάντας κατέκαυσαν. τὸ δέ γε λοιπὸν τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς  
*all burned-up the and at-least rest of-the Roman*  
 φάλαγγος καρτερῶς πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἀπεμάχοντο. ὁ δὲ  
*phalanx strongly against them fought — but*  
 Ῥομπέρτος καθάπερ τις περωτὸς ἱππότης σὺν ταῖς  
*Robert like some winged horseman with the*  
 λοιπαῖς δυνάμεσι κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς φάλαγγος ἐλᾷ καὶ  
*remaining forces against the Roman phalanx drives and*  
 ὠθεῖται ταύτην καὶ εἰς μέρη πολλὰ διασπᾷ. ἐντεῦθεν οἱ  
*thrusts it and into parts many tears-apart thence some*  
 μὲν τῶν ἀντικειμένων ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ πολέμῳ μαχόμενοι  
*indeed of-the opposing in itself the war fighting*  
 πίπτουσιν, οἱ δὲ φυγῇ τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἐπραγματεύσαντο  
*fall others and by-flight the their secured*  
 σωτηρίαν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος καθάπερ τις πύργος  
*safety the but emperor Alexios like some tower*  
 ἀκλόνητος ἔμενε, κἂν πολλοὺς τῶν μετ' αὐτοῦ ἀποβεβλήκει  
*unshaken remained even-if many of-the with him be-bad-lost*  
 ἀνδρῶν καὶ γένει καὶ πείρᾳ στρατιωτικῇ διαφερόντων.  
*men both in-family and in-experience military surpassing*  
 πέπτωκε γὰρ τηνικαῦτα ὁ Κωνσταντῖος υἱὸς μὲν  
*fell for then — Konstantios son indeed*

τοῦ προβεβασιλευκότος Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ Δούκα, οὐκ  
*of-the having-reigned-before Constantine the Doukas not*  
 ἰδιωτεύοντος αὐτοῦ ἔτι ἀποτεχθεὶς, ἀλλ' ἐν πορφύρᾳ καὶ  
*being-a-private-citizen he still having-been-born but in purple both*  
 γεννηθεὶς καὶ τραφεὶς καὶ ταινίας τῷ τότε καιρῷ  
*having-been-born and having-been-reared and of-fillet at-the then time*  
 βασιλικῆς παρὰ τοῦ πατρὸς ἀξιωθεὶς· καὶ ὁ Νικηφόρος  
*imperial by the father deemed-worthy and — Nikephoros*  
 μὲν τὴν κλήσιν, Συναδηνὸς δὲ τὴν ἐπὶ κλήσιν καλούμενος,  
*indeed by-the name Synadenos and by-the surname called*  
 ἀνὴρ γενναῖος καὶ ὠραιότατος καὶ σφαδάζων πάντων  
*man noble and most-handsome and straining all*  
 ὑπερτερῆσαι κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν ἐκείνην μαχόμενος· μεθ' οὗ  
*to-surpass on the day that fighting with whom*  
 ὁ ἤδη ρηθεὶς Κωνσταντίος περὶ κήδους ἐπὶ τῇ ἰδίᾳ  
*the already said Konstantios about marriage-alliance for the own*  
 ἀδελφῇ πολλάκις ὠμίλει· ναὶ μὴν καὶ ὁ τοῦ Παλαιολόγου  
*sister often conversed yes indeed also the — of-Palaiologos*  
 πατὴρ Νικηφόρος καὶ ἕτεροι τῶν ἐπιφανῶν· πλήττεται  
*father Nikephoros and others of-the illustrious is-struck*  
 γὰρ καὶ ὁ Ζαχαρίας καιρίαν κατὰ τοῦ στέρνου καὶ τὴν  
*for also — Zacharias mortally in the breast and the*  
 ψυχὴν ἅμα τῇ πληγῇ ἐπαφύσι καὶ ὁ Ἀσπίετης καὶ  
*soul together-with the blow lets-go and — Aspietes and*  
 πολλοὶ τῶν λογάδων. τῆς δὲ μάχης μὴ διαλυομένης, ἐπεὶ  
*many of-the picked-men the and battle not being-dissolved since*  
 τὸν βασιλέα ἐώρων ἔτι ἀνθιστάμενον, ἀποκριθέντες τινὲς  
*the emperor they-saw still resisting having-been-detached some*  
 τῶν Λατίνων τρεῖς, ἀφ' ὧν εἷς ὁ ἤδη ρηθεὶς Ἀμικέτης  
*of-the Latins three of whom one the already said Amiketes*  
 ἦν, ὁ δὲ Πέτρος τοῦ Ἀλίφα, ὡς αὐτὸς ἐκείνος ἔλεγεν,  
*was — and Peter — of-Aliphas as he himself said*

ὁ δὲ τρίτος κατ' οὐδὲν τούτων ἐλάττων, ὅλους ῥυτῆρας  
*the and third in nothing than-these less full reins*  
 ἐνδόντες τοῖς ἵπποις δόρατα μακρὰ ἐναγκαλισάμενοι κατ'  
*having-given to-the horses spears long having-embraced against*  
 αὐτοῦ ἴενται. καὶ ὁ μὲν Ἀμικέτης διημαρτῇκει τοῦ  
*him burl-themselves and — indeed Amiketes missed the*  
 βασιλέως μικρὸν παρεκκλίναντος τοῦ ἵππου· τοῦ δ' ἄλλου  
*emperor a-little having-swerved the horse of-the and other*  
 τὸ δόρυ διὰ τοῦ ξίφους ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπωσάμενος καὶ  
*the spear through the sword the emperor having-thrust-aside and*  
 τονώσας τὴν χεῖρα παῖει τοῦτον κατὰ τὴν κλεῖδα καὶ  
*having-tensed the arm strikes him on the collarbone and*  
 τὴν χεῖρα τοῦ λοιποῦ ἀποτέμνει σώματος. ὁ δέ γε  
*the arm from-the rest cuts-off body the but at-least*  
 τρίτος πλήττει τοῦτον εὐθὺς κατὰ τὸ μέτωπον, ὁ δὲ  
*third strikes him straight on the forehead he and*  
 φρενῆρης τε ὦν καὶ ἐδραῖος τὸν νοῦν μηδὲν ὅλως  
*sbrewd both being and steady in-the mind not-at-all at-all*  
 συγχυθεῖς, γοργότητι γνώμης ἐν ἀσκέπτῳ χρόνῳ τὸ δέον  
*confused with-swiftness of-mind in unconsidered time the needful*  
 συνείς, ὕπτιον ἅμα τῇ πληγῇ ἑαυτὸν ὥς ἐπ' οὐρὰν  
*having-grasped backward together-with the blow himself as onto tail*  
 τοῦ ἵππου ἔθετο. καὶ εὐθὺς τὸν χρώτα τοῦ σώματος  
*of-the horse put and at-once the skin of-the body*  
 μικρὸν παραξέσασα ἢ τοῦ ξίφους ἀκμῇ περὶ τὴν ἀκωκὴν  
*a-little having-grazed the of-the sword edge about the point*  
 παραποδισθεῖσα τῆς κόρυθος καὶ τὸν συνέχοντα ταύτην  
*entangled of-the helmet and the holding it*  
 ὑπὸ τὴν γένυν ἱμάντα διασπάσασα ὥσε ταύτην εἰς γῆν.  
*under the jaw strap having-torn thrust it to earth*  
 τηνικαῦτα δὲ ὁ μὲν Κελτὸς ἐκείνος παραθέει, ὃν ᾤετο  
*then and the indeed Celt that runs-past whom he-thought*



κατακρημνίσαι τοῦ ἵππου, ὁ δ' εὐθὺς ὀρθωθείς  
*to-have-hurled-down from-the horse he and at-once having-straightened-up*  
ἐπὶ τῆς ἐφεστρίδος ἐδραῖος ἐκάθητο μηδὲν τῶν ὅπλων  
*on the saddle-cloth steady sat none of-the arms*  
ἀποβαλὼν. ἀλλὰ καὶ γυμνὸν τὸ ξίφος κατέχων τῇ δεξιᾷ,  
*having-lost but also bare the sword holding in-the right*  
τῷ δὲ λύθρῳ τοῦ ἰδίου πεφοινιγμένος αἵματος καὶ τὴν  
*with-the and gore of-the own crimsoned blood and the*  
κεφαλὴν ἀπερικάλυπτον ἔχων καὶ τὴν πυρσὴν καὶ ἡλιώσαν  
*head uncovered having and the golden-red and sunny*  
κόμην περιπλανωμένην ταῖς ὄψεσι καὶ διοχλοῦσαν αὐτόν·  
*hair straying-over the eyes and troubling him*  
ὁ γὰρ ἵππος ταραττόμενος καὶ ἀποπτύων τοὺς χαλινούς  
*the for horse being-troubled and spitting-out the bits*  
καὶ φρμάσσων ἀτακτότερον ἐμπίπτει τῷ προσώπῳ  
*and snorting more-disorderly to-fall on-the face*  
τοὺς βοστρύχους παρεσκεύαζεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ ὥς ἑαυτὸν  
*the curls caused but even so himself*  
ἀνακαλεσάμενος, ὥς ἐνῆν, τοῖς ἐναντίοις ἀντικαθίστατο.  
*having-recovered as was-possible the opponents he-withstood*  
ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τοὺς Τούρκους φεύγοντας ἑώρα καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν  
*since and also the Turks fleeing he-saw and himself —*  
Βοδῖνον ἀπολέμητον ὑποχωροῦντα· ὥπλιστο γὰρ καὶ οὗτος  
*Bodin without-fighting withdrawing he-bad-armed for also he*  
καὶ εἰς πολέμου τύπον τὸ αὐτοῦ διατυπώσας στρατεύμα  
*and into of-war form the his having-shaped army*  
κατὰ ταυτηνὴν τὴν ἡμέραν ἵστατο ὥς ἐπαρήξων τάχα  
*on this-here the day stood as about-to-help perhaps*  
τῷ αὐτοκράτορι κατὰ τὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν γεγενημένας  
*the autocrat according-to the with him having-been-made*  
συνθήκας· ἐκαραδόκει δέ, ὥς ἔοικεν, ἵνα, εἰ μὲν τὴν ῥοπὴν  
*agreements he-waited but as it-seems that if indeed the turn*

τῆς νίκης τῷ αὐτοκράτορι δοθείσαν γνοίη, ἐπιτεθείη  
*of-the victory to-the autocrat given he-should-learn he-might-attack*  
καὶ αὐτὸς τοῖς Κελτοῖς, εἰ δὲ τοῦναντίον, ἀτρεμίσῃ  
*also himself the Celts if but the-opposite he-might-keep-quiet*  
τε καὶ ὀπισθόπους γένηται ταῦτα διαλογιζόμενος, ὥς  
*both and backward-going become these(-things) reckoning as*  
ἐξ ὧν ἐπεπράχει δῆλον, καὶ τὴν νικῶσαν ἀπάρτι τοὺς  
*from what he-had-done clear also the winning(-band) forthwith the*  
Κελτοὺς ἐγνωκῶς ἔχοντας ἄγευστος πολέμου τὸ παράπαν  
*Celts having-recognized having untasted of-war the at-all*  
οἴκαδε ἐπαναεδραμήκει· ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ ταῦτα  
*homeward had-run-back the and autocrat these(-things)*  
θεασάμενος καὶ ὥς μηδένα τὸν αὐτῷ ἐπαμύνοντα βλέπων  
*having-beheld and as no-one the to-him helping seeing*  
τὰ μετὰφρενα καὶ αὐτὸς τηνικαῦτα δίδωσι τοῖς ἐναντίοις.  
*the back also he then gives to-the opponents*  
καὶ οὕτως ἐδίωκον οἱ Λατῖνοι τὸ Ῥωμαϊκὸν στράτευμα.  
*and thus pursued the Latins the Roman army*

## LI • THE LEAP AT BAD SIDE

*Robert seizes Saint Nicholas' precinct with the imperial tent and sends men after Alexios. At Bad Side, between the Charzanes and a high rock, nine knights strike his left side with spears; others on his right prop him upright with theirs, and his horse Sgouritzes, once Bryennios', leaps onto the rock. Alexios cuts off the spears and kills a pursuer, then charges a knight he takes for Robert, kills him, and rides through while the Celts mourn the man, in fact Robert's second.*

Ὁ δὲ Ῥομπέρτος καταλαβὼν τὸ τέμενος τοῦ ἁγίου  
— *and Robert having-reached the precinct of-the holy*  
Νικολάου, ὅπου καὶ ἡ βασιλικὴ σκηνὴ καὶ ἅπανα ἡ  
*Nicholas where also the imperial tent and all the*

σκευὴ τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στρατεύματος, ὅπόσους εὐσθενεῖς  
*baggage of-the Roman army as-many-as strong*  
 εἶχε, τὸν βασιλέα διώκειν ἐκπέπομφεν αὐτοῦ που  
*he-had the emperor to-pursue sent-out there somewhere*  
 αὐτὸς ἐγκαρτερῶν φανταζόμενος τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος  
*he remaining imagining the of-the autocrat*  
 κατάσχεσιν. τοιοῦτοι γὰρ λογισμοὶ τούτου τὸ ὑπέρογκον  
*capture such for reasonings his the overweening*  
 ἐξέκαιον φρόνημα. οἱ δὲ εὐψύχως μάλα τοῦτον ἐδίωκον  
*inflamed spirit they and bravely very him pursued*  
 μέχρι τόπου τινὸς παρὰ τῶν ἐγχωρίων καλουμένου Κακῆ  
*as-far-as place a-certain by the locals called Bad*  
 Πλευρά. ἦδε τούτου θέσις· ποταμὸς ῥέων κάτωθεν ὁ  
*Side this its position river flowing below the*  
 Χαρζάνης καλούμενος, ἔνθεν δὲ ὑπερκειμένη πέτρα ὑψηλή.  
*Charzanes called on-this-side and overhanging rock high*  
 ἀναμεταξὺ δὲ τούτων φθάνουσιν αὐτὸν οἱ διώκοντες, οἱ  
*between and these overtake him the pursuers who*  
 καὶ παίουσιν αὐτὸν κατὰ τὴν ἀριστερὰν πλευρὰν διὰ τῶν  
*also strike him on the left side with the*  
 δοράτων (ἐννέα δὲ ξύμπαντες) καὶ ἐπὶ θάτερα κλίνουσι.  
*spears nine and all-together and to the-other(-side) they-tilt(-him)*  
 τάχα δ' ἂν καὶ ἐπεπτώκει, εἰ μὴ τὸ ξίφος, ὃ τῇ δεξιᾷ  
*perhaps and — also he-would-have-fallen if not the sword which in-the right*  
 κατεῖχε χερί, ἔφθασεν ἐναπερεισθῆναι τῇ γῇ. ναὶ μὴν  
*he-held hand had-been-in-time to-be-propped on-the earth yes indeed*  
 καὶ ἡ τοῦ μύωπος ἀκμὴ τοῦ ἀριστεροῦ ποδὸς ἐνδακοῦσα  
*also the of-the spur point of-the left foot having-bitten-into*  
 τὸ ἄκρον τῆς ἐφεστρίδος, ὃ ὑπόστρωμα λέγουσιν,  
*the edge of-the saddle-cloth which saddle-pad they-call*  
 ἀκλινέστερον τὸν ἵππότην ἐποίει. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ τῇ λαῖᾳ  
*more-unswerving the horseman made and himself too with-the left*

τῆς χαίτης τοῦ ἵππου δραξάμενος ἀνείχεν ἑαυτόν. βοηθεῖται  
*the mane of-the horse having-grasped held-up himself is-helped*  
 μέντοι ἐκ θείας τινὸς δυνάμεως σωτηρίαν παρ' ἐχθρῶν  
*however from divine some power safety from enemies*  
 αὐτῷ κομιζούσης παραδόξως. ἀναφύει γὰρ δεξιόθεν  
*to-him bringing unexpectedly makes-spring-up for on-the-right*  
 ἄλλους Κελτοὺς τὰ δόρατα πρὸς ἐκείνον ὀρθώσαντας·  
*other Celts the spears toward him having-straightened*  
 οἱ καὶ τὰ ἄκρα τῶν δοράτων κατὰ τὴν δεξιὰν πλευρὰν  
*who also the points of-the spears into the right side*  
 ἐμβalόντες ὥρθωσάν τε ἄθροον τὸν στρατιώτην καὶ εἰς  
*having-thrust righted both suddenly the soldier and into*  
 τὸ μέσον κατέστησαν. καὶ ἦν ἰδεῖν θαῦμα παράδοξον.  
*the middle set(-him) and it-was to-see marvel unexpected*  
 οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἐξ εὐωνύμων ἀνατρέπειν ἠπείγοντο, οἱ δὲ  
*some indeed for from left to-overturn hastened others and*  
 ἐκ τῶν δεξιῶν τὰ δόρατα τῇ πλευρᾷ πῆξαντες ὥσπερ  
*from the right the spears in-the side having-fixed as-if*  
 τοῖς πρῶν ἐναντιούμενοι καὶ ἀντερείδοντες δόρασι δόρατα  
*to-the former opposing and pushing-against with-spears spears*  
 ἐπ' ὀρθοῦ σχήματος τὸν βασιλέα ἐποίησαν. ἐδράσαντος  
*in upright posture the emperor made having-settled*  
 δὲ ἑαυτὸν γενναιότερον καὶ συσφίγγαντος περιβάδην τὸν  
*and himself more-nobly and having-gripped astride the*  
 ἵππον ὁμοῦ καὶ τὴν ἐφ' ἐστρίδα τηλικαῦτα γίνεται τι  
*horse together and the saddle-cloth then happens a-certain*  
 τῆς γενναιότητος ἐκείνου τεκμήριον. ὁ γὰρ ἵππος ἄλλως  
*of-the nobility his proof the for horse in-one-way*  
 μὲν καὶ θερμότατος ὢν καὶ ὑγροσκελής, ἄλλως δὲ  
*indeed both most-spirited being and supple-legged in-another-way and*  
 καὶ ἀθλητικώτατος καὶ πολεμικός (ἔφθη γὰρ ὅπου  
*also most-athletic and warlike he-had-earlier for somewhere*

τοῦτον ἀναλαβέσθαι τοῦ Βρυεννίου μετὰ τῆς ἐρυθροβαφοῦς  
*him to-take-up — from-Bryennios with the red-dyed*  
 ἐφ'esτρίδος, ὁπότε τοῦτον εἶλεν ἐν τῷ καιρῷ τῆς μάχης  
*saddle-cloth when him he-took in the time of-the battle*  
 βασιλεύοντος ἔτι Νικηφόρου τοῦ Βοτανειάτου), τὸ δὲ  
*reigning still Nikephoros the Botaneiates the and*  
 ὅλον εἰπεῖν, ὑπὸ θείας προνοίας ἐμπνευσθεὶς πάλ्लεται τε  
*whole to-say by divine providence inspired leaps both*  
 εὐθὺς καὶ διαέριος γίνεται καὶ ἐπ' ἄκρου τῆς εἰρημένης  
*at-once and airborne becomes and on top of-the said*  
 πέτρας ἐφίσταται ὥσπερ ὑπόπτερος κουφισθεὶς καί, τοῦτο  
*rock stands as-if winged lifted and this*  
 δὴ τὸ τῶν μύθων, Πηγάσου πετὰ λαβών· Σγουρίτζην  
*indeed the of-the myths of-Pegasos wings having-taken Sgouritzes*  
 τουτονὶ τὸν ἵππον ὃ Βρυνένιος ὠνόμαξε. τὰ δὲ τῶν  
*this-here the horse — Bryennios named the and of-the*  
 βαρβάρων δόρατα ὥσπερ κενεμβατήσαντα τὰ μὲν καὶ  
*barbarians spears as-if having-struck-at-air some indeed also*  
 τῶν χειρῶν τούτων ἐξέπεσον, τὰ δὲ διαπεπαρμένα  
*from-the hands their fell-out others and having-been-pierced-through*  
 τοῖς μέρεσι τοῦ ἐσθήματος τοῦ βασιλέως ἐναπομείναντα  
*in-the parts of-the garment of-the emperor remaining*  
 μετεωρισθέντα τῷ ἵππῳ συνηκολούθησαν. ὃ δ' εὐθὺς  
*lifted-up with-the horse followed he and at-once*  
 ἀποκόπτει τὰ ἐπαγόμενα δόρατα. καὶ οὔτε τεθορύβητο  
*cuts-off the trailing spears and neither he-was-troubled*  
 τὴν ψυχὴν ἐν τοσοῦτοις δεινοῖς καταστάς οὔτε συνεθολώθη  
*in-the soul in so-great terrors having-stood nor was-confused*  
 τοὺς λογισμούς, ἀλλὰ ταχὺ τοῦ συνοίσοντος γίνεται  
*in-the reasonings but quickly of-the advantageous becomes(-master)*  
 καὶ τὸ παράδοξον ἐκ μέσου ἑαυτὸν ποιεῖται. οἱ δέ  
*and the unexpectedly from midst himself makes the and*

γε Κελτοὶ κεχηγνότες εἰστήκεσαν τὸ γεγονὸς  
*at-least Celts gaping stood the(-thing) having-happened*  
 ἐκπληττόμενοι· καὶ γὰρ ἦν ἐκπλήξεως ἄξιον· θεασάμενοι  
*being-astounded and for it-was of-astonishment worthy having-beheld*  
 δὲ τοῦτον ἐφ' ἑτέραν τραπέντα καὶ αὖθις ἐδίωκον. ὁ  
*and him to other(-way) having-turned also again pursued he*  
 δὲ ἐπὶ πολὺ νῶτα τοῖς μεταδιώκουσι στρατιώταις διδοὺς  
*and for long back to-the pursuing soldiers giving*  
 στρέψας τὸν χαλὼν καὶ συναντήσας ἐνὶ τῶν διωκόντων  
*having-turned the bridle and having-met one of-the pursuers*  
 διελαύνει τὸ δόρυ τοῖς στέρνοις· ὁ δὲ τηνικαῦτα εἰς γῆν  
*drives-through the spear in-the breast he and then on earth*  
 ὕπτιος ἔκειτο. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς αὖθις τὰς ἡνίας στρέψας  
*on-his-back lay the and emperor again the reins having-turned*  
 εἶχετο τῆς προτέρας ὁδοῦ. συναντᾷ τοῖνυν ἀπὸ τῶν  
*held-to the former road meets therefore from the(-men)*  
 ἔμπροσθεν διωκόντων τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς δυνάμεις Κελτοῖς οὐκ  
*in-front pursuing the Roman forces Celts not*  
 ὀλίγοις· οἱ δὲ πόρρωθεν τοῦτον θεασάμενοι συνησπικότες  
*few they and from-a-far him having-beheld with-locked-shields*  
 ἔστησαν τοὺς τε ἵππους ἀναψῆσαι βουλόμενοι, ἅμα  
*stood the both horses to-refresh wishing at-the-same-time*  
 δὲ καὶ ζωγρῆσαι τοῦτον ἐθέλοντες κἀντεῦθεν ὥσπερ τι  
*and also to-take-alive him wishing and-thence as-if some*  
 λάφυρον τῷ Ῥομπέρτῳ κομίσαι. ὁ δὲ ἅμα μὲν  
*spoil — to-Robert to-bring he and at-the-same-time indeed*  
 τοὺς ὀπισθεν φεύγων διώκοντας καὶ τοὺς ἔμπροσθεν  
*those behind fleeing pursuing and those in-front*  
 θεασάμενος ἀπεγνώκει τὰς σωζούσας ἐλπίδας. συλλεξάμενος  
*having-beheld despaired-of the saving hopes having-collected*  
 δὲ ἑαυτόν, ἐπεὶ τῶν ἄλλων μέσον τινὰ ἐθεάσατο ἀπὸ τε  
*and himself since of-the others middle one he-beheld from both*

τοῦ σώματος καὶ τῆς τῶν ὄπλων ἀποπαλλομένης αἴγλης  
*the body and the of-the arms flashing gleam*  
 τὸν Ῥομπέρτον εἶναι νομίσας καταστήσας τὸν ἵππον  
 — Robert to-be having-thought having-set the horse  
 κατ' αὐτοῦ φέρεται· κἀκεῖνος δ' ἐκεῖθεν πρὸς αὐτὸν τὸ  
*against him is-borne and-be and from-there toward him the*  
 δόρυ εὐθύνας. καὶ μέντοι γε καὶ συνελάσαντες ἄμφω  
*spear having-leveled and however at-least also having-driven-together both*  
 κατὰ τὸ μεσαίχιμον κατ' ἀλλήλων ἵενται. πρότερος  
*in the space-between against each-other hurl-themselves first*  
 δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ διυθύνας τὴν χεῖρα παίει τοῦτον  
*and the autocrat having-straightened the hand strikes him*  
 διὰ τοῦ δόρατος· τὸ δὲ αὐτόθεν διὰ τῶν μαζῶν  
*with the spear the(-spear) and from-there through the breasts*  
 εἰς τὰ μετὰφρενα διεκβάλλεται. καὶ τὸν μὲν βάρβαρον  
*into the back is-driven-through and the indeed barbarian*  
 αὐτίκα εἶχε γῇ· εὐθὺς δὲ τοῦτον ἀφήκε καὶ ἡ ψυχὴ  
*at-once held earth at-once and him left also the soul*  
 τῆς τρώσεως καιρίας γεγεννημένης. καὶ τοῦ λοιποῦ ὁ  
*the wound mortal having-become and for-the rest the*  
 βασιλεὺς διασχιθείσης τῆς φάλαγγος διὰ μέσων αὐτῶν  
*emperor having-been-split the phalanx through middle them*  
 ἐξιππάσατο ἄδειαν ἑαυτῷ ἐφευράμενος τὴν σφαγὴν τοῦ  
*rode-out freedom for-himself having-found the slaughter of-the*  
 βαρβάρου τούτου. οἱ δ' εὐθὺς τὸν τρωθέντα εἰς γῇν  
*barbarian this they and at-once the wounded(-man) on earth*  
 ἐρριμμένον θεασάμενοι περιχυθέντες τῷ κειμένῳ περὶ  
*thrown having-beheld having-poured-round to-the lying(-man) about*  
 αὐτὸν διεπονοῦντο. καὶ οἱ ὀπισθεν δὲ τὸν βασιλέα  
*him were-busy and the(-men) behind and the emperor*  
 διώκοντες τούτους θεασάμενοι ἀποβάντες τῶν ἵππων  
*pursuing them having-beheld having-dismounted from-the horses*

καὶ γνωρίσαντες τὸν ἄνδρα ἐκόπτοντο ὀλολύζοντες. ἀλλ'  
*and having-recognized the man beat-their-breasts wailing but*  
 ὁ Ῥομπέρτος μὲν οὐκ ἦν, ἕτερος δὲ τῶν ἐπιφανῶν καὶ  
 — *Robert indeed not was other but of-the illustrious and*  
 ὁ τούτου δεύτερος. τούτων δὲ ἀσχολουμένων ὁ βασιλεὺς  
*the his second these and being-occupied the emperor*  
 ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω τὴν πορείαν ἐπεποίητο.  
*to the forward the journey had-made*

## LII • ANNA RESTRAINS HER GRIEF

*Anna says she passes over her father's sufferings without lament, so that her history will not seem suspect or ornate, though she loves her father no less than the Homeric youth. Robert berates the returning knights and threatens to flog one for not following Alexios onto the rock, until the man's account of its inaccessibility turns his anger to wonder. Alexios crosses the mountains in two days and nights to Achrida, grieving for the fallen, and, since Palaiologos could not return to Dyrrachion, entrusts its citadel to the Venetians and the rest to Komiskortes of Arbana.*

Ἄλλ' ἔγωγε μεταξύ τῶν λόγων ἐπελαθόμην τὸ μὲν  
*but I-for-my-part between the words forgot partly indeed*  
 διὰ τὴν φύσιν τῆς ἱστορίας, τὸ δὲ καὶ διὰ τὴν τῶν  
*because-of the nature of-the history partly and also because-of the of-the*  
 πραγμάτων ὑπερβολὴν, ὅτι πατρὸς κατορθώματα γράφομι.  
*deeds excess that of-father achievements I-write*  
 μηδὲ γὰρ βουλομένη τὴν ἱστορίαν ὑποπτον θεῖναι πολλάκις  
*not for wishing the history suspect to-make often*  
 παρατρέχω τὰ τοῦ πατρὸς μῆτε αὐξάνουσα μῆτε  
*I-pass-over the(-things) of-the father neither magnifying nor*  
 πάθος περιτιθεῖσα. εἴθε γὰρ ἐλευθέρα ἦν τοῦ πάθους  
*emotion adding would-that for free I-were from-the emotion*



τούτου τοῦ πατρικοῦ καὶ ἀπόλυτος, ἵνα καθάπερ ὕλης  
*this the filial and released that as-if of-matter*  
 ἀμφιλαφοῦς δραξαμένη τὴν σοβάδα γλώσσαν ἐνεδειξάμην,  
*abundant having-grasped the swagging tongue I-might-have-shown*  
 ὅποσιν ἔχει περὶ τὰ καλὰ τὴν οἰκείωσιν. ἐπηλυγάζει  
*how-much it-has about the fine(-things) the affinity overshadows*  
 δέ μου τὸ πρόθυμον ἢ φυσικὴ στοργή, μή πως δόξαιμι  
*but my the eagerness the natural affection lest somehow I-might-seem*  
 τοῖς πολλοῖς ὑπὸ προθυμίας τοῦ λέγειν περὶ τῶν  
*to-the many from eagerness of-the to-speak about the(-things)*  
 κατ' ἐμαυτὴν τερατολογίας παρέχειν ὑπόληψιν. καὶ γὰρ  
*concerning myself of-marvel-telling to-give suspicion and for*  
 ἂν πολλαχοῦ τῶν κατορθωμάτων τῶν πατρικῶν μεμνημένη  
*— in-many-places of-the achievements the paternal remembering*  
 καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν αὐτὴν ἀπεστάλαξα συγγράφουσά τε  
*also the soul itself I-would-have-dripped-away writing both*  
 καὶ διηγουμένη, ἐν ὅποσιν κακοῖς περιπέπτωκε, καὶ οὐδ'  
*and narrating in how-many evils he-fell-into and not-even*  
 ἄνευ μονωδίας καὶ θρήνου τὸν τόπον παρήλθον. ἀλλ'  
*without monody and lament the place I-would-have-passed but*  
 ἵνα μὴ ῥητορεία κομψή τις ἢ κατὰ τὸ μέρος ἐκεῖνο τῆς  
*that not oratory elegant some be in the part that of-the*  
 ἱστορίας, ὥσπερ τις ἀπαθὴς ἀδάμας καὶ λίθος παρατρέχω  
*history like some impassive adamant and stone I-pass-over*  
 τὰς τοῦ πατρὸς συμφοράς, ὥσπερ ἔδει καὶ καθάπερ  
*the of-the father misfortunes which-very it-was-needful me-too like*  
 ἐκείνον τὸν Ὀμηρικὸν νεανίσκον εἰς ὄρκον προφέρειν  
*that the Homeric youth into oath to-bring-forward*  
 (οὐδὲ γάρ εἰμι χείρων ἐκείνου τοῦ λέγοντος “οὐ μὰ  
*not for I-am worse than-that the(-one) saying not by*  
 Ζῆν', Ἀγέλαε, καὶ ἄλγεα πατρὸς ἐμείο”) πρὸς τὸ εἶναι  
*Zeus Agelaos and sufferings of-father my toward the to-be*

καὶ λέγεσθαι φιλοπάτωρ. ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν πάθος τὸ πατρικὸν  
*and to-be-called father-loving but the indeed emotion the filial*  
 ἐμοὶ μόνη καταλείφθω καὶ θαυμάζειν καὶ ὀλοφύρεσθαι,  
*to-me alone let-be-left both to-marvel and to-lament*  
 τὰ δὲ τῆς ἱστορίας ἐχέσθω. μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ  
*the(-things) and of-the history let-(me)-keep-to after these(-things) the*  
 μὲν Κελτοὶ τῆς πρὸς τὸν Ῥομπέρτον φερούσης εἶχοντο.  
*indeed Celts the to — Robert leading(-road) held*  
 ὁ δὲ κενούς τούτους θεασάμενος πυθόμενός τε τὰ  
*he and empty them having-beheld having-learned and the(-things)*  
 τούτοις συμπεσόντα πάντας μὲν μέγας κατηγιάτο, ἕνα  
*to-them having-befallen all indeed greatly accused one*  
 δὲ τούτων ἔκκριτον καὶ μαστίζειν ἡπείλει ἀνδρόν τε  
*and of-them chosen also to-whip he-threatened unmanly both*  
 ἀποκαλῶν καὶ ἀπειροπόλεμον· καὶ ὅτι μὴ καὶ αὐτὸς  
*calling and inexperienced-in-war and because not also himself*  
 ἐπὶ τῆς πέτρας μετὰ τοῦ ἵππου ἀνέθορε καὶ τὸν βασιλέα  
*onto the rock with the horse he-leapt and the emperor*  
 Ἀλέξιον ἢ κρούσας ἀνέλεν ἢ δραξάμενος ζῶντα ἡγαγε,  
*Alexios either having-struck killed or having-grasped alive brought*  
 τὰ πάνδεινα πάσχειν ὤετο. ἦν γὰρ ὁ Ῥομπέρτος  
*the most-dreadful(-things) to-suffer he-thought was for — Robert*  
 οὗτος τὰλλα μὲν εὐψυχότατός τε καὶ φιλοκινδυνότατος,  
*this in-the-rest indeed most-brave both and most-venturesome*  
 πικρίας δὲ ὅλος ἄνθρωπος καὶ ἐν ῥίσιν ἐπικαθήμενον  
*of-bitterness but wholly a-man and in nostrils sitting*  
 ἔχων τὸν χόλον καὶ τὴν καρδίαν μεστήν θυμοῦ καὶ  
*having the bile and the heart full of-wrath and*  
 ὀργῆς ἔμπλεων καὶ οὕτως ἔχων περὶ τοὺς πολεμίους,  
*of-anger filled and so being about the enemies*  
 ὥς ἢ τὸν ἀντικαθιστάμενον διαπείραι τῷ δόρατι ἢ  
*so-as either the(-one) opposing to-pierce with-the spear or*

ἑαυτὸν διαχρήσασθαι παρὰ τὸν Μοιραῖόν φησι κλωστήρα  
 himself to-destroy before the Fate-allotted he-says thread  
 ἀπαλλαττόμενος. ὁ μέντοι στρατιώτης ἐκεῖνος, ὃν ὑπ’  
 departing the however soldier that whom under  
 αἰτίαςιν ὁ Ῥομπέρτος εἶχε, τό τε ἀνεπίβατον καὶ  
 blame — Robert held the both inaccessibility and  
 ὄξυ τῆς πέτρας μάλα σαφῶς διηγείτο, καὶ ὅτι εἰς τὸ  
 sharpness of-the rock very clearly narrated and that to the  
 μετεωρότατον ὁ τόπος ἐπήρτο καὶ ὡς ὀξεῖα ἡ πέτρα ἦν  
 most-elevated the place rose and how sharp the rock was  
 καὶ ἀκροσφαλῆς καὶ ὡς οὐδένα οὐ πεζόν, οὐχ ἰππότην  
 and precipitous and how no-one neither on-foot nor horseman  
 ἐπιβῆναι ταύτης δυνατὸν ἄνευ θείας τινὸς μηχανῆς, μὴ ὅτι  
 to-mount it possible without divine some device not to-say  
 γέ τινα πολεμούμενον καὶ μαχόμενον, ἀλλ’ οὐδ’ ἄνευ  
 at-least anyone being-warred-upon and fighting but not-even without  
 πολέμου τινὸς εἶναι δυνατὸν ἀποπειρᾶσθαι τῆς πέτρας.  
 war any to-be possible to-attempt the rock  
 “εἰ δ’ ἐμοί” φησι “καὶ διαπιστοίης, ἐπιχειρήσας ἢ  
 if but me he-says also you-disbelieve having-tried either  
 αὐτὸς σὺ ἢ ἄλλος τις ἰπποτῶν ὁ θαρραλεώτατος, τῶν  
 yourself you or other some of-horsemen the most-daring of-the  
 ἀμυγχανῶν αἰσθήσεται. εἰ δ’ οὖν, ἀλλ’ εἴ τις ἀναφανείται  
 impossible will-perceive if but then but if anyone shall-appear  
 τῆς πέτρας περιγενόμενος, μὴ ὅτι γε ἄπτερος, ἀλλὰ  
 the rock having-mastered not to-say at-least wingless but  
 καὶ ὑπόπτερος ὢν, ἔτοιμος αὐτὸς πᾶν εἴ τι δεινὸν  
 also winged being ready I every if any dreadful(-thing)  
 ὑποστῆναι καὶ ἀνανδρίαν κατακριθῆναι.” ταῦτα εἰπὼν  
 to-undergo and of-cowardice to-be-condemned these(-things) having-said  
 μετὰ θαύματος καὶ ἐκπλήξεως ὁ βάρβαρος τὸν ἐπίχολον  
 with wonder and astonishment the barbarian the irascible

Ῥομπέρτον κατέστείλε τε καὶ εἰς θαῦμα ἐκίνησεν ἀφέμενον  
*Robert checked both and to wonder moved(-him) having-left-off*  
 τοῦ ὀργίζεσθαι. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τοὺς ἐλιγμοὺς τῶν  
*the to-be-angry the and emperor the windings of-the*  
 παρακεμένων ὁρῶν καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν δύσβατον ἀτραπὸν ἐν  
*neighboring mountains and all the impassable path in*  
 δυσὶ νυχθημέροις διεξελθὼν καταλαμβάνει τὴν Ἀχρίδα.  
*two nights-and-days having-gone-through reaches — Acbrida*  
 ἐν δὲ τῷ μεταξὺ τὸν Χαρζάνην διελθὼν καὶ μικρὸν περὶ  
*in and the meantime the Charzanes having-crossed and a-little at*  
 τὴν καλουμένην Βαβαγορὰν ἐγκαρτερήσας (τέμπος δ' αὕτη  
*the called Babagora having-stayed valley and this*  
 δύσβατόν ἐστι) μήθ' ὑπὸ τῆς ἥττης μήθ' ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων  
*impassable is neither by the defeat nor by the other*  
 τοῦ μόθου κακῶν τὸν νοῦν συγχυθεὶς μήθ' ὑπὸ τῆς κατὰ  
*of-the battle evils the mind confounded nor by the in*  
 τὸ μέτωπον τοῦ τραύματος ὀδύνης ὑποχαλάσας, κἂν τὰ  
*the forehead of-the wound pain having-slackened even-if the*  
 ἐντὸς ὑπὸ τῆς λύπης τῶν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ πεπτωκότων καὶ  
*inward(-parts) by the grief of-those in the battle having-fallen and*  
 μᾶλλον τῶν γενναίως ἀγωνισαμένων ἀνδρῶν ἐξεφλέγετο·  
*more of-the nobly having-fought men were-inflamed*  
 ἀλλ' ὅμως τῆς πόλεως ὅλος ἦν Δυρραχίου καὶ ταύτης  
*but nevertheless of-the city wholly he-was of-Dyrrachion and it*  
 ἐμέμνητο ἀχθόμενος ὅτι ἄτερ ἡγεμόνος καταλέλειπτο τοῦ  
*he-remembered being-vexed that without leader it-had-been-left —*  
 Παλαιολόγου διὰ τὴν ὀξείαν συμβολὴν τοῦ πολέμου  
*Palaiologos because-of the sharp encounter of-the war*  
 μὴ δυνηθέντος ἐπαναστρέψαι. καὶ ὥς ἐνὸν τοὺς κατ'  
*not having-been-able to-return and as being-possible those in*  
 αὐτὴν ἡσφαλίσατο καὶ τὴν τῆς ἀκροπόλεως φρουρὰν τοῖς  
*it he-secured and the of-the acropolis guard to-the*

ἐκκρίτοις Βενετίκοις τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἀποίκων ἀνέθετο, τὴν δέ  
*chosen Venetians of-the there settlers be-entrusted the but*  
 γε ἐπίλοιπον πᾶσαν πόλιν τῷ ἐξ Ἀρβάνων ὀρμωμένῳ  
*at-least remaining whole city to-the from Arbana coming*  
 Κομισκόρτῃ τὰ συνοίσοντα διὰ γραμμάτων ὑποθέμενος.  
*Komiskortes the advantageous(-things) through letters having-suggested*

---

